

2024

**32nd
edition**

Vol. 1

Terrestrial Animal Health Code

General provisions



**World Organisation
for Animal Health**

*First edition, 1968
Second edition, 1971
Third edition, 1976
Fourth edition, 1982
Fifth edition, 1986
Sixth edition, 1992
Seventh edition, 1998
Eighth edition, 1999
Ninth edition, 2000
Tenth edition, 2001
Eleventh edition, 2002
Twelfth edition, 2003
Thirteenth edition, 2004
Fourteenth edition, 2005
Fifteenth edition, 2006
Sixteenth edition, 2007
Seventeenth edition, 2008
Eighteenth edition, 2009
Nineteenth edition, 2010
Twentieth edition, 2011
Twenty-first edition, 2012
Twenty-second edition, 2013
Twenty-third edition, 2014
Twenty-fourth edition, 2015
Twenty-fifth edition, 2016
Twenty-sixth edition, 2017
Twenty-seventh edition, 2018
Twenty-eighth edition, 2019
Twenty-ninth edition, 2021
Thirtieth edition, 2022
Thirty-first edition, 2023
Thirty-second edition 2024*

The designations employed and the presentation of material in this information product do not imply the expression of any opinion whatsoever on the part of the World Organisation for Animal Health concerning the legal or development status of any country, territory, city or area or of its authorities, or concerning the delimitation of its frontiers or boundaries. The mention of specific companies or products of manufacturers, whether or not these have been patented, does not imply that these have been endorsed or recommended by the World Organisation for Animal Health in preference to others of a similar nature that are not mentioned.

© WORLD ORGANISATION FOR ANIMAL HEALTH



All World Organisation for Animal Health (WOAH) publications are protected by international copyright law. Extracts may be copied, reproduced, translated, adapted or published in journals, documents, books, electronic media and any other medium destined for the public, for information, educational or commercial purposes, provided prior written permission has been granted by the WOAH. The designations and denominations employed and the presentation of the material in this publication do not imply the expression of any opinion whatsoever on the part of the WOAH concerning the legal status of any country, territory, city or area or of its authorities, or concerning the delimitation of its frontiers and boundaries.

CONTENTS

VOLUME 1

<i>Foreword</i>	vii
<i>User's guide</i>	ix
<i>Glossary</i>	xiii
SECTION 1. ANIMAL DISEASE DIAGNOSIS, SURVEILLANCE AND NOTIFICATION	
Chapter 1.1. <i>Notification of diseases and provision of epidemiological information</i>	1
Chapter 1.2. <i>Criteria for the inclusion of diseases, infections and infestations in the WOAH list</i>	3
Chapter 1.3. <i>Diseases, infections and infestations listed by WOAH</i>	4
Chapter 1.4. <i>Animal health surveillance</i>	7
Chapter 1.5. <i>Surveillance for arthropod vectors of animal diseases</i>	16
Chapter 1.6. <i>Procedures for official recognition of animal health status, endorsement of an official control programme, and publication of a self-declaration of animal health status, by WOAH</i>	19
Chapter 1.7. <i>Application for official recognition by WOAH of free status for African horse sickness</i>	21
Chapter 1.8. <i>Application for official recognition by WOAH of risk status for bovine spongiform encephalopathy</i>	31
Chapter 1.9. <i>Application for official recognition by WOAH of free status for classical swine fever</i>	42
Chapter 1.10. <i>Application for official recognition by WOAH of free status for contagious bovine pleuropneumonia</i>	48
Chapter 1.11. <i>Application for official recognition by WOAH of free status for foot and mouth disease</i>	63
Chapter 1.12. <i>Application for official recognition by WOAH of free status for peste des petits ruminants</i>	88
SECTION 2. RISK ANALYSIS	
Chapter 2.1. <i>Import risk analysis</i>	103
Chapter 2.2. <i>Criteria applied by WOAH for assessing the safety of commodities</i>	108
SECTION 3. QUALITY OF VETERINARY SERVICES	
Chapter 3.1. <i>Introduction to recommendations on Veterinary Services</i>	111
Chapter 3.2. <i>Quality of Veterinary Services</i>	112
Chapter 3.3. <i>Evaluation of Veterinary Services</i>	119
Chapter 3.4. <i>Veterinary legislation</i>	121
Chapter 3.5. <i>Communication</i>	129
SECTION 4. DISEASE PREVENTION AND CONTROL	
Chapter 4.1. <i>Introduction to recommendations for the prevention and control of transmissible animal diseases</i>	133
Chapter 4.2. <i>General principles on identification and traceability of live animals</i>	135
Chapter 4.3. <i>Design and implementation of identification systems to achieve animal traceability</i>	136
Chapter 4.4. <i>Zoning and compartmentalisation</i>	142
Chapter 4.5. <i>Application of compartmentalisation</i>	147
Chapter 4.6. <i>Semen collection, processing and storage</i>	152
Chapter 4.7. <i>Collection and processing of bovine, small ruminant and porcine semen</i>	157
Chapter 4.8. <i>Collection and processing of <i>in vivo</i> derived embryos from livestock and equids</i>	161
Chapter 4.9. <i>Collection and processing of oocytes and <i>in vitro</i> produced embryos from livestock and horses</i>	167
Chapter 4.10. <i>Collection and processing of micromanipulated oocytes or embryos from livestock and horses</i>	171
Chapter 4.11. <i>Collection and processing of laboratory rodent and rabbit oocytes or embryos</i>	174
Chapter 4.12. <i>Somatic cell nuclear transfer in production livestock and horses</i>	179

Chapter 4.13.	<i>Disposal of dead animals</i>	185
Chapter 4.14.	<i>General recommendations on disinfection and disinsection</i>	191
Chapter 4.15.	<i>Official health control of bee diseases</i>	193
Chapter 4.16.	<i>Hygiene precautions, identification, blood sampling and vaccination</i>	196
Chapter 4.17.	<i>High health status horse subpopulation</i>	197
Chapter 4.18.	<i>Vaccination</i>	199
Chapter 4.19.	<i>Official control programmes for listed and emerging diseases</i>	207
SECTION 5.	TRADE MEASURES, IMPORT/EXPORT PROCEDURES AND VETERINARY CERTIFICATION	
Chapter 5.1.	<i>General obligations related to certification</i>	215
Chapter 5.2.	<i>Certification procedures</i>	218
Chapter 5.3.	<i>WOAH procedures relevant to the Agreement on the Application of Sanitary and Phytosanitary Measures of the World Trade Organization</i>	220
Chapter 5.4.	<i>Animal health measures applicable before and at departure</i>	226
Chapter 5.5.	<i>Animal health measures applicable during transit from the place of departure in the exporting country to the place of arrival in the importing country</i>	228
Chapter 5.6.	<i>Border posts and quarantine stations in the importing country</i>	230
Chapter 5.7.	<i>Animal health measures applicable on arrival</i>	231
Chapter 5.8.	<i>International transfer and laboratory containment of animal pathogenic agents</i>	234
Chapter 5.9.	<i>Quarantine measures applicable to non-human primates</i>	236
Chapter 5.10.	<i>Model veterinary certificates for international trade in live animals, hatching eggs and products of animal origin</i>	239
Chapter 5.11.	<i>Model veterinary certificate for international movement of dogs, cats and ferrets originating from countries considered infected with rabies</i>	250
Chapter 5.12.	<i>Model passport for international movement of competition horses</i>	253
Chapter 5.13.	<i>Model veterinary certificate for international trade in laboratory animals</i>	267
SECTION 6.	VETERINARY PUBLIC HEALTH	
Chapter 6.1.	<i>Introduction to recommendations for veterinary public health</i>	273
Chapter 6.2.	<i>The role of the Veterinary Services in food safety systems</i>	274
Chapter 6.3.	<i>Control of biological hazards of animal health and public health importance through ante- and post-mortem meat inspection</i>	277
Chapter 6.4.	<i>The control of hazards of animal health and public health importance in animal feed</i>	280
Chapter 6.5.	<i>Biosecurity procedures in poultry production</i>	284
Chapter 6.6.	<i>Prevention, detection and control of <i>Salmonella</i> in poultry</i>	289
Chapter 6.7.	<i>Introduction to the recommendations for controlling antimicrobial resistance</i>	294
Chapter 6.8.	<i>Harmonisation of national antimicrobial resistance surveillance and monitoring programmes</i>	295
Chapter 6.9.	<i>Monitoring of the quantities and usage patterns of antimicrobial agents used in food-producing animals</i>	301
Chapter 6.10.	<i>Responsible and prudent use of antimicrobial agents in veterinary medicine</i>	304
Chapter 6.11.	<i>Risk analysis for antimicrobial resistance arising from the use of antimicrobial agents in animals</i>	315
Chapter 6.12.	<i>Zoonoses transmissible from non-human primates</i>	321
Chapter 6.13.	<i>Prevention and control of <i>Salmonella</i> in commercial bovine production systems</i>	326
Chapter 6.14.	<i>Prevention and control of <i>Salmonella</i> in commercial pig production systems</i>	331
SECTION 7.	ANIMAL WELFARE	
Chapter 7.1.	<i>Introduction to the recommendations for animal welfare</i>	337
Chapter 7.2.	<i>Transport of animals by sea</i>	340
Chapter 7.3.	<i>Transport of animals by land</i>	353
Chapter 7.4.	<i>Transport of animals by air</i>	367
Chapter 7.5.	<i>Animal welfare during slaughter</i>	375
Chapter 7.6.	<i>Killing of animals for disease control purposes</i>	398
Chapter 7.7.	<i>Dog population management</i>	419

Chapter 7.8.	<i>Use of animals in research and education</i>	433
Chapter 7.9.	<i>Animal welfare and beef cattle production systems</i>	443
Chapter 7.10.	<i>Animal welfare and broiler chicken production systems</i>	453
Chapter 7.11.	<i>Animal welfare and dairy cattle production systems</i>	460
Chapter 7.12.	<i>Welfare of working equids</i>	473
Chapter 7.13.	<i>Animal welfare and pig production systems</i>	482
Chapter 7.14.	<i>Killing of reptiles for their skins, meat and other products</i>	495
	<i>Index</i>	i

FORWARD

The Terrestrial Animal Health Code (the Terrestrial Code) provides standards for the improvement of animal health, animal welfare and veterinary public health worldwide. These standards should be used by Members to set up measures for the prevention, early detection, reporting and control of pathogenic agents in terrestrial animals (mammals, reptiles, birds and bees), including zoonotic agents. Implementation of the recommendations in the Terrestrial Code ensures the safety of international trade in animals and animal products, while avoiding unjustified sanitary barriers.

The World Organisation for Animal Health (WOAH, founded as OIE) has developed and published international standards since 1968. The World Trade Organization (WTO) Agreement on the Application of Sanitary and Phytosanitary Measures (SPS Agreement) recognises the role of the Organisation (under its foundational name 'Office International des Epizooties') as the international standard setting organisation for animal health and zoonoses.

The development of new and revised standards for the Terrestrial Code is under the responsibility of the Terrestrial Animal Health Standards Commission (the Code Commission), which comprises six elected members. The Code Commission draws upon the expertise of internationally renowned experts to contribute to standards development to ensure that the standards are based on the latest scientific information. Comments from Members and partner International Organisations are sought through the twice-yearly circulation of new or revised texts. The Code Commission collaborates closely with other Specialist Commissions.

The Terrestrial Code is published annually in English, French and Spanish and may be viewed and downloaded from the World Organisation for Animal Health website (www.woah.org).

This edition includes new and amended texts in the following sections and chapters that were adopted by the World Assembly of Delegates of the World Organisation for Animal Health at the 91st General Session in May 2024:

- *Glossary*
- *Disease, infections and infestations listed by WOAH (Chapter 1.3.)*
- *Application for official recognition by WOAH of free status for foot and mouth disease (Chapter 1.11.)*
- *General hygiene in semen collection and processing centres (Chapter 4.6.)*
- *Collection and processing of bovine, small ruminant and porcine semen (Chapter 4.7.)*
- *Responsible and prudent use of antimicrobial agents in veterinary medicine (Chapter 6.10.)*
- *Slaughter of animals (Chapter 7.5.)*
- *Infection with foot and mouth disease virus (Chapter 8.8.)*
- *Infection with Rift Valley fever virus (Chapter 8.16.)*
- *Infection with *Trichinella* spp. (Chapter 8.18.)*
- *Infection with *Coxiella burnetii* (Q fever) (a new Chapter 8.22.)*
- *Infection with *Trypanosoma evansi* (a new Chapter 8.23.)*
- *Rabbit haemorrhagic disease (Chapter 13.2.)*
- *Infection with African swine fever virus (Chapter 15.1.)*
- *Infection with Camelpox virus (a new Chapter 16.1)*
- *Terminology: Use of terms 'Competent Authority', 'Veterinary Authority' and 'Veterinary Services'.*

Details of the amendments made in this edition can be found in the 91st General Session report and Specialist Commissions reports, available on the World Organisation for Animal Health website (www.woah.org).

I wish to thank the members of the Code Commission, Delegates, international experts and other Specialist Commissions for their expert advice. Thanks also to the World Organisation for Animal Health staff who contributed to the work that has resulted in the publication of this 32nd edition of the Terrestrial Code.

*Dr Monique Eloit
Director General
World Organisation for Animal Health*

Members of the Code Commission (2023-2024):

President: Dr Etienne Bonbon

Vice-President: Dr Gaston Maria Funes

Vice-President: Prof. Salah Hammami

Members: Dr Lucio Ignacio Carbajo Goñi, Dr Kiyokazu Murai and Dr Bernardo Todeschini.

July 2024

USER'S GUIDE

A. Introduction

- 1) The WOAH *Terrestrial Animal Health Code* (hereafter referred to as the *Terrestrial Code*) establishes standards for the improvement of terrestrial animal health and welfare and veterinary public health worldwide. The purpose of this guide is to advise the Veterinary Authorities of WOAH Member Countries on how to use the *Terrestrial Code*.
- 2) Veterinary Authorities should use the standards in the *Terrestrial Code* to set up measures providing for early detection, internal reporting, notification, control or eradication of pathogenic agents, including zoonotic ones, in terrestrial animals (mammals, birds, reptiles and bees) and preventing their spread via international trade in animals and animal products, while avoiding unjustified sanitary barriers to trade.
- 3) WOAH standards are based on the most recent scientific and technical information. Correctly applied, they protect animal health and welfare and veterinary public health during production and trade in animals and animal products, and in the use of animals.
- 4) The absence of chapters, articles or recommendations on particular pathogenic agents or commodities does not preclude the application of appropriate sanitary measures by the Veterinary Authorities, provided they are based on risk analyses conducted in accordance with the *Terrestrial Code*.
- 5) The year that a chapter was first adopted and the year of its last revision are noted at the end of each chapter.
- 6) The complete text of the *Terrestrial Code* is available on WOAH Web site and individual chapters may be downloaded from: <https://www.woah.org/>.

B. *Terrestrial Code* content

- 1) Key terms and expressions used in more than one chapter in the *Terrestrial Code* are defined in the Glossary, in the case where common dictionary definitions are not deemed to be adequate. The reader should be aware of the definitions given in the Glossary when reading and using the *Terrestrial Code*. Defined terms appear in italics. In the on-line version of the *Terrestrial Code*, a hyperlink leads to the relevant definition.
- 2) The term "(under study)" is found in some rare instances, with reference to an article or part of an article. This means that this part of the text has not been adopted by the World Assembly of Delegates and the particular provisions are thus not part of the *Terrestrial Code*.
- 3) The standards in the chapters of Section 1 are designed for the implementation of measures for the diagnosis, surveillance and notification of diseases, infections and infestations. The standards include procedures for notification to WOAH and procedures for the recognition of the animal health status of a country, zone or compartment.
- 4) The standards in Section 2 are designed to guide the importing country in conducting import risk analysis in the absence of WOAH recommendations on particular pathogenic agents or commodities. The importing country should also use these standards to justify import measures which are more stringent than existing WOAH standards.
- 5) The standards in the chapters of Section 3 are designed for the establishment, maintenance and evaluation of Veterinary Services, including veterinary legislation and communication. These standards are intended to assist the Veterinary Services and Veterinary Authority of Member Countries to meet their objectives of improving terrestrial animal health and welfare and veterinary public health, as well as to establish and maintain confidence in their international veterinary certificates.
- 6) The standards in the chapters of Section 4 are designed for the implementation of measures for the prevention and control of pathogenic agents. Measures in this section include animal identification, traceability, zoning, compartmentalisation, disposal of dead animals, disinfection, disinsection and general hygiene precautions. Some chapters address the specific sanitary measures to be applied for the collection and processing of semen and embryos of animals.
- 7) The standards in the chapters of Section 5 are designed for the implementation of general sanitary measures for trade. They address veterinary certification and the measures applicable by the exporting, transit and importing countries. A range of model veterinary certificates is provided to facilitate consistent documentation in international trade.

- 8) The standards in the chapters of Section 6 are designed for the implementation of preventive measures in animal production systems. These measures are intended to assist Member Countries in meeting their veterinary public health objectives. They include ante- and post-mortem inspection, control of hazards in feed, biosecurity at the animal production level, and the control of antimicrobial resistance in animals.
- 9) The standards in the chapters of Section 7 are designed for the implementation of animal welfare measures. The standards cover production, transport, and slaughter or killing, as well as the animal welfare aspects of free-roaming dog population control and the use of animals in research and education.
- 10) The standards in each of the chapters of Sections 8 to 16 are designed to prevent the pathogenic agents of WOAH listed diseases, infections or infestations from being introduced into an importing country. The standards take into account the nature of the traded commodity, the animal health status of the exporting country, zone or compartment, and the risk reduction measures applicable to each commodity.

These standards assume that the agent is either not present in the importing country or is the subject of a control or eradication programme. Sections 8 to 16 each relate to the host species of the pathogenic agent: multiple species or species of Apinae, Aves, Bovinae, Equidae, Leporidae, Caprinae, Suidae and Camelidae. Some chapters include specific measures to prevent and control the infections of global concern. Although WOAH aims to include a chapter for each WOAH listed disease, not all WOAH listed diseases have been covered yet by a specific chapter. This is work in progress, depending on available scientific knowledge and the priorities set by the World Assembly of Delegates.

C. Specific issues

1) Notification

Chapter 1.1. describes Member Countries' obligations under Organic Statutes of the Office International des Epizooties. Listed and emerging diseases, as prescribed in Chapter 1.1., are compulsorily notifiable. Member Countries are encouraged to also provide information to WOAH on other animal health events of epidemiological significance.

Chapter 1.2. describes the criteria for the inclusion of an infection or infestation in the WOAH List and Chapter 1.3. gives the current list. Diseases are divided into nine categories based on the host species of the aetiological agents.

2) Diagnostic tests and vaccines

It is recommended that specified diagnostic tests and vaccines in *Terrestrial Code* chapters be used with a reference to the relevant section in the WOAH *Manual of Diagnostic Tests and Vaccines for Terrestrial Animals* (hereafter referred to as the *Terrestrial Manual*). Experts responsible for facilities used for disease diagnosis and vaccine production should be fully conversant with the standards in the *Terrestrial Manual*.

3) Freedom from a disease, infection or infestation

Article 1.4.6. provides general principles for declaring a country or zone free from a disease, infection or infestation. This article applies when there are no specific requirements in the listed disease-specific chapter.

4) Prevention and control

Chapters 4.4. and 4.5. describe the measures that should be implemented to establish zones and compartments. Zoning and compartmentalisation should be considered as some of the tools used to control diseases and to facilitate safe trade.

Chapters 4.6. to 4.12. describe the measures which should be implemented during collection and processing of semen and embryos of animals, including micromanipulation and cloning, in order to prevent animal health risks, especially when trading these commodities. Although the measures relate principally to WOAH listed diseases or infections, general standards apply to all infectious disease risks. Moreover, in Chapter 4.8. diseases that are not listed are marked as such but are included for the information of Member Countries.

Chapter 4.15. addresses the specific issue of the control of bee diseases and some of its trade implications. This chapter should be read in conjunction with the specific bee disease chapters in Section 9.

Chapter 6.5. is designed for the implementation of general biosecurity measures in intensive poultry production. Chapters 6.6., 6.13. and 6.14. provide recommendations for some specific on-farm prevention and control plans for the unlisted foodborne pathogenic agent *Salmonella* as part of the Veterinary Services mission to prevent, eliminate or control food safety hazards in animal production.

Chapter 6.12. deals specifically with the zoonotic risk associated with the movements of non-human primates and gives standards for certification, transportation and import conditions for these animals.

5) Trade requirements

Animal health measures related to international trade should be based on WOAH standards. A Member Country may authorise the importation of animals or animal products into its territory under conditions different from those recommended by the *Terrestrial Code*. To scientifically justify more stringent measures, the importing country

should conduct a risk analysis in accordance with WOAH standards, as described in Chapter 2.1. Members of the WTO should refer to the Agreement on the Application of Sanitary and Phytosanitary Measures (SPS Agreement).

Chapters 5.1. to 5.3. describe the general obligations and ethical responsibilities of importing and exporting countries in international trade. Veterinary Authorities and all veterinarians directly involved in international trade should be familiar with these chapters. Chapter 5.3. also describes the WOAH informal procedure for dispute mediation.

WOAH aims to include an article listing the commodities that are considered safe for trade without the need for risk mitigation measures specifically directed against a particular listed disease, infection or infestation, regardless of the status of the country or zone of origin for the agent in question, at the beginning of each listed disease-specific chapter in Sections 8 to 16. This is work in progress and some chapters do not yet contain articles listing safe commodities. When a list of safe commodities is present in a chapter, importing countries should not apply trade restrictions to such commodities with respect to the agent in question. Chapter 2.2. describes the criteria used to assess the safety of commodities.

6) International veterinary certificates

An international veterinary certificate is an official document that the Veterinary Authority of an exporting country issues in accordance with Chapters 5.1. and 5.2. It lists animal health requirements and, where appropriate, public health requirements for the exported commodity. The quality of the exporting country's Veterinary Services is essential in providing assurances to trading partners regarding the safety of exported animals and products. This includes the Veterinary Authority's ethical approach to the provision of veterinary certificates and their history in meeting their notification obligations.

International veterinary certificates underpin international trade and provide assurances to the importing country regarding the health status of the animals and products imported. The measures prescribed should take into account the health status of both exporting and importing countries, and zones or compartments within them, and be based upon the standards in the *Terrestrial Code*.

The following steps should be taken when drafting international veterinary certificates:

- a) identify the diseases, infections or infestations from which the importing country is justified in seeking protection because of its own health status. Importing countries should not impose measures in regards to diseases that occur in their own territory but are not subject to official control programmes;
- b) for commodities capable of transmitting these diseases, infections or infestations through international trade, the importing country should apply the relevant articles in the listed disease-specific chapters. The application of the articles should be adapted to the disease status of the country, zone or compartment of origin. Such status should be established according to Article 1.4.6. except when articles of the relevant listed disease chapter specify otherwise;
- c) when preparing international veterinary certificates, the importing country should endeavour to use terms and expressions in accordance with the definitions given in the Glossary. International veterinary certificates should be kept as simple as possible and should be clearly worded, to avoid misunderstanding of the importing country's requirements;
- d) Chapters 5.10. to 5.13. provide, as further guidance to Member Countries, model certificates that should be used as a baseline.

7) Guidance notes for importers and exporters

It is recommended that Veterinary Authorities prepare "guidance notes" to assist importers and exporters understand trade requirements. These notes should identify and explain the trade conditions, including the measures to be applied before and after export and during transport and unloading, and the relevant legal obligations and operational procedures. The guidance notes should advise on all details to be included in the health certification accompanying the consignment to its destination. Exporters should also be reminded of the International Air Transport Association rules governing air transport of animals and animal products.

GLOSSARY

For the purposes of the *Terrestrial Code*:

ANIMAL

means a mammal, reptile, bird or bee.

ANIMAL FOR BREEDING OR REARING

means a domesticated or confined *animal* which is not intended for *slaughter* within a short time.

ANIMAL FOR SLAUGHTER

means an *animal* intended for *slaughter* within a short time, under the control of the relevant *Competent Authority*.

ANIMAL HANDLER

means a person with a knowledge of the behaviour and needs of *animals* who, with appropriate experience and a professional and positive response to an *animal's* needs, can achieve effective management and good *welfare*. Competence should be gained through formal training or practical experience.

ANIMAL HEALTH MANAGEMENT

means a system designed to optimise the physical and behavioural health and welfare of *animals*. It includes the prevention, treatment and control of diseases and conditions affecting the individual *animal* and *herd* or *flock*, including the recording of illness, injuries, mortalities and medical treatments where appropriate.

ANIMAL HEALTH STATUS

means the status of a country, *zone* or *compartment* with respect to an animal disease in accordance with the criteria listed in the relevant disease-specific chapter or Chapter 1.4. of the *Terrestrial Code*.

ANIMAL IDENTIFICATION

means the combination of the identification and *registration* of an *animal* individually, with a unique identifier, or collectively by its *epidemiological unit* or group, with a unique group identifier.

ANIMAL IDENTIFICATION SYSTEM

means the inclusion and linking of components such as identification of *establishments* or owners, the persons responsible for the *animals*, movements and other records with *animal identification*.

ANIMAL PRODUCT

means any part of an *animal*, or a raw or manufactured product containing any material derived from *animals*, excluding *germinal products*, *biological products* and *pathological material*.

ANIMAL TRACEABILITY

means the ability to follow an *animal* or group of *animals* during all stages of its life.

ANIMAL WELFARE

means the physical and mental state of an *animal* in relation to the conditions in which it lives and dies.

ANTIMICROBIAL AGENT

means a naturally occurring, semi-synthetic or synthetic substance that exhibits antimicrobial activity (kill or inhibit the growth of micro-organisms) at concentrations attainable *in vivo*. Anthelmintics and substances classed as disinfectants or antiseptics are excluded from this definition.

APIARY

means a *beehive* or group of *beehives* whose management allows them to be considered as a single *epidemiological unit*.

APPROVED

means officially approved, accredited or registered by the *Veterinary Authority*.

BEEHIVE

means a structure for the keeping of honey bee colonies that is being used for that purpose, including frameless hives, fixed frame hives and all designs of moveable frame hives (including nucleus hives), but not including packages or cages used to confine bees for the purposes of transport or isolation.

BIOLOGICAL PRODUCT

means a product of animal or microorganism origin, used in the diagnosis of diseases, for treatment, control and prevention of diseases, or in the collection and processing of *germinal products*.

BIOSECURITY

means a set of management and physical measures designed to reduce the *risk* of introduction, establishment and spread of animal diseases, *infections* or *infestations* to, from and within an animal population.

BIOSECURITY PLAN

means a plan that identifies potential pathways for the introduction and spread of disease in a *zone* or *compartment*, and describes the measures which are being or will be applied to mitigate the disease *risks*, if applicable, in accordance with the recommendations in the *Terrestrial Code*.

BORDER POST

means any airport, or any port, railway station or road check-point open to *international trade of commodities*, where import veterinary inspections can be performed.

CAPTIVE WILD [ANIMAL]

means an *animal* that has a phenotype not significantly affected by human selection but that is captive or otherwise lives under or requires human supervision or control.

CASE

means an individual *animal* infected by a pathogenic agent, with or without clinical signs.

CASINGS

means intestines and bladders that, after cleaning, have been processed by tissue scraping, defatting and washing, and have been treated with salt.

COLLECTION CENTRE

means a facility approved by the *Veterinary Authority* for the collection of oocytes or embryos and used exclusively for donor animals which meet the conditions of the *Terrestrial Code*.

COMMODITY

means a live *animal*, an *animal product*, *germinal products*, a *biological product* or *pathological material*.

COMPARTMENT

means an animal *subpopulation* contained in one or more *establishments*, separated from other susceptible *populations* by a common *biosecurity* management system, and with a specific *animal health status* with respect to one or more *infections* or *infestations* for which the necessary *surveillance*, *biosecurity* and control measures have been applied for the purposes of *international trade* or disease prevention and control in a country or *zone*.

COMPETENT AUTHORITY

means a Governmental Authority of a Member Country having the responsibility in the whole or part of the territory for the implementation of certain standards of the *Terrestrial Code*.

CONTAINER

means a non-self-propelled receptacle or other rigid structure for holding *animals* during a *journey* by one or several means of transport.

CONTAINMENT ZONE

means an *infected zone* defined within a previously free country or *zone*, which includes all suspected or confirmed cases that are epidemiologically linked and where movement control, *biosecurity* and *sanitary measures* are applied to prevent the spread of, and to eradicate, the *infection* or *infestation*.

DAY-OLD BIRDS

means birds aged not more than 72 hours after hatching.

DISINFECTION

means the application, after thorough cleansing, of procedures intended to destroy the infectious or parasitic agents of animal diseases, including zoonoses; this applies to premises, *vehicles* and different objects which may have been directly or indirectly contaminated.

DISINFESTATION

means the application of procedures intended to eliminate *infestation*.

DISTRESS

means the state of an animal, that has been unable to adapt to stressors, and that manifests as abnormal physiological or behavioural responses. It can be acute or chronic and may result in pathological conditions.

EARLY WARNING SYSTEM

means a system for the timely detection, reporting and communication of occurrence, incursion or emergence of diseases, *infections* or *infestations* in a country, *zone* or *compartment*.

EMERGING DISEASE

means a new occurrence in an *animal* of a disease, *infection* or *infestation*, causing a significant impact on animal or public health resulting from:

- a) a change of a known pathogenic agent or its spread to a new geographic area or species; or
- b) a previously unrecognised pathogenic agent or disease diagnosed for the first time.

EPIDEMIOLOGICAL UNIT

means a group of *animals* with the same likelihood of exposure to a pathogenic agent. In certain circumstances, the epidemiological unit may be a single *animal*.

ERADICATION

means the elimination of a pathogenic agent from a country or *zone*.

ESTABLISHMENT

means the premises in which *animals* are kept.

EUTHANASIA

means the *killing* of an *animal* using a method that causes a rapid and irreversible loss of consciousness with minimum *pain* and *distress*.

EXPORTING COUNTRY

means a country from which *commodities* are sent to another country.

FEED

means any material (single or multiple), whether processed, semi-processed or raw, which is intended to be fed directly to terrestrial *animals* (except bees).

FEED INGREDIENT

means a component part or constituent of any combination or mixture making up a *feed*, whether or not it has a nutritional value in the *animal's* diet, including feed additives. Ingredients are of plant (including aquatic plants) or terrestrial or aquatic animal origin, or other organic or inorganic substances.

FERAL [ANIMAL]

means an *animal* of a domesticated species that lives without requiring human supervision or control.

FLOCK

means a number of *animals* of one kind kept together under human control or a congregation of gregarious *wild animals*. A *flock* is usually regarded as an *epidemiological unit*.

FREE COMPARTMENT

means a *compartment* in which the absence of the animal pathogenic agent causing the disease under consideration has been demonstrated by all requirements specified in the *Terrestrial Code* for free status being met.

FREE-ROAMING DOG

means any owned dog or unowned dog that is without direct human supervision or control, including *feral* dogs.

FREE ZONE

means a zone in which the absence of a specific *infection* or *infestation* in an animal population has been demonstrated in accordance with the relevant requirements of the *Terrestrial Code*.

FRESH MEAT

means meat that has not been subjected to any treatment irreversibly modifying its organoleptic and physicochemical characteristics. This includes frozen meat, chilled meat, minced meat and mechanically recovered meat.

GERMINAL PRODUCTS

means animal semen, oocytes, embryos or hatching eggs.

GOOD MANUFACTURING PRACTICE

means a production and testing practice recognised by the Competent Authority to ensure the quality of a product.

GREAVES

means the protein-containing residue obtained after the partial separation of fat and water during the process of rendering.

HATCHING EGGS

means fertilised bird eggs, suitable for incubation and hatching.

HAZARD

means a biological, chemical or physical agent in, or a condition of, an animal or animal product with the potential to cause an adverse health effect.

HEADQUARTERS

means the Permanent Secretariat of the World Organisation for Animal Health located at:

12, rue de Prony, 75017 Paris, FRANCE

Telephone: 33-(0)1 44 15 18 88

Fax: 33-(0)1 42 67 09 87

Electronic mail: woah@woah.org

WWW: <http://www.woah.org>

HERD

means a number of animals of one kind kept together under human control or a congregation of gregarious wild animals. A herd is usually regarded as an epidemiological unit.

IMPORTING COUNTRY

means a country that is the final destination to which commodities are sent.

INCIDENCE

means the number of new cases or outbreaks of a disease that occur in a population at risk in a particular geographical area within a defined time interval.

INCUBATION PERIOD

means the longest period that elapses between the introduction of the pathogenic agent into the animal and the occurrence of the first clinical signs of the disease.

INFECTED ZONE

means a zone either in which an infection or infestation has been confirmed, or one that is defined as such in the relevant chapters of the *Terrestrial Code*.

INFECTION

means the entry and development or multiplication of a pathogenic agent in the body of humans or animals.

INFECTIVE PERIOD

means the longest period during which an affected animal can be a source of infection.

INFESTATION

means the external invasion or colonisation of *animals* or their immediate surroundings by arthropods, which may cause clinical signs or are potential vectors of pathogenic agents.

INTERNATIONAL TRADE

means importation, exportation and transit of *commodities*.

INTERNATIONAL VETERINARY CERTIFICATE

means a certificate, issued in accordance with Chapter 5.2., describing the animal health and public health requirements that are fulfilled by the exported *commodities*.

JOURNEY

An *animal* transport journey commences when the first *animal* is loaded onto a *vehicle/vessel* or into a *container* and ends when the last *animal* is unloaded, and includes any stationary resting/holding periods. The same *animals* do not commence a new journey until after a suitable period for rest and recuperation, with adequate *feed* and water.

KILLING

means any procedure that causes the death of an *animal*.

LABORATORY

means a properly equipped institution staffed by technically competent personnel under the control of a specialist in veterinary diagnostic methods, who is responsible for the validity of the results. The *Veterinary Authority* approves and monitors such laboratories with regard to the diagnostic tests required for *international trade*.

LAIRAGE

means pens, yards and other holding areas used for accommodating *animals* in order to give them necessary attention (such as water, *feed*, rest) before they are moved on or used for specific purposes including *slaughter*.

LISTED DISEASE

means a disease, *infection* or *infestation* listed in Chapter 1.3. after adoption by the World Assembly of Delegates.

LOADING/UNLOADING

Loading means the procedure of moving *animals* onto a *vehicle/vessel* or into a *container* for transport purposes, while unloading means the procedure of moving *animals* off a *vehicle/vessel* or out of a *container*.

MARKET

means a place where *animals* are assembled for the purposes of trade or sale.

MEAT

means all edible parts of an *animal*.

MEAT PRODUCTS

means *meat* that has been subjected to a treatment irreversibly modifying its organoleptic and physicochemical characteristics.

MILK

means the normal mammary secretion of milking *animals* obtained from one or more milkings without either addition to it or extraction from it.

MILK PRODUCT

means the product obtained by any processing of *milk*.

MONITORING

means the intermittent performance and analysis of routine measurements and observations, aimed at detecting changes in the environment or health status of a *population*.

NOTIFIABLE DISEASE

means a disease listed by the *Veterinary Authority*, and that, as soon as detected or suspected, should be brought to the attention of this *Authority*, in accordance with national regulations.

NOTIFICATION

means the procedure by which:

- a) the *Veterinary Authority* informs the *Headquarters*,
- b) the *Headquarters* inform the *Veterinary Authority*,

of the occurrence of disease, *infection* or *infestation* in accordance with Chapter 1.1.

OFFICIAL CONTROL PROGRAMME

means a programme which is approved, and managed or supervised by the *Veterinary Authority* of a Member Country for the purposes of controlling a *vector*, pathogenic agent or disease by specific measures applied throughout that Member Country, or within a *zone* or *compartment* of that Member Country.

OFFICIAL VETERINARIAN

means a *veterinarian* authorised by the *Veterinary Authority* of the country to perform certain designated official tasks associated with animal health or public health and inspections of *commodities* and, when appropriate, to certify in accordance with Chapters 5.1. and 5.2.

OFFICIAL VETERINARY CONTROL

means the operations whereby the *Veterinary Services*, knowing the location of the *animals* and after taking appropriate actions to identify their owner or responsible keeper, are able to apply appropriate animal health measures, as required. This does not exclude other responsibilities of the *Veterinary Services* e.g. food safety.

OUTBREAK

means the occurrence of one or more *cases* in an *epidemiological unit*.

OWNED DOG

means a dog for which a person claims responsibility.

PAIN

means an unpleasant sensory and emotional experience associated with actual or potential tissue damage. It may elicit protective actions, result in learned avoidance and *distress* and may modify species-specific traits of behaviour, including social behaviour.

PATHOLOGICAL MATERIAL

means samples obtained from live or dead *animals*, containing or suspected of containing infectious or parasitic agents, to be sent to a *laboratory*.

PLACE OF SHIPMENT

means the place where the *commodities* are loaded into the *vehicle* or handed to the agency that will transport them to another country.

POPULATION

means a group of *units* sharing a common defined characteristic.

POULTRY

means all birds reared or kept in captivity for the production of any commercial animal products or for breeding for this purpose, fighting cocks used for any purpose, and all birds used for restocking supplies of game or for breeding for this purpose, until they are released from captivity.

Birds that are kept in a single household, the products of which are used within the same household exclusively, are not considered *poultry*, provided that they have no direct or indirect contact with *poultry* or *poultry facilities*.

Birds that are kept in captivity for other reasons, including those that are kept for shows, racing, exhibitions, zoological collections and competitions, and for breeding or selling for these purposes, as well as pet birds, are not considered *poultry*, provided that they have no direct or indirect contact with *poultry* or *poultry facilities*.

PRE-JOURNEY PERIOD

means the period during which *animals* are identified, and often assembled for the purposes of *loading* them.

PREVALENCE

means the total number of *cases* or *outbreaks* of a disease that are present in a population at risk, in a particular geographical area, at one specified time or during a given period.

PROTEIN MEAL

means any final or intermediate solid protein-containing product, obtained when animal tissues are rendered, excluding peptides of a molecular mass less than 10,000 daltons and amino-acids.

PROTECTION ZONE

means a zone where specific *biosecurity* and *sanitary measures* are implemented to prevent the entry of a pathogenic agent into a free country or zone from a neighbouring country or zone of a different *animal health status*.

QUALITATIVE RISK ASSESSMENT

means an assessment where the outputs on the likelihood of the outcome or the magnitude of the consequences are expressed in qualitative terms such as 'high', 'medium', 'low' or 'negligible'.

QUANTITATIVE RISK ASSESSMENT

means an assessment where the outputs of the *risk assessment* are expressed numerically.

QUARANTINE STATION

means an establishment under the control of the *Veterinary Authority* where *animals* are maintained in isolation with no direct or indirect contact with other *animals*, to ensure that there is no transmission of specified pathogenic agents outside the establishment while the *animals* are undergoing observation for a specified length of time and, if appropriate, testing or treatment.

REGISTRATION

is the action by which information on *animals* (such as identification, animal health, movement, certification, epidemiology, *establishments*) is collected, recorded, securely stored and made appropriately accessible and able to be utilised by the *Competent Authority*.

RESPONSIBLE DOG OWNERSHIP

means the situation whereby a person accepts and commits to perform various duties in accordance with the legislation in place and focused on the satisfaction of the behavioural, environmental and physical needs of a dog and to the prevention of risks (aggression, disease transmission or injuries) that the dog may pose to the community, other *animals* or the environment.

RESTING POINT

means a place where the *journey* is interrupted to rest, *feed* or water the *animals*; the *animals* may remain in the *vehicle/vessel* or *container*, or be unloaded for these purposes.

RESTRAINT

means the application to an *animal* of any procedure designed to restrict its movements.

RISK

means the likelihood of the occurrence and the likely magnitude of the biological and economic consequences of an adverse event or effect to animal or human health.

RISK ANALYSIS

means the process composed of *hazard* identification, *risk assessment*, *risk management* and *risk communication*.

RISK ASSESSMENT

means the evaluation of the likelihood and the biological and economic consequences of entry, establishment and spread of a *hazard*.

RISK COMMUNICATION

is the interactive transmission and exchange of information and opinions throughout the *risk analysis* process concerning *risk*, *risk-related factors* and *risk perceptions* among *risk assessors*, *risk managers*, *risk communicators*, the general public and other interested parties.

RISK MANAGEMENT

means the process of identifying, selecting and implementing measures that can be applied to reduce the level of *risk*.

SAFE COMMODITY

means a *commodity* that can be traded without the need for *risk* mitigation measures specifically directed against a particular *listed disease*, *infection* or *infestation* and regardless of the status of the country or *zone* of origin for that disease, *infection* or *infestation*.

SANITARY MEASURE

means a measure, such as those described in various chapters of the *Terrestrial Code*, designed to protect animal or human health or life within the whole territory or a *zone* of a Member Country from *risks* arising from the entry, establishment or spread of a *hazard*.

SEmen COLLECTION CENTRE

means an *approved* facility that meets the conditions set out in the *Terrestrial Code* for the collection, processing and storage of semen.

SLAUGHTER

means the *killing* of an *animal* primarily intended for human consumption.

SLAUGHTERHOUSE/ABATTOIR

means premises, including facilities for moving or lairaging *animals*, used for the *slaughter* of *animals* to produce animal products and approved by the relevant *Competent Authority*.

SPACE ALLOWANCE

means the measure of the floor area and height allocated per individual or body weight of *animals*.

SPECIFIC SURVEILLANCE

means the *surveillance* targeted to a specific disease or *infection*.

STAMPING-OUT POLICY

means a policy designed to eliminate an *outbreak* by carrying out under the authority of the *Veterinary Authority* the following:

- a) the *killing* of the *animals* which are affected and those suspected of being affected in the *herd* or *flock* and, where appropriate, those in other *herds* or *flocks* which have been exposed to *infection* by direct animal to animal contact, or by indirect contact with the causal pathogenic agent; *animals* should be killed in accordance with Chapter 7.6.;
- b) the disposal of carcasses and, where relevant, animal products by rendering, burning or burial, or by any other method described in Chapter 4.13.;
- c) the cleansing and *disinfection* of *establishments* through procedures defined in Chapter 4.14.

STOCKING DENSITY

means the number or body weight of *animals* per unit area on a *vehicle/vessel* or *container*.

STUNNING

means any procedure that causes loss of consciousness for the purpose of *killing* without avoidable *distress*, fear and *pain*.

SUBPOPULATION

means a distinct part of a *population* identifiable in accordance with specific common animal health characteristics.

SURVEILLANCE

means the systematic ongoing collection, collation, and analysis of information related to animal health and the timely dissemination of information so that action can be taken.

TERRESTRIAL CODE

means the WOAH *Terrestrial Animal Health Code*.

TERRESTRIAL MANUAL

means the WOAH *Manual of Diagnostic Tests and Vaccines for Terrestrial Animals*.

TRANSIT COUNTRY

means a country through which *commodities* destined for an *importing country* are transported or in which a stopover is made at a *border post*.

UNIT

means an individually identifiable element used to describe, for example, the members of a *population* or the elements selected when sampling; examples of *units* include individual *animals*, *herds*, *flocks* and *apiaries*.

VACCINATION

means the administration of a vaccine, in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions and the *Terrestrial Manual*, when relevant, with the intention of inducing immunity in an *animal* or group of *animals* against one or more pathogenic agents.

VECTOR

means an insect or any living carrier that transports an infectious agent from an infected individual to a susceptible individual or its food or immediate surroundings. The organism may or may not pass through a development cycle within the *vector*.

VEHICLE/VESSEL

means any means of conveyance including train, truck, aircraft or ship that is used for carrying *animals*.

VETERINARIAN

means a person with appropriate education, registered or licensed by the relevant *veterinary statutory body* of a country to practice veterinary medicine/science in that country.

VETERINARY AUTHORITY

means the Governmental Authority of a Member Country having the primary responsibility in the whole territory for coordinating the implementation of the standards of the *Terrestrial Code*.

VETERINARY LEGISLATION

means laws, regulations and all associated legal instruments that pertain to the veterinary domain.

VETERINARY MEDICINAL PRODUCT

means any product with approved claims to having a prophylactic, therapeutic or diagnostic effect or to alter physiological functions when administered or applied to an *animal*.

VETERINARY PARAPROFESSIONAL

means a person who, for the purposes of the *Terrestrial Code*, is authorised by the *veterinary statutory body* to carry out certain designated tasks (dependent upon the category of *veterinary paraprofessional*) in a territory, and delegated to them under the responsibility and direction of a *veterinarian*. The tasks for each category of *veterinary paraprofessional* should be defined by the *veterinary statutory body* depending on qualifications and training, and in accordance with need.

VETERINARY SERVICES

means the combination of governmental and non-governmental individuals and organisations that perform activities to implement the standards of the *Terrestrial Code*.

VETERINARY STATUTORY BODY

means an autonomous regulatory body for *veterinarians* and *veterinary paraprofessionals*.

WILD [ANIMAL]

means an *animal* that has a phenotype unaffected by human selection and lives independently without requiring human supervision or control.

WILDLIFE

means *feral animals*, *captive wild animals* and *wild animals*.

ZONE

means a part of a country defined by the *Veterinary Authority*, containing an *animal population* or *subpopulation* with a specific *animal health status* with respect to an *infection* or *infestation* for the purposes of *international trade* or disease prevention or control.

NB: FIRST ADOPTED IN 1968; MOST RECENT UPDATE ADOPTED IN 2024.

SECTION 1.

ANIMAL DISEASE DIAGNOSIS, SURVEILLANCE AND NOTIFICATION

CHAPTER 1.1.

NOTIFICATION OF DISEASES AND PROVISION OF EPIDEMIOLOGICAL INFORMATION

Article 1.1.1.

For the purposes of the *Terrestrial Code* and in terms of Articles 5, 9 and 10 of the Organic Statutes of the Office International des Epizooties, Member Countries shall recognise the right of the *Headquarters* to communicate directly with the *Veterinary Authority* of its territory or territories.

All *notifications* and all information sent by WOAH to the *Veterinary Authority* shall be regarded as having been sent to the country concerned and all *notifications* and all information sent to WOAH by the *Veterinary Authority* shall be regarded as having been sent by the country concerned.

Article 1.1.2.

- 1) Member Countries shall make available to other Member Countries, through WOAH, whatever information is necessary to minimise the spread of important animal diseases, and their pathogenic agents, and to assist in achieving better worldwide control of these diseases.
- 2) To achieve this, Member Countries shall comply with the *notification* requirements specified in Articles 1.1.3. and 1.1.4.
- 3) For the purposes of this chapter, an “event” means a single *outbreak* or a group of epidemiologically related *outbreaks* of a given *listed disease* or *emerging disease* that is the subject of a *notification*. An event is specific to a pathogenic agent and strain, when appropriate, and includes all related *outbreaks* reported from the time of the initial *notification* through to the final report. Reports of an event include susceptible species, the number and geographical distribution of affected animals and *epidemiological units*.
- 4) To assist in the clear and concise exchange of information, reports shall conform as closely as possible to the WOAH disease reporting format.
- 5) The detection of the pathogenic agent of a *listed disease* in an *animal* should be reported, even in the absence of clinical signs. Recognising that scientific knowledge concerning the relationship between diseases and their pathogenic agents is constantly developing and that the presence of a pathogenic agent does not necessarily imply the presence of a disease, Member Countries shall ensure, through their reports, that they comply with the spirit and intention of point 1 above.
- 6) In addition to notifying new findings in accordance with Articles 1.1.3. and 1.1.4., Member Countries shall also provide information on the measures taken to prevent the spread of diseases. Information shall include *biosecurity* and *sanitary measures*, including restrictions applied to the movement of *animals*, animal products, biological products and other miscellaneous objects which could by their nature be responsible for the transmission of diseases. In the case of diseases transmitted by *vectors*, the measures taken against such *vectors* shall also be specified.

Article 1.1.3.

Veterinary Authorities shall, under the responsibility of the Delegate, send to the *Headquarters*:

- 1) in accordance with relevant provisions in the disease-specific chapters, *notification*, through the World Animal Health Information System (WAHIS) or by fax or email within 24 hours, of any of the following events:
 - a) first occurrence of a *listed disease* in a country, a *zone* or a *compartment*;
 - b) recurrence of an eradicated *listed disease* in a country, a *zone* or a *compartment* following the final report that declared the event ended;
 - c) first occurrence of a new strain of a pathogenic agent of a *listed disease* in a country, a *zone* or a *compartment*;
 - d) recurrence of an eradicated strain of a pathogenic agent of a *listed disease* in a country, a *zone* or a *compartment* following the final report that declared the event ended;
 - e) a sudden and unexpected change in the distribution or increase in incidence or virulence of, or morbidity or mortality caused by, the pathogenic agent of a *listed disease* present within a country, a *zone* or a *compartment*;
 - f) occurrence of a *listed disease* in an unusual host species;
- 2) weekly reports subsequent to a *notification* under point 1 above, to provide further information on the evolution of the event which justified the *notification*. These reports should continue until the *listed disease* has been eradicated or the situation has become sufficiently stable that six-monthly reporting under point 3 will satisfy the obligation of the Member Country. For each event notified, a final report should be submitted;
- 3) six-monthly reports on the absence or presence and evolution of *listed diseases* and information of epidemiological significance to other Member Countries;
- 4) annual reports concerning any other information of significance to other Member Countries.

Article 1.1.4.

Veterinary Authorities shall, under the responsibility of the Delegate, send to the *Headquarters*:

- 1) a *notification* through WAHIS or by fax or email, when an *emerging disease* has been detected in a country, a *zone* or a *compartment*;
 - 2) periodic reports subsequent to a *notification* of an *emerging disease*:
 - a) for the time necessary to have reasonable certainty that:
 - i) the *infection* or *infestation* has been eradicated; or
 - ii) the situation has become stable;
- OR
- b) until sufficient scientific information is available to determine whether it meets the criteria for inclusion in the WOAH list as described in Chapter 1.2.;
- 3) a final report once point 2 a) or 2 b) above has been complied with.

Article 1.1.5.

- 1) Although Member Countries are only required to notify *listed diseases* and *emerging diseases*, they are encouraged to provide WOAH with other important animal health information.
- 2) The *Headquarters* shall communicate by email or through the interface of WAHIS to *Veterinary Authorities* all *notifications* received as provided in Articles 1.1.2. to 1.1.4. and other relevant information.

NB: FIRST ADOPTED IN 1968; MOST RECENT UPDATE ADOPTED IN 2021.

CHAPTER 1.2.

CRITERIA FOR THE INCLUSION OF DISEASES, INFECTIONS AND INFESTATIONS IN THE WOAH LIST

Article 1.2.1.

Introduction

This chapter describes the criteria for the inclusion of diseases, *infections* and *infestations* in Chapter 1.3.

The objective is to support Member Countries by providing information needed to take appropriate action to prevent the transboundary spread of important animal diseases, including zoonoses. This is achieved through transparent, timely and consistent *notification*.

Each *listed disease* normally has a corresponding chapter that assists Member Countries in the harmonisation of disease detection, prevention and control and provides standards for safe *international trade* in *animals* and their products.

The requirements for *notification* are detailed in Chapter 1.1.

Principles and methods of validation of diagnostic tests are described in Chapter 1.1.6. of the *Terrestrial Manual*.

Article 1.2.2.

The criteria for the inclusion of a disease, *infection* or *infestation* in the WOAH list are as follows:

- 1) International spread of the pathogenic agent (via live *animals* or their products, *vectors* or fomites) has been proven.

AND

- 2) At least one country has demonstrated freedom or impending freedom from the disease, *infection* or *infestation* in populations of susceptible *animals*, based on the provisions of Chapter 1.4.

AND

- 3) Reliable means of detection and diagnosis exist and a precise *case* definition is available to clearly identify *cases* and allow them to be distinguished from other diseases, *infections* or *infestations*.

AND

- 4)
 - a) Natural transmission to humans has been proven, and human infection is associated with severe consequences.

OR

- 4)
 - b) The disease has been shown to have a significant impact on the health of domestic *animals* at the level of a country or a *zone* taking into account the occurrence and severity of the clinical signs, including direct production losses and mortality.

OR

- 4)
 - c) The disease has been shown to, or scientific evidence indicates that it would, have a significant impact on the health of *wildlife* taking into account the occurrence and severity of the clinical signs, including direct economic losses and mortality, and any threat to the viability of a *wildlife* population.

NB: FIRST ADOPTED IN 2004; MOST RECENT UPDATE ADOPTED IN 2017.

CHAPTER 1.3.

DISEASES, INFECTIONS AND INFESTATIONS LISTED BY WOAH

Preamble

The diseases, *infections* and *infestations* in this chapter have been assessed in accordance with Chapter 1.2. and constitute the WOAH list of terrestrial animal diseases.

In case of modifications of this list adopted by the World Assembly of Delegates, the new list comes into force on 1 January of the following year.

Article 1.3.1.

The following are included within the category of diseases, *infections* and *infestations* of multiple species:

- Anthrax
- Crimean Congo hemorrhagic fever
- Equine encephalomyelitis (Eastern)
- Heartwater
- Infection with Aujeszky's disease virus
- Infection with bluetongue virus
- Infection with *Brucella abortus*, *Brucella melitensis* and *Brucella suis*
- Infection with *Coxiella burnetii* (Q fever)
- Infection with *Echinococcus granulosus*
- Infection with *Echinococcus multilocularis*
- Infection with epizootic hemorrhagic disease virus
- Infection with foot and mouth disease virus
- Infection with *Leishmania* spp. (Leishmaniosis)
- Infection with *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* complex
- Infection with rabies virus
- Infection with Rift Valley fever virus
- Infection with rinderpest virus
- Infection with *Trichinella* spp.
- Infection with *Trypanosoma brucei*, *Trypanosoma congolense*, *Trypanosoma simiae* and *Trypanosoma vivax*
- Infection with *Trypanosoma evansi* (Surra)
- Japanese encephalitis
- New World screwworm (*Cochliomyia hominivorax*)
- Old World screwworm (*Chrysomya bezziana*)
- Paratuberculosis
- Tularemia
- West Nile fever.

Article 1.3.2.

The following are included within the category of diseases, *infections* and *infestations* of apinae:

- Infection of honey bees with *Melissococcus plutonius* (European foulbrood)
- Infection of honey bees with *Paenibacillus larvae* (American foulbrood)
- Infestation of honey bees with *Acarapis woodi*

- Infestation of honey bees with *Tropilaelaps* spp.
- Infestation of honey bees with *Varroa* spp. (Varroosis)
- Infestation with *Aethina tumida* (Small hive beetle).

Article 1.3.3.

The following are included within the category of diseases and *infections* of aves:

- Avian chlamydiosis
- Avian infectious bronchitis
- Avian infectious laryngotracheitis
- Duck virus hepatitis
- Fowl typhoid
- Infection with high pathogenicity avian influenza viruses
- Infection of birds other than *poultry*, including *wild* birds, with influenza A viruses of high pathogenicity
- Infection of domestic and *captive wild* birds with low pathogenicity avian influenza viruses having proven natural transmission to humans associated with severe consequences
- Infection with *Mycoplasma gallisepticum* (Avian mycoplasmosis)
- Infection with *Mycoplasma synoviae* (Avian mycoplasmosis)
- Infection with Newcastle disease virus
- Infectious bursal disease (Gumboro disease)
- Pullorum disease
- Turkey rhinotracheitis.

Article 1.3.4.

The following are included within the category of diseases and *infections* of bovinae:

- Bovine anaplasmosis
- Bovine babesiosis
- Bovine genital campylobacteriosis
- Bovine spongiform encephalopathy
- Enzootic bovine leukosis
- Haemorrhagic septicaemia (*Pasteurella multocida* serotypes 6:b and 6:e)
- Infection with bovine pestiviruses (Bovine viral diarrhoea)
- Infection with lumpy skin disease virus
- Infection with *Mycoplasma mycoides* subsp. *mycoides* (Contagious bovine pleuropneumonia)
- Infection with *Theileria annulata*, *Theileria orientalis* and *Theileria parva*
- Infectious bovine rhinotracheitis/infectious pustular vulvovaginitis
- Trichomonosis.

Article 1.3.5.

The following are included within the category of diseases and *infections* of equidae:

- Dourine
- Equine encephalomyelitis (Western)
- Equine infectious anaemia
- Infection with African horse sickness virus
- Infection with *Burkholderia mallei* (Glanders)
- Infection with equid herpesvirus-1 (Equine rhinopneumonitis)
- Infection with equine arteritis virus

- Infection with equine influenza virus
- Infection with *Taylorella equigenitalis* (Contagious equine metritis)
- Infection with *Theileria equi* and *Babesia caballi* (Equine piroplasmosis)
- Venezuelan equine encephalomyelitis.

Article 1.3.6.

The following are included within the category of diseases and *infections of leporidae*:

- Infection with pathogenic rabbit lagoviruses (Rabbit haemorrhagic disease)
- Myxomatosis.

Article 1.3.7.

The following are included within the category of diseases and *infections of caprinae*:

- Caprine arthritis/encephalitis
- Contagious agalactia
- Contagious caprine pleuropneumonia
- Infection with *Chlamydia abortus* (Enzootic abortion of ewes, ovine chlamydiosis)
- Infection with peste des petits ruminants virus
- Infection with *Theileria lestoquardi*, *Theileria luwenshuni* and *Theileria uilenbergi*
- Maedi-visna
- Nairobi sheep disease
- Ovine epididymitis (*Brucella ovis*)
- Salmonellosis (*S. abortusovis*)
- Scrapie
- Sheep pox and goat pox.

Article 1.3.8.

The following are included within the category of diseases and *infections of suidae*:

- Infection with African swine fever virus
- Infection with classical swine fever virus
- Infection with porcine reproductive and respiratory syndrome virus
- Infection with *Taenia solium* (Porcine cysticercosis)
- Nipah virus encephalitis
- Transmissible gastroenteritis.

Article 1.3.9.

The following are included within the category of diseases and *infections of camelidae*:

- Infection with *Camelpox virus*
 - Infection with Middle East respiratory syndrome coronavirus.
-

CHAPTER 1.4.

ANIMAL HEALTH SURVEILLANCE

Article 1.4.1.

Introduction and objectives

- 1) In general, *surveillance* is aimed at demonstrating the absence of *infection* or *infestation*, determining the presence or distribution of *infection* or *infestation* or detecting as early as possible exotic diseases or *emerging diseases*. Animal health *surveillance* is a tool to monitor disease trends, to facilitate the control of *infection* or *infestation*, to provide data for use in *risk analysis*, for animal or public health purposes, to substantiate the rationale for *sanitary measures* and for providing assurances to trading partners. The type of *surveillance* applied depends on the objectives of the *surveillance*, the available data sources and the outputs needed to support decision-making. The general recommendations in this chapter may be applied to all *infections* or *infestations* and all susceptible species (including *wildlife*) and may be adapted to national or local settings. *Specific surveillance* is described in some *listed disease-specific* chapters.
- 2) *Wildlife* may be included in a *surveillance* system because they can serve as reservoirs of *infection* or *infestation* and as indicators of *risk* to humans and domestic *animals*. However, the presence of an *infection* or *infestation* in *wildlife* does not mean it is necessarily present in domestic *animals* in the same country or *zone*, or vice versa. *Surveillance* in *wildlife* presents challenges that may differ significantly from those in *surveillance* in domestic *animals*.
- 3) Prerequisites to enable a Member Country to provide information for the evaluation of its *animal health status* are:
 - a) that the Member Country complies with the provisions of Chapters 3.1. to 3.5. on *Veterinary Services*;
 - b) that, where possible, *surveillance* data be complemented by other sources of information, such as scientific publications, research data, *population* demographic data, animal production data, documented field observations and other data;
 - c) that transparency in the planning, execution and results of *surveillance* activities, is in accordance with Chapter 1.1.
- 4) The objectives of this chapter are to:
 - a) provide guidance on the design of a *surveillance* system and the type of output it should generate;
 - b) provide recommendations to assess the quality of *surveillance* systems.

Article 1.4.2.

Definitions

For the purposes of this chapter the following definitions apply:

Bias means a tendency of an estimate to deviate in one direction from a true *population* parameter.

Confidence means the probability that the type of *surveillance* applied would detect the presence of *infection* or *infestation* if the *population* were infected and is equivalent to the sensitivity of the *surveillance*. Confidence depends on, among other parameters, the assumed prevalence of *infection* or *infestation*.

Probability sampling means a sampling strategy in which every *unit* is chosen at random and has a known non-zero probability of inclusion in the sample.

Sample means the group of elements (sampling *units*) drawn from a *population*, on which tests are performed or parameters measured to provide *surveillance* information.

Sampling unit means the *unit* that is sampled. This may be an individual *animal* or a group of *animals*, such as an *epidemiological unit*.

Sensitivity means the proportion of infected sampling *units* that are correctly identified as positive.

Specificity means the proportion of uninfected sampling *units* that are correctly identified as negative.

Study population means the *population* from which *surveillance* data are derived. This may be the same as the target *population* or a subset of it.

Surveillance system means the use of one or more *surveillance* components to generate information on the health status of animal *populations*.

Survey means a component of a *surveillance* system to systematically collect information with a predefined goal on a sample of a defined *population* group, within a defined period.

Target population means the *population* to which conclusions are to be inferred.

Test means a procedure used to classify a *unit* as either positive, negative or suspect with respect to an *infection* or *infestation*.

Article 1.4.3.

Surveillance systems

In designing, implementing and assessing a *surveillance* system, the following components should be addressed in addition to the quality of *Veterinary Services*.

1. Design of surveillance system

a) Populations

Surveillance should take into account all animal species susceptible to the *infection* or *infestation* in a country, *zone* or *compartment*. The *surveillance* activity may cover all individuals in the *population* or only some of them. When *surveillance* is conducted only on a *subpopulation*, inferences to the target *population* should be justified based on the epidemiology of the disease and the degree to which the *subpopulation* is representative of the target *population* stated.

Definitions of appropriate *populations* should be based on the specific recommendations of the relevant chapters of the *Terrestrial Code*.

b) Timing and temporal validity of surveillance data

The timing, duration and frequency of *surveillance* should be determined taking into consideration factors such as:

- objectives of the *surveillance*;
- biology and epidemiology (e.g. pathogenesis, vectors, transmission pathways, seasonality);
- risk of introduction and spread;
- husbandry practices and production systems;
- disease prevention and control measures (e.g. vaccination, restocking after disinfection);
- accessibility of target *population*;
- geographical factors;
- environmental factors, including climate conditions.

c) Case definition

Where one exists, the *case definition* in the relevant chapter of the *Terrestrial Code* should be used. If the *Terrestrial Code* does not give a *case definition*, a *case* should be defined using clear criteria for each *infection* or *infestation* under *surveillance*. For *wildlife infection* or *infestation surveillance*, it is essential to correctly identify and report host animal taxonomy, including genus and species.

d) Epidemiological unit

The relevant *epidemiological unit* for the *surveillance* system should be defined. To meet the objective of *surveillance*, the sampling *unit* selected for testing should reflect the defined *epidemiological unit*.

A group of *animals* may be considered an *epidemiological unit* because they share a common environment or because of common management. Usually, an *epidemiological unit* is a *herd* or a *flock*. However, it may also be a group of *animals* in a pen or a group of *animals* belonging to residents of a village, or a group of *animals* sharing a communal animal handling facility or, in some circumstances, a single *animal*. The epidemiological relationship may differ from disease to disease, or even strain to strain of the pathogenic agent.

e) Clustering

Infection or *infestation* in a country, *zone* or *compartment* usually clusters rather than being uniformly or randomly distributed through a *population*. Clustering may occur at a number of different levels (e.g. a cluster

of infected *animals* within a *herd* or *flock*, a cluster of pens in a building, or a cluster of farms in a *compartment*). Clustering should be taken into account in the design of *surveillance* activities and considered in the statistical analysis of *surveillance* data.

f) Diagnostic tests

Surveillance involves the use of tests for detection of *infection* or *infestation* according to appropriate case definitions. Tests used in *surveillance* may range from clinical observations and the analysis of production records to rapid field and detailed laboratory assays.

The performance of a test at the *population* level (including field observations) may be described in terms of its sensitivity, specificity and predictive values. These values together with prevalence will have an impact on the conclusions drawn from *surveillance* and should be taken into account in the design of *surveillance* systems and analysis of *surveillance* data.

Laboratory tests should be chosen in accordance with the relevant chapters of the *Terrestrial Manual*.

g) Analytical methodologies

Surveillance data should be analysed using appropriate methodologies and at the appropriate organisational level to facilitate effective decision-making, whether it be for planning disease control interventions or demonstrating health status.

Methodologies for the analysis of *surveillance* data should be flexible to deal with the complexity of real life situations. No single method is applicable in all cases. Different methodologies may be used to accommodate different host species, pathogenic agents, production systems and *surveillance* systems, and types and amounts of data and information available.

The methodology used should be based on the best data sources available. It should also be in accordance with this chapter, fully documented and, whenever possible, supported by reference to scientific literature and other sources, including expert opinion. Sophisticated mathematical or statistical analyses may be carried out only when justified by the objectives of the *surveillance* and the availability and quality of field data.

Consistency in the application of different methodologies should be encouraged. Transparency is essential in order to ensure objectivity and rationality, consistency in decision-making and ease of understanding. The uncertainties, assumptions made, and the effect of these on the final conclusions should be documented.

h) Scope of the surveillance system

When designing the *surveillance* system consideration should be given to the purposes of *surveillance* and how the information it generates will be used, the limitations of the information it will generate, including representativeness of the study *population* and potential sources of bias as well as the availability of financial, technical and human resources.

i) Follow up actions

The design of the *surveillance* system should include consideration of what actions will be taken on the basis of the information generated.

2. Implementation of the surveillance system

a) Diagnostic tests

The sensitivity and specificity values of the tests used should be specified for target species and the method used to estimate these values should be documented in accordance with the *Terrestrial Manual*.

Samples from a number of *animals* or *units* may be pooled and subjected to a testing protocol. The results should be interpreted using sensitivity and specificity values that have been determined or estimated for that particular pool size and testing procedure.

b) Data collection and management

The success of a *surveillance* system is dependent on a reliable process for data collection and management. The process may be based on paper or electronic records. Even where data are collected for non-survey purposes (e.g. during disease control interventions, inspections for movement control or during disease eradication schemes), the consistency and quality of data collection and event reporting in a format that facilitates analysis is critical. Software may offer the possibility of extraction of multiple source data for aggregation and analysis. Factors influencing the quality of collected data include:

- the distribution of, and communication between, those involved in generating and transferring data from the field to a centralised location; this requires effective collaboration among all stakeholders, such as government or non-governmental organisations, and others, particularly for data involving *wildlife*;
- the ability of the data processing system to detect missing, inconsistent or inaccurate data, and to address these problems;
- maintenance of raw data rather than the compilation of summary data;
- minimisation of transcription errors during data processing and communication.

3. Quality assurance

Surveillance systems should be subjected to periodic auditing to ensure that all components function and provide verifiable documentation of procedures and basic checks to detect deviations of procedures from those specified in the design, in order to implement appropriate corrective actions.

Article 1.4.4.

Surveillance methods

Surveillance systems routinely use data collected by probability-based or non-probability-based methods, either alone or in combination. A wide variety of *surveillance* sources may be available. These vary in their primary purpose and the type of *surveillance* information they are able to provide.

1. Disease reporting systems

Disease reporting systems are based on reporting of animal health-related events to the *Veterinary Authority*. Data derived from disease reporting systems can be used in combination with other data sources to substantiate claims of *animal health status*, to generate data for *risk analysis* or for early warning and response. Effective laboratory support is an important component of any reporting system. Reporting systems relying on laboratory confirmation of suspected clinical *cases* should use tests that have high specificity as described in the *Terrestrial Manual*.

Whenever the responsibility for disease reporting falls outside the scope of the *Veterinary Authority*, for example human cases of zoonotic diseases or *infections* or *infestations* in *wildlife*, effective communication and data sharing should be established between the *Veterinary Authority* and other relevant authorities.

Participatory *surveillance* methods may be useful to collect epidemiological data that can support disease reporting systems.

2. Surveys

In addition to the principles in Article 1.4.3., the following should be considered when planning, implementing and analysing surveys.

Surveys may be conducted on the entire target *population* (i.e. a census) or on a sample.

The sources of data should be fully described and should include a detailed description of the sampling strategy used for the selection of *units* for testing. Also, consideration should be given to any biases that may be inherent in the survey design.

a) Survey design

The target and study *populations* should first be clearly defined. Depending on the design of the survey, appropriate sampling *units* should be defined for each stage.

The design of the survey will depend on the knowledge of the size, structure and distribution of the *population*, the epidemiology of the *infection* or *infestation* and the resources available.

Data on the size, structure and distribution of *wildlife populations* often do not exist. However, they should be estimated to the extent possible before the survey is designed. Expert opinion can be sought in the gathering and interpretation of such *population* data. Historical *population* data should be updated since these may not reflect current *populations*.

b) Sampling

i) Objective

The objective of sampling from a *population* is to select a subset of *units* from the *population* of interest with respect to the objective of the study, taking into account practical constraints imposed by different

environments and production systems so that data from the study *population* can be extrapolated to the target *population*.

When selecting *units* from a target *population* to have a representative sample, probability-based sampling, such as a simple random selection, should be used.

Where probability-based sampling is not feasible, non-probability-based methods may be applied and should provide the best practical chance of generating a sample that can be considered as representative of the target *population*.

When the objective of non-probability-based sampling is to maximise the likelihood of detection of the *infection* or *infestation*, this type of sampling may not be representative of the target *population*.

When using non-probability-based sampling, representativeness can only be achieved if *risk* factors are weighted and the weights are supported by relevant scientific evidence capturing the relative differences in *risk* and proportion between the study *population* and the target *population*.

The sampling method used at all stages should be fully documented.

ii) Sample size

In surveys conducted to demonstrate the presence or absence of an *infection* or *infestation* the method used to calculate sample size depends on the size of the *population*, the design of the survey, the expected prevalence and possible clustering, the level of confidence desired of the survey results and the performance of the tests used.

In addition, for surveys designed to estimate a parameter (e.g. prevalence) consideration should be given to the desired precision of the estimate.

iii) Sample selection

- Probability-based sampling methods, such as:
 - simple random selection;
 - cluster sampling;
 - stratified sampling;
 - systematic sampling;
 - risk-based sampling.
- Non-probability-based sampling methods, depending on:
 - convenience;
 - expert choice;
 - quota;
 - *risk*.

3. Risk-based methods

Surveillance activities targeting selected *subpopulations* in which an *infection* or *infestation* is more likely to be introduced or found, or more likely to spread, or cause other consequences and contribute to early detection, freedom claims, disease control activities, and estimation of prevalence. Risk-based methods can be used for both probability-based and non-probability-based sampling methods and data collection. The effect of the selection (i.e. its impact on probability of detection) should be estimated.

Risk-based methods should be based on a *risk assessment* and are useful to optimise the use of *surveillance* resources.

4. Ante-mortem and post-mortem inspections

Inspection of *animals* at *slaughterhouses/abattoirs* may provide valuable *surveillance* data. The sensitivity and specificity of *slaughterhouse/abattoir* inspections for detecting the presence of specified diseases will be influenced by:

- a) clinical and pathological signs;
- b) the training, experience and number of the inspection staff;
- c) the extent to which the *Competent Authority* is involved in the supervision of ante-mortem and post-mortem inspections, including reporting systems;
- d) the quality of construction of the *slaughterhouse/abattoir*, speed of the slaughter chain, lighting quality, etc.; and
- e) independence of the inspection staff.

Slaughterhouse/abattoir inspections are likely to provide good coverage for particular age groups and geographical areas only. *Slaughterhouse/abattoir* *surveillance* data may only be representative of a particular *subpopulation*

(e.g. only *animals* of a particular class and age are likely to be slaughtered for human consumption in significant numbers). Such limitations should be recognised when analysing *surveillance* data.

The usefulness of data generated by *slaughterhouse/abattoir* inspections is dependent on effective *animal traceability* that relates *animals* to their *herd* or *flock* or locality of origin.

Post-mortem inspection conducted in locations other than *slaughterhouses/abattoirs* (e.g. rendering plants, hunting places) may also provide valuable *surveillance* data.

5. Surveillance of sentinel units

Surveillance of sentinel *units* involve the identification and regular testing of one or more *animals* of known health or immune status in a specified geographical location to detect the occurrence of *infection* or *infestation*. Sentinel *units* provide the opportunity to target *surveillance* depending on the risk of introduction or re-emergence, likelihood of *infection* or *infestation*, cost and other practical constraints. Sentinel *units* may provide evidence of freedom from, or distribution of, disease, *infection* or *infestation*.

6. Clinical surveillance

Clinical observations of *animals* in the field are an important source of *surveillance* data. The sensitivity and specificity of clinical observations are highly dependent on the criteria used to define a suspected case. In order to allow comparison of data, the *case definition* should be standardised. Awareness and training of potential field observers, including *animal* keepers, in the application of the *case definition* and reporting are important. Ideally, both the number of positive observations and the total number of observations should be recorded.

7. Syndromic surveillance

Systematic analysis of health data, including morbidity and mortality rates, production records and other parameters can be used to generate signals that may be indicative of changes in the occurrence of *infection* or *infestation*.

8. Other useful data

a) Data generated by control programmes and health schemes

While focusing on the control or eradication of specific *infections* or *infestations*, control programmes or health schemes can be used to generate data that can contribute to other *surveillance* objectives.

b) Laboratory investigation records

Laboratory investigation records may provide useful data for *surveillance*, in particular for retrospective studies. Multiple sources of data such as national, accredited, university and private sector *laboratories* should be integrated in order to increase the coverage of the *surveillance* system.

Valid analysis of data from different *laboratories* depends on the existence of quality control and quality assurance systems, including standardised diagnostic procedures and standardised methods for data recording and interpretation as well as a mechanism to ensure the traceability of specimens to *herd* or *flock* or locality of origin.

c) Biological specimen banks

Specimen banks consist of stored specimens, gathered through representative sampling or opportunistic collection. Specimen banks may contribute to retrospective studies, including providing support for claims of historical freedom from disease, *infection* or *infestation*, and may allow certain studies to be conducted more quickly and at lower cost than other approaches.

d) Wildlife data

Specimens for *surveillance* from *wildlife* may be available from sources such as hunters and trappers, road-kills, *wild animal meat* markets, sanitary inspection of hunted *animals*, morbidity and mortality observations by the general public, *wildlife* rehabilitation centres, *wildlife* biologists and *wildlife* agency field personnel, farmers and other landholders, naturalists and conservationists. *Wildlife* data such as census data, trends over time, and reproductive success can be used in a manner similar to farm production records for epidemiological purposes.

e) Public health data

For zoonotic diseases public health data may be an indicator of a potential change in the *animal health status*. The *Veterinary Authority* should coordinate with human health authorities and share data for integration into specific *surveillance* systems.

f) Environmental data

Relevant environmental data such as rainfall, temperature, extreme climatic events, presence and abundance of potential vectors as described in Chapter 1.5., should also be integrated into the *surveillance* system.

- g) Additional supporting data such as:
 - i) data on the epidemiology of the *infection* or *infestation*, including host *population* distribution;
 - ii) data on animal movements, including transhumance and natural *wildlife* migrations;
 - iii) trading patterns for *animals* and animal products;
 - iv) national animal health regulations, including information on compliance and effectiveness;
 - v) history of imports of potentially infected material;
 - vi) *biosecurity* in place; and
 - vii) the *risk* of introduction of *infection* or *infestation*.

9. Combination and interpretation of surveillance results

Depending on the objective of *surveillance*, the combination of multiple sources of data may provide an indication of the overall sensitivity of the system and may increase the confidence in the results. The methodology used to combine the evidence from multiple data sources should be scientifically valid, and fully documented, including references to published material.

Surveillance information gathered from the same country, *zone* or *compartment* at different times may provide cumulative evidence of *animal health status*. Repeated surveys may be analysed to provide a cumulative level of confidence. However, the combination of data collected over time from multiple sources may be able to achieve an equivalent level of confidence.

Analysis of *surveillance* information gathered intermittently or continuously over time should, where possible, incorporate the time of collection of the information to take the decreased value of older information into account. The sensitivity and specificity of tests used and completeness of data from each source should also be taken into account for the final overall confidence level estimation.

In assessing the efficiency of the *surveillance* system based on multiple sources, the *Veterinary Authority* should consider the relative contribution of each component to the overall sensitivity, while considering the primary objective of each *surveillance* component.

Results from animal health *surveillance* systems are subject to one or more potential biases. When assessing the results, care should be taken to identify potential biases that can inadvertently lead to an over-estimate or an under-estimate of the parameters of interest.

Article 1.4.5.

Early warning systems

An *early warning system* is essential for the timely detection, reporting and communication of occurrence, incursion or emergence of diseases, *infections* or *infestations* and is an integral component of emergency preparedness. It should be under the control of the *Veterinary Authority* and should include the following:

- 1) appropriate access to, and authority over, the target *animal populations* by the *Veterinary Services*;
- 2) access to *laboratories* capable of diagnosing and differentiating relevant *infections* or *infestations*;
- 3) training and awareness programmes for *veterinarians*, *veterinary paraprofessionals*, *animal* owners or keepers and others involved in handling *animals* at the farm or other places where they are kept during their transport or at the *slaughterhouse/abattoir*, for detecting and reporting unusual animal health incidents;
- 4) a legal obligation by *veterinarians* and other relevant stakeholders to report suspected *cases* or *cases* of *notifiable diseases* or *emerging diseases* to the *Veterinary Authority*, including the description of the findings;
- 5) epidemiological investigations of suspected *cases* and *cases* conducted by the *Veterinary Services* in order to confirm *cases* and to acquire accurate knowledge of the situation for further action.

All suspected *case* investigations should provide a result, either positive or negative. Criteria should be established in advance for a *case* definition. Confirmation can be made on clinical and post-mortem grounds, epidemiological information, laboratory test results or a combination of these, in accordance with relevant articles of the *Terrestrial Code* or *Terrestrial Manual*;

- 6) effective systems of communication between the *Veterinary Authority* and relevant stakeholders;
- 7) a national chain of command.

Article 1.4.6.

Surveillance for freedom from a disease, infection or infestation**1. Demonstration of freedom**

A *surveillance* system to demonstrate freedom from a disease, *infection* and *infestation* should meet the following, in addition to the general principles outlined in Article 1.4.3. It should also take into account any prevention measures in place such as *vaccination* in accordance with this chapter and Chapter 4.18.

Freedom implies the absence of *infection* or *infestation* in an animal *population* in the country, *zone* or *compartment*. Scientific methods cannot provide absolute certainty of this absence. Therefore, demonstrating freedom, except for historical freedom, involves providing sufficient evidence to demonstrate to a desired level of confidence that *infection* or *infestation* with a specified pathogenic agent, if present, is present in less than a specified proportion of the *population*.

However, finding evidence of *infection* or *infestation* at any prevalence in the target *population* automatically invalidates any freedom claim unless otherwise stated in the relevant chapters of the *Terrestrial Code*.

It can be difficult to collect sufficient epidemiological data to demonstrate absence of *infection* or *infestation* in *wild animal populations*. In such circumstances, a range of supporting evidence should be used to make this assessment. The consequences of the presence of *infection* or *infestation* in *wildlife* in the same country or *zone* on the status of domestic *animals* should be assessed in each situation, as described in the relevant chapters of the *Terrestrial Code*.

Evidence from probability and non-probability risk-based data collection may increase the sensitivity of the *surveillance*.

2. Requirements to declare a country or a zone free from an infection or infestation**a) Prerequisites, unless otherwise specified in the relevant chapters of the *Terrestrial Code*:**

- i) the *infection* or *infestation* has been a *notifiable disease*;
- ii) an *early warning system* has been in place for all relevant species;
- iii) measures to prevent the introduction of the *infection* or *infestation* have been in place: in particular, the importations or movements of *commodities* into the country or *zone* have been carried out in accordance with the relevant chapters of the *Terrestrial Code*;
- iv) the *infection* or *infestation* is not known to be established in *wildlife* within the country or *zone*.

b) Historical freedom

Unless otherwise specified in the relevant chapter of the *Terrestrial Code*, a country or *zone* may be considered free without formally applying a pathogen-specific *surveillance* programme when:

- i) for at least the past 10 years:
 - no *vaccination* against the disease has been carried out;
 - the prerequisites listed in point a) are complied with;
- ii) the pathogenic agent is likely to produce identifiable clinical or pathological signs in susceptible *animals*;
- iii) for at least 25 years there has been no occurrence of *infection* or *infestation*.

c) Where historical freedom cannot be demonstrated:

- i) A pathogen-specific *surveillance* programme has been applied as described in this chapter and in the relevant chapter of the *Terrestrial Code*, and has not detected any occurrence of the *infection* or *infestation*.
- ii) The prerequisites listed in point a) have been complied with for at least as long as the pathogen-specific *surveillance* has been in place.

3. Requirements to declare a compartment free from infection or infestation**a) A pathogen-specific *surveillance* programme has been applied as described in this chapter and in the relevant chapter of the *Terrestrial Code*, and has not detected any occurrence of the *infection* or *infestation*.****b) The prerequisites listed in points 2 a) i) to 2 a) iii) have been complied with for at least as long as the pathogen-specific *surveillance* has been in place.**

4. Recommendations for the maintenance of freedom from a disease, infection or infestation

Unless otherwise specified in the relevant chapter of the *Terrestrial Code*, a country or zone that has achieved freedom in accordance with the provisions of the *Terrestrial Code* may maintain its free status provided that:

- a) the *infection or infestation* is a *notifiable disease*;
- b) an *early warning system* is in place for all relevant species;
- c) measures to prevent the introduction of the *infection or infestation* are in place;
- d) *surveillance* adapted to the likelihood of occurrence of *infection or infestation* is carried out. *Specific surveillance* may not need to be carried out if supported by a *risk assessment* addressing all identified pathways for introduction of the pathogenic agent and provided the pathogenic agent is likely to produce identifiable clinical or pathological signs in susceptible *animals*;
- e) the *infection or infestation* is not known to be established in *wildlife*.

Article 1.4.7.

Surveillance in support of disease control programmes

Surveillance is an important component in disease control programmes and can be used to determine the distribution and occurrence of *infection or infestation* or of other relevant health-related events. It can be used to assess progress and aid in decision-making in the control or eradication of selected *infections or infestations*.

Surveillance used to assess progress in control or eradication of selected *infections or infestations* should be designed to collect data about a number of variables such as:

- 1) prevalence or incidence of *infection or infestation*;
- 2) morbidity and mortality;
- 3) frequency of *risk factors* and their quantification;
- 4) frequency distribution of results of the laboratory tests;
- 5) post-vaccination monitoring results;
- 6) frequency distribution of *infection or infestation* in *wildlife*.

The spatial and temporal distribution of these variables and other data such as *wildlife*, public health and environmental data as described in point 8 of Article 1.4.4. can be useful in the assessment of disease control programmes.

NB: FIRST ADOPTED IN 2005; MOST RECENT UPDATE ADOPTED IN 2021.

CHAPTER 1.5.

SURVEILLANCE FOR ARTHROPOD VECTORS OF ANIMAL DISEASES

Article 1.5.1.

Introduction

Vector-borne diseases are of increasing importance economically and to human and animal health.

Environmental (including climate change), sociological and economical changes may affect the distribution and impact of these diseases.

Improved understanding of the distribution and population dynamics of the *vectors* is a key element for assessing and managing the *risks* associated with vector-borne animal and zoonotic diseases.

The *Terrestrial Code* contains recommendations for the *surveillance* of several vector-borne diseases and general recommendations for animal health *surveillance*.

The need has arisen to complement these general recommendations on *surveillance* with advice on the *surveillance* for *vectors* themselves. This chapter only addresses *surveillance* for arthropod *vectors*.

For the purpose of trade, it should be noted that there is no conclusive relationship between the presence of *vectors* and the disease status of a country/zone, and also that the apparent absence of *vectors* does not by itself confirm vector-free status.

A decision tree for *vector surveillance* is presented in Figure 1.

Article 1.5.2.

Objectives

The objective of these recommendations is to provide methods for:

- 1) gathering up-to-date information on the spatial and temporal distribution and abundance of *vectors* of the arthropod-borne *listed diseases* and *emerging diseases*;
- 2) monitoring changes in the spatial and temporal distribution and abundance of these *vectors*;
- 3) collecting relevant data to inform *risk assessment* (including *vector competency*) and *risk management* of these vector-borne diseases;
- 4) detecting the presence of specific *vectors* or confirming their absence;
- 5) understanding pathways of entry for *vectors* and vector-borne pathogenic agents.

Article 1.5.3.

Sampling methodology

1. Sampling plan

- a) The objective of the *surveillance* programme should be determined and stated before planning begins.
- b) Available historical data on the *vector* or the disease for the country or zone should be collated and assessed.
- c) The sampling plan should consider the following:
 - i) the biology and ecology of the *vectors*,
 - ii) the presence, distribution and abundance of the *vectors*' host animal populations,

- iii) the environmental, climatic, ecological and topographic conditions of relevance to vector ecology,
 - iv) the need for a *risk assessment* to indicate the areas at highest *risk* of introduction of a *vector* that is unlikely to be present.
- d) Sampling should be aimed at:
- i) establishing *vector* presence or confirming *vector* absence in the country or *zone*,
 - ii) describing the distribution of the *vectors* within the country or *zone*,
 - iii) providing additional information on *vector* density and spatial/temporal variability (both over the short and the long-term),
 - iv) early detection of *vectors* or *vector*-borne pathogenic agents in areas with *risks* of entry and establishment.
- e) The sampling plan should be designed to provide appropriate estimates of the indicators listed above. Consideration should be given to the following:
- i) The recommended general approach to sampling is via a three-stage hierarchy:
 - stratification based on ecological criteria (where possible), and *risk assessment* for *vector* introduction,
 - subdivision of strata into spatial sampling units, and
 - establishment of actual sampling sites within selected spatial sampling units.
 - ii) If adequate entomological, epidemiological and historical data and/or expert opinion exists, the sampling plan may be refined or targeted by defining strata which are as homogeneous as possible with respect to the following known or suspected *risk-factors*, as appropriate for the country or *zone*:
 - domestic or wild populations of host *animals* preferred by the *vector*,
 - *vector* habitat suitability,
 - climatic patterns (including seasonal),
 - areas endemically and/or epidemically affected by the diseases of concern,
 - areas of known *vector* occurrences,
 - fringe *zones* around areas of known *vector* occurrences or other high *risks* areas for *vector* introduction, such as ports,
 - areas in which the diseases or *vectors* of concern have not been reported currently or historically,
 - each stratum (or the whole country or *zone*, if not stratified) should be divided into spatial sampling units in accordance with standard methodologies such as a grid system,
 - the number and size of the spatial sampling units should be defined to provide appropriate estimates of the indicators listed above,
 - the number and location of actual sampling sites within each spatial sampling unit also should be defined to provide appropriate estimates of the indicators listed above,
 - different levels of sampling intensity (spatial sampling unit size, number of units sampled, number of sites sampled within units, and sampling frequency) may be applied to different strata into which the country or *zone* has been divided. For example, more intensive sampling might be carried out in strata where *vector* presence seems most likely, based on biological or statistical criteria.

2. Sampling methods

Many sampling methods have been developed for the capture of *vector* arthropods, and these differ in accordance with the disease/*vector* system under consideration.

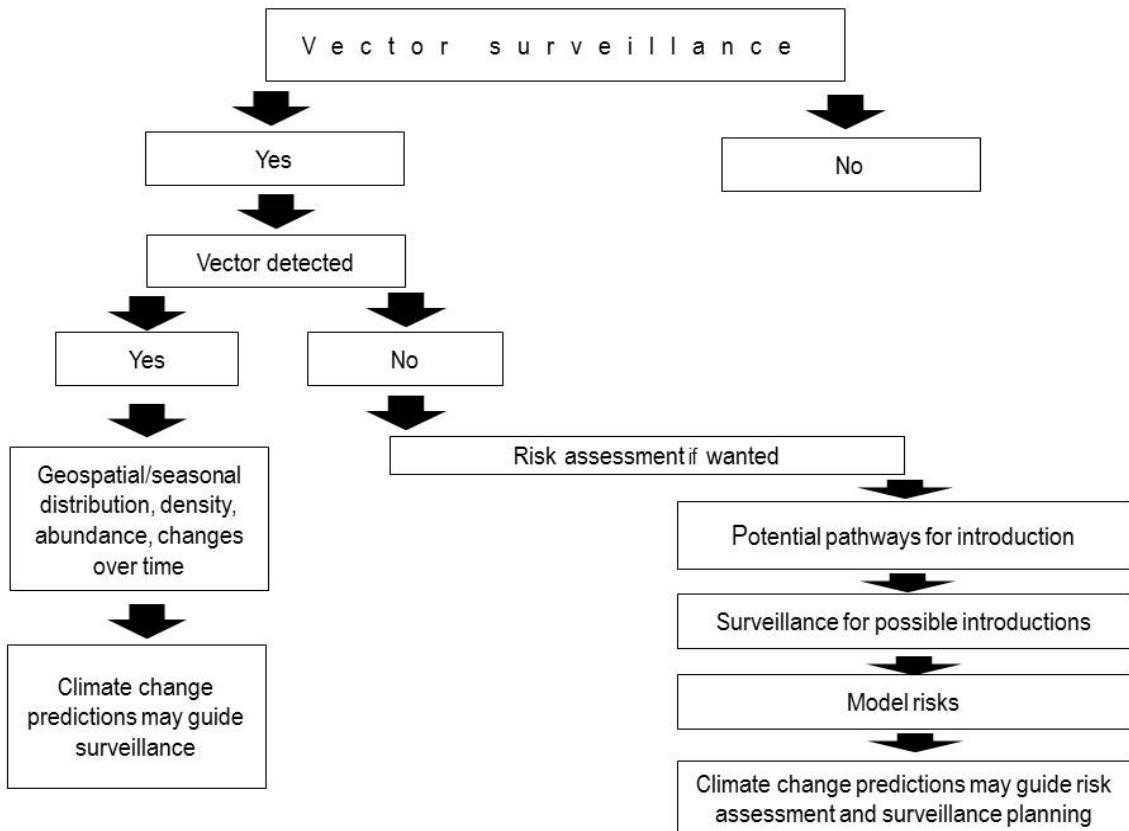
- a) The collection methods used should be adapted as required to ensure reasonable confidence of collecting the *vectors* of concern.
- b) Collection methods should obtain the various developmental stages (such as eggs, larvae, nymphs, adults) and adult age categories, as appropriate to the species in question and the objectives of the *surveillance*. For example, if a *vector* is not believed to be present, collection methods should target the developmental stages most likely to be introduced, or that are most readily detected. If the *vector* is present, life stages required to estimate population survival rates and population dynamics in relation to disease transmission should be collected.
- c) Different collection methods may be required to obtain samples from a single *vector* species, depending on the life stage or place of capture (such as from the environment or from the host *animals*). The collection method should be appropriate to the species and life stage of interest.

The collection methods should preserve the *vectors* in a manner suitable for their morphological identification or identification with molecular techniques. Where the purpose of sampling is to detect or isolate pathogenic agents, specific protocols should be followed to ensure the samples are suitable for these assays.

3. Data management, analysis and interpretation

Data management and analytical methodologies should be done in accordance with Chapter 1.4.

Fig. 1. Decision tree for vector surveillance



NB: FIRST ADOPTED IN 2009; MOST RECENT UPDATE ADOPTED IN 2010.

CHAPTER 1.6.

PROCEDURES FOR OFFICIAL RECOGNITION OF ANIMAL HEALTH STATUS, ENDORSEMENT OF AN OFFICIAL CONTROL PROGRAMME, AND PUBLICATION OF A SELF-DECLARATION OF ANIMAL HEALTH STATUS, BY WOAH

Article 1.6.1.

Application for official recognition of animal health status and endorsement of an official control programme by WOAH

A Member Country may request:

- 1) official recognition of *animal health status* by WOAH of:
 - a) freedom of a country or *zone* from African horse sickness (AHS);
 - b) risk status of a country or *zone* with regard to bovine spongiform encephalopathy (BSE);
 - c) freedom of a country or *zone* from classical swine fever (CSF);
 - d) freedom of a country or *zone* from contagious bovine pleuropneumonia (CBPP);
 - e) freedom of a country or *zone* from foot and mouth disease (FMD), where *vaccination* is either practised or not practised;
 - f) freedom of a country or *zone* from peste des petits ruminants (PPR);
- 2) endorsement by WOAH of:
 - a) an *official control programme* for CBPP;
 - b) an *official control programme* for FMD;
 - c) an *official control programme* for PPR;
 - d) an *official control programme* for dog-mediated rabies.

WOAH does not grant official recognition of *animal health status* or endorsement of an *official control programme* for diseases other than those listed under points 1 and 2 above.

The Member Country should present documentation setting out the compliance of their *Veterinary Services* with the provisions of Chapters 1.1., 1.4., 3.2., 3.3. and 4.4. of the *Terrestrial Code*, when relevant, and with the provisions of the relevant disease-specific chapters in the *Terrestrial Code* and the *Terrestrial Manual*.

When requesting official recognition of *animal health status* or endorsement by WOAH of an *official control programme*, the Member Country should follow the Standard Operating Procedures (available on the WOAH website) and submit to WOAH a dossier providing the information requested in the following chapters (as appropriate): 1.7. (for AHS), 1.8. (for BSE), 1.9. (for CSF), 1.10. (for CBPP), 1.11. (for FMD) or 1.12. (for PPR).

The WOAH framework for the official recognition of *animal health status*, the endorsement of *official control programmes*, and their maintenance is described in relevant Resolutions adopted by the World Assembly of Delegates.

The country or the *zone* will be included in the relevant lists of official *animal health status* or endorsed *official control programmes* only after the evidence submitted has been adopted by the World Assembly of Delegates.

When a Member Country requests official recognition of *animal health status* for a *zone*, the geographical boundaries of the proposed *zone* should be clearly defined. When applying for recognition of a free *zone* that is adjacent to another *zone* of the same status, it should be stated whether the new *zone* is being merged or kept separate. If the proposed *zone* remains separate, details should be provided of the control of the movement of relevant *commodities* between the *zones* in accordance with Chapter 4.4.

The overall objective of the WOAH endorsed *official control programmes* is for Member Countries to progressively improve their animal health situation and eventually attain official recognition of *animal health status* or in the case of dog-mediated rabies to make a self-declaration as a free country or *zone*. The *official control programme* should be applicable to the entire country even if certain measures are directed towards defined *zones*.

Article 1.6.2.

Maintenance of official recognition of animal health status and endorsement of an official control programme by WOAH

Retention on the lists of countries and *zones* having an official *animal health status* or of countries having an endorsed *official control programme* requires that the information in relevant chapters be re-submitted annually and that changes in the epidemiological situation or other significant events be notified to WOAH in accordance with the requirements in Chapter 1.1.

Non-compliance with the requirements for the maintenance of *animal health status* results in the suspension of that status. Within 24 months of suspension, except otherwise stated in the disease-specific chapter, a Member Country may apply for the recovery of a previously recognised status, following the provisions of the relevant disease-specific chapter. When the status has not been recovered within the specified period of its suspension, it is withdrawn and the Member Country should reapply following the procedure for the application for official recognition of *animal health status*.

WOAH may withdraw the endorsement of an *official control programme* if there is evidence of:

- non-compliance with the timelines or performance indicators of the programme; or
- significant problems with the quality of the *Veterinary Services* as described in Section 3 of the *Terrestrial Code*; or
- an increase in the *incidence* or distribution of the disease that cannot be addressed by the programme.

Article 1.6.3.

Publication by WOAH of a self-declaration of animal health status by a Member Country

A Member Country may make a self-declaration of freedom of a country, *zone* or *compartment* from a WOAH *listed disease* or another animal disease, *infection* or *infestation*. The Member Country may inform WOAH of the claimed status and request publication by WOAH of the self-declaration to inform WOAH Member Countries.

A Member Country requesting the publication of a self-declaration should follow the Standard Operating Procedure (available on the WOAH website) for submission of a self-declaration of *animal health status* and provide documented information on its compliance with the relevant chapters of the *Terrestrial Code*, including:

- evidence that the *infection* or *infestation* is a *notifiable disease* in the entire country;
- history of absence or eradication of the *infection* or *infestation* in the country, *zone* or *compartment*;
- *surveillance* including an *early warning system* for all relevant species in the country, *zone* or *compartment*;
- measures implemented to maintain freedom in the country, *zone* or *compartment*.

The self-declaration may be published only after all the information provided has been received and administrative and technical screening has been performed by WOAH. Publication does not imply endorsement of the claim of freedom by WOAH and does not reflect the official opinion of WOAH. Responsibility for the accuracy of the information contained in a self-declaration lies entirely with the WOAH Delegate of the Member Country concerned.

Except when otherwise provided for in the *listed disease*-specific chapter, an *outbreak* in a Member Country, a *zone* or a *compartment* having a self-declared free status results in the loss of the self-declared free status. A Member Country wishing to reclaim a lost free status should submit a new self-declaration following the procedure described in this article.

WOAH does not publish self-declarations for *listed diseases* in point 1 of Article 1.6.1.

CHAPTER 1.7.

APPLICATION FOR OFFICIAL RECOGNITION BY WOAH OF FREE STATUS FOR AFRICAN HORSE SICKNESS

Article 1.7.1.

Country free from infection with African horse sickness virus

The following information should be provided by WOAH Member Countries to support applications for official recognition of status as a country free from *infection* with African horse sickness (AHS) virus in accordance with Chapter 12.1. of the *Terrestrial Code*.

The dossier provided to WOAH should address concisely all the topics under the headings provided to describe the actual situation in the country and the procedures currently applied, explaining how these comply with the *Terrestrial Code*.

The terminology defined in the WOAH *Terrestrial Code* and *Terrestrial Manual* should be referred to and used in compiling the dossier.

National legislation, regulations and *Veterinary Authority* directives may be referred to and annexed as appropriate in one of the WOAH official languages. Weblinks to supporting documents in one of the official languages of WOAH may also be provided, where they exist.

All annexes should be provided in one of the WOAH official languages.

The Delegate of the Member Country applying for recognition of AHS freedom for a country must demonstrate compliance with the *Terrestrial Code*. That is, the Delegate should submit documentary evidence that the provisions of Article 12.1.2. have been properly implemented and supervised.

In addition, the Delegate of the Member Country must submit a declaration indicating that:

- 1) there has been no *case of infection* with AHS virus for at least the past two years;
- 2) no routine *vaccination* against AHS has been carried out during the past year;
- 3) and that any equids imported have been done so in accordance with Chapter 12.1.

In addition, the Delegate of the Member Country applying for recognition of historical freedom must also submit documentary evidence that the provisions in Article 1.4.6. of the *Terrestrial Code* have been properly implemented and supervised.

1. Introduction

- a) Geographical features (rivers, mountain ranges, etc.). Provide a general description of the country and, where relevant, of the region, including physical, geographical and other factors that are relevant to introduction of *infection* and spread of AHS virus, taking into account the countries sharing common borders and other

epidemiologic pathways for the potential introduction of *infection*. Provide maps identifying the features above. Specify whether the application includes any noncontiguous territories.

- b) Demographics of domestic equids. Describe the composition of the equine *population* by species (e.g. horses, donkeys, mules, zebras, etc.) within the various sectors.

Equine sectors are defined as equids (including donkeys, mules, hinnies and zebras) used for breeding stock, competition, leisure, exhibition, working (including transport) and production. How are the equine sectors distributed (e.g. density, etc.) throughout the country? Provide tables and maps as appropriate.

- c) Equine sectors. Provide a general description of the relative economic importance of the equine sectors in the country. Consider the below-mentioned sector groupings and outline any recent significant changes observed within the sector groupings (attach relevant documents if available):

- i) breeding stock equids;
- ii) competition horses;
- iii) leisure equids;
- iv) exhibition equids;
- v) working, transport and production equids (including donkeys, mules and hinnies).

- d) *Wildlife* demographics. What *captive wild*, *wild* or *feral* equids are present in the country? Provide estimates of *population* sizes and geographic distribution.

2. Veterinary system

- a) Legislation. Provide a table (and when available a weblink) listing all relevant veterinary legislation, regulations and *Veterinary Authority* directives in relation to AHS and a brief description of the relevance of each. The table should include, but not be limited to, the legislation on disease control measures and compensation systems.

- b) *Veterinary Services*. Describe how the *Veterinary Services* of the country comply with Chapters 1.1., 3.2. and 3.3. of the *Terrestrial Code*. Describe how the *Veterinary Services* supervise, control, enforce and monitor all AHS-related activities. Provide maps, figures and tables wherever possible.

- c) Provide information on any PVS evaluation conducted in the country and follow-up steps within the PVS Pathway and highlight the results relevant to AHS and the susceptible species.

- d) Provide a description of the involvement and the participation of industry, producers, farmers, including subsistence and small-scale producers, keepers, *veterinary paraprofessionals* including community animal health workers, and other relevant groups in AHS *surveillance* and control. Provide a description of the role and structure of the private veterinary sector, including the number of *veterinarians* and their distribution, in AHS *surveillance* and control. Include a description of continuing education and awareness programmes on AHS at all relevant levels.

- e) *Animal identification*, registration, traceability and movement control. Are equids identified (individually or at a group level)? Provide a description of the traceability system, including methods of *animal identification* and *establishment* or *herd* registration, applicable to all equine sectors. How are movements of equids controlled in the country for all equine sectors? Provide evidence of the effectiveness of *animal identification* and movement controls and a table describing the number, species, origin and destination of the animals and their products moved within the country in the past 24 months. Provide information on pastoralism, transhumance and related paths of movement.

Describe the *risk management* strategy for uncontrolled movements of susceptible species (e.g. seasonal migration).

Describe the actions available under national legislation. Provide information on illegal movements detected in the past 24 months and the action taken.

- f) Leisure, exhibition and competition movements of equids. How are movements of these types of equids controlled in the country? Provide information on systems including any use of registration. Provide information on any events that include international movements of equids.

- g) Describe the market systems for the sale of, or transfer of ownership of, equids in the country, including where the international movement of equids occurs.

3. AHS eradication

- a) History. If *infection* has never occurred in the country, or has not occurred within the past 25 years, state explicitly whether or not the country is applying for recognition of historical freedom according to Article 1.4.6. of the *Terrestrial Code*.
If *infection* has occurred in the country within the past 25 years, provide a description of the AHS history in the country, with emphasis on recent years. If applicable, provide tables and maps showing the date of first detection, the sources and routes of introduction of *infection*, the temporal and spatial distribution (number and location of *outbreaks* per year), the susceptible species involved, and the date of last case or *eradication* in the country.
- b) Strategy. Describe how AHS was controlled and eradicated (e.g. isolation of *cases*, *stamping-out policy*, zoning, movement control, protection of equids against *vectors*). Provide the time frame for *eradication*. Describe and justify the corrective actions that have been implemented to prevent future *outbreaks* of AHS in response to any past incursions of AHS virus.
- c) Vaccines and *vaccination*. Briefly answer the following:
- i) Is there any legislation that prohibits *vaccination*? If so:
 - Provide the date when *vaccination* was formally prohibited;
 - Provide information on cases of detection of illegal *vaccination* during the reporting period and actions taken in response to the detection.
 - ii) Was *vaccination* ever used in the country? If so:
 - Provide the date when the last *vaccination* was carried out;
 - What type of vaccine was used?
 - What species were vaccinated?
 - How were vaccinated animals identified?
 - What was the fate of those animals?
 - iii) In addition, if *vaccination* was applied during the past 24 months, provide a description and justification of the *vaccination* strategy and programme, including the following:
 - the vaccine strains;
 - the species vaccinated;
 - identification of vaccinated animals;
 - the way in which the *vaccination* of animals was certified or reported and the records maintained;
 - evidence that the vaccine used complies with Chapter 3.5.1. of the *Terrestrial Manual*.

- d) Provide a description of the legislation, organisation and implementation of the *eradication* campaign. Outline the legislation applicable to the *eradication* and how the campaign was organised at different levels. Indicate if detailed operational guidelines exist and give a brief summary.

4. AHS diagnosis

Provide documentary evidence that the relevant provisions of Chapters 1.1.2., 1.1.3. and 3.5.1. of the *Terrestrial Manual* are applied. The following points should be addressed:

- a) Is AHS *laboratory* diagnosis carried out in the country? If so, provide an overview of the AHS-approved *laboratories* in the country, including the following:
- i) How the work is shared between different *laboratories*, logistics for shipment of samples, the follow-up procedures and the time frame for reporting results;
 - ii) Details of test capability and the types of tests undertaken and their performance for their applied use (specificity and sensitivity per type of test). Provide details of the number of AHS tests performed in the past 24 months in national *laboratories* and in *laboratories* in other countries, if relevant;
 - iii) Procedures for quality assurance and for the official accreditation of *laboratories*. Give details of formal internal quality management systems, e.g. Good Laboratory Practice, ISO, etc. that exist in, or are planned for, the *laboratory* system;
 - iv) Provide details of performance in inter-*laboratory* validation tests (ring trials), including the most recent results and, if applicable, the corrective measures applied;
 - v) Provide details of the handling of live pathogenic agent, including a description of the biosecurity and biosafety measures applied;
 - vi) Provide a table identifying the tests carried out by each of the *laboratories* where they are performed, the quality accreditation and biosecurity standards followed and the proficiency tests carried out.

- b) If AHS *laboratory* diagnosis is not carried out in the country, provide the names of the *laboratories* in other countries providing the service as well as the arrangements in place, including logistics for shipment of samples and the time frame for reporting results.

5. AHS surveillance

Provide documentary evidence that *surveillance* for AHS in the country complies with Articles 12.1.11. to 12.1.13. of the *Terrestrial Code*, and Chapter 3.5.1. of the *Terrestrial Manual*. The following information should be included:

- a) What are the criteria for raising a suspicion of AHS? What is the procedure to notify (by whom and to whom) and what incentives are there for reporting and what penalties are involved for failure to report?
- b) Describe how clinical *surveillance* is conducted, including which equine sectors are included in clinical *surveillance*, such as *establishments*, markets, fairs, *slaughterhouses/abattoirs*, check points, etc.

Provide a summary table indicating, for the past 24 months, the number of suspected *cases*, the number of samples tested for AHS, species, type of sample, testing methods and results (including differential diagnosis). Provide an indication of the timelines of the response including completion of testing to confirm or exclude AHS. Provide details of follow-up actions taken on all suspicious and positive results.

- c) Other *surveillance*. Is *surveillance* undertaken as described in Article 12.1.13., specifically:
 - i) Serological *surveillance*.
 - ii) Virological *surveillance* including genome or antigen detection.
 - iii) Sentinel animals.
 - iv) Vector *surveillance*.

If so, provide detailed information on the target population, design prevalence, confidence level, sample size, stratification, sampling methods and diagnostic tests used in accordance with Articles 12.1.11. and 12.1.13. of the *Terrestrial Code*. How frequently are they conducted? Which equine species are included? Are *wildlife* species included? If not, explain the rationale.

Provide a summary table and maps indicating detailed results for at least the past 24 months. Provide details of follow-up actions taken on all suspicious and positive results and how these findings are acted upon. Provide criteria for selection of *populations* for targeted surveillance and numbers of equids examined and samples tested in diagnostic *laboratories*. Provide details of the methods selected and applied for monitoring the performance of the *surveillance* programme including indicators.

- d) Provide information on risks in the different equine sectors, and provide evidence that targeted studies are implemented to address gaps (e.g. targeted serological surveys, active *surveillance*, participatory epidemiology studies, *risk assessments*, etc.). Provide evidence of how the knowledge acquired through these activities assisted in more effective implementation of control measures.
- e) Provide details of the oversight of *surveillance* programmes by the *Veterinary Services* including training programmes for personnel involved in clinical, serological, virological and other *surveillance*, and the approaches used to increase community involvement in AHS *surveillance* programmes.

6. AHS prevention

Describe the procedures in place to prevent the introduction of AHS into the country, including details of:

- a) Coordination with other countries. Describe any relevant factors in neighbouring countries that should be taken into account (e.g. size, distance from the border to affected *herds* or animals, wind currents and possible *vector spread*)? Describe coordination, collaboration and information-sharing activities with other countries in the same region or ecosystem.

If the AHS free country borders an infected country or *zone*, describe the animal health measures implemented to effectively prevent the introduction of the pathogenic agent or *vectors*, taking into consideration the seasonal *vector* conditions and existing physical, geographical and ecological barriers.

Are *protection zones* in place? If so, provide details of the measures that are applied (e.g. *vaccination*, intensified *surveillance*, density control of susceptible species), and provide a geo-referenced map of the *zones*.

- b) Describe the measures implemented to effectively prevent the introduction of the pathogenic agent, taking into consideration physical or geographical barriers. Describe the measures implemented to prevent the spread of the pathogenic agent within the country. Provide evidence that measures to reduce transmission of AHS are in place at markets, such as enhancing awareness of AHS transmission mechanisms and human behaviour that can interrupt transmission, and implementation of good *biosecurity*, hygiene and *disinfection* routines at critical points all along the production and marketing networks (typically where animals are being moved and marketed through the country or region).

c) Import control procedures

Provide information on countries, *zones* or *compartments* from which the country authorises the import of susceptible animals or their products into the country. Describe the criteria applied to approve such countries, *zones* or *compartments*, the controls applied to entry of such animals and products, and subsequent internal movement. Describe the import measures (e.g. quarantine) and test procedures required. Advise whether imported animals of susceptible species are required to undergo a quarantine or isolation period and, if so, the duration and location of quarantine. Advise whether import permits and *international veterinary certificates* are required.

Describe any other procedures used for assessing the *risks* posed by import of susceptible animals or their products. Provide summary statistics on imports of susceptible animals and their products for at least the past 24 months, including temporary import and re-entry, specifying countries, *zones* or *compartments* of origin, species and the quantity or volume and eventual destination in the country. Provide information on whether or not *outbreaks* have been related to imports or transboundary movements of domestic equids.

- i) Provide a map showing the number and location of all ports, airports and land border crossings. Describe the management structure, staffing levels and resources of the service responsible for import controls and its accountability to the *Veterinary Authority*. Describe the communication systems between the *Veterinary Authority* and the *border posts*, and between *border posts*.
- ii) Cite the regulations and describe procedures, type and frequency of checks, and management of noncompliance at the points of entry into the country or their final destination, concerning the import and follow-up of the following:
 - equids;
 - genetic material (semen, oocytes and embryos of the equine species);
 - equine derived (by-)products;
 - *veterinary medicinal products*.

7. Control measures and contingency planning

- a) List any written guidelines, including contingency plans, available to the *Veterinary Services* for dealing with suspected or confirmed *outbreaks* of AHS. The contingency plan should be attached as an annex in one of the WOAH official languages. If not available, provide a brief summary of what is covered. Provide information on any simulation exercise for AHS that was conducted in the country in the past five years.
- b) In the event of a suspected or confirmed AHS *outbreak*:
 - i) Are quarantine measures imposed on *establishments* with suspected *cases*, pending final diagnosis? What other procedures are followed with respect to suspected *cases* (e.g. standstills)?
 - ii) Indicate the sampling, dispatch and testing procedures that would be used to identify and confirm presence of the pathogenic agent;
 - iii) Describe the actions that would be taken to control the disease situation in and around the *establishments* where the *outbreak* is confirmed;
 - iv) Provide a detailed description of the control or *eradication* procedures (e.g. forward and backward tracing, movement control, *disinfection of establishments*, *vehicles* and equipment, including verification methods, *vaccination*, *stamp-ing-out policy*, vector-protected stabling, methods of disposal of carcasses and other contaminated products or materials, decontamination, campaigns to promote awareness of farmers) that would be taken. In the case of emergency *vaccination*, indicate the source and type of vaccine and provide details of any vaccine supply scheme and stocks;
 - v) Describe the criteria and procedures that would be used to confirm that an *outbreak* has been successfully controlled or eradicated, including restocking strategies, use of sentinel animals, serological surveillance programmes, etc.;
 - vi) Give details of any compensation that would be made available to owners, farmers, etc. when animals are slaughtered for disease control or *eradication* purposes and the prescribed timetable for payments;
 - vii) Describe how control efforts, including *vaccination* and *biosecurity*, would target critical risk control points.

8. Recovery of free status

Member Countries applying for recognition of recovery of free status for a country should comply with the provisions of Article 12.1.5. of the *Terrestrial Code* and provide detailed information as specified in Sections 3 a), 3 b), 3 c) and 6 of this questionnaire. Information in relation to other sections need only be supplied if relevant.

Article 1.7.2.

Zone free from infection with African horse sickness virus

The following information should be provided by WOAH Member Countries to support applications for official recognition of status as a *zone* free from *infection* with African horse sickness virus in accordance with Chapter 12.1. of the *Terrestrial Code*.

The dossier provided to WOAH should address concisely all the topics under the headings provided to describe the actual situation in the country and the procedures currently applied, explaining how these comply with the *Terrestrial Code*.

The terminology defined in the WOAH *Terrestrial Code* and *Terrestrial Manual* should be referred to and used in compiling the dossier.

National legislation, regulations and *Veterinary Authority* directives may be referred to and annexed as appropriate in one of the WOAH official languages. Weblinks to supporting documents in one of the official languages of WOAH may also be provided, where they exist.

All annexes should be provided in one of the WOAH official languages.

The Delegate of the Member Country applying for recognition of AHS freedom for a *zone* must demonstrate compliance with the *Terrestrial Code*. That is, the Delegate should submit documentary evidence that the provisions of Article 12.1.2. have been properly implemented and supervised.

In addition, the Delegate of the Member Country must submit a declaration indicating that:

- 1) there has been no *case* of *infection* with AHS virus for at least the past two years in the *zone*;
- 2) no routine *vaccination* against AHS has been carried out during the past year in the *zone*;
- 3) and that any equids imported into the *zone* have been done so in accordance with Chapter 12.1.

In addition, the Delegate of the Member Country applying for recognition of historical freedom must also submit documentary evidence that the provisions in Article 1.4.6. of the *Terrestrial Code* have been properly implemented and supervised.

1. Introduction

- a) Geographical features (rivers, mountain ranges, etc.). Provide a general description of the country and the *zone*, and where relevant of the region, including physical, geographical and other factors that are relevant to introduction of *infection* and spread of AHS virus, taking into account the countries or *zones* sharing common borders and other epidemiologic pathways for the potential introduction of *infection*.

The boundaries of the *zone* must be clearly defined, including a *protection zone* if applied. Provide maps identifying the features above, including a digitalised, geo-referenced map with a precise text description of the geographical boundaries of the *zone*.

- b) Demographics of domestic equids. Describe the composition of the equine *population* by species (e.g. horses, donkeys, mules, zebras, etc.) within the various sectors in the country and the *zone*.

Equine sectors are defined as equids (including donkeys, mules, hinnies and zebras) used for breeding stock, competition, leisure, exhibition, working (including transport) and production. How are the equine sectors distributed (e.g. density, etc.) throughout the country and the *zone*? Provide tables and maps as appropriate.

- c) Equine sectors. Provide a general description of the relative economic importance of the equine sectors in the country and the *zone*. Consider the below-mentioned sector groupings and outline any recent significant changes observed within the sector groupings (attach relevant documents if available):

- i) breeding stock equids;
- ii) competition horses;
- iii) leisure equids;
- iv) exhibition equids;
- v) working, transport and production equids (including donkeys, mules and hinnies).

- d) *Wildlife* demographics. What *captive wild*, *wild* or *feral* equids are present in the country and the *zone*? Provide estimates of *population* sizes and geographic distribution.

2. Veterinary system

- a) Legislation. Provide a table (and when available a weblink) listing all relevant veterinary legislation, regulations and *Veterinary Authority* directives in relation to AHS and a brief description of the relevance of each. The table should include, but not be limited to, the legislation on disease control measures and compensation systems.
- b) Veterinary Services. Describe how the *Veterinary Services* of the country comply with Chapters 1.1., 3.2. and 3.3. of the *Terrestrial Code*. Describe how the *Veterinary Services* supervise, control, enforce and monitor all AHS-related activities. Provide maps, figures and tables wherever possible.
- c) Provide information on any PVS evaluation conducted in the country and follow-up steps within the PVS Pathway and highlight the results relevant to AHS and the susceptible species.
- d) Provide a description of the involvement and the participation of industry, producers, farmers, including subsistence and small-scale producers, keepers, *veterinary paraprofessionals* including community animal health workers, and other relevant groups in AHS *surveillance* and control. Provide a description of the role and structure of the private veterinary sector, including the number of *veterinarians* and their distribution, in AHS *surveillance* and control. Include a description of continuing education and awareness programmes on AHS at all relevant levels.
- e) *Animal identification*, registration, traceability and movement control. Are equids identified (individually or at a group level)? Provide a description of the traceability system, including methods of *animal identification* and *establishment* or *herd* registration, applicable to all equine sectors. How are movements of equids controlled in and between *zones* of the same or different status for all equine sectors? Provide evidence of the effectiveness of *animal identification* and movement controls and a table describing the number, species, origin and destination of the animals and their products moved within the country in the past 24 months. Provide information on pastoralism, transhumance and related paths of movement.
Describe the *risk management* strategy for uncontrolled movements of susceptible species (e.g. seasonal migration).
- f) Leisure, exhibition and competition movements of equids. How are movements of these types of equids controlled in the country and the *zones*? Provide information on systems including any use of registration. Provide information on any events that include international movements of equids.
- g) Describe the market systems for the sale of, or transfer of ownership of, equids in the country and the *zones*, including where the international movement of equids occurs.

3. AHS eradication

- a) History. If *infection* has never occurred in the country, or has not occurred within the past 25 years, state explicitly whether or not the *zone* is applying for recognition of historical freedom according to Article 1.4.6. of the *Terrestrial Code*.
If *infection* has occurred in the *zone* within the past 25 years, provide a description of the AHS history in the country and *zone*, with emphasis on recent years. If applicable, provide tables and maps showing the date of first detection, the sources and routes of introduction of *infection*, the temporal and spatial distribution (number and location of *outbreaks* per year), the susceptible species involved, and the date of last *case* or *eradication* in the *zone*.
- b) Strategy. Describe how AHS was controlled and eradicated in the *zone* (e.g. isolation of *cases*, *stamping-out* policy, zoning, movement control, protection of equids against *vectors*). Provide the time frame for *eradication*. Describe and justify the corrective actions that have been implemented to prevent future *outbreaks* of AHS in response to any past incursions of AHS virus.
- c) Vaccines and *vaccination*. Briefly answer the following:
 - i) Is there any legislation that prohibits *vaccination*? If so:
 - Provide the date when *vaccination* was formally prohibited;
 - Provide information on cases of detection of illegal *vaccination* during the reporting period and actions taken in response to the detection.
 - ii) Was *vaccination* ever used in the country? If so:
 - Provide the date when the last *vaccination* was carried out;
 - What type of vaccine was used in the *zone* and the rest of the country?
 - What species were vaccinated?
 - How were vaccinated animals identified?
 - What was the fate of those animals?

- iii) In addition, if *vaccination* was applied during the past 24 months, provide a description and justification of the *vaccination* strategy and programme, including the following:
 - the vaccine strains;
 - the species vaccinated;
 - identification of vaccinated animals;
 - the way in which the *vaccination* of animals was certified or reported and the records maintained;
 - evidence that the vaccine used complies with Chapter 3.5.1. of the *Terrestrial Manual*.
- d) Provide a description of the legislation, organisation and implementation of the *eradication* campaign. Outline the legislation applicable to the *eradication* and how the campaign was organised at different levels. Indicate if detailed operational guidelines exist and give a brief summary.

4. AHS diagnosis

Provide documentary evidence that the relevant provisions of Chapters 1.1.2., 1.1.3. and 3.5.1. of the *Terrestrial Manual* are applied. The following points should be addressed:

- a) Is AHS *laboratory* diagnosis carried out in the country? If so, provide an overview of the AHS-approved *laboratories* in the country. Indicate the *laboratories* where samples originating from the *zone* are diagnosed. Address the following points:
 - i) How the work is shared between different *laboratories*, logistics for shipment of samples, the follow-up procedures and the time frame for reporting results;
 - ii) Details of test capability and the types of tests undertaken and their performance for their applied use (specificity and sensitivity per type of test). Provide details of the number of AHS tests performed in the past 24 months in national *laboratories* and in *laboratories* in other countries, if relevant;
 - iii) Procedures for quality assurance and for the official accreditation of *laboratories*. Give details of formal internal quality management systems, e.g. Good Laboratory Practice, ISO, etc. that exist in, or are planned for, the *laboratory* system;
 - iv) Provide details of performance in inter-*laboratory* validation tests (ring tests), including the most recent results and, if applicable, the corrective measures applied;
 - v) Provide details of the handling of live pathogenic agent, including a description of the biosecurity and biosafety measures applied;
 - vi) Provide a table identifying the tests carried out by each of the *laboratories* where they are performed, the quality accreditation and biosecurity standards followed and the proficiency tests carried out.
- b) If AHS *laboratory* diagnosis is not carried out in the country, provide the names of the *laboratories* in other countries providing the service as well as the arrangements in place, including logistics for shipment of samples and the time frame for reporting results.

5. AHS surveillance

Provide documentary evidence that *surveillance* for AHS in the *zone* complies with Articles 12.1.11. to 12.1.13. of the *Terrestrial Code*, and Chapter 3.5.1. of the *Terrestrial Manual*. The following information should be included:

- a) What are the criteria for raising a suspicion of AHS? What is the procedure to notify (by whom and to whom) and what incentives are there for reporting and what penalties are involved for failure to report?
- b) Describe how clinical *surveillance* is conducted, including which equine sectors are included in clinical *surveillance*, such as *establishments*, markets, fairs, *slaughterhouses/abattoirs*, check points, etc.

Provide a summary table indicating, for the past 24 months, the number of suspected cases, the number of samples tested for AHS, species, type of sample, testing methods and results (including differential diagnosis). Provide an indication of the timelines of the response including completion of testing to confirm or exclude AHS. Provide details of follow-up actions taken on all suspicious and positive results.

- c) Other *surveillance*. Is *surveillance* undertaken as described in Article 12.1.13., specifically:
 - i) Serological *surveillance*.
 - ii) Virological *surveillance* including genome or antigen detection.

iii) Sentinel animals.

iv) *Vector surveillance*.

If so, provide detailed information on the target population, design prevalence, confidence level, sample size, stratification, sampling methods and diagnostic tests used in accordance with Articles 12.1.11. and 12.1.13. of the *Terrestrial Code*. How frequently are they conducted? Which equine species are included? Are *wildlife* species included? If not, explain the rationale.

Provide a summary table and maps indicating detailed results for at least the past 24 months. Provide details of follow-up actions taken on all suspicious and positive results and how these findings are acted upon. Provide criteria for selection of *populations* for targeted surveillance and numbers of equids examined and samples tested in diagnostic *laboratories*. Provide details of the methods selected and applied for monitoring the performance of the *surveillance* programme including indicators.

- d) Provide information on risks in the different equine sectors, and provide evidence that targeted studies are implemented to address gaps (e.g. targeted serological surveys, active *surveillance*, participatory epidemiology studies, *risk assessments*, etc.). Provide evidence of how the knowledge acquired through these activities assisted in more effective implementation of control measures.
- e) Provide details of the oversight of *surveillance* programmes by the *Veterinary Services* including training programmes for personnel involved in clinical, serological and virological *surveillance*, and the approaches used to increase community involvement in AHS *surveillance* programmes.

6. AHS prevention

Describe the procedures in place to prevent the introduction of AHS into the country or *zone*, including details of:

- a) Coordination with other countries. Describe any relevant factors in neighbouring countries and *zones* that should be taken into account (e.g. size, distance from the border to affected *herds* or animals, wind currents and possible *vector* spread)? Describe coordination, collaboration and information-sharing activities with other countries and *zones* in the same region or ecosystem.

If the AHS free *zone* is established in an AHS infected country or borders an infected country or *zone*, describe the animal health measures implemented to effectively prevent the introduction of the pathogenic agent or *vectors*, taking into consideration the seasonal *vector* conditions and existing physical, geographical and ecological barriers.

Are *protection zones* in place? If so, indicate whether or not the *protection zones* are included in the proposed free *zones*. Provide details of the measures that are applied (e.g. *vaccination*, intensified *surveillance*, density control of susceptible species), and provide a geo-referenced map of the *zones*.

- b) Describe the measures implemented to effectively prevent the introduction of the pathogenic agent, taking into consideration physical or geographical barriers. Describe the measures implemented to prevent the spread of the pathogenic agent within the country or *zone*. Provide evidence that measures to reduce transmission of AHS are in place at markets, such as enhancing awareness of AHS transmission mechanisms and human behaviour that can interrupt transmission, and implementation of good *biosecurity*, hygiene and *disinfection* routines at critical points all along the production and marketing networks (typically where animals are being moved and marketed through the country or region).
- c) Import control procedures

Provide information on countries, *zones* or *compartments* from which the country authorises the import of susceptible animals or their products into the country or *zone*. Describe the criteria applied to approve such countries, *zones* or *compartments*, the controls applied to entry of such animals and products, and subsequent internal movement. Describe the import measures (e.g. quarantine) and test procedures required. Advise whether imported animals of susceptible species are required to undergo a quarantine or isolation period and, if so, the duration and location of quarantine. Advise whether import permits and *international veterinary certificates* are required.

Describe any other procedures used for assessing the *risks* posed by import of susceptible animals or their products. Provide summary statistics on imports of susceptible animals and their products for at least the past 24 months, including temporary import and re-entry, specifying countries, *zones* or *compartments* of origin, species and the quantity or volume and eventual destination in the country or *zone*. Provide information on whether or not *outbreaks* have been related to imports or transboundary movements of domestic equids.

- i) Provide a map showing the number and location of all ports, airports and land border crossings. Describe the management structure, staffing levels and resources of the service responsible for import controls and its accountability to the *Veterinary Authority*. Describe the communication systems between the *Veterinary Authority* and the *border posts*, and between *border posts*.

- ii) Cite the regulations and describe procedures, type and frequency of checks, and management of noncompliance at the points of entry into the zone or their final destination, concerning the import and follow-up of the following:
- equids;
 - genetic material (semen, oocytes and embryos of the equine species);
 - equine derived (by-)products;
 - *veterinary medicinal products*.

7. Control measures and contingency planning

- a) List any written guidelines, including contingency plans, available to the *Veterinary Services* for dealing with suspected or confirmed *outbreaks* of AHS. The contingency plan should be attached as an annex in one of the WOAH official languages. If not available, provide a brief summary of what is covered. Provide information on any simulation exercise for AHS that was conducted in the country in the past five years.
- b) In the event of a suspected or confirmed AHS *outbreak*:
 - i) Are quarantine measures imposed on *establishments* with suspected *cases*, pending final diagnosis? What other procedures are followed with respect to suspected *cases* (e.g. standstills)?
 - ii) Indicate the sampling, dispatch and testing procedures that would be used to identify and confirm presence of the pathogenic agent;
 - iii) Describe the actions that would be taken to control the disease situation in and around the *establishments* where the *outbreak* is confirmed;
 - iv) Provide a detailed description of the control or *eradication* procedures (e.g. forward and backward tracing, movement control, *disinfection* of *establishments*, *vehicles* and equipment, including verification methods, *vaccination*, *stamping-out policy*, vector-protected stabling, methods of disposal of carcasses and other contaminated products or materials, decontamination, campaigns to promote awareness of farmers) that would be taken. In the case of emergency *vaccination*, indicate the source and type of vaccine and provide details of any vaccine supply scheme and stocks;
 - v) Describe the criteria and procedures that would be used to confirm that an *outbreak* has been successfully controlled or eradicated, including restocking strategies, use of sentinel animals, serological surveillance programmes, etc.;
 - vi) Give details of any compensation that would be made available to owners, farmers, etc. when animals are slaughtered for disease control or *eradication* purposes and the prescribed timetable for payments;
 - vii) Describe how control efforts, including *vaccination* and *biosecurity*, would target critical risk control points.

8. Recovery of free status

Member Countries applying for recognition of recovery of free status for a zone should comply with the provisions of Article 12.1.5. of the *Terrestrial Code* and provide detailed information as specified in Sections 3 a), 3 b), 3 c) and 6 of this questionnaire. Information in relation to other sections need only be supplied if relevant.

NB: FIRST ADOPTED IN 2009; MOST RECENT UPDATE ADOPTED IN 2024.

CHAPTER 1.8.

APPLICATION FOR OFFICIAL RECOGNITION BY WOAH OF RISK STATUS FOR BOVINE SPONGIFORM ENCEPHALOPATHY

Article 1.8.1.

General principles

In accordance with Article 11.4.3., the bovine spongiform encephalopathy (BSE) risk of a country or *zone* is determined on the basis of a *risk assessment* that evaluates the risk of the classical BSE agent being recycled within the bovine (*Bos indicus* and *Bos taurus*) population by identifying all potential factors associated with the occurrence of BSE, the ongoing implementation of a *surveillance* programme, and the history of occurrence and management of BSE.

A *case* of BSE is defined in point 3 of Article 11.4.1.

The information specified in Articles 1.8.2. to 1.8.6. should be provided by WOAH Member Countries in support of their application for official recognition of BSE risk status in accordance with Chapter 11.4. of the *Terrestrial Code*. The structure of the dossier should follow guidelines provided in the 'Standard Operating Procedure for official recognition of disease status and for the endorsement of national official control programmes of Member Countries' (available on the WOAH website).

Each element of the core document of the dossier provided to WOAH should be clearly and concisely addressed, with an explanation, where relevant, of how each one complies with the provisions of the *Terrestrial Code* for the BSE risk status for which the Member is applying. The rationale leading to the conclusions reached for each section needs to be clearly explained and, as appropriate, figures, tables and maps should be provided. The core document of the dossier should include the following sections:

- legislation
- veterinary system
- BSE risk assessment
- BSE surveillance
- the history of occurrence and management of BSE in the country or *zone*.

The dossier should indicate the date from which it can be considered that the risk of BSE agents being recycled within the bovine population has been negligible.

The terminology defined in the *Terrestrial Code* and *Terrestrial Manual* should be referred to and used in the dossier. The dossier and all of its annexes should be provided in one of the WOAH official languages.

Article 1.8.2.

Legislation

Provide a table listing all relevant legislation, regulations, *Veterinary Authority* directives, legal instruments, rules, orders, acts, decrees, etc., related to BSE. For each, provide the date of promulgation and implementation as well as a brief description of the relevance to mitigating the risks associated with BSE. The table should include the legislation, regulations and directives referred to in the core document of the dossier. These instruments may be provided as annexes or as weblinks to supporting documents.

Article 1.8.3.

Veterinary system

The quality of the *Veterinary Services* of a Member is important to the establishment and maintenance of confidence in its *international veterinary certificates* by the *Veterinary Services* of other Members (Article 3.2.1.). It also supports an evaluation of the BSE risk status of a country or *zone*.

- 1) Describe how the *Veterinary Services* of the country comply with the provisions of Chapters 1.1., 3.2. and 3.3.
- 2) The applicant Member may provide information on any recent (not older than five years) PVS evaluation conducted in the country and follow-up steps within the PVS Pathway, and highlight the results relevant to BSE.
- 3) Describe how the *Veterinary Services* supervise, control, enforce and monitor all BSE-related activities.
- 4) Provide a description of the involvement and the participation of industry; bovine breeders, owners and keepers; private *veterinarians*; *veterinary paraprofessionals*; transporters; workers at livestock *markets*, auctions and *slaughterhouses/abattoirs*; and other relevant non-governmental stakeholders in the control of BSE.
- 5) Describe the official bovine identification, registration, *traceability* and movement control system. Provide evidence of its effectiveness. In the table under Article 1.8.2., provide any legislation, regulation or directives relevant to this topic. Indicate whether there are any industry associations or organisations involved in bovine identification, registration, *traceability* and movement control systems that provide guidance, set standards or provide third party audits; include a description of their role, membership and interaction with the *Veterinary Services* or relevant *Competent Authorities*.

Article 1.8.4.

BSE risk assessment (point 1 of Article 11.4.4.)

1. Entry assessment (point 1 a) of Article 11.4.3.)

As described in Article 11.4.3., an entry assessment evaluates the likelihood that the classical BSE agent has been introduced into the country or *zone* through the importation of *commodities*.

For the purposes of undertaking an entry assessment, the period of interest is the preceding eight years (Articles 11.4.4. and 11.4.5.).

The *commodities* to be considered in the entry assessment are:

- bovines;
 - ruminant-derived *protein meal*;
 - *feed* (except packaged and labelled pet food) that contains ruminant-derived *protein meal*;
 - fertilizers that contain ruminant-derived *protein meal*;
 - any other *commodity* that either is or could be contaminated by *commodities* listed in Article 11.4.15.
- a) For each *commodity* listed above indicate whether they were imported in the preceding eight years, and, if so, from which countries.

For each *commodity* listed above describe the import requirements applied by the applicant country or *zone* and how they are related to the BSE risk status of the *exporting country or zone* and whether or not they are consistent with, or provide an equivalent level of assurance to, the recommendations laid out in Chapter 11.4. for the importation of such a *commodity*. Where the import requirements are not consistent with the recommendations in Chapter 11.4. but are considered to provide an equivalent level of assurance, provide an explanation outlining the rationale and supporting evidence. In situations where an import requirement does not provide an equivalent level of assurance to the relevant measure in Chapter 11.4., provide an explanation of how this is likely to impact the entry assessment.

Describe the importation process for these *commodities* and how are they controlled, regulated and monitored by the *Competent Authority* with references as appropriate to the relevant legislation in the table under Article 1.8.2. Provide supporting evidence of the importation process including, where relevant, import permits or their equivalent, and examples of *international veterinary certificates* issued by *exporting countries*.

Describe the intended end use of the imported *commodities*, for example: bovines may be imported for breeding or immediate *slaughter*; rendered products may be imported for incorporation into *feed* for

non-ruminant species such as pigs or *poultry*. Provide information on any systems in place to monitor or track imported *commodities* and their results to ensure they are used as intended.

Describe the actions available under national legislation to prevent illegal introduction of the *commodities* considered above and provide information on any illegal introductions detected and the actions taken.

b) Conclusions for the entry assessment

Given the sanitary measures applied (if any), what was the likelihood that, during the preceding eight years, any of the *commodities*, in the form that they were imported, harboured or were contaminated by the classical BSE agent?

Clearly and concisely describe the rationale leading to the conclusions reached.

2. Exposure assessment (point 1 b) of Article 11.4.3.)

As described in Article 11.4.3., an exposure assessment evaluates the likelihood of bovines being exposed to the classical BSE agent either through imported *commodities* or as a result of the presence of classical BSE within the bovine population of the country or *zone*.

For the purposes of undertaking an exposure assessment for the evaluation of BSE status, the period of interest is the preceding eight years (Articles 11.4.4. and 11.4.5.). At its discretion, the applicant Member may provide the information requested for a different period (i.e. longer than eight years for those applying for a negligible risk status, or for the period for which they have the information if applying for a controlled risk status) to indicate the date from which the risk of BSE agents being recycled within the bovine population has been negligible.

As indicated in point 1 b) of Article 11.4.3., the first step in the exposure assessment involves an evaluation of the impact of livestock industry practices on preventing bovines from being fed ruminant-derived *protein meal* and, depending on the outcome of this step, an evaluation of the impact of specific mitigation measures on preventing bovines from being fed ruminant-derived *protein meal*.

a) Livestock industry practices (point 1 b) i) of Article 11.4.3.)

Because oral exposure to contaminated *feed* is the principal route of transmission of BSE, the exposure assessment begins with a detailed description of the bovine population and associated industry practices, with a particular emphasis on: feeding practices; disposal of dead animals and waste from slaughtered animals; rendering; and production, labelling, distribution and storage of *feed* that may lead to bovines being exposed to potentially contaminated *feed*.

The intent of this section is not to describe the implementation and enforcement of measures specifically targeting the exposure of the bovine population to BSE agents (such as a legislated *feed ban*) as they will be considered where relevant in point b) *An evaluation of BSE specific mitigation measures*. The intention here is to evaluate the likelihood and extent of exposure of the bovine population to the classical BSE agent, given the ongoing livestock industry practices in a country or *zone*.

i) Demographics of the bovine population and production and farming systems

Describe the composition of the bovine population and how the bovine industry is structured in the country or *zone* considering the types of production such as dairy, beef rearing and beef finishing, and the farming systems, such as intensive, extensive, semi-intensive, transhumant, pastoral, agropastoral, and mixed-species farming. The description should include the number and size of *herds* in each type of production and farming system.

ii) Feeding practices

For each type of production system, describe the rearing and production practices related to feeding ruminants of various ages, including the types of *feed* and *feed ingredients* (animal or plant based). Where animal-based ingredients are used, describe whether or not they are derived from rendered products of ruminant or non-ruminant origin as well as the respective proportions used.

Provide an indication of the proportion of the national *feed* production prepared commercially (including local mills) or mixed on farm using either imported or domestically produced ingredients.

Describe whether or not fertilisers containing ruminant-derived *protein meal*, composted materials derived from fallen stock (i.e. bovines of any age which were found dead or were killed on a farm, during transportation, at livestock *markets* or auctions, or at a *slaughterhouse/abattoir*), *slaughterhouse/abattoir* waste or animals condemned at ante-mortem inspections or any other materials derived from or that incorporate ruminant proteins are applied to land where bovines graze or where forage is harvested for feeding to bovines. Where such fertilisers are used, provide information on the extent and frequency of use and any risk mitigation measures to prevent accidental ingestion.

Describe, for mixed-species farms that include ruminants, the number and size of such farms and whether or not there are any practices in place to ensure that ruminants are not likely to be fed with *feed*

meant for non-ruminant species or that ruminant *feed* is not likely to be cross-contaminated with *feed* intended for non-ruminants that may contain rendered products of ruminant origin.

iii) Slaughtering and waste management practices

Describe the practices for fallen stock, including bovines euthanised as part of a BSE *surveillance* programme under Article 11.4.20., with particular reference to their transportation, disposal or destruction, including composting, burial, rendering or incineration. In the table under Article 1.8.2., provide any legislation, regulation or directives relevant to this topic.

Describe the places where bovines are slaughtered (for example, on farm, at a *slaughterhouse/abattoir* or *market*) together with the respective proportions and associated ages.

Describe whether or not places where animals are slaughtered are required to be registered or approved by the *Veterinary Services* or relevant *Competent Authority* and if they are subject to official veterinary supervision. In the table under Article 1.8.2., provide any legislation, regulation or directives relevant to this topic.

Describe how animals condemned at ante-mortem inspection and waste declared as unfit for human consumption from slaughtered animals are processed, disposed of or destroyed, including composting, burial, rendering, incineration or other industrial uses such as salvaging and crushing bones for use in animal *feed*. In the table under Article 1.8.2., provide any legislation, regulation or directives relevant to this topic.

iv) Rendering practices

Rendering is a process by which animal material is transformed into products such as *protein meal* that may be used in animal *feed*. It provides a pathway for the introduction of the classical BSE agent into the animal feed chain.

Describe whether or not there are any rendering facilities in the country or *zone*, if they are required to be registered or approved by the *Veterinary Services* or relevant *Competent Authority* and if they are subject to official veterinary control or supervision. In the table under Article 1.8.2., provide any legislation, regulation or directives relevant to this topic.

Using tables as appropriate, for each of the preceding eight years, provide a breakdown of the number of rendering facilities operating, indicating for each facility:

- the source and types of raw materials handled;
- whether or not they receive and process material from a particular species or process mixed materials including those derived from ruminants;
- whether or not ruminant waste is segregated from non-ruminant waste and if so how segregation is maintained to avoid potential cross-contamination of non-ruminant rendered materials during processing, storage and transport of rendered products, for example through dedicated lines, storage bins or silos, transport vehicles or establishments;
- the parameters of the rendering process (time, temperature, pressure, etc.);
- the type and intended end use of the rendered products. If available, provide the amount of rendered products produced annually by type and intended end use;
- if materials derived from imported bovines are managed differently, describe the process.

Indicate if there are any industry associations or organisations involved in the rendering industry that provide guidance, set standards or provide third party audits in relation to Hazard Analysis and Critical Control Points (HACCP) programmes, *good manufacturing practices*, etc. Include a description of their role, membership and interaction with the *Veterinary Services* or relevant *Competent Authorities*.

v) Feed production, labelling, distribution and storage

Where rendered products are used as ingredients in the production of animal *feed* the exposure of bovines to the classical BSE agent may arise as a result of the use of rendered products containing materials of ruminant origin as ingredients in bovine *feed* or as a result of bovine *feed* being cross-contaminated when such products are used in the production of *feed* for other species.

Describe whether facilities producing *feed* for ruminant or non-ruminant livestock as well as for pets are required to be registered or approved by the *Veterinary Services* or relevant *Competent Authority* and if

they are subject to official veterinary control or supervision. In the table under Article 1.8.2., provide any legislation, regulation or directives relevant to this topic.

For each of the preceding eight years, provide a breakdown using tables as appropriate of the number and types of facilities producing *feed*, indicating for each facility:

- whether or not rendered ruminant products, excluding those listed in Article 11.4.2., were used as ingredients in *feed* for ruminants, non-ruminants and pets;
- whether or not each facility was dedicated to manufacturing *feed* for a particular species or manufactured *feed* for multiple species including ruminants.

Where facilities manufactured *feed* for multiple species including ruminants, indicate whether or not there were any practices in place to avoid ruminant feeds from being contaminated with rendered ruminant products during *feed* manufacture, storage and transport.

Indicate if there are any industry associations or organisations involved in *feed* production, distribution and storage that provide guidance, set standards or provide third party audits in relation to HACCP programmes, *good manufacturing practices*, etc. Include a description of their role, membership and interaction with the *Veterinary Services* or relevant *Competent Authorities*.

- vi) Conclusions for livestock industry practices
- Given the livestock industry practices described above, is the likelihood that the bovine population has been exposed to the classical BSE agent during the preceding eight years negligible or non-negligible?
 - Clearly and concisely describe the rationale leading to the conclusion reached.
 - Where the likelihood estimate is negligible, proceed to *Section 4) Risk estimation*.
 - Where the likelihood estimate is non-negligible, proceed to *Section b) An evaluation of BSE specific mitigation measures*.
- b) An evaluation of BSE-specific risk mitigation measures (point 1 b) ii) of Article 11.4.3.)
- For those countries that have reported cases of BSE in indigenous bovines, it is apparent that their historic livestock industry practices did not prevent the recycling of the classical BSE agent within their bovine populations. These countries, together with others whose livestock industry practices would have been conducive to recycling, may have implemented specific measures, notably through a legislated *feed* ban, to ensure that the likelihood of recycling would be negligible. To qualify for official recognition of a BSE risk status, these countries need to demonstrate that these measures specifically targeting BSE have been and continue to be effectively implemented and enforced.
- i) The nature and scope of a feed ban
- Indicate whether there is a ban on feeding ruminants with *protein meal* derived from ruminants.
- Where a *feed* ban has been implemented, clearly and concisely describe the date it was introduced, its nature and scope and how it has evolved over time.
- In addition, if the *feed* ban has been implemented through national legislation, provide pertinent information in the table under Article 1.8.2. and a summary of any relevant legislation with references as appropriate.
- ii) Commodities with the greatest BSE infectivity
- Indicate whether any of those *commodities* listed in point 1 of Article 11.4.15. are removed from the carcass at the time of *slaughter* or subsequent fabrication or processing.
- If so, also:
- Describe how they are disposed of or destroyed through burial, composting, rendering, alkaline hydrolysis, thermal hydrolysis, gasification, incineration, etc.
 - Describe any measures in place that ensure *slaughter* waste declared as unfit for human consumption that is rendered is not contaminated with these *commodities*.
 - Describe whether these *commodities* from fallen stock and animals condemned at ante-mortem inspection are excluded from rendering and how this is done.
 - Where these *commodities* are not removed from fallen stock, animals condemned at ante-mortem inspection, or *slaughter* waste declared as unfit for human consumption, describe their final disposal, and how it is handled and processed.
 - Describe whether or not all these processes and methods are subject to approval and oversight by the *Veterinary Services* or relevant *Competent Authority*.
- In addition, if there is specific national legislation concerning the definition, identification, removal and disposal or destruction of those *commodities* listed in point 1 of Article 11.4.15., provide pertinent information in the table under Article 1.8.2. and a summary of any relevant legislation with references as appropriate.

iii) Parameters of the rendering process

Describe whether or not the parameters of the rendering process are prescribed in legislation and if they are consistent with, or provide an equivalent level of assurance to, the procedures for the reduction of BSE infectivity in bovine-derived *protein meal* as described in Article 11.4.19. Provide details of the legislation, if applicable, in the table under Article 1.8.2.

iv) Cross-contamination

Describe the measures in place to prevent cross-contamination during rendering, *feed* production, transport, storage and feeding such as dedicated facilities, lines and equipment, as well as measures to prevent misfeeding, such as the use of warning labels. Provide information as to whether any of these measures are prescribed in legislation and if facilities involved in rendering and *feed* production are required to be registered or approved under the *feed* ban by the *Veterinary Services* or relevant *Competent Authority*.

v) Awareness programme under the scope of the feed ban

Provide information on the existence of any ongoing awareness programmes or other forms of guidance given to all those stakeholders involved in rendering, *feed* production, transport, storage, distribution, sale and feeding under the scope of the *feed* ban. Provide examples of communication materials including publications, brochures and pamphlets.

vi) Monitoring and enforcement of the feed ban

Describe how the *feed* ban, if implemented, has been and continues to be monitored and enforced. Provide information on:

- official oversight from the *Veterinary Authority*, other *Competent Authority* or an *approved third party*;
- training and accreditation programmes for inspectors;
- the planned frequency of inspections and the procedures involved including manuals and inspection forms;
- sampling programmes and *laboratory* testing methods used to check the level of compliance with the *feed* ban and cross-contamination;
- options available to deal with infractions (non-compliance) such as recalls, destruction and monetary penalties.

Provide information on the ongoing results of the official inspection programme for each of the preceding eight years, using tables as appropriate:

- planned *versus* actual delivery inspections at rendering facilities, *feed* mills, farms, etc., with an explanation of any significant variation and how it may have impacted the programme;
- number and type of samples taken during inspections to verify that ruminant *feed* does not contain or is not cross-contaminated with rendered products containing ruminant material (excluding those listed in Article 11.4.2.). Provide information by year, by source (rendering facility, *feed* mill or farm), indicating the *laboratory* test(s) used and the results obtained;
- the types of infractions (non-compliance) that occurred and corrective actions undertaken;
- any infractions (non-compliance) that were likely to have led to bovines being exposed to *feed* contaminated with ruminant material (excluding those listed in Article 11.4.2.) and how they were resolved.

vii) Conclusions for the evaluation of BSE-specific risk mitigation measures

- In evaluating the effectiveness of a *feed* ban, if implemented, for each of the preceding eight years, consideration needs to be given to:
 - the management of *commodities* listed in point 1 of Article 11.4.15., and the associated likelihood that these materials, or other materials cross-contaminated by them, may have entered the animal feed chain;
 - the rendering industry and the associated likelihood that rendered products containing ruminant material may retain BSE infectivity;
 - the *feed* industry and the associated likelihood that *feed* for bovines may contain or has been cross-contaminated with ruminant-derived *protein meal*.
- Given the evaluation of BSE-specific risk mitigation measures and their enforcement as described above, is the likelihood that, during the preceding eight years, the bovine population has been exposed to the classical BSE agent negligible or non-negligible?
- Clearly and concisely describe the rationale leading to the conclusion reached.
- Where the likelihood estimate is negligible, proceed to *Section 4) Risk estimation*.

- Where the likelihood estimate is non-negligible, proceed to *Section 3) Consequence assessment*.

3. Consequence assessment (point 1 c) of Article 11.4.3.)

As described in Article 11.4.3., a consequence assessment evaluates the likelihood of bovines becoming infected following exposure to the classical BSE agent together with the likely extent and duration of any subsequent recycling and amplification.

For the purposes of undertaking a consequence assessment for the evaluation of BSE risk status, the period of interest is the preceding eight years.

Considering that, for all practical purposes, oral exposure to contaminated *feed* is the principal, if not the only, route of transmission of the classical BSE agent, to initiate a cycle of BSE infectivity within a bovine population the following series of events would need to unfold:

- *commodities* listed in point 1 of Article 11.4.15. from an infected animal are included in raw materials that are rendered into ruminant-derived *protein meal*;
- the rendering process does not destroy BSE infectivity;
- the ruminant-derived *protein meal* is incorporated as an ingredient in bovine *feed*, or bovine *feed* is cross-contaminated during *feed* production, distribution and storage, or bovines are incorrectly fed with *feed* intended for non-ruminant species that includes the ruminant-derived *protein meal* as an ingredient;
- one or more animals that ingest contaminated *feed* become infected;
- the infected animal survives long enough to reach the later stages of a protracted incubation period when the levels of the classical BSE agent in those *commodities* listed in point 1 of Article 11.4.15. would begin to rise dramatically;
- *commodities* listed in point 1 of Article 11.4.15. are then included in raw materials that are rendered into ruminant-derived *protein meal*, completing one cycle.

Recycling arises when this cycle is repeated one or more times. Any level of recycling within a given period is sufficient to conclude that the consequences of exposure to contaminated *feed* for that period within the bovine population are non-negligible.

a) Factors to consider when evaluating the likely extent of recycling of the classical BSE agent within a bovine population:

i) Age at exposure

Animals less than 12 months of age are considered to be much more susceptible to *infection* than older animals, which are likely to be increasingly refractory to *infection* as they mature.

ii) Production type

- Calves reared as replacement animals for the breeding herd

Bovines exposed to the classical BSE agent at less than 12 months of age and destined to enter the breeding *herd* are much more likely to become infected and survive long enough to reach the later stages of a protracted incubation period when the levels of the classical BSE agent in those *commodities* listed in point 1 of Article 11.4.15. would begin to rise dramatically. If these materials were rendered and subsequently contaminated bovine *feed*, it is highly likely that some level of recycling would occur.

- Feedlot bovines

Even if bovines reared in a feedlot that were destined to be slaughtered within the next two to six months were to become infected after consuming contaminated *feed*, the likelihood that they would have reached the later stages of a protracted incubation period (when the levels of the classical BSE agent in those *commodities* listed in point 1 of Article 11.4.15. would begin to rise dramatically) would essentially be negligible.

Considering that mature bovines are likely to be much more refractory to *infection* than animals within their first year of life, even if they were to consume contaminated *feed*, it is highly unlikely that those *commodities* listed in point 1 of Article 11.4.15. would pose a threat if they were rendered and subsequently contaminated bovine *feed*.

iii) The impact of livestock industry practices or the implementation of measures under a feed ban

When evaluating the potential for the recycling of the classical BSE agent within the bovine population where an infraction (non-compliance) has occurred that may have led to *feed* being contaminated, it is important to consider the impact of both the livestock industry practices and the ongoing measures under a *feed* ban. Even if an infraction that arose several years ago led to susceptible young animals becoming infected, in evaluating the likelihood of recycling in future years, consideration would need to be given to the effectiveness of the *feed* ban in subsequent years or whether or not any changes to livestock industry practices may have influenced the exposure risk.

b) Conclusions for the consequence assessment

Where the outcome of the evaluation of livestock industry practices or the evaluation of BSE-specific mitigation measures that include the nature and scope of the *feed ban* and its enforcement has concluded that there was a non-negligible likelihood that the bovine population has been exposed to the classical BSE agent, what is the likelihood that they have been recycled within the bovine population during the preceding eight years?

Clearly describe the rationale leading to the conclusions reached.

4. Risk estimation (point 1 d) of Article 11.4.3.)

As described in Article 11.4.3., risk estimation combines the results and the conclusions arising from the entry, exposure and consequence assessments to provide an overall measure of the risk of the classical BSE agent being recycled within the bovine population.

- a) Provide a summary of the entry and exposure assessments and the conclusions reached.
- b) If applicable, provide a summary of the consequence assessment, and the conclusions reached.

Article 1.8.5.

Surveillance (point 2 of Article 11.4.4.)

Article 11.4.20. describes the criteria that underpin a credible *surveillance* programme, together with an overview of the range and progression of clinical signs that bovines affected by BSE are likely to exhibit.

Requirements under point 2 of Article 11.4.20. are focused on subsets of the bovine population where BSE is more likely to be detected.

The Member applying for recognition of a negligible or a controlled BSE risk status should submit documentary evidence that the provisions of point 3 of Article 11.4.20. have been effectively implemented.

For the purposes of *surveillance*, the period of interest is the preceding eight years (Articles 11.4.4. and 11.4.5.).

1. Awareness and training programmes (point 3 a) of Article 11.4.20.)

Ongoing awareness and training programmes are essential to ensure that all stakeholders are familiar with clinical signs suggestive of BSE (those described in point 1 of Article 11.4.20.) as well as their statutory reporting requirements.

- a) Describe the stakeholder groups targeted for BSE awareness and training programmes. Describe the methods used to identify stakeholder groups within the jurisdiction and methods used to identify how, for example, the size and characteristics of the stakeholder group changes over time.
- b) Describe the type(s) of awareness and training programmes implemented for specific stakeholder groups. Describe how these programmes are adapted to meet the specific obligations and activities of each stakeholder group involved in caring for livestock, as well as the protocols for sample collection and submission by *veterinarians* and animal health technicians.
- c) Provide information on the number of awareness and training activities, the stakeholder groups targeted, the number of individuals reached per activity (if available), and the geographical coverage of these activities.
- d) Provide a description including examples of materials used in the awareness programme such as training manuals, supporting documents such as publications in local newspapers and farming magazines, pamphlets and videos (weblinks to supporting documents in one of the WOAH official languages may also be provided, where they exist).
- e) Provide details on how the effectiveness of the awareness and training programmes is evaluated.
- f) Provide details of any contingency or preparedness plan for BSE.

2. BSE reporting system (point 3 b) of Article 11.4.20.)

- a) Describe the BSE reporting system, including the date of implementation of any supporting legislation and associated policies making BSE a *notifiable disease*. Indicate if a definition for a suspicion of BSE exists. If appropriate, outline relevant legislation in the table under Article 1.8.2.
- b) Describe the supportive measures in place for targeting animals that show signs of the clinical spectrum of BSE and for reporting of animals described in points 2 a) to 2 d) of Article 11.4.20., such as incentives, compensations or penalties.

- c) Describe the guidance given to all stakeholders involved in the rearing and production of livestock including bovine breeders, owners and keepers, *veterinarians*, transporters, and workers at livestock *markets*, auctions and *slaughterhouses/abattoirs* in terms of the criteria for reporting. What mechanisms are in place to ensure that these guidelines reach those stakeholders?
 - d) Describe the evaluation of the reporting system. Has this reporting system evolved over time and, if so, how?
3. Laboratory testing (point 3 c) of Article 11.4.20.)
- Provide documentary evidence that the relevant provisions of Chapter 3.4.5. of the *Terrestrial Manual* are applied, including the following:
- a) If BSE samples are submitted to *laboratories* in the country for testing, provide an overview of how they are approved or certified, their number, location and diagnostic procedures and the time frame for reporting results.
 - b) If the BSE samples are not submitted to *laboratories* in the country for testing, or if suspicious or positive samples are referred to *laboratories* outside the country, provide the names of the *laboratories* in other countries providing the service, as well as the arrangements in place, including logistics for shipment of samples and the time frame for reporting results.
 - c) Describe the diagnostic protocol and tests used for processing samples for BSE and how they may have evolved over time, indicating: the primary test used; the series of secondary tests performed, if any, depending on the results of the primary test (i.e. negative, positive and inconclusive); what test would be undertaken if discordant results arise between primary and secondary tests (e.g. primary positive result followed by a secondary negative result); and tests undertaken to discriminate classical BSE from atypical BSE.
4. Evaluation procedures and protocols to identify animals targeted for BSE surveillance, to determine animals to be subjected to laboratory testing, to collect and submit samples for laboratory testing, and to follow up BSE positive findings with epidemiological investigation (point 3 d) of Article 11.4.20.)
- Given that the incidence of BSE is likely to be very low in Member Countries it is important that *surveillance* efforts focus on subsets of the bovine population where disease is more likely to be detected.
- Considering that BSE is a progressive disease and that animals to be included in the *surveillance* programme may arise at the farm, the *slaughterhouse/abattoir*, or during transportation, procedures and protocols should be in place covering all points in the livestock production chain for: (1) the identification of animals showing signs of the clinical spectrum of BSE (e.g. by the breeder, owner or keeper, *animal handler*, *veterinarian*, etc.); (2) the criteria to determine which of these animals need to be reported and tested for BSE; (3) the collection and submission of samples for testing in a laboratory; and (4) a follow-up epidemiological investigation for BSE positive findings.
- It is important that appropriate procedures and protocols are in place to ensure that BSE can be definitively ruled out on the list of differential diagnoses.
- a) List the common bovine disorders with clinical signs compatible with BSE in the country or *zone*. If available, provide the incidence/prevalence of these disorders, ideally by production system (e.g. dairy, beef) and by age group.
 - b) Describe the procedures and protocols in place for reporting animals described in points 2 a) to 2 d) of Article 11.4.20. For example, these procedures and protocols may include the steps that a breeder, owner or keeper may follow once an animal with clinical signs suggestive of BSE is identified. These procedures and protocols should cover the clinical continuum of the disease spectrum ranging from clinical suspects to non-ambulatory to fallen stock.
 - c) Describe the procedures and protocols in place for the investigation of reported animals. For example, these procedures and protocols may include the range of clinical signs to be considered, and how the age, the clinical history of the animal and epidemiological data of the *herd* are taken into account. An evaluation procedure may, for example, be in the form of a protocol, a checklist or a decision tree, and should cover the clinical continuum of the disease spectrum ranging from clinical suspects to non-ambulatory to fallen stock.
 - d) Describe the methods applied to assess the age of animals investigated, such as individual identification or dentition.
 - e) Describe the procedures and protocols for the transport of live or dead animals for sampling, and transfer of samples to laboratories for testing, including details of the bovine identification system, the maintenance of the chain of custody of the carcass and the samples, and the reconciliation of samples with the animals they were collected from.
 - f) Provide the procedures and protocols for a follow-up epidemiological investigation of BSE positive results.

- g) Provide a summary table for each of the preceding eight years (Table 1) of the number of animals reported and the number of animals subjected to BSE testing for each clinical presentation (those in points 2 a) to 2 d) of Article 11.4.20.).

Table 1.		
Year: _____		
Table 1 - Summary of all animals that were reported and evaluated for testing by the Veterinary Authority		
Clinical presentation (see point 2 of Article 11.4.20.)	Number of reported animals	Number of animals subjected to BSE testing
(A) Bovines displaying progressive behavioural or neurological signs suggestive of BSE that are refractory to treatment		
(B) Bovines showing behavioural or neurological signs that did not pass the ante-mortem inspection at slaughterhouses/abattoirs		
(C) Bovines unable to rise or walk without assistance with an appropriate supporting clinical history		
(D) Bovines found dead (fallen stock) with an appropriate supporting clinical history		

5. Animals subjected to laboratory testing

Provide in Table 2, for each of the preceding eight years, details of all animals counted in Table 1 that were subjected to laboratory testing (see point 2 of Article 11.4.20.).

Table 2 - Details of the animals that were subjected to laboratory testing							
Year notified	Laboratory identification number or individual identification number	Age (in months) at the time of reporting	Type of production system (dairy, beef, mixed, etc.)	Description of observed clinical signs	Clinical presentation (A, B, C or D)	Final diagnosis (if BSE, specify if C, L or H type)	For a case of BSE, indicate the origin (indigenous or imported; if imported, indicate the country of birth)

Article 1.8.6.

History of occurrence and management of BSE in the country or zone (points 3 and 4 of Article 11.4.4.)

Describe the history of occurrence and management of BSE by providing the following documentary evidence:

- 1) If a case of BSE has ever been diagnosed in the country or zone, indicate the total number of cases of BSE, and:
 - a) Provide a table of aggregated data on all cases of BSE encountered in the country or zone, origin (indigenous or, if imported, the country of origin), and the year of birth;
 - b) For the past eight years, provide a table to indicate, for each case, the year of occurrence, the origin (indigenous or, if imported, the country of origin), and the year of birth of each indigenous case.
- 2) If there have been cases of BSE or bovines affected by atypical BSE, confirm that they were completely destroyed or disposed of to ensure they are excluded from the feed chain and describe how this was achieved. In the table under Article 1.8.2. provide details of the national legislation, regulations and Veterinary Authority directives that describe these procedures.

Article 1.8.7.

Maintenance of BSE risk status

Following the occurrence of an indigenous case of BSE in a bovine born after the date from which the risk of BSE agents being recycled within the bovine population has been negligible occur in a country or zone with a negligible or controlled BSE risk status, the outcome of the investigation together with any additional measures implemented that confirm or ensure that the risk of BSE agents being recycled within the bovine population continues to be negligible should be provided with reference to the provisions in Article 1.8.4. as appropriate. Information in relation to other sections need to only be supplied if relevant.

NB: FIRST ADOPTED IN 2009; MOST RECENT UPDATE ADOPTED IN 2023.

CHAPTER 1.9.

APPLICATION FOR OFFICIAL RECOGNITION BY WOAH OF FREE STATUS FOR CLASSICAL SWINE FEVER

Article 1.9.1.

Country or zone free from infection with classical swine fever virus

The following information should be provided by WOAH Member Countries to support applications for official recognition of status as a country or *zone* free from *infection* with classical swine fever (CSF) virus in accordance with Chapter 15.2. of the *Terrestrial Code*.

The dossier provided to WOAH should address concisely all the following topics under the headings provided to describe the actual situation in the country and the procedures currently applied, explaining how these comply with the *Terrestrial Code*.

The terminology defined in the WOAH *Terrestrial Code* and *Terrestrial Manual* should be referred to and used in compiling the dossier.

National legislation, regulations and *Veterinary Authority* directives may be referred to and annexed as appropriate in one of the WOAH official languages. Weblinks to supporting documents in one of the official languages of WOAH may also be provided, where they exist.

All annexes should be provided in one of the WOAH official languages.

The Delegate of the Member Country applying for recognition of CSF freedom for a country or *zone* must demonstrate compliance with the *Terrestrial Code*. That is, the Delegate should submit documentary evidence that the provisions of Article 15.2.3. have been properly implemented and supervised.

In addition, the Delegate of the Member Country must submit a declaration indicating that:

- 1) there has been no *outbreak* of CSF or evidence of CSFV *infection* in domestic and *captive wild* pigs in the country or *zone* during the past 12 months;
- 2) no *vaccination* against CSF has been carried out in domestic and *captive wild* pigs in the country or *zone* during the past 12 months; or, if *vaccination* is carried out, vaccinated and infected pigs can be distinguished by a means validated according to Chapter 3.8.3. of the *Terrestrial Manual*;
- 3) imported pigs and pig *commodities* comply with the relevant requirements in Chapter 15.2.

In addition, the Delegate of the Member Country applying for recognition of historical freedom must also submit documentary evidence that the provisions in Article 1.4.6. of the *Terrestrial Code* have been properly implemented and supervised.

1. Introduction

- a) Geographical features (rivers, mountain ranges, etc.). Provide a general description of the country and the *zone*, and where relevant of the region, including physical, geographical and other factors that are relevant to introduction of *infection* and spread of CSF virus, taking into account the countries or *zones* sharing common borders and other epidemiologic pathways for the potential introduction of *infection*.

The boundaries of the country or *zone* must be clearly defined, including a *protection zone* if applied. Provide maps identifying the features above, including a digitalised, geo-referenced map with a precise text

description of the geographical boundaries of the country or *zone*. Specify whether the application includes any non contiguous territories.

- b) Pig industry. Describe the composition of the domestic and *captive wild* pig industry in the country and the *zone*. In particular, describe:
- i) the types of production systems in the country and the *zone*;
 - ii) the number of *herds*;
 - iii) their geographical distribution;
 - iv) *herd density*;
 - v) the degree of integration and role of producer organisations in the different production systems;
 - vi) any recent significant changes observed in the production (attach relevant documents if available).
- Provide tables and maps.
- c) *Wildlife demographics*. What *captive wild*, *wild* or *feral* pigs are present in the country and the *zone*? Provide estimates of *population* sizes and geographic distribution. What are the measures in place to prevent contact between domestic and *captive wild* pigs, and *wild* and *feral* pig *populations*?
- d) *Slaughterhouses/abattoirs*, markets and events associated with the congregation of susceptible livestock (e.g. fairs, shows, competitions). Where are the major pig marketing or collection centres? What are the patterns of pig movement for marketing within the country or *zone*, and between *zones* of the same or different status? How are the pigs sourced, transported and handled during these transactions? What proportions of slaughtered pigs are subjected to meat inspection in different production systems? Provide maps as appropriate.

2. Veterinary system

- a) Legislation. Provide a table (and when available a weblink) listing all relevant veterinary legislation, regulations and *Veterinary Authority* directives in relation to CSF and a brief description of the relevance of each. The table should include, but not be limited to, the legislation on disease control measures and compensation systems.
- b) *Veterinary Services*. Describe how the *Veterinary Services* of the country comply with Chapters 1.1., 3.2. and 3.3. of the *Terrestrial Code*. Describe how the *Veterinary Services* supervise, control, enforce and monitor all CSF-related activities. Provide maps, figures and tables wherever possible.
- c) Provide information on any PVS evaluation conducted in the country and follow-up steps within the PVS Pathway and highlight the results relevant to CSF and pigs.
- d) Provide a description of the involvement and the participation of industry, producers, farmers, including subsistence and small-scale producers, keepers, *veterinary paraprofessionals* including community animal health workers, and other relevant groups in CSF *surveillance* and control. Provide a description of the role and structure of the private veterinary sector, including number of *veterinarians* and their distribution, in CSF *surveillance* and control. Include a description of continuing education and awareness programmes on CSF at all relevant levels.
- e) *Animal identification*, registration, traceability and movement control. Are pigs identified (individually or at a group level)? Provide a description of the traceability system, including methods of *animal identification* and *establishment* or *herd* registration, applicable to all susceptible species. How are pig movements controlled in the country or *zone*, or between *zones* of the same or different status for all susceptible species? Provide evidence of the effectiveness of *animal identification* and movement controls and a table describing the number, origin and destination of the pigs and their products moved within the country in the past 24 months. Describe the *risk management* strategy for uncontrolled movements of pigs.
- Describe the actions available under national legislation. Provide information on illegal movements detected in the past 24 months and the action taken.

3. CSF eradication

- a) History. If *infection* has never occurred in the country, or has not occurred within the past 25 years, state explicitly whether or not the country or *zone* is applying for recognition of historical freedom according to Article 1.4.6. of the *Terrestrial Code*.

If *infection* has occurred in the country or *zone* within the past 25 years, provide a description of the CSF history in the country and *zone*, with emphasis on recent years. If applicable, provide tables and maps showing the date of first detection, the sources and routes of introduction of *infection*, the temporal and spatial distribution (number and location of *outbreaks* per year), the pigs involved, and the date of last case or *eradication* in the country or *zone*.

- b) Strategy. Describe how CSF was controlled and eradicated in the country or *zone* (e.g. *stamping-out policy*, movement control, zoning). Provide the time frame for *eradication*. Describe and justify the corrective actions that have been implemented to prevent future *outbreaks* of CSF in response to any past incursions of CSF virus.
- c) Vaccines and *vaccination*. Briefly answer the following:
 - i) Is there any legislation that prohibits *vaccination*? If so:
 - Provide the date when *vaccination* was formally prohibited;
 - Provide information on cases of detection of illegal *vaccination* during the reporting period and actions taken in response to the detection.
 - ii) Was *vaccination* ever used in the country? If so:
 - Provide the date when the last *vaccination* was carried out;
 - What type of vaccine was used? If DIVA vaccine has been used, describe the type of differential tests and results;
 - Which pigs were vaccinated?
 - How were vaccinated pigs identified?
 - What was the fate of those pigs?
 - iii) In addition, if *vaccination* was applied during the past 24 months, provide a description and justification of the *vaccination* strategy and programme, including the following:
 - the vaccine serotypes;
 - the pigs vaccinated;
 - identification of vaccinated pigs;
 - the way in which the *vaccination* of pigs was certified or reported and the records maintained;
 - evidence that the vaccine used complies with Chapter 3.8.3. of the *Terrestrial Manual*.
- d) Provide a description of the legislation, organisation and implementation of the *eradication* campaign. Outline the legislation applicable to the *eradication* and how the campaign was organised at different levels. Indicate if detailed operational guidelines exist and give a brief summary.

4. CSF diagnosis

Provide documentary evidence that the relevant provisions of Chapters 1.1.2., 1.1.3. and 3.8.3. of the *Terrestrial Manual* are applied. The following points should be addressed:

- a) Is CSF *laboratory* diagnosis carried out in the country? If so, provide an overview of the CSF-approved *laboratories* in the country. Indicate the *laboratories* where samples originating from the *zone* are diagnosed. Address the following points:
 - i) How the work is shared between different *laboratories*, logistics for shipment of samples, the follow-up procedures and the time frame for reporting results;
 - ii) Details of test capability and the types of tests undertaken and their performance for their applied use (specificity and sensitivity per type of test). Provide details of the number of CSF tests performed in the past 24 months in national *laboratories* and in *laboratories* in other countries, if relevant;
 - iii) Procedures for quality assurance and for the official accreditation of *laboratories*. Give details of formal internal quality management systems, e.g. Good Laboratory Practice, ISO, etc. that exist in, or are planned for, the *laboratory* system;
 - iv) Provide details of performance in inter-*laboratory* validation tests (ring trials), including the most recent results and, if applicable, the corrective measures applied;
 - v) Provide details of the handling of live pathogenic agent, including a description of the biosecurity and biosafety measures applied;
 - vi) Provide a table identifying the tests carried out by each of the *laboratories* where they are performed, the quality accreditation and biosecurity standards followed and the proficiency tests carried out.
- b) If CSF *laboratory* diagnosis is not carried out in the country, provide the names of the *laboratories* in other countries providing the service as well as the arrangements in place, including logistics for shipment of samples and the time frame for reporting results.

5. CSF surveillance

Provide documentary evidence that *surveillance* for CSF in the country or *zone* complies with Articles 15.2.28. to 15.2.33. of the *Terrestrial Code*, and Chapter 3.8.3. of the *Terrestrial Manual*. The following information should be included:

- a) What are the criteria for raising a suspicion of CSF? What is the procedure to notify (by whom and to whom) and what incentives are there for reporting and what penalties are involved for failure to report?
 - b) Describe how clinical *surveillance* is conducted, including which sectors of the pig production system are included in clinical *surveillance*, such as *establishments*, markets, fairs, *slaughterhouses/abattoirs*, check points, etc.
- Provide a summary table indicating, for the past 24 months, the number of suspected cases, the number of samples tested for CSF, type of sample, testing methods and results (including differential diagnosis). Provide an indication of the timelines of the response including completion of testing to confirm or exclude CSF. Provide details of follow-up actions taken on all suspicious and positive results.
- c) Serological or virological *surveillance*. Are serological or virological surveys conducted? If so, provide detailed information on the target population, design prevalence, confidence level, sample size, stratification, sampling methods and diagnostic tests used in accordance with Articles 15.2.28. to 15.2.33. of the *Terrestrial Code*. How frequently are they conducted? Are *wild* and *feral* pigs included in *surveillance*? If not, explain the rationale.
- For both serological and virological *surveillance* provide a summary table indicating, for the past 24 months, the number of samples tested for CSF, type of sample, testing methods and results (including differential diagnosis). Include in the table the number of false-positive results obtained on screening tests. Provide details of follow-up actions taken on all suspicious and positive results and on how these findings are interpreted and acted upon. Provide criteria for selection of *populations* for targeted surveillance and numbers of pigs examined and samples tested in diagnostic *laboratories*. Provide details of the methods selected and applied for monitoring the performance of the *surveillance* programme including indicators.
- d) Provide information on risks in different husbandry systems, and provide evidence that targeted studies are implemented to address gaps (e.g. targeted serological surveys, active *surveillance*, participatory epidemiology studies, *risk assessments*, etc.). Provide evidence of how knowledge acquired through these activities assisted in more effective implementation of control measures.
 - e) Provide details of the oversight of *surveillance* programmes by the *Veterinary Services* including training programmes for personnel involved in clinical, serological and virological *surveillance*, and the approaches used to increase community involvement in CSF *surveillance* programmes.

6. CSF prevention

Describe the procedures in place to prevent the introduction of CSF into the country, including details of:

- a) Coordination with other countries. Describe any relevant factors in neighbouring countries or *zones* that should be taken into account (e.g. size, distance from the border to affected *herds* or animals). Describe coordination, collaboration and information-sharing activities with other countries and *zones* in the same region or ecosystem.

If the CSF free *zone* is established in a CSF infected country or borders an infected country or *zone*, describe the animal health measures implemented to effectively prevent the introduction of the pathogenic agent, taking into consideration existing physical or geographical barriers.

Are *protection zones* in place? If so, indicate whether or not the *protection zones* are included in the proposed free country or *zones*. Provide details of the measures that are applied (e.g. *vaccination*, intensified *surveillance*, density control of pigs), and provide a geo-referenced map of the *zones*.

- b) Describe the measures implemented to effectively prevent the introduction of the pathogenic agent, taking into consideration physical or geographical barriers. Describe the measures implemented to prevent the spread of the pathogenic agent within the country or *zone*. Provide evidence that measures to reduce transmission of CSF are in place at markets, such as enhancing awareness of CSF transmission mechanisms and human behaviour that can interrupt transmission, and implementation of good *biosecurity*, hygiene and *disinfection* routines at critical points all along the production and marketing networks (typically where animals are being moved and marketed through the country or region).
- c) What measures are taken to limit access of susceptible domestic, *captive wild*, *feral* and *wild* pigs to waste products of animal origin? Is the feeding of swill to pigs regulated? If so, provide information on the extent of the practice, and describe controls and *surveillance* measures.
- d) Import control procedures

Provide information on countries, *zones* or *compartments* from which the country authorises the import of pigs or their products into the country or *zone*. Describe the criteria applied to approve such countries, *zones* or *compartments*, the controls applied to entry of such pigs and products, and subsequent internal movement.

Describe the import measures (e.g. quarantine) and test procedures required. Advise whether imported pigs are required to undergo a quarantine or isolation period and, if so, the duration and location of quarantine. Advise whether import permits and *international veterinary certificates* are required.

Describe any other procedures used for assessing the *risks* posed by import of pigs or their products. Provide summary statistics on imports of pigs and their products for at least the past 24 months, including temporary import and re-entry, specifying countries, *zones* or *compartments* of origin, species and the quantity or volume and eventual destination in the country or *zone*. Provide information on whether or not *outbreaks* have been related to imports or transboundary movements of domestic animals.

- i) Provide a map showing the number and location of all ports, airports and land border crossings. Describe the management structure, staffing levels and resources of the service responsible for import controls and its accountability to the *Veterinary Authority*. Describe the communication systems between the *Veterinary Authority* and the *border posts*, and between *border posts*.
- ii) Provide a description of the methods used for the safe disposal of waste from international traffic, who is responsible and provide a summary, for the past 24 months, of the quantity disposed of and the disposal locations. What are the biosecurity measures in place at waste disposal sites?
- iii) Cite the regulations and describe procedures, type and frequency of checks, and management of noncompliance at the points of entry into the country or *zone* or their final destination, concerning the import and follow-up of the following:
 - pigs;
 - genetic material (semen, oocytes and embryos);
 - *fresh meat*, pig products and by-products;
 - *veterinary medicinal products*;
 - other materials at risk of being contaminated with CSF virus.

7. Control measures and contingency planning

- a) List any written guidelines, including contingency plans, available to the *Veterinary Services* for dealing with suspected or confirmed *outbreaks* of CSF. The contingency plan should be attached as an annex in one of the WOAH official languages. If not available, provide a brief summary of what is covered. Provide information on any simulation exercise for CSF that was conducted in the country in the past five years.
- b) In the event of a suspected or confirmed CSF *outbreak*:
 - i) Are quarantine measures imposed on *establishments* with suspected *cases*, pending final diagnosis? What other procedures are followed with respect to suspected *cases* (e.g. standstills)?
 - ii) Indicate the sampling, dispatch and testing procedures that would be used to identify and confirm presence of the pathogenic agent;
 - iii) Describe the actions that would be taken to control the disease situation in and around the *establishments* where the *outbreak* is confirmed;
 - iv) Provide a detailed description of the control or *eradication* procedures (e.g. forward and backward tracing, movement control, *disinfection of establishments, vehicles* and equipment, including verification methods, policies on emergency *vaccination*, *stamping-out policy*, partial slaughter, methods of disposal of carcasses and other contaminated products or materials, decontamination, campaigns to promote awareness of farmers) that would be taken. In the case of emergency *vaccination*, indicate the source and type of vaccine and provide details of any vaccine supply scheme and stocks;
 - v) Describe the criteria and procedures that would be used to confirm that an *outbreak* has been successfully controlled or eradicated, including restocking strategies, use of sentinel animals, serological *surveillance* programmes, etc.;
 - vi) Give details of any compensation that would be made available to owners, farmers, etc. when pigs are slaughtered for disease control or *eradication* purposes and the prescribed timetable for payments;
 - vii) Describe how control efforts, including *vaccination* and *biosecurity*, would target critical risk control points.
- c) If DIVA vaccine is used as part of *risk mitigation*, provide details of the vaccine and the differential tests.

8. Recovery of free status

Member Countries applying for recognition of recovery of free status for a country or zone should comply with Article 15.2.7. of the *Terrestrial Code* and provide detailed information as specified in Sections 3 a), 3 b), 3 c), 5 b) and 7 of this questionnaire. Information in relation to other sections need only be supplied if relevant.

NB: FIRST ADOPTED IN 2009; MOST RECENT UPDATE ADOPTED IN 2024.

CHAPTER 1.10.

APPLICATION FOR OFFICIAL RECOGNITION BY WOAH OF FREE STATUS FOR CONTAGIOUS BOVINE PLEUROPNEUMONIA

Article 1.10.1.

Country free from infection with *Mycoplasma mycoides* subsp. *mycoides* SC (contagious bovine pleuropneumonia)

The following information should be provided by WOAH Member Countries to support applications for official recognition of status as a country free from *infection* with *Mycoplasma mycoides* subsp. *mycoides* SC (MMmsSC) in accordance with Chapter 11.5. of the *Terrestrial Code*.

The dossier provided to WOAH should address concisely all the following topics under the headings provided to describe the actual situation in the country and the procedures currently applied, explaining how these comply with the *Terrestrial Code*.

The terminology defined in the WOAH *Terrestrial Code* and *Terrestrial Manual* should be referred to and used in compiling the dossier.

National legislation, regulations and *Veterinary Authority* directives may be referred to and annexed as appropriate in one of the WOAH official languages. Weblinks to supporting documents in one of the official languages of WOAH may also be provided, where they exist.

All annexes should be provided in one of the WOAH official languages.

The Delegate of the Member Country applying for recognition of CBPP freedom for a country must demonstrate compliance with the *Terrestrial Code*. That is, the Delegate should submit documentary evidence that the provisions of Article 11.5.3. have been properly implemented and supervised.

In addition, the Delegate of the Member Country must submit a declaration indicating that:

- 1) there has been no case of *infection* with MMmsSC during the past 24 months;
- 2) no evidence of *infection* with MMmsSC has been found during the past 24 months;
- 3) no *vaccination* against CBPP has been carried out during the past 24 months.

In addition, the Delegate of the Member Country applying for recognition of historical freedom must also submit documentary evidence that the provisions in Article 1.4.6. of the *Terrestrial Code* have been properly implemented and supervised.

1. Introduction

- a) Geographical features (rivers, mountain ranges, etc.). Provide a general description of the country and, where relevant, of the region, including physical, geographical and other factors that are relevant to introduction of *infection* and spread of MMmsSC, taking into account the countries sharing common borders and other

- epidemiologic pathways for the potential introduction of *infection*. Provide maps identifying the features above. Specify whether the application includes any noncontiguous territories.
- b) Livestock demographics. Describe the composition of the livestock industry in the country. In particular, describe:
- i) the susceptible animal *population* by species and types of production systems;
 - ii) the number of *herds*, etc. of each susceptible species;
 - iii) their geographical distribution;
 - iv) *herd density*;
 - v) the degree of integration and role of producer organisations in the different production systems;
 - vi) any recent significant changes observed in the production (attach relevant documents if available).
- Provide tables and maps.
- c) *Wildlife* demographics. What susceptible *captive wild*, *wild* or *feral* species are present in the country? Provide estimates of *population* sizes and geographic distribution. What are the measures in place to prevent contact between domestic and susceptible *wildlife* species?
- d) *Slaughterhouses/abattoirs*, markets and events associated with the congregation of susceptible livestock (e.g. fairs, shows, competitions). What are the major livestock marketing or collection centres? What are the patterns of movement of domestic susceptible species for marketing within the country? How are the susceptible animals sourced, transported and handled during these transactions? Provide maps as appropriate.

2. Veterinary system

- a) Legislation. Provide a table (and when available a weblink) listing all relevant veterinary legislation, regulations and *Veterinary Authority* directives in relation to CBPP and a brief description of the relevance of each. The table should include, but not be limited to, the legislation on disease control measures and compensation systems.
- b) *Veterinary Services*. Describe how the *Veterinary Services* of the country comply with Chapters 1.1., 3.2. and 3.3. of the *Terrestrial Code*. Describe how the *Veterinary Services* supervise, control, enforce and monitor all CBPP-related activities. Provide maps, figures and tables wherever possible.
- c) Provide information on any PVS evaluation conducted in the country and follow-up steps within the PVS Pathway and highlight the results relevant to CBPP and the susceptible species.
- d) Provide a description of the involvement and the participation of industry, producers, farmers, including subsistence and small-scale producers, keepers, *veterinary paraprofessionals* including community animal health workers, and other relevant groups in CBPP *surveillance* and control. Provide a description of the role and structure of the private veterinary sector, including number of *veterinarians* and their distribution, in CBPP *surveillance* and control. Include a description of continuing education and awareness programmes on CBPP at all relevant levels.
- e) *Animal identification*, registration, traceability and movement control. Are susceptible animals identified (individually or at a group level)? Provide a description of the traceability system, including methods of *animal identification* and *establishment* or *herd* registration, applicable to all susceptible species. How are animal movements controlled in the country for all susceptible species? Provide evidence of the effectiveness of *animal identification* and movement controls and a table describing the number, species, origin and destination of the animals and their products moved within the country in the past 24 months. Provide information on pastoralism, transhumance and related paths of movement.
- Describe the *risk management* strategy for uncontrolled movements of susceptible species (e.g. seasonal migration).
- Describe the actions available under national legislation. Provide information on illegal movements detected in the past 24 months and the action taken.

3. CBPP eradication

- a) History. If *infection* has never occurred in the country, or has not occurred within the past 25 years, state explicitly whether or not the country is applying for recognition of historical freedom according to Article 1.4.6. of the *Terrestrial Code*.
- If *infection* has occurred in the country within the past 25 years, provide a description of the CBPP history in the country, with emphasis on recent years. If applicable, provide tables and maps showing the date of first detection, the sources and routes of introduction of *infection*, the temporal and spatial distribution (number and location of *outbreaks* per year), the susceptible species involved, and the date of last case or *eradication* in the country.

- b) Strategy. Describe how CBPP was controlled and eradicated (e.g. slaughter policy, zoning, *vaccination*, movement control). Provide the time frame for *eradication*. Describe and justify the corrective actions that have been implemented to prevent future *outbreaks* of CBPP in response to any past incursions of MMmsSC.
- c) Vaccines and *vaccination*. Briefly answer the following:
 - i) Is there any legislation that prohibits *vaccination*? If so:
 - Provide the date when *vaccination* was formally prohibited;
 - Provide information on cases of detection of illegal *vaccination* during the reporting period and actions taken in response to the detection.
 - ii) Was *vaccination* ever used in the country? If so:
 - Provide the date when the last *vaccination* was carried out;
 - What type of vaccine was used?
 - What species were vaccinated?
 - How were vaccinated animals identified?
 - What was the fate of those animals?
 - iii) In addition, if *vaccination* was applied during the past 24 months, provide a description and justification of the *vaccination* strategy and programme, including the following:
 - the vaccine strains;
 - the species vaccinated;
 - identification of vaccinated animals;
 - the way in which the *vaccination* of animals was certified or reported and the records maintained;
 - evidence that the vaccine used complies with Chapter 3.4.8. of the *Terrestrial Manual*.
- d) Provide a description of the legislation, organisation and implementation of the *eradication* campaign. Outline the legislation applicable to the *eradication* and how the campaign was organised at different levels. Indicate if detailed operational guidelines exist and give a brief summary.

4. CBPP diagnosis

Provide documentary evidence that the relevant provisions of Chapters 1.1.2., 1.1.3. and 3.4.8. of the *Terrestrial Manual* are applied. The following points should be addressed:

- a) Is CBPP *laboratory* diagnosis carried out in the country? If so, provide an overview of the CBPP-approved *laboratories* in the country, including the following:
 - i) How the work is shared between different *laboratories*, logistics for shipment of samples, the follow-up procedures and the time frame for reporting results;
 - ii) Details of test capability and the types of tests undertaken, including procedures to isolate and identify *M. mycoides* subsp. *mycoides* (Mmm), and their performance for their applied use (specificity and sensitivity per type of test). Provide details of the number of CBPP tests performed in the past 24 months in national *laboratories* and in *laboratories* in other countries, if relevant;
 - iii) Procedures for quality assurance and for the official accreditation of *laboratories*. Give details of formal internal quality management systems, e.g. Good Laboratory Practice, ISO, etc. that exist in, or are planned for, the *laboratory* system;
 - iv) Provide details of performance in inter-*laboratory* validation tests (ring trials), including the most recent results and, if applicable, the corrective measures applied;
 - v) Provide details of the handling of live pathogenic agent, including a description of the biosecurity and biosafety measures applied;
 - vi) Provide a table identifying the tests carried out by each of the *laboratories* where they are performed, the quality accreditation and biosecurity standards followed and the proficiency tests carried out.
- b) If CBPP *laboratory* diagnosis is not carried out in the country, provide the names of the *laboratories* in other countries providing the service as well as the arrangements in place, including logistics for shipment of samples and the time frame for reporting results.

5. CBPP surveillance

Provide documentary evidence that *surveillance* for CBPP in the country complies with Articles 11.5.13. to 11.5.17. of the *Terrestrial Code* and Chapter 3.4.8. of the *Terrestrial Manual*. The following information should be included :

- a) What are the criteria for raising a suspicion of CBPP? What is the procedure to notify (by whom and to whom) and what incentives are there for reporting and what penalties are involved for failure to report?

- b) Describe how clinical *surveillance* is conducted, including which sectors of the livestock production system are included in clinical *surveillance*, such as *establishments*, markets, fairs, *slaughterhouses/abattoirs*, check points, etc.
- Provide a summary table indicating, for the past 24 months, the number of suspected cases, the number of samples tested for CBPP, species, type of sample, testing methods and results (including differential diagnosis). Provide an indication of the timelines of the response including completion of testing to confirm or exclude CBPP. Provide details of follow-up actions taken on all suspicious and positive results.
- c) Serological *surveillance*. Explain whether serological surveys are conducted and, if so, how frequently and for what purpose. Provide detailed information on the target population, design prevalence, confidence level, sample size, stratification, sampling methods and diagnostic tests used in accordance with Articles 11.5.13. to 11.5.17. of the *Terrestrial Code*.
- d) *Slaughterhouses/abattoirs* and slaughter slabs. What are the criteria for raising a suspicion of CBPP lesion? What is the procedure to notify (by whom and to whom)? Provide a summary table indicating, for the past 24 months, the number of suspected cases, the number of samples tested for CBPP agent, species, type of sample, testing methods and results (including differential diagnosis).
- e) For countries where a significant proportion of animals are not slaughtered in controlled *slaughterhouses/abattoirs*, what are the alternative *surveillance* measures applied to detect CBPP (e.g. active clinical *surveillance* programmes, *laboratory* follow-up).
- f) Provide a description of the means employed during the 24 months preceding this application to rule out the presence of CBPP in the susceptible *population*. Provide criteria for selection of *populations* for targeted surveillance and numbers of animals examined and samples tested. Provide details of the methods selected and applied for monitoring the performance of the *surveillance* programme including indicators.
- g) Provide details of the oversight of *surveillance* programmes by the *Veterinary Services* including training programmes for personnel involved in clinical and *slaughterhouse/abattoir surveillance*, and the approaches used to increase community involvement in CBPP *surveillance* programmes.

6. CBPP prevention

Describe the procedures in place to prevent the introduction of CBPP into the country, including details of:

- a) Coordination with other countries. Describe any relevant factors in neighbouring countries that should be taken into account (e.g. size, distance from the border to affected *herds* or animals). Describe coordination, collaboration and information-sharing activities with other countries in the same region or ecosystem.
- Are *protection zones* in place? If so, provide details of the measures that are applied (e.g. *vaccination*, intensified *surveillance*, density control of susceptible species), and provide a geo-referenced map of the *zones*.
- b) Describe the measures implemented to effectively prevent the introduction of the pathogenic agent, taking into consideration physical or geographical barriers. Describe the measures implemented to prevent the spread of the pathogenic agent within the country. Provide evidence that measures to reduce transmission of CBPP are in place at markets, such as enhancing awareness of CBPP transmission mechanisms and human behaviour that can interrupt transmission, and implementation of good *biosecurity*, hygiene and *disinfection* routines at critical points all along the production and marketing networks (typically where animals are being moved and marketed through the country or region).
- c) Import control procedures

Provide information on countries, *zones* or *compartments* from which the country authorises the import of susceptible animals or their products into the country. Describe the criteria applied to approve such countries, *zones* or *compartments*, the controls applied to entry of such animals and products, and subsequent internal movement. Describe the import measures (e.g. quarantine) and test procedures required. Advise whether imported animals of susceptible species are required to undergo a quarantine or isolation period and, if so, the duration and location of quarantine. Advise whether import permits and *international veterinary certificates* are required.

Describe any other procedures used for assessing the *risks* posed by import of susceptible animals or their products. Provide summary statistics on imports of susceptible animals and their products for at least the past 24 months, including temporary import and re-entry, specifying countries, *zones* or *compartments* of origin, species and the quantity or volume and eventual destination in the country.

Provide information on whether or not *outbreaks* have been related to imports or transboundary movements of domestic animals.

- i) Provide a map showing the number and location of all ports, airports and land border crossings. Describe the management structure, staffing levels and resources of the service responsible for import

controls and its accountability to the *Veterinary Authority*. Describe the communication systems between the *Veterinary Authority* and the *border posts*, and between *border posts*.

- ii) Cite the regulations and describe procedures, type and frequency of checks, and management of noncompliance at the points of entry into the country or their final destination, concerning the import and follow-up of the following:
- animals;
 - genetic material (semen, oocytes and embryos);
 - *Mmm* strains including vaccines;
 - *veterinary medicinal products*;
 - other materials at risk of being contaminated with *Mmm*.

7. Control measures and contingency planning

- a) List any written guidelines, including contingency plans, available to the *Veterinary Services* for dealing with suspected or confirmed *outbreaks* of CBPP. The contingency plan should be attached as an annex in one of the WOAH official languages. If not available, provide a brief summary of what is covered. Provide information on any simulation exercise for CBPP that was conducted in the country in the past five years.
- b) In the event of a suspected or confirmed CBPP *outbreak*:
- i) Are quarantine measures imposed on *establishments* with suspected cases, pending final diagnosis? What other procedures are followed with respect to suspected cases (e.g. livestock standstills)?
 - ii) Indicate the sampling, dispatch and testing procedures that would be used to identify and confirm presence of the pathogenic agent;
 - iii) Describe the actions that would be taken to control the disease situation in and around the *establishments* where the *outbreak* is confirmed;
 - iv) Provide a detailed description of the control or *eradication* procedures (e.g. forward and backward tracing, *disinfection* of *establishments*, *vehicles* and equipment, including verification methods, *vaccination*, *stamping-out policy*, slaughter policy, movement control, pastured livestock and livestock as pets, control of offal, especially lungs, and carcasses, methods of disposal of carcasses and other contaminated products or materials, decontamination, campaigns to promote awareness of farmers) that would be taken. In the case of emergency *vaccination*, indicate the source and type of vaccine and provide details of any vaccine supply scheme and stocks;
 - v) Describe the criteria and procedures that would be used to confirm that an *outbreak* has been successfully controlled or eradicated, including restocking strategies, use of sentinel animals, serological surveillance programmes, etc.;
 - vi) Give details of any compensation that would be made available to owners, farmers, etc. when animals are slaughtered for disease control or *eradication* purposes and the prescribed timetable for payments;
 - vii) Describe how control efforts, including *vaccination* and *biosecurity*, would target critical risk control points.

8. Recovery of free status

Member Countries applying for recognition of recovery of free status for a country should comply with the provisions of Article 11.5.4. of the *Terrestrial Code* and provide detailed information as specified in Sections 3 a), 3 b), 3 c), 5 a), 5 b), 5 c) and 5 d) of this questionnaire. Information in relation to other sections need only be supplied if relevant.

Article 1.10.2.

Zone free from infection with *Mycoplasma mycoides* subsp. *mycoides* SC (contagious bovine pleuropneumonia)

The following information should be provided by WOAH Member Countries to support applications for official recognition of status as a zone free from *infection* with *Mycoplasma mycoides* subsp. *mycoides* SC (MMmsSC) in accordance with Chapter 11.5. of the *Terrestrial Code*.

The dossier provided to WOAH should address concisely all the following topics under the headings provided to describe the actual situation in the country and the procedures currently applied, explaining how these comply with the *Terrestrial Code*.

The terminology defined in the WOAH *Terrestrial Code* and *Terrestrial Manual* should be referred to and used in compiling the dossier.

National legislation, regulations and *Veterinary Authority* directives may be referred to and annexed as appropriate in one of the WOAH official languages. Weblinks to supporting documents in one of the official languages of WOAH may also be provided, where they exist.

All annexes should be provided in one of the WOAH official languages.

The Delegate of the Member Country applying for recognition of CBPP freedom for a *zone* must demonstrate compliance with the *Terrestrial Code*. That is, the Delegate should submit documentary evidence that the provisions of Article 11.5.3. have been properly implemented and supervised.

In addition, the Delegate of the Member Country must submit a declaration indicating that:

- 1) there has been no case of *infection* with MMmsSC during the past 24 months;
- 2) no evidence of *infection* with MMmsSC has been found during the past 24 months;
- 3) no *vaccination* against CBPP has been carried out during the past 24 months.

In addition, the Delegate of the Member Country applying for recognition of historical freedom must also submit documentary evidence that the provisions in Article 1.4.6. of the *Terrestrial Code* have been properly implemented and supervised.

1. Introduction

- a) Geographical features (rivers, mountain ranges, etc.). Provide a general description of the country and the *zone*, and where relevant of the region, including physical, geographical and other factors that are relevant to introduction of *infection* and spread of MMmsSC, taking into account the countries or *zones* sharing common borders and other epidemiologic pathways for the potential introduction of *infection*.
The boundaries of the *zone* must be clearly defined, including a *protection zone* if applied. Provide maps identifying the features above, including a digitalised, geo-referenced map with a precise text description of the geographical boundaries of the *zone*.
- b) Livestock demographics. Describe the composition of the livestock industry in the country and the *zone*. In particular, describe:
 - i) the susceptible animal *population* by species and types of production systems in the country and the *zone*;
 - ii) the number of *herds*, etc. of each susceptible species;
 - iii) their geographical distribution;
 - iv) *herd density*;
 - v) the degree of integration and role of producer organisations in the different production systems;
 - vi) any recent significant changes observed in the production (attach relevant documents if available). Provide tables and maps.
- c) *Wildlife* demographics. What susceptible *captive wild*, *wild* or *feral* species are present in the country and the *zone*? Provide estimates of *population* sizes and geographic distribution. What are the measures in place to prevent contact between domestic and susceptible *wildlife* species?
- d) *Slaughterhouses/abattoirs*, markets and events associated with the congregation of susceptible livestock (e.g. fairs, shows, competitions). Where are the major livestock marketing or collection centres? What are the patterns of movement of domestic susceptible species for marketing within the country or *zone*, and between *zones* of the same or different status? How are the susceptible animals sourced, transported and handled during these transactions? Provide maps as appropriate.

2. Veterinary system

- a) Legislation. Provide a table (and when available a weblink) listing all relevant veterinary legislation, regulations and *Veterinary Authority* directives in relation to CBPP and a brief description of the relevance of each. The table should include, but not be limited to, the legislation on disease control measures and compensation systems.
- b) *Veterinary Services*. Describe how the *Veterinary Services* of the country comply with Chapters 1.1., 3.2. and 3.3. of the *Terrestrial Code*. Describe how the *Veterinary Services* supervise, control, enforce and monitor all CBPP-related activities. Provide maps, figures and tables wherever possible.
- c) Provide information on any PVS evaluation conducted in the country and follow-up steps within the PVS Pathway and highlight the results relevant to CBPP and the susceptible species.
- d) Provide a description of the involvement and the participation of industry, producers, farmers, including subsistence and small-scale producers, keepers, *veterinary paraprofessionals* including community animal

health workers, and other relevant groups in CBPP *surveillance* and control. Provide a description of the role and structure of the private veterinary sector, including the number of *veterinarians* and their distribution, in CBPP *surveillance* and control. Include a description of continuing education and awareness programmes on CBPP at all relevant levels.

- e) *Animal identification*, registration, traceability and movement control. Are susceptible animals identified (individually or at a group level)? Provide a description of the traceability system, including methods of *animal identification* and *establishment* or *herd* registration, applicable to all susceptible species. How are animal movements controlled in and between *zones* of the same or different status for all susceptible species? Provide evidence of the effectiveness of *animal identification* and movement controls and a table describing the number, species, origin and destination of the animals and their products moved within the country in the past 24 months. Provide information on pastoralism, transhumance and related paths of movement.

Describe the *risk management* strategy for uncontrolled movements of susceptible species (e.g. seasonal migration).

Describe the actions available under national legislation. Provide information on illegal movements detected in the past 24 months and the action taken.

3. CBPP eradication

- a) History. If *infection* has never occurred in the *zone*, or has not occurred within the past 25 years, state explicitly whether or not the *zone* is applying for recognition of historical freedom in the *zone* according to Article 1.4.6. of the *Terrestrial Code*.

If *infection* has occurred in the *zone* within the past 25 years, provide a description of the CBPP history in the country and *zone*, with emphasis on recent years. If applicable, provide tables and maps showing the date of first detection, the sources and routes of introduction of *infection*, the temporal and spatial distribution (number and location of *outbreaks* per year), the susceptible species involved, and the date of last case or *eradication* in the *zone*.

- b) Strategy. Describe how CBPP was controlled and eradicated in the *zone* (e.g. slaughter policy, zoning, *vaccination*, movement control). Provide the time frame for *eradication*. Describe and justify the corrective actions that have been implemented to prevent future *outbreaks* of CBPP in response to any past incursions of MMmsSC.

- c) Vaccines and *vaccination*. Briefly answer the following:

- i) Is there any legislation that prohibits *vaccination*? If so:

- Provide the date when *vaccination* was formally prohibited;
- Provide information on cases of detection of illegal *vaccination* during the reporting period and actions taken in response to the detection.

- ii) Was *vaccination* ever used in the country? If so:

- Provide the date when the last *vaccination* was carried out;
- What type of vaccine was used in the *zone* and the rest of the country?
- What species were vaccinated?
- How were vaccinated animals identified?
- What was the fate of those animals?

- iii) In addition, if *vaccination* was applied during the past 24 months, provide a description and justification of the *vaccination* strategy and programme, including the following:

- the vaccine strains;
- the species vaccinated;
- identification of vaccinated animals;
- the way in which the *vaccination* of animals was certified or reported and the records maintained;
- evidence that the vaccine used complies with Chapter 3.4.8. of the *Terrestrial Manual*.

- d) Provide a description of the legislation, organisation and implementation of the *eradication* campaign. Outline the legislation applicable to the *eradication* and how the campaign was organised at different levels. Indicate if detailed operational guidelines exist and give a brief summary.

4. CBPP diagnosis

Provide documentary evidence that the relevant provisions of Chapters 1.1.2., 1.1.3. and 3.4.8. of the *Terrestrial Manual* are applied. The following points should be addressed:

- a) Is CBPP *laboratory* diagnosis carried out in the country? If so, provide an overview of the CBPP-approved *laboratories* in the country. Indicate the *laboratories* where samples originating from the *zone* are diagnosed. Address the following points:
 - i) How the work is shared between different *laboratories*, logistics for shipment of samples, the follow-up procedures and the time frame for reporting results;
 - ii) Details of test capability and the types of tests undertaken, including procedures to isolate and identify *M. mycoides* subsp. *mycoides* (*Mmm*), and their performance for their applied use (specificity and sensitivity per type of test). Provide details of the number of CBPP tests performed in the past 24 months in national *laboratories* and in *laboratories* in other countries, if relevant;
 - iii) Procedures for quality assurance and for the official accreditation of *laboratories*. Give details of formal internal quality management systems, e.g. Good Laboratory Practice, ISO, etc. that exist in, or are planned for, the *laboratory* system;
 - iv) Provide details of performance in inter-*laboratory* validation tests (ring trials), including the most recent results and, if applicable, the corrective measures applied;
 - v) Provide details of the handling of live pathogenic agent, including a description of the biosecurity and biosafety measures applied;
 - vi) Provide a table identifying the tests carried out by each of the *laboratories* where they are performed, the quality accreditation and biosecurity standards followed and the proficiency tests carried out.
- b) If CBPP *laboratory* diagnosis is not carried out in the country, provide the names of the *laboratories* in other countries providing the service as well as the arrangements in place, including logistics for shipment of samples and the time frame for reporting results.

5. CBPP surveillance

Provide documentary evidence that *surveillance* for CBPP in the *zone* complies with Articles 11.5.13. to 11.5.17. of the *Terrestrial Code*, and Chapter 3.4.8. of the *Terrestrial Manual*. The following information should be included:

- a) What are the criteria for raising a suspicion of CBPP? What is the procedure to notify (by whom and to whom) and what incentives are there for reporting and what penalties are involved for failure to report?
- b) Describe how clinical *surveillance* is conducted, including which sectors of the livestock production system are included in clinical *surveillance*, such as *establishments*, markets, fairs, *slaughterhouses/abattoirs*, check points, etc.
Provide a summary table indicating, for the past 24 months, the number of suspected cases, the number of samples tested for CBPP, species, type of sample, testing methods and results (including differential diagnosis). Provide an indication of the timelines of the response including completion of testing to confirm or exclude CBPP. Provide details of follow-up actions taken on all suspicious and positive results.
- c) Serological *surveillance*. Explain whether serological surveys are conducted and, if so, how frequently and for what purpose. Provide detailed information on the target population, design prevalence, confidence level, sample size, stratification, sampling methods and diagnostic tests used in accordance with Articles 11.5.13. to 11.5.17. of the *Terrestrial Code*.
- d) *Slaughterhouses/abattoirs* and slaughter slabs. What are the criteria for raising a suspicion of CBPP lesion? What is the procedure to notify (by whom and to whom)? Provide a summary table indicating, for the past 24 months, the number of suspected cases, the number of samples tested for CBPP agent, species, type of sample, testing methods and results (including differential diagnosis).
- e) For countries where a significant proportion of animals in the *zone* are not slaughtered in controlled *slaughterhouses/abattoirs*, what are the alternative *surveillance* measures applied to detect CBPP (e.g. active clinical *surveillance* programmes, *laboratory* follow-up).
- f) Provide a description of the means employed during the 24 months preceding this application to rule out the presence of CBPP in the susceptible *population* of the *zone*. Provide criteria for selection of *populations* for targeted surveillance and numbers of animals examined and samples tested in diagnostic *laboratories*. Provide details of the methods selected and applied for monitoring the performance of the *surveillance* programme including indicators.
- g) Provide details of the oversight of *surveillance* programmes by the *Veterinary Services* including training programmes for personnel involved in clinical and *slaughterhouse/abattoir* *surveillance*, and the approaches used to increase community involvement in CBPP *surveillance* programmes.

6. CBPP prevention

Describe the procedures in place to prevent the introduction of CBPP into the country or *zone*, including details of:

- a) Coordination with other countries. Describe any relevant factors in neighbouring countries and *zones* that should be taken into account (e.g. size, distance from the border to affected *herds* or animals). Describe coordination, collaboration and information-sharing activities with other countries and *zones* in the same region or ecosystem.

If the CBPP free *zone* is established in a CBPP infected country or borders an infected country or *zone*, describe the animal health measures implemented to effectively prevent the introduction of the pathogenic agent, taking into consideration existing physical or geographical barriers.

Are *protection zones* in place? If so, indicate whether or not the *protection zones* are included in the proposed free *zones*. Provide details of the measures that are applied (e.g. vaccination, intensified surveillance, density control of susceptible species), and provide a geo-referenced map of the *zones*.

- b) Describe the measures implemented to effectively prevent the introduction of the pathogenic agent, taking into consideration physical or geographical barriers. Describe the measures implemented to prevent the spread of the pathogenic agent within the country or *zone*. Provide evidence that measures to reduce transmission of CBPP are in place at markets, such as enhancing awareness of CBPP transmission mechanisms and human behaviour that can interrupt transmission, and implementation of good *biosecurity*, hygiene and *disinfection* routines at critical points all along the production and marketing networks (typically where animals are being moved and marketed through the country or region).

c) Import control procedures

Provide information on countries, *zones* or *compartments* from which the country authorises the import of susceptible animals or their products into the country or *zone*? Describe the criteria applied to approve such countries, *zones* or *compartments*, the controls applied to entry of such animals and products, and subsequent internal movement. Describe the import measures (e.g. quarantine) and test procedures required. Advise whether imported animals of susceptible species are required to undergo a quarantine or isolation period and, if so, the duration and location of quarantine. Advise whether import permits and *international veterinary certificates* are required.

Describe any other procedures used for assessing the *risks* posed by import of susceptible animals or their products. Provide summary statistics on imports of susceptible animals and their products for at least the past 24 months, including temporary import and re-entry, specifying countries, *zones* or *compartments* of origin, species and the quantity or volume and eventual destination in the country.

Provide information on whether or not *outbreaks* have been related to imports or transboundary movements of domestic animals.

- i) Provide a map showing the number and location of all ports, airports and land border crossings. Describe the management structure, staffing levels and resources of the service responsible for import controls and its accountability to the *Veterinary Authority*. Describe the communication systems between the *Veterinary Authority* and the *border posts*, and between *border posts*.
- ii) Cite the regulations and describe procedures, type and frequency of checks, and management of noncompliance at the points of entry into the *zone* or their final destination, concerning the import and follow-up of the following:
 - animals;
 - genetic material (semen, oocytes and embryos);
 - *Mmm* strains including vaccines;
 - *veterinary medicinal products*;
 - other materials at risk of being contaminated with *Mmm*.

7. Control measures and contingency planning

- a) List any written guidelines, including contingency plans, available to the *Veterinary Services* for dealing with suspected or confirmed *outbreaks* of CBPP. The contingency plan should be attached as an annex in one of the WOAH official languages. If not available, provide a brief summary of what is covered . Provide information on any simulation exercise for CBPP that was conducted in the country in the past five years.
- b) In the event of a suspected or confirmed CBPP *outbreak*:
 - i) Are quarantine measures imposed on *establishments* with suspected cases, pending final diagnosis? What other procedures are followed with respect to suspected cases (e.g. livestock standstills)?
 - ii) Indicate the sampling, dispatch and testing procedures that would be used to identify and confirm presence of the pathogenic agent;
 - iii) Describe the actions that would be taken to control the disease situation in and around the *establishments* where the *outbreak* is confirmed;

- iv) Provide a detailed description of the control or *eradication* procedures (e.g. forward and backward tracing, *disinfection of establishments, vehicles* and equipment, including verification methods, *vaccination, stamping-out policy*, slaughter policy, movement control, pastured livestock and livestock as pets, control of offal, especially lungs, and carcasses, methods of disposal of carcasses and other contaminated products or materials, decontamination, campaigns to promote awareness of farmers) that would be taken. In the case of emergency *vaccination*, indicate the source and type of vaccine and provide details of any vaccine supply scheme and stocks;
- v) Describe the criteria and procedures that would be used to confirm that an *outbreak* has been successfully controlled or eradicated, including restocking strategies, use of sentinel animals, serological *surveillance* programmes, etc.;
- vi) Give details of any compensation that would be made available to owners, farmers, etc. when animals are slaughtered for disease control or *eradication* purposes and the prescribed timetable for payment;
- vii) Describe how control efforts, including *vaccination* and *biosecurity*, would target critical risk control points.

8. Recovery of free status

Member Countries applying for recognition of recovery of free status for a *zone* should comply with the provisions of Article 11.5.4. of the *Terrestrial Code* and provide detailed information as specified in Sections 3 a), 3 b), 3 c), 5 a), 5 b), 5 c) and 5 d) of this questionnaire. Information in relation to other sections need only be supplied if relevant.

Article 1.10.3.

Application for endorsement by WOAH of an official control programme for contagious bovine pleuropneumonia

The following information should be provided by WOAH Member Countries to support applications for endorsement by WOAH of an *official control programme* for contagious bovine pleuropneumonia (CBPP) in accordance with Chapter 11.5. of the *Terrestrial Code*.

The dossier provided to WOAH should address concisely all the following topics under the headings provided in Sections 1 to 4 to describe the actual situation in the country and the procedures currently applied, explaining how these comply with the *Terrestrial Code*.

In Sections 3 f) to 3 i) describe concisely the work plan and timelines of the control programme for the next five years.

The terminology defined in the WOAH *Terrestrial Code* and *Terrestrial Manual* should be referred to and used in compiling the dossier.

National legislation, regulations and *Veterinary Authority* directives may be referred to and annexed as appropriate in one of the WOAH official languages. Weblinks to supporting documents in one of the official languages of WOAH may also be provided, where they exist.

All annexes should be provided in one of the WOAH official languages.

The Delegate of the Member Country applying for endorsement of the *official control programme* should submit documentary evidence that the provisions of Article 11.5.18. have been properly implemented and supervised. In addition, the Delegate of the Member Country must submit the detailed national official control programme for CBPP.

1. Introduction

- a) Geographical features (rivers, mountain ranges, etc.). Provide a general description of the country and *zones*, and where relevant of the region, including physical, geographical and other factors that are relevant to introduction of *infection* and spread of MMmsSC, taking into account the countries or *zones* sharing common

- borders and other epidemiologic pathways for the potential introduction of *infection*. Provide maps identifying the features above. Specify whether the application includes any noncontiguous territories.
- b) If the endorsed plan is implemented in stages to specific parts of the country, the boundaries of the *zones* should be clearly defined, including the *protection zones* if applied. Provide a digitalised, geo-referenced map with a description of the geographical boundaries of the *zones*.
 - c) Livestock demographics. Describe the composition of the livestock industry in the country and any *zones*. In particular, describe:
 - i) the susceptible animal *population* by species and types of production systems;
 - ii) the number of *herds*, etc. of each susceptible species;
 - iii) their geographical distribution;
 - iv) *herd density*;
 - v) the degree of integration and role of producer organisations in the different production systems;
 - vi) any recent significant changes observed in the production (attach relevant documents if available).Provide tables and maps.
 - d) *Wildlife* demographics. What susceptible *captive wild*, *wild* or *feral* species are present in the country and any *zones*? Provide estimates of *population* sizes and geographic distribution. What are the measures in place to prevent contact between domestic and susceptible *wildlife* species?
 - e) *Slaughterhouses/abattoirs*, markets and events associated with the congregation of susceptible livestock (e.g. fairs, shows, competitions). Where are the major livestock marketing or collection centres? What are the patterns of movement of susceptible domestic species for marketing within the country? How are the susceptible animals sourced, transported and handled during these transactions? Provide maps as appropriate.

2. Veterinary system

- a) Legislation. Provide a table (and when available a weblink) listing all relevant veterinary legislation, regulations and *Veterinary Authority* directives in relation to the CBPP control programme and a brief description of the relevance of each. The table should include, but not be limited to, the legislation on disease control measures and compensation systems.
- b) *Veterinary Services*. Describe how the *Veterinary Services* of the country comply with Chapters 1.1., 3.2. and 3.3. of the *Terrestrial Code*. Describe how the *Veterinary Services* supervise, control, enforce and monitor all CBPP-related activities. Provide maps, figures and tables wherever possible.
- c) Provide information on any PVS evaluation conducted in the country and follow-up steps within the PVS Pathway and highlight the results relevant to CBPP and the susceptible species.
- d) Provide a description of the involvement and the participation of industry, producers, farmers, including subsistence and small-scale producers, keepers, *veterinary paraprofessionals* including community animal health workers, and other relevant groups in CBPP *surveillance* and control. Provide a description of the role and structure of the private veterinary sector, including the number of *veterinarians* and their distribution, in CBPP *surveillance* and control.
Include a description of continuing education and awareness programmes on CBPP at all relevant levels of the susceptible species value.
- e) *Animal identification*, registration, traceability and movement control. Are susceptible animals identified (individually or at a group level)? Provide a description of the traceability system, including methods of *animal identification* and *establishment* or *herd* registration, applicable to all susceptible species. How are animal movements controlled in the country for all susceptible species? Provide evidence of the effectiveness of *animal identification* and movement controls and a table describing the number, species, origin and destination of the animals and their products moved within the country in the past 24 months. Provide information on pastoralism, transhumance and related paths of movement.

Describe the *risk management* strategy for uncontrolled movements of susceptible species (e.g. seasonal migration).

Describe the actions available under national legislation. Provide information on illegal movements detected in the past 24 months and the action taken.

3. Official control programme for CBPP submitted for WOAH endorsement

Submit a concise plan of the measures for the control and eventual *eradication* of CBPP in the country, including:

a) Epidemiology

- i) Describe the CBPP history in the country, with emphasis on recent years. Provide tables and maps showing the date of first detection, the number and location of *outbreaks* per year, the sources and routes of introduction of *infection*, the types and subtypes of *Mmm* present and the date of implementation of the control programme in the country.
- ii) Describe the epidemiological situation of CBPP in the country and the surrounding countries or *zones* highlighting the current knowledge and gaps. Provide maps of:
 - the geography of the country with the relevant information concerning CBPP situation;
 - livestock density and movements and estimated CBPP prevalence.

b) CBPP surveillance

Provide documentary evidence that *surveillance* for CBPP in the country complies with Articles 11.5.14. and 11.5.15. of the *Terrestrial Code*, and Chapter 3.4.8. of the *Terrestrial Manual*. The following information should be included:

- i) What are the criteria for raising a suspicion of CBPP? What is the procedure to notify (by whom and to whom) and what incentives are there for reporting and what penalties are involved for failure to report?
- ii) Describe how clinical *surveillance* is conducted, including which sectors of the livestock production system are included in clinical *surveillance*, such as *establishments*, markets, fairs, *slaughterhouses/abattoirs*, check points, etc. Provide details of follow-up actions taken on clinical suspicions.
- iii) Serological *surveillance*. Explain whether serological surveys are conducted and, if so, how frequently and for what purpose. Provide detailed information on the target population, design prevalence, confidence level, sample size, stratification, sampling methods and diagnostic tests used in accordance with Articles 11.5.13. and 11.5.14. of the *Terrestrial Code*.
- iv) *Surveillance at slaughterhouses/abattoirs*, slaughter slabs. Explain whether *slaughterhouse/abattoir* surveys are conducted and, if so, how frequently and for what purpose. What are the criteria for suspecting a lesion is CBPP? What is the procedure for notify (by whom and to whom)?
- v) Provide a summary table indicating, for at least the past 24 months, the number of suspected cases, the number of samples tested for CBPP, species, type of sample, testing methods and results (including differential diagnosis). Provide procedural details of follow-up actions taken on suspicious and positive results and on how these findings are interpreted and acted upon.

Provide criteria for selection of *populations* for targeted surveillance and numbers of animals examined and samples tested in diagnostic *laboratories*. Provide details of the methods selected and applied for monitoring the performance of the *surveillance* programme including indicators.

- vi) In countries where a significant proportion of animals in the country or *zone* are not slaughtered in controlled *slaughterhouses/abattoirs*, what are the alternative *surveillance* measures applied to detect CBPP (e.g. active clinical *surveillance* programme, *laboratory* follow-up).
- vii) Provide information on the level of *risk* in different husbandry systems, and provide evidence that targeted studies are implemented to address gaps (e.g. targeted serological surveys, active *surveillance*, participatory epidemiology studies, *risk assessments*, etc.) and that the acquired knowledge assists in more effective implementation of control measures.
- viii) Provide details of the oversight of *surveillance* programmes by the *Veterinary Services* including training programmes for personnel involved in clinical and *slaughterhouse/abattoir surveillance*, and the approaches used to increase community involvement in CBPP *surveillance* programmes.
- ix) Provide evidence that surveys are carried out to assess *vaccination* coverage and population immunity of the target populations, show analysis of *surveillance* data to assess the change in CBPP prevalence over time in the target populations, assess the control measures (cost effectiveness, degree of implementation, impact). Provide information on outcomes of *outbreak* investigations including *outbreaks* that have occurred despite control measures, documented inspections showing compliance with biosecurity and hygiene requirements.

c) CBPP diagnosis

Provide documentary evidence that the relevant provisions of Chapters 1.1.1., 1.1.3. and 3.4.8. of the *Terrestrial Manual* are applied. The following points should be addressed:

- i) Is CBPP *laboratory* diagnosis carried out in the country? If so, provide an overview of the CBPP-approved *laboratories* in the country, including the following:
 - How the work is shared between different *laboratories*, logistics for shipment of samples, the follow-up procedures and the time frame for reporting results;
 - Details of test capability and the types of tests undertaken including procedures to isolate and identify *M. mycoides* subsp. *mycoides* (*Mmm*) and their performance for their applied use (specificity and sensitivity per type of test). Provide details of the number of CBPP tests performed in the past 24 months in national *laboratories* and in *laboratories* in other countries, if relevant;
 - Procedures for quality assurance and, if available, for the official accreditation of *laboratories*. Give details of formal internal quality management systems, e.g. Good Laboratory Practice, ISO, etc. that exist in, or are planned for, the *laboratory* system;
 - Provide details of performance in inter-*laboratory* validation tests (ring trials), including the most recent results and, if applicable, the corrective measures applied;
 - Provide details of the handling of live pathogenic agent, including a description of the biosecurity and biosafety measures applied;
 - Provide a table identifying the tests carried out by each of the *laboratories* where they are performed, the quality accreditation and biosecurity standards followed and the proficiency tests carried out.
- ii) If CBPP *laboratory* diagnosis is not carried out in the country, provide the names of the *laboratories* in other countries providing the service as well as the arrangements in place, including logistics for shipment of samples and the time frame for reporting results.

d) Strategies

- i) Provide a description of the legislation, organisation and implementation of the current CBPP control programme. Outline the legislation applicable to the control programme and how its implementation is organised at different levels. Indicate if detailed operational guidelines exist and give a brief summary.
- ii) Describe CBPP control strategies in the country or any *zones*, including in terms of animal movement control, fate of infected and in-contact animals, *vaccination* and possible use of antibiotics. Strategies should be based on the assessment of the CBPP situation in the *zones*, country and region.
- iii) Provide information on what types of vaccines are used and which species are vaccinated. Provide evidence that the vaccine used complies with Chapter 1.1.8. of the *Terrestrial Manual*. Provide information on the licensing process for the vaccines used. Describe the *vaccination* programme in the country and in any *zones*, including records kept, and provide evidence to show its effectiveness, such as *vaccination coverage*, population immunity, etc. Provide details of the studies carried out to determine the *vaccination coverage* and the population immunity, including the study designs and the results.
- iv) Provide a description of the policy on antibiotic treatment within the strategy. If it is banned how is the ban implemented?
- v) Describe how the *stamp-out policy* is implemented in the country or any *zones* and under which circumstances.
- vi) In the event of *outbreaks*, provide evidence of the impact of the control measures already implemented on the reduction in number of *outbreaks* and their distribution. If possible, provide information on primary and secondary *outbreaks*.

e) CBPP prevention

Describe the procedures in place to prevent the introduction of CBPP into the country, including details of:

- i) Coordination with other countries. Describe any relevant factors in neighbouring countries and *zones* that should be taken into account (e.g. size, distance from the border to affected *herds* or animals). Describe coordination, collaboration and information-sharing activities with other countries and *zones* in the same region or ecosystem.

Are *protection zones* in place? If so, provide details of the measures that are applied (e.g. *vaccination*, intensified *surveillance*, density control of susceptible species), and provide a geo-referenced map of the *zones*.

- ii) Describe the measures implemented to effectively prevent the introduction of the pathogenic agent, taking into consideration physical or geographical barriers. Describe the measures implemented to prevent the spread of the pathogenic agent within the country or zone. Provide evidence that measures to reduce transmission of CBPP are in place at markets, such as enhancing awareness of CBPP transmission mechanisms and human behaviour that can interrupt transmission, and implementation of good *biosecurity*, hygiene and *disinfection* routines at critical points all along the production and marketing networks (typically where animals are being moved and marketed through the country or region).
 - iii) Import control procedures
 - Provide information on countries, *zones* or *compartments* from which the country authorises the import of susceptible animals or their products into the country or any *zones*. Describe the criteria applied to approve such countries, *zones* or *compartments*, the controls applied to entry of such animals and products and subsequent internal movement. Describe the import measures (e.g. quarantine) and test procedures required. Advise whether imported animals of susceptible species are required to undergo a quarantine or isolation period and, if so, the duration and location of quarantine. Advise whether import permits and *international veterinary certificates* are required.
 - Describe any other procedures used for assessing the *risks* posed by import of susceptible animals or their products. Provide summary statistics on imports of susceptible animals and their products for at least the past 24 months, including temporary import and re-entry, specifying countries, *zones* or *compartments* of origin, species and the quantity or volume and eventual destination in the country. Provide information on whether or not *outbreaks* have been related to imports or transboundary movements of domestic animals.
 - Provide a map showing the number and location of all ports, airports and land border crossings. Describe the management structure, staffing levels and resources of the service responsible for import controls and its accountability to the *Veterinary Authority*. Describe the communication systems between the *Veterinary Authority* and the *border posts*, and between *border posts*.
 - Cite the regulations and describe procedures, type and frequency of checks, and management of noncompliance at the points of entry into the country or their final destination, concerning the import and follow-up of the following:
 - animals;
 - genetic material (semen, oocytes and embryos);
 - *Mmm* strains including vaccines;
 - *veterinary medicinal products*;
 - other materials at risk of being contaminated with *Mmm*.
 - iv) Describe the actions available under national legislation. Provide information on illegal movements detected in the past 24 months and the action taken.
- f) Work plan and timelines of the control programme for the next five years, including cessation of *vaccination*. Describe the progressive objectives including expected status to be achieved in the next five years: for *zones* (if applicable) and for the whole country.
- g) Performance indicators and timeline. The performance indicators should relate to the most important areas and steps where improvements in the programme are needed. These may include, but are not restricted to, strengthening *Veterinary Services*, legislation, clinical and *slaughterhouse/abattoir* reporting, availability and quality of vaccines, *animal identification* systems, *vaccination* coverage, population immunity, movement control, disease awareness, CBPP seroprevalence reduction, cattle owners' participatory perception on the effectiveness of the programme, etc. The progressive reduction of *outbreak* incidence towards elimination of transmission of *Mmm* in all susceptible livestock in at least one *zone* of the country should also be measured and monitored.
- h) Assessment of the evolution of the *official control programme* since the first date of implementation. This should include documented evidence demonstrating that the control programme has been implemented and that the first results are favourable. Measurable evidence of success such as the performance indicators should include, but not be limited to, *vaccination* data, decreased prevalence, successfully implemented import measures, control of animal movements and finally decrease or elimination of CBPP *outbreaks* in the whole country or selected *zones* as described in the programme. This should include documented evidence of the effective implementation of Sections 3(d) and 3(e) above.
- i) Describe the funding for the control programme and annual budgets for its duration.
4. Control measures and emergency response
- a) List any written guidelines, including contingency plans, available to the *Veterinary Services* for dealing with suspected or confirmed *outbreaks* of CBPP. The contingency plan should be attached as an annex in one of

the WOAH official languages. If not available, provide a brief summary of what is covered. Provide information on any simulation exercise for CBPP that was conducted in the country in the past five years.

- b) In the event of a suspected or confirmed CBPP *outbreak*:
- i) Are quarantine measures imposed on *establishments* with suspected cases, pending final diagnosis? What other procedures are followed regarding suspected cases (e.g. livestock standstills)?
 - ii) Indicate the sampling, dispatch and testing procedures that would be used to identify and confirm presence of the pathogenic agent;
 - iii) Describe the actions that would be taken to control the disease situation in and around the *establishments* where the *outbreak* is confirmed;
 - iv) Describe in detail the control or *eradication* procedures (e.g. forward and backward tracing, *disinfection* of *establishments*, *vehicles* and equipment, including verification methods, *vaccination*, *stamping-out policy*, *slaughter*, movement control, pastured livestock and livestock as pets, control of offal, especially lungs, and carcasses, methods of disposal of carcasses and other contaminated products or materials, decontamination, campaigns to promote awareness of farmers) that would be taken. In the case of emergency *vaccination*, indicate the source and type of vaccine and provide details of any vaccine supply scheme and stocks;
 - v) Describe the criteria and procedures that would be used to confirm that an *outbreak* has been successfully controlled or eradicated, including restocking strategies, use of sentinel animals, serological surveillance programmes, etc.;
 - vi) Provide details of any compensation that would be made available to owners, farmers, etc. when animals are slaughtered for disease control or *eradication* purposes and the prescribed timetable for payments;
 - vii) Describe how control efforts, including *vaccination* and *biosecurity*, would target critical risk control points.
-

NB: FIRST ADOPTED IN 2009; MOST RECENT UPDATE ADOPTED IN 2024.

CHAPTER 1.11.

APPLICATION FOR OFFICIAL RECOGNITION BY WOAH OF FREE STATUS FOR FOOT AND MOUTH DISEASE

Article 1.11.1.

Country free from infection with foot and mouth disease virus where vaccination is not practised

The following information should be provided by WOAH Member Countries to support applications for official recognition of status as a country where *vaccination* is not practised that is free from *infection* with foot and mouth disease (FMD) virus in accordance with Chapter 8.8. of the *Terrestrial Code*.

The dossier provided to WOAH should address concisely all the following topics under the headings provided to describe the actual situation in the country and procedures currently applied, explaining how these comply with the *Terrestrial Code*.

The terminology defined in the WOAH *Terrestrial Code* and *Terrestrial Manual* should be referred to and used in compiling the dossier.

National legislation, regulations and *Veterinary Authority* directives may be referred to and annexed as appropriate in one of the WOAH official languages. Weblinks to supporting documents in one of the official languages of WOAH may also be provided, where they exist.

All annexes should be provided in one of the WOAH official languages.

The Delegate of the Member Country applying for recognition of FMD freedom for a country where *vaccination* is not practised must demonstrate compliance with the *Terrestrial Code*. That is, the Delegate should submit documentary evidence that the provisions of Article 8.8.3. have been properly implemented and supervised.

In addition, the Delegate of the Member Country must submit a declaration indicating for at least the past 12 months:

- 1) there has been no *infection* with FMDV;
- 2) there has been no transmission of FMDV in previously vaccinated animal *populations*;
- 3) *surveillance* in accordance with Articles 8.8.43. to 8.8.45. is in operation, and regulatory measures for the prevention and control of FMD have been implemented;
- 4) *vaccination* against FMD has been prohibited, and the prohibition has been effectively implemented and supervised.

In addition, the Delegate of the Member Country applying for recognition of historical freedom must also submit documentary evidence that the provisions in Article 1.4.6. of the *Terrestrial Code* have been properly implemented and supervised.

1. Introduction

- a) Geographical features (rivers, mountain ranges, etc.). Provide a general description of the country and, where relevant, of the region, including physical, geographical and other factors that are relevant to introduction of *infection* and spread of FMD virus, taking into account the countries or *zones* sharing common borders and

- other epidemiologic pathways for the potential introduction of the *infection*. Provide maps identifying the features above. Specify whether the application includes any noncontiguous territories.
- b) Livestock demographics. Describe the composition of the livestock industry in the country. In particular, describe:
- i) the susceptible animal *population* by species and types of production systems;
 - ii) the number of *herds* or *flocks*, etc. of each susceptible species;
 - iii) their geographical distribution;
 - iv) *herd* or *flock* density;
 - v) the degree of integration and role of producer organisations in the different production systems;
 - vi) any recent significant changes observed in the production (attach relevant documents if available).
- Provide tables and maps.
- c) *Wildlife* demographics. What susceptible *captive wild*, *wild* or *feral* species are present in the country? Provide estimates of *population* sizes, geographic distribution and a summary description of their habitat. What are the measures in place to prevent contact between domestic and susceptible *wildlife* species?
- d) *Slaughterhouses/abattoirs*, markets and events associated with the congregation of susceptible livestock (e.g. fairs, shows, competitions). Where are the major livestock marketing or collection centres? What are the patterns of movement of susceptible domestic species for marketing within the country? How are the susceptible animals sourced, transported and handled during these transactions? Provide maps as appropriate.

2. Veterinary system

- a) Legislation. Provide a table (and when available a weblink) listing all relevant veterinary legislation, regulations and *Veterinary Authority* directives in relation to FMD and a brief description of the relevance of each. The table should include, but not be limited to, the legislation on disease control measures and compensation systems.
- b) *Veterinary Services*. Describe how the *Veterinary Services* of the country comply with Chapters 1.1., 3.2. and 3.3. of the *Terrestrial Code*. Describe how the *Veterinary Services* supervise, control, enforce and monitor all FMD-related activities. Provide maps, figures and tables wherever possible.
- c) Provide information on any PVS evaluation conducted in the country and follow-up steps within the PVS Pathway and highlight the results relevant to FMD and the susceptible species.
- d) Provide a description of the involvement and the participation of industry, producers, farmers, including subsistence and small-scale producers, keepers, *veterinary paraprofessionals* including community animal health workers, and other relevant groups in FMD *surveillance* and control. Provide a description of the role and structure of the private veterinary sector, including the number of *veterinarians* and their distribution, in FMD *surveillance* and control. Include a description of continuing education and awareness programmes on FMD at all relevant levels.
- e) *Animal identification*, registration, traceability and movement control. Are susceptible animals identified (individually or at a group level)? Provide a description of the traceability system, including methods of *animal identification* and *establishment* or *herd* or *flock* registration, applicable to all susceptible species. How are movements of all susceptible species controlled in the country? Provide evidence of the effectiveness of *animal identification* and movement controls and a table describing the number, species, origin and destination of the animals and their products moved within the country in the past 24 months. Provide information on pastoralism, transhumance and related paths of movement.
- Describe the *risk management* strategy for uncontrolled movements of susceptible species (e.g. seasonal migration).
- Describe the actions available under national legislation. Provide information on illegal movements detected in the past 24 months and the action taken.

3. FMD eradication

- a) History. If *infection* has never occurred in the country, or has not occurred within the past 25 years, state explicitly whether or not the country is applying for recognition of historical freedom according to Article 1.4.6. of the *Terrestrial Code*.
- If *infection* has occurred in the country within the past 25 years, provide a description of the FMD history in the country, with emphasis on recent years. If applicable, provide tables and maps showing the date of first detection, the sources and routes of introduction of *infection*, the temporal and spatial distribution (number and location of *outbreaks* per year), the susceptible species involved, the date of last *case* or *eradication*, and the types and strains in the country.

- b) Strategy. Describe how FMD was controlled and eradicated (e.g. *stamp-out policy*, zoning, *vaccination*, movement control). Provide the time frame for *eradication*. Describe and justify the corrective actions that have been implemented to prevent future *outbreaks* of FMD in response to any past incursions of FMD virus.
- c) Vaccines and *vaccination*. Briefly answer the following:
- i) Is there any legislation that prohibits *vaccination*? If so:
 - Provide the date when *vaccination* was formally prohibited;
 - Provide information on cases of detection of illegal *vaccination* during the reporting period and actions taken in response to the detection.
 - ii) Was *vaccination* ever used in the country? If so:
 - Provide the date when the last *vaccination* was carried out;
 - What type of vaccine was used?
 - What species were vaccinated?
 - How were vaccinated animals identified?
 - What was the fate of those animals?
 - iii) In addition, if *vaccination* was applied during the past 24 months, provide a description and justification of the *vaccination* strategy and programme, including the following:
 - the vaccine strains;
 - potency and formulation, purity, details of any vaccine matching performed;
 - the species vaccinated;
 - identification of vaccinated animals;
 - the way in which the *vaccination* of animals was certified or reported and the records maintained;
 - evidence that the vaccine used complies with Chapter 3.1.8. of the *Terrestrial Manual*.
- d) Provide a description of the legislation, organisation and implementation of the *eradication* campaign. Outline the legislation applicable to the *eradication* and how the campaign was organised at different levels. Indicate if detailed operational guidelines exist and give a brief summary.

4. FMD diagnosis

Provide documentary evidence that the relevant provisions of Chapters 1.1.2., 1.1.3. and 3.1.8. of the *Terrestrial Manual* are applied. The following points should be addressed:

- a) Is FMD *laboratory* diagnosis carried out in the country? If so, provide an overview of the FMD-approved *laboratories* in the country, including the following:
 - i) How the work is shared between different *laboratories*, logistics for shipment of samples, the follow-up procedures and the time frame for reporting results;
 - ii) Details of test capability and the types of tests undertaken and their performance for their applied use (specificity and sensitivity per type of test). Provide details of the number of FMD tests performed in the last 24 months in national *laboratories* and in *laboratories* in other countries, if relevant;
 - iii) Procedures for quality assurance and for the official accreditation of *laboratories*. Give details of formal internal quality management systems, e.g. Good Laboratory Practice, ISO, etc. that exist in, or are planned for, the *laboratory* system;
 - iv) Provide details of performance in inter-*laboratory* validation tests (ring trials), including the most recent results and, if applicable, the corrective measures applied;
 - v) Provide details of the handling of live pathogenic agent, including a description of the biosecurity and biosafety measures applied;
 - vi) Provide a table identifying the tests carried out by each of the *laboratories* where they are performed, the quality accreditation and biosecurity standards followed and the proficiency tests carried out.
- b) If FMD *laboratory* diagnosis is not carried out in the country, provide the names of the *laboratories* in other countries providing the service as well as the arrangements in place, including logistics for shipment of samples and the time frame for reporting results.

5. FMD surveillance

Provide documentary evidence that *surveillance* for FMD in the country complies with Articles 8.8.43. to 8.8.45. of the *Terrestrial Code*, and Chapter 3.1.8. of the *Terrestrial Manual*. The following information should be included:

- a) What are the criteria for raising a suspicion of FMD? What is the procedure to notify (by whom and to whom) and what incentives are there for reporting and what penalties are involved for failure to report?

- b) Describe how clinical *surveillance* is conducted, including which sectors of the livestock production system are included in clinical *surveillance*, such as *establishments*, markets, fairs, *slaughterhouses/abattoirs*, check points, etc.
- Provide a summary table indicating, for the past 24 months, the number of suspected *cases*, the number of samples tested for FMD, species, type of sample, testing methods and results (including differential diagnosis). Provide an indication of the timelines of the response including completion of testing to confirm or exclude FMD. Provide details of follow-up actions taken on all suspicious and positive results.
- c) Serological or virological *surveillance*. Are serological or virological surveys conducted? If so, provide detailed information on the target population, design prevalence, confidence level, sample size, stratification, sampling methods and diagnostic tests used in accordance with Articles 8.8.43. to 8.8.45. of the *Terrestrial Code*. How frequently are surveys conducted? Are susceptible *wildlife* species included in serological or virological surveys? If not, explain the rationale. Describe how previously vaccinated or newly introduced vaccinated animal *populations* are considered in the strategy and design of the *surveillance* programme, if applicable.
- Provide a summary table indicating, for the past 24 months, the number of samples tested for FMD, species, type of sample, testing methods and results (including differential diagnosis). Provide details of follow-up actions taken on all suspicious and positive results and on how these findings are acted upon. Provide criteria for selection of *populations* for targeted surveillance based on the risk and numbers of animals examined and samples tested in diagnostic *laboratories*. Provide details of the methods selected and applied for monitoring the performance of the *surveillance* programme including indicators.
- d) Provide information on risks in different husbandry systems, and provide evidence that targeted studies are implemented to address gaps (e.g. targeted serological surveys, active *surveillance*, participatory epidemiology studies, *risk assessments*, etc.). Provide evidence of how the knowledge acquired through these activities assisted in more effective implementation of control measures.
- e) Provide details of the oversight of *surveillance* programmes by the *Veterinary Services* including training programmes for personnel involved in clinical, serological and virological *surveillance*, and the approaches used to increase community involvement in FMD *surveillance* programmes.

6. FMD prevention

Describe the procedures in place to prevent the introduction of FMD into the country, including details of:

- a) Coordination with other countries. Describe any relevant factors in neighbouring countries that should be taken into account (e.g. size, distance from the border to affected *herds*, *flocks* or animals). Describe coordination, collaboration and information-sharing activities with other countries in the same region or ecosystem.
- Are *protection zones* in place? If so, provide details of the measures that are applied (e.g. *vaccination*, intensified *surveillance*, density control of susceptible species), and provide a geo-referenced map of the *zones*.
- b) Describe the measures implemented to effectively prevent the introduction of the pathogenic agent, taking into consideration physical or geographical barriers. Describe the measures implemented to prevent the spread of the pathogenic agent within the country or *zone*. Provide evidence that measures to reduce transmission of FMD are in place at markets, such as enhancing awareness of FMD transmission mechanisms and human behaviour that can interrupt transmission, and implementation of good *biosecurity*, hygiene and *disinfection* routines at critical points all along the production and marketing networks (typically where animals are being moved and marketed through the country or region).
- c) What measures are taken to limit access of susceptible domestic, *feral* and *wild* animals to waste products of animal origin? Is the feeding of swill to pigs regulated? If so, provide information on the extent of the practice, and describe controls and *surveillance* measures.
- d) Import control procedures

Provide information on countries, *zones* or *compartments* from which the country authorises the import of susceptible animals or their products into the country. Describe the criteria applied to approve such countries, *zones* or *compartments*, the controls applied to entry of such animals and products, and subsequent internal movement. Describe the import measures (e.g. quarantine) and test procedures required. Advise whether imported animals of susceptible species are required to undergo a quarantine or isolation period and, if so, the duration and location of quarantine. Advise whether import permits and *international veterinary certificates* are required.

Describe any other procedures used for assessing the *risks* posed by import of susceptible animals or their products. Provide summary statistics on imports of susceptible animals and their products for at least the past 24 months, including temporary import and re-entry, specifying countries, *zones* or *compartments* of origin, species, vaccination status, and the quantity or volume and eventual destination in the country. Provide

information on whether or not *outbreaks* have been related to imports or transboundary movements of domestic animals.

- i) Provide a map with the number and location of all ports, airports and land border crossings. Describe the management structure, staffing levels and resources of the service responsible for import controls and its accountability to the *Veterinary Authority*. Describe the communication systems between the *Veterinary Authority* and the *border posts*, and between *border posts*.
- ii) Provide a description of the methods used for the safe disposal of waste from international traffic, who is responsible and provide a summary, for the past 24 months, of the quantity disposed of and the disposal locations. What are the biosecurity measures in place at waste disposal sites?
- iii) Cite the regulations and describe procedures, type and frequency of checks, and management of noncompliance at the points of entry into the country or their final destination, concerning the import and follow-up of the following:
 - animals;
 - genetic material (semen, oocytes and embryos);
 - animal products;
 - *veterinary medicinal products*;
 - other materials at risk of being contaminated with FMD virus, including bedding, litter and *feed*.

7. Control measures and contingency planning

- a) List any written guidelines, including contingency plans, available to the *Veterinary Services* for dealing with suspected or confirmed *outbreaks* of FMD. The contingency plan should be attached as an annex in one of the WOAH official languages. If not available, provide a brief summary of what is covered. Provide information on any simulation exercise for FMD that was conducted in the country in the past five years.
- b) In the event of a suspected or confirmed FMD *outbreak*:
 - i) Are quarantine measures imposed on *establishments* with suspected *cases*, pending final diagnosis? What other procedures are followed with respect to suspected *cases* (e.g. livestock standstills)?
 - ii) Indicate the sampling, dispatch and testing procedures that would be used to identify and confirm presence of the pathogenic agent;
 - iii) Describe the actions that would be taken to control the disease situation in and around the *establishments* where the *outbreak* is confirmed;
 - iv) Provide a detailed description of the control or *eradication* procedures (e.g. forward and backward tracing, movement control, *disinfection of establishments, vehicles* and equipment, including verification methods, *vaccination* including vaccine delivery and cold chain, *stamping-out policy*, methods of disposal of carcasses and other contaminated products or materials, decontamination, campaigns to promote awareness of farmers) that would be taken. In the case of emergency *vaccination*, indicate the source and type of vaccine and provide details of any vaccine supply scheme and stocks;
 - v) Describe the criteria and procedures that would be used to confirm that an *outbreak* has been successfully controlled or eradicated, including restocking strategies, use of sentinel animals, serological surveillance programmes, etc.;
 - vi) Give details of any compensation that would be made available to owners, farmers, etc. when animals are slaughtered for disease control or *eradication* purposes and the prescribed timetable for payments;
 - vii) Describe how control efforts, including *vaccination* and *biosecurity*, would target critical risk control points.

8. Recovery of free status

Member Countries applying for recognition of recovery of free status for a country should comply with the provisions of Article 8.8.11. and points 4, 5 and 6 of Article 8.8.3. of the *Terrestrial Code* and provide detailed information as specified in Sections 3, 5 and 6 of this questionnaire.

Article 1.11.2.

Country free from infection with foot and mouth disease virus where vaccination is practised

The following information should be provided by WOAH Member Countries to support applications for official recognition of status as a country where *vaccination* is practised that is free from *infection* with foot and mouth disease (FMD) virus in accordance with Chapter 8.8. of the *Terrestrial Code*.

The dossier provided to WOAH should address concisely all the following topics under the headings provided to describe the actual situation in the country and procedures currently applied, explaining how these comply with the *Terrestrial Code*.

The terminology defined in the WOAH *Terrestrial Code* and *Terrestrial Manual* should be referred to and used in compiling the dossier.

National legislation, regulations and *Veterinary Authority* directives may be referred to and annexed as appropriate in one of the WOAH official languages. Weblinks to supporting documents in one of the official languages of WOAH may also be provided, where they exist.

All annexes should be provided in one of the WOAH official languages.

The Delegate of the Member Country applying for recognition of FMD freedom for a country where *vaccination* is practised must demonstrate compliance with the *Terrestrial Code*. That is, the Delegate should submit documentary evidence that the provisions of Article 8.8.4. have been properly implemented and supervised.

In addition, the Delegate of the Member Country must submit a declaration indicating for at least the past 12 months:

- 1) there has been no *infection* with FMDV;
- 2) no transmission of FMDV;
- 3) compulsory systematic *vaccination* is carried out in the target population;
- 4) the vaccine used complies with the standards described in the *Terrestrial Manual*.

And, for at least the past 24 months, *surveillance* in accordance with Articles 8.8.43. to 8.8.45. is in operation, and regulatory measures for the prevention and control of FMD have been implemented.

In addition, the Delegate of the Member Country applying for recognition of historical freedom must also submit documentary evidence that the provisions in Article 1.4.6. of the *Terrestrial Code* have been properly implemented and supervised.

1. Introduction

- a) Geographical features (rivers, mountain ranges, etc.). Provide a general description of the country and, where relevant, of the region, including physical, geographical and other factors that are relevant to introduction of *infection* and spread of FMD virus, taking into account the countries or *zones* sharing common borders and other epidemiologic pathways for the potential introduction of the *infection*. Provide maps identifying the features above. Specify whether the application includes any noncontiguous territories.
- b) Livestock demographics. Describe the composition of the livestock industry in the country. In particular, describe:
 - i) the susceptible animal *population* by species and types of production systems;
 - ii) the number of *herds* or *flocks*, etc. of each susceptible species;
 - iii) their geographical distribution;
 - iv) *herd* or *flock* density;
 - v) the degree of integration and role of producer organisations in the different production systems;
 - vi) any recent significant changes observed in the production (attach relevant documents if available).Provide tables and maps.
- c) *Wildlife* demographics. What susceptible *captive wild*, *wild* or *feral* species are present in the country? Provide estimates of *population* sizes, geographic distribution and a summary description of their habitat. What are the measures in place to prevent contact between domestic and susceptible *wildlife* species?
- d) *Slaughterhouses/abattoirs*, markets and events associated with the congregation of susceptible livestock (e.g. fairs, shows, competitions). Where are the major livestock marketing or collection centres? What are the patterns of movement of susceptible domestic species for marketing within the country? How are the susceptible animals sourced, transported and handled during these transactions? Provide maps as appropriate.

2. Veterinary system

- a) Legislation. Provide a table (and when available a weblink) listing all relevant veterinary legislation, regulations and *Veterinary Authority* directives in relation to FMD and a brief description of the relevance of each. The table should include, but not be limited to, the legislation on disease control measures and compensation systems.

- b) **Veterinary Services.** Describe how the **Veterinary Services** of the country comply with Chapters 1.1., 3.2. and 3.3. of the *Terrestrial Code*. Describe how the **Veterinary Services** supervise, control, enforce and monitor all FMD-related activities. Provide maps, figures and tables wherever possible.
- c) Provide information on any PVS evaluation conducted in the country and follow-up steps within the PVS Pathway and highlight the results relevant to FMD and the susceptible species.
- d) Provide a description of the involvement and the participation of industry, producers, farmers, including subsistence and small-scale producers, keepers, **veterinary paraprofessionals** including community animal health workers, and other relevant groups in FMD *surveillance* and control. Provide a description of the role and structure of the private veterinary sector, including the number of **veterinarians** and their distribution, in FMD *surveillance* and control. Include a description of continuing education and awareness programmes on FMD at all relevant levels.
- e) **Animal identification**, registration, traceability and movement control. Are susceptible animals identified (individually or at a group level)? Provide a description of the traceability system, including methods of *animal identification* and *establishment* or *herd* or *flock* registration, applicable to all susceptible species. How are movements of all susceptible species controlled in the country? Provide evidence of the effectiveness of *animal identification* and movement controls and a table describing the number, species, origin and destination of the animals and their products moved within the country in the past 24 months. Provide information on pastoralism, transhumance and related paths of movement.
Describe the *risk management* strategy for uncontrolled movements of susceptible species (e.g. seasonal migration).
Describe the actions available under national legislation. Provide information on illegal movements detected in the past 24 months and the action taken.

3. FMD eradication

- a) History. Provide a description of the FMD history in the country, with emphasis on recent years. If applicable, provide tables and maps showing the date of first detection, the sources and routes of introduction of *infection*, the temporal and spatial distribution (number and location of *outbreaks* per year), the susceptible species involved, the date of last *case* or *eradication*, and the types and strains in the country.
- b) Strategy. Describe how FMD was controlled and eradicated (e.g. *stamping-out policy*, modified stamping-out policy, zoning, *vaccination*, movement control). Provide the time frame for *eradication*. Describe and justify the corrective actions that have been implemented to prevent future *outbreaks* of FMD in response to any past incursions of FMD virus.
- c) Vaccines and *vaccination*. Describe any legislation regulating *vaccination*. Provide a description and justification of the *vaccination* strategy and programme, including the following:
 - i) the vaccine strains;
 - ii) potency and formulation, purity, details of any vaccine matching performed;
 - iii) the species vaccinated;
 - iv) identification of vaccinated animals;
 - v) the way in which the *vaccination* of animals was certified or reported and the records maintained;
 - vi) the date on which the last *vaccination* was performed;
 - vii) evidence that the vaccine used complies with Chapter 3.1.8. of the *Terrestrial Manual*.
- d) Provide detailed evidence of *vaccination* coverage and population immunity as follows:
Describe how the number of animals intended for *vaccination* and the number of vaccinated animals are estimated.
For serological surveys to estimate population immunity, provide detailed information on the sampling frame (target population, age, species and *vaccination* status) and survey design (expected prevalence, acceptable error, confidence level, sample size, stratification, sampling methods and diagnostic tests used). How long after *vaccination* are samples collected? Describe how the threshold for protective immunity has been established.
Provide the results of the *vaccination* coverage and population immunity by year, serotype, species, as relevant.
Provide details of any additional methods applied for monitoring the performance of *vaccination*.
- e) Provide a description of the legislation, organisation and implementation of the *eradication* campaign. Outline the legislation applicable to the *eradication* and how the campaign was organised at different levels. Indicate if detailed operational guidelines exist and give a brief summary.

4. FMD diagnosis

Provide documentary evidence that the relevant provisions of Chapters 1.1.2., 1.1.3. and 3.1.8. of the *Terrestrial Manual* are applied. The following points should be addressed:

- a) Is FMD *laboratory* diagnosis carried out in the country? If so, provide an overview of the FMD-approved *laboratories* in the country, including the following:
 - i) How the work is shared between different *laboratories*, logistics for shipment of samples, the follow-up procedures and the time frame for reporting results;
 - ii) Details of test capability and the types of tests undertaken and their performance for their applied use (specificity and sensitivity per type of test). Provide details of the number of FMD tests performed in the last 24 months in national *laboratories* and in *laboratories* in other countries, if relevant;
 - iii) Procedures for quality assurance and for the official accreditation of *laboratories*. Give details of formal internal quality management systems, e.g. Good Laboratory Practice, ISO, etc. that exist in, or are planned for, the *laboratory* system;
 - iv) Provide details of performance in inter-*laboratory* validation tests (ring trials), including the most recent results and, if applicable, the corrective measures applied;
 - v) Provide details of the handling of live pathogenic agent, including a description of the biosecurity and biosafety measures applied;
 - vi) Provide a table identifying the tests carried out by each of the *laboratories* where they are performed, the quality accreditation and biosecurity standards followed and the proficiency tests carried out.
- b) If FMD *laboratory* diagnosis is not carried out in the country, provide the names of the *laboratories* in other countries providing the service as well as the arrangements in place, including logistics for shipment of samples and the time frame for reporting results.

5. FMD surveillance

Provide documentary evidence that *surveillance* for FMD in the country complies with Articles 8.8.43. to 8.8.45. of the *Terrestrial Code*, and Chapter 3.1.8. of the *Terrestrial Manual*. The following information should be included:

- a) What are the criteria for raising a suspicion of FMD? What is the procedure to notify (by whom and to whom) and what incentives are there for reporting and what penalties are involved for failure to report?
- b) Describe how clinical *surveillance* is conducted, including which sectors of the livestock production system are included in clinical *surveillance*, such as *establishments*, markets, fairs, *slaughterhouses/abattoirs*, check points, etc.

Provide a summary table indicating, for the past 24 months, the number of suspected *cases*, the number of samples tested for FMD, species, type of sample, testing methods and results (including differential diagnosis). Provide an indication of the timelines of the response including completion of testing to confirm or exclude FMD. Provide details of follow-up actions taken on all suspicious and positive results.

- c) Serological or virological *surveillance*. Are serological or virological surveys conducted? If so, provide detailed information on the target population, design prevalence, confidence level, sample size, stratification, sampling methods and diagnostic tests used in accordance with Articles 8.8.43. to 8.8.45. of the *Terrestrial Code*. How frequently are surveys conducted? Are susceptible *wildlife* species included in serological or virological surveys? If not, explain the rationale.

Provide a summary table indicating, for the past 24 months, the number of samples tested for FMD, species, type of sample, testing methods and results (including differential diagnosis). Provide details of follow-up actions taken on all suspicious and positive results and how these findings are acted upon. Provide criteria for selection of *populations* for targeted surveillance based on the risk and numbers of animals examined and samples tested in diagnostic *laboratories*. Provide details of the methods selected and applied for monitoring the performance of the *surveillance* programme including indicators.

- d) Provide information on risks in different husbandry systems, and provide evidence that targeted studies are implemented to address gaps (e.g. targeted serological surveys, active *surveillance*, participatory epidemiology studies, *risk assessments*, etc.). Provide evidence of how the knowledge acquired through these activities assisted in more effective implementation of control measures.
- e) Provide details of the oversight of *surveillance* programmes by the *Veterinary Services* including training programmes for personnel involved in clinical, serological and virological *surveillance*, and the approaches used to increase community involvement in FMD *surveillance* programmes.
- f) Provide evidence that surveys are carried out to assess *vaccination* coverage and population immunity of the target populations, show laboratory evidence that the vaccine strains used is appropriate.

6. FMD prevention

Describe the procedures in place to prevent the introduction of FMD into the country, including details of:

- a) Coordination with other countries. Describe any relevant factors in neighbouring countries that should be taken into account (e.g. size, distance from the border to affected *herds*, *flocks* or animals). Describe coordination, collaboration and information-sharing activities with other countries in the same region or ecosystem.
Are *protection zones* in place? If so, provide details of the measures that are applied (e.g. *vaccination*, intensified *surveillance*, density control of susceptible species), and provide a geo-referenced map of the *zones*.
- b) Describe the measures implemented to effectively prevent the introduction of the pathogenic agent, taking into consideration physical or geographical barriers. Describe the measures implemented to prevent the spread of the pathogenic agent within the country or *zone*. Provide evidence that measures to reduce transmission of FMD are in place at markets, such as enhancing awareness of FMD transmission mechanisms and human behaviour that can interrupt transmission, and implementation of good *biosecurity*, hygiene and *disinfection* routines at critical points all along the production and marketing networks (typically where animals are being moved and marketed through the country or region).
- c) What measures are taken to limit access of susceptible domestic, *feral* and *wild* animals to waste products of animal origin? Is the feeding of swill to pigs regulated? If so, provide information on the extent of the practice, and describe controls and *surveillance* measures.
- d) Import control procedures

Provide information on countries, *zones* or *compartments* from which the country authorises the import of susceptible animals or their products into the country. Describe the criteria applied to approve such countries, *zones* or *compartments*, the controls applied to entry of such animals and products, and subsequent internal movement. Describe the import measures (e.g. quarantine) and test procedures required. Advise whether imported animals of susceptible species are required to undergo a quarantine or isolation period and, if so, the duration and location of quarantine. Advise whether import permits and *international veterinary certificates* are required.

Describe any other procedures used for assessing the *risks* posed by import of susceptible animals or their products. Provide summary statistics on imports of susceptible animals and their products for at least the past 24 months, including temporary import and re-entry, specifying countries, *zones* or *compartments* of origin, species and the quantity or volume and eventual destination in the country. Provide information on whether or not *outbreaks* have been related to imports or transboundary movements of domestic animals.

- i) Provide a map with the number and location of all ports, airports and land border crossings. Describe the management structure, staffing levels and resources of the service responsible for import controls and its accountability to the *Veterinary Authority*. Describe the communication systems between the *Veterinary Authority* and the *border posts*, and between *border posts*.
- ii) Provide a description of the methods used for the safe disposal of waste from international traffic, who is responsible and provide a summary, for the past 24 months, of the quantity disposed of and the disposal locations. What are the biosecurity measures in place at waste disposal sites?
- iii) Cite the regulations and describe procedures, type and frequency of checks, and management of noncompliance at the points of entry into the country or their final destination, concerning the import and follow-up of the following:
 - animals;
 - genetic material (semen, oocytes and embryos);
 - animal products;
 - *veterinary medicinal products*;
 - other materials at risk of being contaminated with FMD virus, including bedding, litter and feed.

7. Control measures and contingency planning

- a) List any written guidelines, including contingency plans, available to the *Veterinary Services* for dealing with suspected or confirmed *outbreaks* of FMD. The contingency plan should be attached as an annex in one of the WOAH official languages. If not available, provide a brief summary of what is covered. Provide information on any simulation exercise for FMD that was conducted in the country in the past five years.
- b) In the event of a suspected or confirmed FMD *outbreak*:
 - i) Are quarantine measures imposed on *establishments* with suspected *cases*, pending final diagnosis? What other procedures are followed with respect to suspected *cases* (e.g. livestock standstills)?
 - ii) Indicate the sampling, dispatch and testing procedures that would be used to identify and confirm presence of the pathogenic agent;

- iii) Describe the actions that would be taken to control the disease situation in and around the *establishments* where the *outbreak* is confirmed;
- iv) Provide a detailed description of the control or *eradication* procedures (e.g. forward and backward tracing, movement control, *disinfection of establishments*, *vehicles* and equipment, including verification methods, *vaccination* including vaccine delivery and cold chain, *stamping-out policy*, methods of disposal of carcasses and other contaminated products or materials, decontamination, campaigns to promote awareness of farmers) that would be taken. In the case of emergency *vaccination*, indicate the source and type of vaccine and provide details of any vaccine supply scheme and stocks;
- v) Describe the criteria and procedures that would be used to confirm that an *outbreak* has been successfully controlled or eradicated, including restocking strategies, use of sentinel animals, serological *surveillance* programmes, etc.;
- vi) Give details of any compensation that would be made available to owners, farmers, etc. when animals are slaughtered for disease control or *eradication* purposes and the prescribed timetable for payments;
- vii) Describe how control efforts, including *vaccination* and *biosecurity*, would target critical risk control points.

8. Recovery of free status

Member Countries applying for recognition of recovery of free status for a country should comply with the provisions of Article 8.8.11. and points 1 e), f), g) and 2 of Article 8.8.4. of the *Terrestrial Code* and provide detailed information as specified in Sections 3, 5 and 6 of this questionnaire.

Article 1.11.3.

Zone free from infection with foot and mouth disease virus where vaccination is not practised

The following information should be provided by WOAH Member Countries to support applications for official recognition of status as a *zone* where *vaccination* is not practised that is free from *infection* with foot and mouth disease (FMD) virus in accordance with Chapter 8.8. of the *Terrestrial Code*.

The dossier provided to WOAH should address concisely all the following topics under the headings provided to describe the actual situation in the country and procedures currently applied, explaining how these comply with the *Terrestrial Code*.

The terminology defined in the WOAH *Terrestrial Code* and *Terrestrial Manual* should be referred to and used in compiling the dossier.

National legislation, regulations and *Veterinary Authority* directives may be referred to and annexed as appropriate in one of the WOAH official languages. Weblinks to supporting documents in one of the official languages of WOAH may also be provided, where they exist.

All annexes should be provided in one of the WOAH official languages.

The Delegate of the Member Country applying for recognition of FMD zonal freedom must demonstrate compliance with the *Terrestrial Code*. That is, the Delegate should submit documentary evidence that the provisions of Article 8.8.3. have been properly implemented and supervised.

In addition, the Delegate of the Member Country must submit a declaration indicating for at least the past 12 months:

- 1) there has been no *infection* with FMDV;
- 2) there has been no transmission of FMDV in previously vaccinated animal *populations*;
- 3) *surveillance* in accordance with Articles 8.8.43. to 8.8.45. is in operation, and regulatory measures for the prevention and control of FMD have been implemented;
- 4) *vaccination* against FMD has been prohibited and the prohibition has been effectively implemented and supervised.

In addition, the Delegate of the Member Country applying for recognition of historical zonal freedom must also submit documentary evidence that the provisions in Article 1.4.6. of the *Terrestrial Code* have been properly implemented and supervised.

1. Introduction

- a) Geographical features (rivers, mountain ranges, etc.). Provide a general description of the country and the zone, and where relevant of the region, including physical, geographical and other factors that are relevant to introduction of *infection* and spread of FMD virus, taking into account the countries or zones sharing common borders and other epidemiologic pathways for the potential introduction of the *infection*.

The boundaries of the zone must be clearly defined, including a *protection zone* if applied. Provide maps identifying the features above, including a digitalised, geo-referenced map with a precise text description of the geographical boundaries of the zone.

- b) Livestock demographics. Describe the composition of the livestock industry in the country and the zone. In particular, describe:
- i) the susceptible animal *population* by species and types of production systems in the country and the zone;
 - ii) the number of *herds* or *flocks*, etc. of each susceptible species;
 - iii) their geographical distribution;
 - iv) *herd* or *flock* density;
 - v) the degree of integration and role of producer organisations in the different production systems;
 - vi) any recent significant changes observed in the production (attach relevant documents if available).

Provide tables and maps.

- c) *Wildlife* demographics. What susceptible *captive wild*, *wild* or *feral* species are present in the country and the zone? Provide estimates of *population* sizes, geographic distribution and a summary description of their habitat. What are the measures in place to prevent contact between domestic and susceptible *wildlife* species?
- d) *Slaughterhouses/abattoirs*, markets and events associated with the congregation of susceptible livestock (e.g. fairs, shows, competitions). Where are the major livestock marketing or collection centres? What are the patterns of movement of susceptible domestic species for marketing within the country or zone, and between zones of the same or different status? How are the susceptible animals sourced, transported and handled during these transactions? Provide maps as appropriate.

2. Veterinary system

- a) Legislation. Provide a table (and when available a weblink) listing all relevant veterinary legislation, regulations and *Veterinary Authority* directives in relation to FMD and a brief description of the relevance of each. The table should include, but not be limited to, the legislation on disease control measures and compensation systems.
- b) *Veterinary Services*. Describe how the *Veterinary Services* of the country comply with Chapters 1.1., 3.2. and 3.3. of the *Terrestrial Code*. Describe how the *Veterinary Services* supervise, control, enforce and monitor all FMD-related activities. Provide maps, figures and tables wherever possible.
- c) Provide information on any PVS evaluation conducted in the country and follow-up steps within the PVS Pathway and highlight the results relevant to FMD and the susceptible species.
- d) Provide a description of the involvement and the participation of industry, producers, farmers, including subsistence and small-scale producers, keepers, *veterinary paraprofessionals* including community animal health workers, and other relevant groups in FMD *surveillance* and control. Provide a description of the role and structure of the private veterinary sector, including the number of *veterinarians* and their distribution, in FMD *surveillance* and control. Include a description of continuing education and awareness programmes on FMD at all relevant levels.
- e) *Animal identification*, registration, traceability and movement control. Are susceptible animals identified (individually or at a group level)? Provide a description of the traceability system, including methods of *animal identification* and *establishment* or *herd* or *flock* registration, applicable to all susceptible species. How are movements of all susceptible species controlled in and between zones of the same or different status for all production systems? Provide evidence of the effectiveness of *animal identification* and movement controls and a table describing the number, species, origin and destination of the animals and their products moved within the country in the past 24 months. Provide information on pastoralism, transhumance and related paths

of movement.

Describe the *risk management* strategy for uncontrolled movements of susceptible species (e.g. seasonal migration).

Describe the actions available under national legislation. Provide information on illegal movements detected in the past 24 months and the action taken.

3. FMD eradication

- a) History. If *infection* has never occurred in the country, or has not occurred within the last 25 years, state explicitly whether or not the *zone* is applying for recognition of historical freedom according to Article 1.4.6. of the *Terrestrial Code*.

If *infection* has occurred in the *zone* within the past 25 years, provide a description of the FMD history in the country and *zone*, with emphasis on recent years. If applicable, provide tables and maps showing the date of first detection, the sources and routes of introduction of *infection*, the temporal and spatial distribution (number and location of *outbreaks* per year), the susceptible species involved, the date of last case or *eradication* and the types and strains in the country.

- b) Strategy. Describe how FMD was controlled and eradicated in the *zone* (e.g. *stamping-out policy*, modified stamping-out policy, zoning, *vaccination*, movement control). Provide the time frame for *eradication*. Describe and justify the corrective actions that have been implemented to prevent future *outbreaks* of FMD in response to any past incursions of FMD virus.

- c) Vaccines and *vaccination*. Briefly answer the following:

- i) Is there any legislation that prohibits *vaccination*? If so:
- Provide the date when *vaccination* was formally prohibited;
 - Provide information on cases of detection of illegal *vaccination* during the reporting period and actions taken in response to the detection.
- ii) Was *vaccination* ever used in the *zone*? If so:
- Provide the date when the last *vaccination* was carried out;
 - What type of vaccine was used?
 - What species were vaccinated?
 - How were vaccinated animals identified?
 - What was the fate of those animals?
- iii) In addition, if *vaccination* was applied during the past 24 months, provide a description and justification of the *vaccination* strategy and programme, including the following:
- the vaccine strains;
 - potency and formulation, purity, details of any vaccine matching performed;
 - the species vaccinated;
 - identification of vaccinated animals;
 - the way in which the *vaccination* of animals was certified or reported and the records maintained;
 - evidence that the vaccine used complies with Chapter 3.1.8. of the *Terrestrial Manual*.
- iv) If *vaccination* continues to be used in the rest of the country, give details of the species vaccinated and on the post-*vaccination* monitoring programme.
- d) Provide a description of the legislation, organisation and implementation of the *eradication* campaign. Outline the legislation applicable to the *eradication* and how the campaign was organised at different levels. Indicate if detailed operational guidelines exist and give a brief summary.

4. FMD diagnosis

Provide documentary evidence that the relevant provisions of Chapters 1.1.2., 1.1.3. and 3.1.8. of the *Terrestrial Manual* are applied. The following points should be addressed:

- a) Is FMD *laboratory* diagnosis carried out in the country? If so, provide an overview of the FMD-approved *laboratories* in the country. Indicate the *laboratories* where samples originating from the zone are diagnosed. Address the following points:
 - i) How the work is shared between different *laboratories*, logistics for shipment of samples, the follow-up procedures and the time frame for reporting results;
 - ii) Details of test capability and the types of tests undertaken and their performance for their applied use (specificity and sensitivity per type of test). Provide details of the number of FMD tests performed in the last 24 months in national *laboratories* and in *laboratories* in other countries, if relevant;
 - iii) Procedures for quality assurance and for the official accreditation of *laboratories*. Give details of formal internal quality management systems, e.g. Good Laboratory Practice, ISO, etc. that exist in, or are planned for, the *laboratory* system;
 - iv) Provide details of performance in inter-*laboratory* validation tests (ring trials), including the most recent results and, if applicable, the corrective measures applied;
 - v) Provide details of the handling of live pathogenic agent, including a description of the biosecurity and biosafety measures applied;
 - vi) Provide a table identifying the tests carried out by each of the *laboratories* where they are performed, the quality accreditation and biosecurity standards followed and the proficiency tests carried out.
- b) If FMD *laboratory* diagnosis is not carried out in the country, provide the names of the *laboratories* in other countries providing the service as well as the arrangements in place, including logistics for shipment of samples and the time frame for reporting results.

5. FMD surveillance

Provide documentary evidence that *surveillance* for FMD in the *zone* complies with Articles 8.8.43. to 8.8.45. of the *Terrestrial Code*, and Chapter 3.1.8. of the *Terrestrial Manual*. The following information should be included:

- a) What are the criteria for raising a suspicion of FMD? What is the procedure to notify (by whom and to whom) and what incentives are there for reporting and what penalties are involved for failure to report?
- b) Describe how clinical *surveillance* is conducted, including which sectors of the livestock production system are included in clinical *surveillance*, such as *establishments*, markets, fairs, *slaughterhouses/abattoirs*, check points, etc.

Provide a summary table indicating, for the past 24 months, the number of suspected cases, the number of samples tested for FMD, species, type of sample, testing methods and results (including differential diagnosis). Provide an indication of the timelines of the response including completion of testing to confirm or exclude FMD. Provide details of follow-up actions taken on all suspicious and positive results.

- c) Serological or virological *surveillance*. Are serological or virological surveys conducted? If so, provide detailed information on the target population, design prevalence, confidence level, sample size, stratification, sampling methods and diagnostic tests used in accordance with Articles

of the *Terrestrial Code*. How frequently are surveys conducted? Are susceptible *wildlife* species included in serological or virological surveys? If not, explain the rationale. Describe how previously vaccinated or newly introduced vaccinated animal *populations* are considered in the strategy and design of the *surveillance* programme, if applicable.

Provide a summary table indicating, for the past 24 months, the number of samples tested for FMD, species, type of sample, testing methods and results (including differential diagnosis). Provide details of follow-up actions taken on all suspicious and positive results and how these findings are acted upon. Provide criteria for selection of *populations* for targeted surveillance based on the risk and numbers of animals examined and samples tested in diagnostic *laboratories*. Provide details of the methods selected and applied for monitoring the performance of the *surveillance* programme including indicators.

- d) Provide information on risks in different husbandry systems, and provide evidence that targeted studies are implemented to address gaps (e.g. targeted serological surveys, active *surveillance*, participatory epidemiology studies, *risk assessments*, etc.). Provide evidence of how the knowledge acquired through these activities assisted in more effective implementation of control measures.
- e) Provide details of the oversight of *surveillance* programmes by the *Veterinary Services* including training programmes for personnel involved in clinical, serological and virological *surveillance*, and the approaches used to increase community involvement in FMD *surveillance* programmes.

6. FMD prevention

Describe the procedures in place to prevent the introduction of FMD into the country or *zone*, including details of:

- a) Coordination with other countries. Describe any relevant factors in neighbouring countries and *zones* that should be taken into account (e.g. size, distance from the border to affected *herds*, *flocks* or animals). Describe coordination, collaboration and information-sharing activities with other countries and *zones* in the same region or ecosystem.

If the FMD free *zone* without *vaccination* is established in a FMD infected country or borders an infected country or *zone*, describe the animal health measures implemented to effectively prevent the introduction of the pathogenic agent, taking into consideration physical or geographical barriers.

Are *protection zones* in place? If so, indicate whether or not the *protection zone* are included in the proposed FMD free *zones*. Provide details of the measures that are applied (e.g. *vaccination*, intensified *surveillance*, density control of susceptible species), and provide a geo-referenced map of the *zones*.

- b) Describe the measures implemented to effectively prevent the introduction of the pathogenic agent, taking into consideration physical or geographical barriers. Describe the measures implemented to prevent the spread of the pathogenic agent within the country or *zone*. Provide evidence that measures to reduce transmission of FMD are in place at markets, such as enhancing awareness of FMD transmission mechanisms and human behaviour that can interrupt transmission, and implementation of good *biosecurity*, hygiene and *disinfection* routines at critical points all along the production and marketing networks (typically where animals are being moved and marketed through the country or region).
- c) What measures are taken to limit access of susceptible domestic, *feral* and *wild* animals to waste products of animal origin? Is the feeding of swill to pigs regulated? If so, provide information on the extent of the practice, and describe controls and *surveillance* measures.
- d) Import control procedures

Provide information on countries, *zones* or *compartments* from which the country authorises the import of susceptible animals or their products into the *zone*. Describe the criteria applied to approve such countries, *zones* or *compartments*, the controls applied to entry of such animals and products, and subsequent internal movement. Describe the import measures (e.g. quarantine) and test procedures required. Advise whether imported animals of susceptible species are required to undergo a quarantine or isolation period and, if so, the duration and location of quarantine. Advise whether import permits and *international veterinary certificates* are required.

Describe any other procedures used for assessing the *risks* posed by import of susceptible animals or their products. Provide summary statistics on imports of susceptible animals and their products for at least the past 24 months, including temporary import and re-entry, specifying countries, *zones* or *compartments* of origin, species, vaccination status, and the quantity or volume and eventual destination in the country. Provide information on whether or not *outbreaks* have been related to imports or transboundary movements of domestic animals.

- i) Provide a map with the number and location of all ports, airports and land border crossings. Describe the management structure, staffing levels and resources of the service responsible for import controls and its accountability to the *Veterinary Authority*. Describe the communication systems between the *Veterinary Authority* and the *border posts*, and between *border posts*.
- ii) Provide a description of the methods used for the safe disposal of waste from international traffic, who is responsible and provide a summary, for the past 24 months, of the quantity disposed of and the disposal locations. What are the biosecurity measures in place at waste disposal sites?
- iii) Cite the regulations and describe procedures, type and frequency of checks, and management of noncompliance at the points of entry into the *zone* or their final destination, concerning the import and follow-up of the following:
- animals;
 - genetic material (semen, oocytes and embryos);
 - animal products;
 - *veterinary medicinal products*;
 - other materials at risk of being contaminated with FMD virus, including bedding, litter and *feed*.

7. Control measures and contingency planning

- a) List any written guidelines, including contingency plans, available to the *Veterinary Services* for dealing with suspected or confirmed *outbreaks* of FMD. The contingency plan should be attached as an annex in one of the WOAH official languages. If not available, provide a brief summary of what is covered. Provide information on any simulation exercise for FMD that was conducted in the country in the past five years.

- b) In the event of a suspected or confirmed FMD outbreak:
- i) Are quarantine measures imposed on *establishments* with suspected cases, pending final diagnosis? What other procedures are followed with respect to suspected cases (e.g. livestock standstills)?
 - ii) Indicate the sampling, dispatch and testing procedures that would be used to identify and confirm presence of the pathogenic agent;
 - iii) Describe the actions that would be taken to control the disease situation in and around the *establishments* where the *outbreak* is confirmed;
 - iv) Provide a detailed description of the control or *eradication* procedures (e.g. forward and backward tracing, movement control, *disinfection of establishments, vehicles* and equipment, including verification methods, *vaccination* including vaccine delivery and cold chain, *stamping-out policy*, methods of disposal of carcasses and other contaminated products or materials, decontamination, campaigns to promote awareness of farmers) that would be taken. In the case of emergency *vaccination*, indicate the source and type of vaccine and provide details of any vaccine supply scheme and stocks;
 - v) Describe the criteria and procedures that would be used to confirm that an *outbreak* has been successfully controlled or eradicated, including restocking strategies, use of sentinel animals, serological surveillance programmes, etc.;
 - vi) Give details of any compensation that would be made available to owners, farmers, etc. when animals are slaughtered for disease control or *eradication* purposes and the prescribed timetable for payments;
 - vii) Describe how control efforts, including *vaccination* and *biosecurity*, would target critical risk control points.

8. Recovery of free status

Member Countries applying for recognition of recovery of free status for a *zone* where *vaccination* is not practised should comply with the provisions of Article 8.8.11. and points 4, 5 and 6 of Article 8.8.3. of the *Terrestrial Code* and provide detailed information as specified in Sections 3, 5 and 6 of this questionnaire.

Article 1.11.4.

Zone free from infection with foot and mouth disease virus where vaccination is practised

The following information should be provided by WOAH Member Countries to support applications for official recognition of status as a *zone* where *vaccination* is practised that is free from *infection* with foot and mouth disease (FMD) virus in accordance with Chapter 8.8. of the *Terrestrial Code*.

The dossier provided to WOAH should address concisely all the following topics under the headings provided to describe the actual situation in the country and procedures currently applied, explaining how these comply with the *Terrestrial Code*.

The terminology defined in the WOAH *Terrestrial Code* and *Terrestrial Manual* should be referred to and used in compiling the dossier.

National legislation, regulations and *Veterinary Authority* directives may be referred to and annexed as appropriate in one of the WOAH official languages. Weblinks to supporting documents in one of the official languages of WOAH may also be provided, where they exist.

All annexes should be provided in one of the WOAH official languages.

The Delegate of the Member Country applying for recognition of FMD zonal freedom must demonstrate compliance with the *Terrestrial Code*. That is, the Delegate should submit documentary evidence that the provisions of Article 8.8.4. have been properly implemented and supervised.

In addition, the Delegate of the Member Country must submit a declaration indicating for at least the past 12 months:

- 1) there has been no *infection* with FMDV;
- 2) no transmission of FMDV;
- 3) compulsory systematic *vaccination* is carried out in the target population;
- 4) the vaccine used complies with the standards described in the *Terrestrial Manual*.

And, for at least the past 24 months, *surveillance* in accordance with Articles 8.8.43. to 8.8.45.. is in operation, and regulatory measures for the prevention and control of FMD have been implemented.

In addition, the Delegate of the Member Country applying for recognition of historical zonal freedom must also submit documentary evidence that the provisions in Article 1.4.6. of the *Terrestrial Code* have been properly implemented and supervised.

1. Introduction

- a) Geographical features (rivers, mountain ranges, etc.). Provide a general description of the country and the *zone*, and where relevant of the region, including physical, geographical and other factors that are relevant to introduction of *infection* and spread of FMD virus, taking into account the countries or *zones* sharing common borders and other epidemiologic pathways for the potential introduction of the *infection*.

The boundaries of the *zone* must be clearly defined, including a *protection zone* if applied. Provide maps identifying the features above, including a digitalised, geo-referenced map with a description of the geographical boundaries of the *zone*.

- b) Livestock demographics. Describe the composition of the livestock industry in the country and the *zone*. In particular, describe:
- the susceptible animal *population* by species and types of production systems in the country and the *zone*;
 - the number of *herds* or *flocks*, etc. of each susceptible species;
 - their geographical distribution;
 - herd* or *flock* density;
 - the degree of integration and role of producer organisations in the different production systems;
 - any recent significant changes observed in the production (attach relevant documents if available).

Provide tables and maps.

- c) *Wildlife* demographics. What susceptible *captive wild*, *wild* or *feral* species are present in the country and the *zone*? Provide estimates of *population* sizes, geographic distribution and a summary description of their habitat. What are the measures in place to prevent contact between domestic and susceptible *wildlife* species?
- d) *Slaughterhouses/abattoirs*, markets and events associated with the congregation of susceptible livestock (e.g. fairs, shows, competitions). Where are the major livestock marketing or collection centres? What are the patterns of movement of susceptible domestic species for marketing within the country or *zone*, and between *zones* of the same or different status? How are the susceptible animals sourced, transported and handled during these transactions? Provide maps as appropriate.

2. Veterinary system

- a) Legislation. Provide a table (and when available a weblink) listing all relevant veterinary legislation, regulations and *Veterinary Authority* directives in relation to FMD and a brief description of the relevance of each. The table should include, but not be limited to, the legislation on disease control measures and compensation systems.
- b) *Veterinary Services*. Describe how the *Veterinary Services* of the country comply with Chapters 1.1., 3.2. and 3.3. of the *Terrestrial Code*. Describe how the *Veterinary Services* supervise, control, enforce and monitor all FMD-related activities. Provide maps, figures and tables wherever possible.
- c) Provide information on any PVS evaluation conducted in the country and follow-up steps within the PVS Pathway and highlight the results relevant to FMD and the susceptible species.
- d) Provide a description of the involvement and the participation of industry, producers, farmers, including subsistence and small-scale producers, keepers, *veterinary paraprofessionals* including community animal health workers, and other relevant groups in FMD *surveillance* and control. Provide a description of the role and structure of the private veterinary sector, including the number of *veterinarians* and their distribution, in FMD *surveillance* and control. Include a description of continuing education and awareness programmes on FMD at all relevant levels.
- e) *Animal identification*, registration, traceability and movement control. Are susceptible animals identified (individually or at a group level)? Provide a description of the traceability system, including methods of *animal identification* and *establishment* or *herd* or *flock* registration, applicable to all susceptible species. How are movements of all susceptible species controlled in and between *zones* of the same or different status? Provide evidence of the effectiveness of *animal identification* and movement controls and a table describing

the number, species, origin and destination of the animals and their products moved within the country in the past 24 months. Provide information on pastoralism, transhumance and related paths of movement.

Describe the *risk management* strategy for uncontrolled movements of susceptible species (e.g. seasonal migration).

Describe the actions available under national legislation. Provide information on illegal movements detected in the past 24 months and the action taken.

3. FMD eradication

- a) History. Provide a description of the FMD history in the country and *zone*, with emphasis on recent years. If applicable, provide tables and maps showing the date of first detection, the sources and routes of introduction of *infection*, the temporal and spatial distribution (number and location of *outbreaks* per year), the susceptible species involved, the date of last case or *eradication* and the types and strains in the country.
- b) Strategy. Describe how FMD was controlled and eradicated in the *zone* (e.g. *stamping-out policy*, zoning, *vaccination*, movement control). Provide the time frame for *eradication*. Describe and justify the corrective actions that have been implemented to prevent future *outbreaks* of FMD in response to any past incursions of FMD virus.
- c) Vaccines and *vaccination*. Describe any legislation regulating *vaccination*. Provide a description and justification of the *vaccination* strategy and programme, including the following:
 - i) the vaccine strains;
 - ii) potency and formulation, purity, details of any vaccine matching performed;
 - iii) the species vaccinated;
 - iv) identification of vaccinated animals;
 - v) the way in which the *vaccination* of animals was certified or reported and the records maintained;
 - vi) the date on which the last *vaccination* was performed;
 - vii) evidence that the vaccine used complies with Chapter 3.1.8. of the *Terrestrial Manual*.
- d) Provide detailed evidence of *vaccination* coverage and population immunity as follows:

Describe how the number of animals intended for *vaccination* and the number of vaccinated animals are estimated.

For serological surveys to estimate population immunity, provide detailed information on the sampling frame (target population, age, species and *vaccination* status) and survey design (expected prevalence, acceptable error, confidence level, sample size, stratification, sampling methods and diagnostic tests used). How long after *vaccination* are samples collected? Describe how the threshold for protective immunity has been established.

Provide the results of the *vaccination* coverage and population immunity by year, serotype, species, as relevant.

Provide details of any additional methods applied for monitoring the performance of *vaccination*.

- e) Provide a description of the legislation, organisation and implementation of the *eradication* campaign. Outline the legislation applicable to the *eradication* and how the campaign was organised at different levels. Indicate if detailed operational guidelines exist and give a brief summary.

4. FMD diagnosis

Provide documentary evidence that the relevant provisions of Chapters 1.1.2., 1.1.3. and 3.1.8. of the *Terrestrial Manual* are applied. The following points should be addressed:

- a) Is FMD *laboratory* diagnosis carried out in the country? If so, provide an overview of the FMD-approved *laboratories* in the country. Indicate the *laboratories* where samples originating from the zone are diagnosed. Address the following points:
 - i) How the work is shared between different *laboratories*, logistics for shipment of samples, the follow-up procedures and the time frame for reporting results;
 - ii) Details of test capability and the types of tests undertaken and their performance for their applied use (specificity and sensitivity per type of test). Provide details of the number of FMD tests performed in the last 24 months in national *laboratories* and in *laboratories* in other countries, if relevant;
 - iii) Procedures for quality assurance and for the official accreditation of *laboratories*. Give details of formal internal quality management systems, e.g. Good Laboratory Practice, ISO, etc. that exist in, or are planned for, the *laboratory* system;
 - iv) Provide details of performance in inter-*laboratory* validation tests (ring trials), including the most recent results and, if applicable, the corrective measures applied;
 - v) Provide details of the handling of live pathogenic agent, including a description of the biosecurity and biosafety measures applied;
 - vi) Provide a table identifying the tests carried out by each of the *laboratories* where they are performed, the quality accreditation and biosecurity standards followed and the proficiency tests carried out.
- b) If FMD *laboratory* diagnosis is not carried out in the country, provide the names of the *laboratories* in other countries providing the service as well as the arrangements in place, including logistics for shipment of samples and the time frame for reporting results.

5. FMD surveillance

Provide documentary evidence that *surveillance* for FMD in the *zone* complies with Articles 8.8.43. to 8.8.45. of the *Terrestrial Code*, and Chapter 3.1.8. of the *Terrestrial Manual*. The following information should be included:

- a) What are the criteria for raising a suspicion of FMD? What is the procedure to notify (by whom and to whom) and what incentives are there for reporting and what penalties are involved for failure to report?
- b) Describe how clinical *surveillance* is conducted, including which sectors of the livestock production system are included in clinical *surveillance*, such as *establishments*, markets, fairs, *slaughterhouses/abattoirs*, check points, etc.

Provide a summary table indicating, for the past 24 months, the number of suspected cases, the number of samples tested for FMD, species, type of sample, testing methods and results (including differential diagnosis). Provide an indication of the timelines of the response including completion of testing to confirm or exclude FMD. Provide details of follow-up actions taken on all suspicious and positive results.

- c) Serological or virological *surveillance*. Are serological or virological surveys conducted? If so, provide detailed information on the target population, design prevalence, confidence level, sample size, stratification, sampling methods and diagnostic tests used in accordance with Articles 8.8.43. to 8.8.45. of the *Terrestrial Code*. How frequently are surveys conducted? Are susceptible *wildlife* species included in serological or virological surveys? If not, explain the rationale.

Provide a summary table indicating, for the past 24 months, the number of samples tested for FMD, species, type of sample, testing methods and results (including differential diagnosis). Provide details of follow-up actions taken on all suspicious and positive results and how these findings are acted upon. Provide criteria for selection of *populations* for targeted surveillance based on the risk and numbers of animals examined and samples tested in diagnostic *laboratories*. Provide details of the methods selected and applied for monitoring the performance of the *surveillance* programme including indicators.

- d) Provide information on risks in different husbandry systems, and provide evidence that targeted studies are implemented to address gaps (e.g. targeted serological surveys, active *surveillance*, participatory epidemiology studies, *risk assessments*, etc.). Provide evidence of how the knowledge acquired through these activities assisted in more effective implementation of control measures.
- e) Provide details of the oversight of *surveillance* programmes by the *Veterinary Services* including training programmes for personnel involved in clinical, serological and virological *surveillance*, and the approaches used to increase community involvement in FMD *surveillance* programmes.
- f) Provide evidence that surveys are carried out to assess *vaccination* coverage and population immunity of the target populations, show laboratory evidence that the vaccine strains used is appropriate.

6. FMD prevention

Describe the procedures in place to prevent the introduction of FMD into the country, including details of:

- a) Coordination with other countries. Describe any relevant factors in neighbouring countries and *zones* that should be taken into account (e.g. size, distance from the border to affected *herds* or *flocks* or animals). Describe coordination, collaboration and information-sharing activities with other countries and *zones* in the same region or ecosystem.

If the FMD free *zone* with *vaccination* is established in a FMD infected country or borders an infected country or *zone*, describe the animal health measures implemented to effectively prevent the introduction of the agent, taking into consideration physical or geographical barriers.

Are *protection zones* in place? If so, indicate whether or not the *protection zone* are included in the proposed FMD free *zones*. Provide details of the measures that are applied (e.g. *vaccination*, intensified *surveillance*, density control of susceptible species) and provide a geo-referenced map of the *zones*.

- b) Describe the measures implemented to effectively prevent the introduction of the pathogenic agent, taking into consideration physical or geographical barriers. Describe the measures implemented to prevent the spread of the pathogenic agent within the country or *zone*. Provide evidence that measures to reduce transmission of FMD are in place at markets, such as enhancing awareness of FMD transmission mechanisms and human behaviour that can interrupt transmission, and implementation of good *biosecurity*, hygiene and *disinfection* routines at critical points all along the production and marketing networks (typically where animals are being moved and marketed through the country or region).
- c) What measures are taken to limit access of susceptible domestic, *feral* and *wild* animals to waste products of animal origin? Is the feeding of swill to pigs regulated? If so, provide information on the extent of the practice, and describe controls and *surveillance* measures.
- d) Import control procedures

Provide information on countries, *zones* or *compartments* from which the country authorises the import of susceptible animals or their products into the country or *zone*. Describe the criteria applied to approve such countries, *zones* or *compartments*, the controls applied to entry of such animals and products, and subsequent internal movement. Describe the import measures (e.g. quarantine) and test procedures required. Advise whether imported animals of susceptible species are required to undergo a quarantine or isolation period and if so, the duration and location of quarantine. Advise whether import permits and *international veterinary certificates* are required.

Describe any other procedures used for assessing the *risks* posed by import of susceptible animals or their products. Provide summary statistics on imports of susceptible animals and their products for at least the past 24 months, including temporary import and re-entry, specifying countries, *zones* or *compartments* of origin, species and the quantity or volume and eventual destination in the country. Provide information on whether or not *outbreaks* have been related to imports or transboundary movements of domestic animals.

- i) Provide a map with the number and location of all ports, airports and land border crossings. Describe the management structure, staffing levels and resources of the service responsible for import controls and its accountability to the *Veterinary Authority*. Describe the communication systems between the *Veterinary Authority* and the *border posts*, and between *border posts*.
- ii) Provide a description of the methods used for the safe disposal of waste from international traffic, who is responsible and provide a summary, for the past 24 months, of the quantity disposed of and the disposal locations. What are the biosecurity measures in place at waste disposal sites?
- iii) Cite the regulations and describe procedures, type and frequency of checks, and management of noncompliance at the points of entry into the *zone* or their final destination, concerning the import and follow-up of the following:
 - animals;
 - genetic material (semen, oocytes and embryos);
 - animal products;
 - *veterinary medicinal products*;
 - other materials at risk of being contaminated with FMD virus, including bedding, litter and *feed*.

7. Control measures and contingency planning

- a) List any written guidelines, including contingency plans, available to the *Veterinary Services* for dealing with suspected or confirmed *outbreaks* of FMD. The contingency plan should be attached as an annex in one of the WOAH official languages. If not available, provide a brief summary of what is covered. Provide information on any simulation exercise for FMD that was conducted in the country in the past five years.

- b) In the event of a suspected or confirmed FMD outbreak:
- i) Are quarantine measures imposed on *establishments* with suspected cases, pending final diagnosis? What other procedures are followed with respect to suspected cases (e.g. livestock standstills)?
 - ii) Indicate the sampling, dispatch and testing procedures that would be used to identify and confirm presence of the pathogenic agent;
 - iii) Describe the actions that would be taken to control the disease situation in and around the *establishments* where the *outbreak* is confirmed;
 - iv) Provide a detailed description of the control or *eradication* procedures (e.g. forward and backward tracing, movement control, *disinfection of establishments, vehicles* and equipment, including verification methods, *vaccination* including vaccine delivery and cold chain, *stamping-out policy*, methods of disposal of carcasses and other contaminated products or materials, decontamination, campaigns to promote awareness of farmers) that would be taken. In the case of emergency *vaccination*, indicate the source and type of vaccine and provide details of any vaccine supply scheme and stocks;
 - v) Describe the criteria and procedures that would be used to confirm that an *outbreak* has been successfully controlled or eradicated, including restocking strategies, use of sentinel animals, serological surveillance programmes, etc.;
 - vi) Give details of any compensation that would be made available to owners, farmers, etc. when animals are slaughtered for disease control or *eradication* purposes and the prescribed timetable for payments;
 - vii) Describe how control efforts, including *vaccination* and *biosecurity*, would target critical risk control points.

8. Recovery of free status

Member Countries applying for recognition of recovery of free status for a *zone* where *vaccination* is practised should comply with the provisions of Article 8.8.11. and points 1 e), f) g) and 2 of Article 8.8.4. of the *Terrestrial Code* and provide detailed information as specified in Sections 3, 5 and 6 of this questionnaire.

Article 1.11.5.

Application for endorsement by WOAH of an official control programme for foot and mouth disease

The following information should be provided by WOAH Member Countries to support applications for endorsement by WOAH of an *official control programme* for foot and mouth disease (FMD) in accordance with Chapter 8.8. of the *Terrestrial Code*.

The dossier provided to WOAH should address concisely all the topics under the headings provided in Sections 1 to 4 to describe the actual situation in the country and the procedures currently applied, explaining how these comply with the *Terrestrial Code*.

In Sections 3 f) to 3 i) describe concisely the work plan and timelines of the control programme for the next five years.

The terminology defined in the WOAH *Terrestrial Code* and *Terrestrial Manual* should be referred to and used in compiling the dossier.

National legislation, regulations and *Veterinary Authority* directives may be referred to and annexed as appropriate in one of the WOAH official languages. Weblinks to supporting documents in one of the official languages of WOAH may also be provided, where they exist.

All annexes should be provided in one of the WOAH official languages.

The Delegate of the Member Country applying for endorsement of the *official control programme* should submit documentary evidence that the provisions of Article 8.8.42. have been properly implemented and supervised. In addition, the Delegate of the Member Country must submit the detailed national official control programme for FMD.

1. Introduction

- a) Geographical features (rivers, mountain ranges, etc.). Provide a general description of the country and *zones*, and where relevant of the region, including physical, geographical and other factors that are relevant to introduction of *infection* and spread of FMD virus, taking into account the countries or *zones* sharing common

- borders and other epidemiologic pathways for the potential introduction of *infection*. Provide maps identifying the features above. Specify whether the application includes any noncontiguous territories.
- b) If the endorsed plan is implemented in stages to specific parts of the country, the boundaries of the *zones* should be clearly defined, including the *protection zone* if applied. Provide a digitalised, geo-referenced map with a description of the geographical boundaries of the *zones*.
 - c) Livestock demographics. Describe the composition of the livestock industry in the country and any *zones*. In particular, describe:
 - i) the susceptible animal *population* by species and types of production systems;
 - ii) the number of *herds* or *flocks*, etc. of each susceptible species;
 - iii) their geographical distribution;
 - iv) *herd* or *flock* density;
 - v) the degree of integration and role of producer organisations in the different production systems;
 - vi) any recent significant changes observed in the production (attach relevant documents if available).Provide tables and maps.
 - d) *Wildlife* demographics. What susceptible *captive wild*, *wild* or *feral* species are present in the country and any *zones*? Provide estimates of *population* sizes, geographic distribution and a summary description of their habitat. What are the measures in place to prevent contact between domestic and susceptible *wildlife* species?
 - e) *Slaughterhouses/abattoirs*, markets and events associated with the congregation of susceptible livestock (e.g. fairs, shows, competitions). Where are the major livestock marketing or collection centres? What are the patterns of movement of susceptible domestic species for marketing within the country? How are the susceptible animals sourced, transported and handled during these transactions? Provide maps as appropriate.

2. Veterinary system

- a) Legislation. Provide a table (and when available a weblink) listing all relevant veterinary legislation, regulations and *Veterinary Authority* directives in relation to FMD and a brief description of the relevance of each. The table should include, but not be limited to, the legislation on disease control measures and compensation systems.
- b) *Veterinary Services*. Describe how the *Veterinary Services* of the country comply with Chapters 1.1., 3.2. and 3.3. of the *Terrestrial Code*. Describe how the *Veterinary Services* supervise, control, enforce and monitor all FMD-related activities. Provide maps, figures and tables wherever possible.
- c) Provide information on any PVS evaluation conducted in the country and follow-up steps within the PVS Pathway and highlight the results relevant to FMD and the susceptible species.
- d) Provide a description of the involvement and the participation of industry, producers, farmers, including subsistence and small-scale producers, keepers, *veterinary paraprofessionals* including community animal health workers, and other relevant groups in FMD *surveillance* and control. Provide a description of the role and structure of the private veterinary sector, including the number of *veterinarians* and their distribution, in FMD *surveillance* and control. Include a description of continuing education and awareness programmes on FMD at all relevant levels.
- e) *Animal identification*, registration, traceability and movement control. Are susceptible animals identified (individually or at a group level)? Provide a description of the traceability system, including methods of *animal identification* and *establishment* or *herd* or *flock* registration, applicable to all susceptible species. How are animal movements controlled in the country for all susceptible species? Provide evidence of the effectiveness of *animal identification* and movement controls and a table describing the number, species, origin and destination of the animals and their products moved within the country in the past 24 months. Provide information on pastoralism, transhumance and related paths of movement.
Describe the *risk management* strategy for uncontrolled movements of susceptible species (e.g. seasonal migration).
Describe the actions available under national legislation. Provide information on illegal movements detected in the past 24 months and the action taken.

3. Official control programme for FMD submitted for WOAH endorsement

Submit a concise plan of the measures for the control and eventual *eradication* of FMD in the country, including:

- a) Epidemiology
 - i) Describe the FMD history in the country, with emphasis on recent years. Provide tables and maps showing the date of first detection, the number and location of *outbreaks* per year, the sources and routes of introduction of *infection*, the types and strains present, the susceptible species involved and

the date of implementation of the control programme in the country.

- ii) Describe the epidemiological situation of FMD in the country and the surrounding countries or *zones* highlighting the current knowledge and gaps. Provide maps of:
 - the geography of the country with the relevant information concerning FMD situation;
 - livestock density and movements and estimated FMD prevalence.
- b) FMD surveillance

Provide documentary evidence that *surveillance* for FMD in the country complies with Articles 8.8.43. to 8.8.45. of the *Terrestrial Code*, and Chapter 3.1.8. of the *Terrestrial Manual*. The following information should be included:

- i) What are the criteria for raising a suspicion of FMD? What is the procedure to notify (by whom and to whom) and what incentives are there for reporting and what penalties are involved for failure to report?
- ii) Describe how clinical *surveillance* is conducted, including which sectors of the livestock production system are included in clinical *surveillance*, such as *establishments*, markets, fairs, *slaughterhouses/abattoirs*, check points, etc. Provide details of follow-up actions taken on clinical suspicions.
- iii) Serological or virological *surveillance*. Explain whether or not serological or virological surveys are conducted and, if so, how frequently and for what purpose. Provide detailed information on the target population, design prevalence, confidence level, sample size, stratification, sampling methods and diagnostic tests used in accordance with Articles 8.8.43. to 8.8.45. of the *Terrestrial Code*. Are susceptible *wildlife* species included in serological or virological surveys? If not, explain the rationale.

Provide a summary table indicating, for at least the past 24 months, the number of suspected cases, the number of samples tested for FMD, species, type of sample, testing methods and results (including differential diagnosis). Provide procedural details of follow-up actions taken on suspicious and positive results and on how these findings are interpreted and acted upon.

Provide criteria for selection of *populations* for targeted surveillance and numbers of animals examined and samples tested in diagnostic *laboratories*. Provide details of the methods selected and applied for monitoring the performance of the *surveillance* programme including indicators.

- iv) Provide information on circulating strains and the level of *risk* in different husbandry systems, and provide evidence that targeted studies are implemented to address gaps (e.g. targeted serological surveys, active *surveillance*, participatory epidemiology studies, *risk assessments*, etc.) and that the acquired knowledge assists in more effective implementation of control measures.
- v) Provide details of the oversight of *surveillance* programmes by the *Veterinary Services* including training programmes for personnel involved in clinical, serological and virological *surveillance*, and the approaches used to increase community involvement in FMD *surveillance* programmes.
- vi) Provide evidence that surveys are carried out to assess *vaccination* coverage and population immunity of the target populations, show laboratory evidence that the vaccine used is appropriate for circulating strains of virus, show analysis of *surveillance* data to assess the change in FMD prevalence over time in the target populations, assess the control measures (cost effectiveness, degree of implementation, impact). Provide information on outcomes of *outbreak* investigations including *outbreaks* that have occurred despite control measures, documented inspections showing compliance with biosecurity and hygiene requirements.

c) FMD diagnosis

Provide documentary evidence that the relevant provisions of Chapters 1.1.2., 1.1.3. and 3.1.8. of the *Terrestrial Manual* are applied. The following points should be addressed:

- i) Is FMD *laboratory* diagnosis carried out in the country? If so, provide an overview of the FMD-approved *laboratories* in the country, including the following:
 - How the work is shared between different *laboratories*, logistics for shipment of samples, the follow-up procedures and the time frame for reporting results;
 - Details of test capability and the types of tests undertaken and their performance for their applied use (specificity and sensitivity per type of test). Provide details of the number of FMD tests

- performed in the past 24 months in national *laboratories* and in *laboratories* in other countries, if relevant;
- Procedures for quality assurance and, if available, the official accreditation of *laboratories*. Give details of formal internal quality management systems, e.g. Good Laboratory Practice, ISO, etc. that exist in, or are planned for, the *laboratory system*;
 - Provide details of performance in inter-*laboratory* validation tests (ring trials), including the most recent results and, if applicable, the corrective measures applied;
 - Provide details of the handling of live pathogenic agent, including a description of the biosecurity and biosafety measures applied;
 - Provide a table identifying the tests carried out by each of the *laboratories* where they are performed, the quality accreditation and biosecurity standards followed and the proficiency tests carried out.
- ii) If FMD *laboratory* diagnosis is not carried out in the country, provide the names of the *laboratories* in other countries providing the service as well as the arrangements in place, including logistics for shipment of samples and the time frame for reporting results.
- d) Strategies
- i) Provide a description of the legislation, organisation and implementation of the current FMD control programme. Outline the legislation applicable to the control programme and how its implementation is organised at different levels. Indicate if detailed operational guidelines exist and give a brief summary.
 - ii) Describe FMD control strategies in the country or any *zones*, including in terms of animal movement control, fate of infected and in-contact animals and *vaccination*. Strategies should be based on the assessment of the FMD situation in the *zones*, country and region.
 - iii) Provide information on what types of vaccines are used and which species are vaccinated. Provide information on the licensing process for the vaccines used. Describe the *vaccination* programme in the country and any *zones*, including records kept, and provide evidence to show its effectiveness, such as *vaccination coverage*, population immunity, etc. Provide details of the studies carried out to determine the *vaccination coverage* and the population immunity, including the study designs and the results.
 - iv) Describe how the *stamping-out policy* is implemented in the country or any *zones* and under which circumstances.
 - v) In the event of *outbreaks*, provide evidence of the impact of the control measures already implemented on the reduction in number of *outbreaks* and their distribution. If possible, provide information on primary and secondary *outbreaks*.
- e) FMD prevention
- Describe the procedures in place to prevent the introduction of FMD into the country, including details of:
- i) Coordination with other countries. Describe any relevant factors in neighbouring countries and *zones* that should be taken into account (e.g. size, distance from the border to affected *herds* or *flocks* or animals). Describe coordination, collaboration and information-sharing activities with other countries and *zones* in the same region or ecosystem.
Are *protection zones* in place? If so, provide details of the measures that are applied (e.g. *vaccination*, intensified *surveillance*, density control of susceptible species), and provide a geo-referenced map of the *zones*.
 - ii) Describe the measures implemented to effectively prevent the introduction of the pathogenic agent, taking into consideration physical or geographical barriers. Describe the measures implemented to prevent the spread of the pathogenic agent within the country or *zone*. Provide evidence that measures to reduce transmission of FMD are in place at markets, such as enhancing awareness of FMD transmission mechanisms and human behaviour that can interrupt transmission, and implementation of good *biosecurity*, hygiene and *disinfection* routines at critical points all along the production and marketing networks (typically where animals are being moved and marketed through the country or region).
 - iii) What measures are taken to limit access of susceptible domestic, *feral* and *wild* animals to waste products of animal origin? Is the feeding of swill to pigs regulated? If so, provide information on the extent of the practice, and describe controls and *surveillance* measures.

iv) Import control procedures

Provide information on countries, *zones* or *compartments* from which the country authorises the import of susceptible animals or their products into the country or any *zones*. Describe the criteria applied to approve such countries, *zones* or *compartments*, the controls applied to entry of such animals and products and subsequent internal movement. Describe the import measures (e.g. quarantine) and test procedures required. Advise whether imported animals of susceptible species are required to undergo a quarantine or isolation period and, if so, the duration and location of quarantine. Advise whether import permits and *international veterinary certificates* are required.

Describe any other procedures used for assessing the *risks* posed by import of susceptible animals or their products. Provide summary statistics on imports of susceptible animals and their products for at least the past 24 months, including temporary import and re-entry, specifying countries, *zones* or *compartments* of origin, species and the quantity or volume and eventual destination in the country. Provide information on whether or not *outbreaks* have been related to imports or transboundary movements of domestic animals.

- Provide a map showing the number and location of all ports, airports and land border crossings. Describe the management structure, staffing levels and resources of the service responsible for import controls and its accountability to the *Veterinary Authority*. Describe the communication systems between the *Veterinary Authority* and the *border posts*, and between *border posts*.
- Provide a description of the methods used for the safe disposal of waste from international traffic, who is responsible and provide a summary, for the past 24 months, of the quantity disposed of and the disposal locations. What *biosecurity* is in place at waste disposal sites?
- Cite the regulations and describe procedures, type and frequency of checks, and management of noncompliance at the points of entry into the country or their final destination, concerning the import and follow-up of the following:
 - animals;
 - genetic material (semen, oocytes and embryos);
 - animal products;
 - *veterinary medicinal products*;
 - other materials at risk of being contaminated with FMD virus, including bedding, litter and feed.

v) Describe the actions available under legislation when an illegal import is detected. Provide information on illegal imports detected and the action taken.

- f) Work plan and timelines of the control programme for the next five years, including cessation of *vaccination*. Describe the progressive objectives including expected status to be achieved in the next five years: for *zones* (if applicable) and for the whole country.
- g) Performance indicators and timeline. The performance indicators should relate to the most important areas and steps where improvements in the programme are needed. These may include, but are not restricted to, strengthening *Veterinary Services*, legislation, reporting, availability and quality of vaccines, *animal identification* systems, *vaccination* coverage, population immunity, movement control, disease awareness, livestock owners' participatory perception on the effectiveness of the programme, etc. The progressive reduction of *outbreak* incidence towards elimination of FMD virus transmission in all susceptible livestock in at least one *zone* of the country should also be measured and monitored.
- h) Assessment of the evolution of the *official control programme* since the first date of implementation. This should include documented evidence demonstrating that the control programme has been implemented and that the first results are favourable. Measurable evidence of success such as the performance indicators should include, but not be limited to, *vaccination* data, decreased prevalence, successfully implemented import measures, control of animal movements and finally decrease or elimination of FMD *outbreaks* in the whole country or selected *zones* as described in the programme. Where relevant, the transition to the use of vaccines, which are fully compliant with the *Terrestrial Manual* in order to enable demonstration of no evidence of FMD virus transmission, should be included in the timeline. This should include documented evidence of the effective implementation of Sections 3 d) and 3 e) above.
- i) Describe the funding for the control programme and annual budgets for its duration.

4. Control measures and emergency response

- a) List any written guidelines, including contingency plans, available to the *Veterinary Services* for dealing with suspected or confirmed *outbreaks* of FMD. The contingency plan should be attached as an annex in one of the WOAH official languages. If not available, provide a brief summary of what is covered. Provide information on any simulation exercise for FMD that was conducted in the country in the last five years.
- b) In the event of a suspected or confirmed FMD *outbreak*:
 - i) Are quarantine measures imposed on *establishments* with suspected *cases*, pending final diagnosis? What other procedures are followed regarding suspected *cases* (e.g. livestock standstills)?
 - ii) Indicate the sampling, dispatch and testing procedures that would be used to identify and confirm presence of the pathogenic agent;
 - iii) Describe the actions that would be taken to control the disease situation in and around the *establishments* where the *outbreak* is confirmed;
 - iv) Describe in detail the control or *eradication* procedures (e.g. forward and backward tracing, *disinfection* of *establishments*, *vehicles* and equipment, including verification methods, *vaccination* including *vaccination* delivery and cold chain, *stamping-out policy*, movement control, control of *wildlife*, pastured livestock and livestock as pets, methods of disposal of carcasses and other contaminated products or materials, decontamination, campaigns to promote awareness of farmers) that would be taken. In the case of emergency *vaccination*, indicate the source and type of vaccine and provide details of any vaccine supply scheme and stocks;
 - v) Describe the criteria and procedures that would be used to confirm that an *outbreak* has been successfully controlled or eradicated, including restocking strategies, use of sentinel animals, serological *surveillance* programmes, etc.;
 - vi) Provide details of any compensation that would be made available to owners, farmers, etc. when animals are slaughtered for disease control or *eradication* purposes and the prescribed timetable for payments;
 - vii) Describe how control efforts, including *vaccination* and *biosecurity*, would target critical risk control points.

NB: FIRST ADOPTED IN 2009; MOST RECENT UPDATE ADOPTED IN 2024.

CHAPTER 1.12.

APPLICATION FOR OFFICIAL RECOGNITION BY WOAH OF FREE STATUS FOR PESTE DES PETITS RUMINANTS

Article 1.12.1.

Country free from infection with peste des petits ruminants virus

The following information should be provided by WOAH Member Countries to support applications for official recognition of status as a country free from *infection* with peste des petits ruminants (PPR) virus in accordance with Chapter 14.7. of the *Terrestrial Code*.

The dossier provided to WOAH should address concisely all the following topics under the headings provided to describe the actual situation in the country and the procedures currently applied, explaining how these comply with the *Terrestrial Code*.

The terminology defined in the WOAH *Terrestrial Code* and *Terrestrial Manual* should be referred to and used in compiling the dossier.

National legislation, regulations and *Veterinary Authority* directives may be referred to and annexed as appropriate in one of the WOAH official languages. Weblinks to supporting documents in one of the official languages of WOAH may also be provided, where they exist.

All annexes should be provided in one of the WOAH official languages.

The Delegate of the Member Country applying for recognition of PPR freedom for a country must demonstrate compliance with the *Terrestrial Code*. That is, the Delegate should submit documentary evidence that the provisions of Article 14.7.3. have been properly implemented and supervised.

In addition, the Delegate of the Member Country must submit a declaration indicating that:

- 1) there has been no *outbreak* of PPR during the past 24 months;
- 2) no evidence of *infection* with PPR virus has been found during the past 24 months;
- 3) no *vaccination* against PPR has been carried out during the past 24 months;
- 4) importation of domestic ruminants and their semen, oocytes or embryos is carried out in accordance with Articles 14.7.8. to 14.7.26.

In addition, the Delegate of the Member Country applying for recognition of historical freedom must also submit documentary evidence that the provisions in Article 1.4.6. of the *Terrestrial Code* have been properly implemented and supervised.

1. Introduction

- a) Geographical features (rivers, mountain ranges, etc.). Provide a general description of the country and, where relevant, of the region, including physical, geographical and other factors that are relevant to introduction of *infection* and spread of PPR virus, taking into account the countries sharing common borders and other

- epidemiologic pathways for the potential introduction of *infection*. Provide maps identifying the features above. Specify whether the application includes any noncontiguous territories.
- b) Livestock demographics. Describe the composition of the livestock industry in the country. In particular, describe:
- i) the susceptible animal *population* by species and types of production systems;
 - ii) the number of *herds* or *flocks*, etc. of each susceptible species;
 - iii) their geographical distribution;
 - iv) *herd* or *flock* density;
 - v) the degree of integration and role of producer organisations in the different production systems;
 - vi) any recent significant changes observed in the production (attach relevant documents if available).
- Provide tables and maps.
- c) *Wildlife* demographics. What susceptible *captive wild*, *wild* or *feral* species are present in the country? Provide estimates of *population* sizes and geographic distribution. What are the measures in place to prevent contact between domestic and susceptible *wildlife* species?
- d) *Slaughterhouses/abattoirs*, markets and events associated with the congregation of susceptible livestock (e.g. fairs, shows, competitions). Where are the major livestock marketing or collection centres? What are the patterns of movement of susceptible domestic species for marketing within the country? How are the susceptible animals sourced, transported and handled during these transactions? Provide maps as appropriate.

2. Veterinary system

- a) Legislation. Provide a table (and when available a weblink) listing all relevant veterinary legislation, regulations and *Veterinary Authority* directives in relation to PPR and a brief description of the relevance of each. The table should include, but not be limited to, the legislation on disease control measures and compensation systems.
 - b) *Veterinary Services*. Describe how the *Veterinary Services* of the country comply with Chapters 1.1., 3.2. and 3.3. of the *Terrestrial Code*. Describe how the *Veterinary Services* supervise, control, enforce and monitor all PPR-related activities. Provide maps, figures and tables wherever possible.
 - c) Provide information on any PVS evaluation conducted in the country and follow-up steps within the PVS Pathway and highlight the results relevant to PPR and the susceptible species.
 - d) Provide a description of the involvement and the participation of industry, producers, farmers, including subsistence and small-scale producers, keepers, *veterinary paraprofessionals* including community animal health workers, and other relevant groups in PPR *surveillance* and control. Provide a description of the structure and role of the private veterinary sector, including the number of *veterinarians* and their distribution, in PPR *surveillance* and control. Include a description of continuing education and awareness programmes on PPR at all relevant levels.
 - e) *Animal identification*, registration, traceability and movement control. Are susceptible animals identified (individually or at a group level)? Provide a description of the traceability system, including methods of *animal identification* and *establishment* or *herd* or *flock* registration, applicable to all susceptible species. How are animal movements controlled in the country for all susceptible species? Provide evidence of the effectiveness of *animal identification* and movement controls and a table describing the number, species, origin and destination of the animals and their products moved within the country in the past 24 months. Provide information on pastoralism, transhumance and related paths of movement.
Describe the *risk management* strategy for uncontrolled movements of susceptible species (e.g. seasonal migration for pastures and water).
- Describe the actions available under national legislation. Provide information on illegal movements detected in the past 24 months and the action taken.

3. PPR eradication

- a) History. If *infection* has never occurred in the country, or has not occurred within the past 25 years, state explicitly whether or not the country is applying for recognition of historical freedom according to Article 1.4.6.of the *Terrestrial Code*.
If *infection* has occurred in the country within the past 25 years, provide a description of the PPR history in the country, with emphasis on recent years. If applicable, provide tables and maps showing the date of first detection, the sources and routes of introduction of *infection*, the temporal and spatial distribution (number and location of *outbreaks* per year), the susceptible species involved, and the date of last case or *eradication* in the country.

- b) Strategy. Describe how PPR was controlled and eradicated (e.g. *stampin-out policy*, modified stamping-out policy, zoning, *vaccination*, movement control). Provide the time frame for *eradication*. Describe and justify the corrective actions that have been implemented to prevent future *outbreaks* of PPR in response to any past incursions of PPR virus.
- c) Vaccines and *vaccination*. Briefly answer the following:
- i) Is there any legislation that prohibits *vaccination*? If so:
 - Provide the date when *vaccination* was formally prohibited;
 - Provide information on cases of detection of illegal *vaccination* during the reporting period and actions taken in response to the detection.
 - ii) Was *vaccination* ever used in the country? If so:
 - Provide the date when the last *vaccination* was carried out;
 - What type of vaccine was used?
 - What species were vaccinated?
 - How were vaccinated animals identified?
 - What was the fate of those animals?
 - iii) In addition, if *vaccination* was applied during the past 24 months, provide a description and justification of the *vaccination* strategy and programme, including the following:
 - the vaccine strains;
 - the species vaccinated;
 - identification of vaccinated animals;
 - the way in which the *vaccination* of animals was certified or reported and the records maintained;
 - evidence that the vaccine used complies with Chapter 3.7.9. of the *Terrestrial Manual*.
- d) Provide a description of the legislation, organisation and implementation of the *eradication* campaign. Outline the legislation applicable to the *eradication* and how the campaign was organised at different levels. Indicate if detailed operational guidelines exist and give a brief summary.

4. PPR diagnosis

Provide documentary evidence that the relevant provisions of Chapters 1.1.2., 1.1.3. and 3.7.9. of the *Terrestrial Manual* are applied. The following points should be addressed:

- a) Is PPR *laboratory* diagnosis carried out in the country? If so, provide an overview of the PPR-approved *laboratories* in the country, including the following:
 - i) How the work is shared between different *laboratories*, logistics for shipment of samples, the follow-up procedures and the time frame for reporting results;
 - ii) Details of test capability and the types of tests undertaken and their performance for their applied use (specificity and sensitivity per type of test). Provide details of the number of PPR tests performed in the past 24 months in national *laboratories* and in *laboratories* in other countries, if relevant;
 - iii) Procedures for quality assurance and for the official accreditation of *laboratories*. Give details of formal internal quality management systems, e.g. Good Laboratory Practice, ISO, etc. that exist in, or are planned for, the *laboratory* system;
 - iv) Provide details of performance in inter-*laboratory* validation tests (ring trials), including the most recent results and, if applicable, the corrective measures applied;
 - v) Provide details of the handling of live pathogenic agent, including a description of the biosecurity and biosafety measures applied;
 - vi) Provide a table identifying the tests carried out by each of the *laboratories* where they are performed, the quality accreditation and biosecurity standards followed and the proficiency tests carried out.
- b) If PPR *laboratory* diagnosis is not carried out in the country, provide the names of the *laboratories* in other countries providing the service as well as the arrangements in place, including logistics for shipment of samples and the time frame for reporting results.

5. PPR surveillance

Provide documentary evidence that *surveillance* for PPR in the country complies with Articles 14.7.27. to 14.7.33. of the *Terrestrial Code*, and Chapter 3.7.9. of the *Terrestrial Manual*. The following information should be included:

- a) What are the criteria for raising a suspicion of PPR? What is the procedure to notify (by whom and to whom) and what incentives are there for reporting and what penalties are involved for failure to report?

- b) Describe how clinical *surveillance* is conducted, including which sectors of the livestock production system are included in clinical *surveillance*, such as *establishments*, markets, fairs, *slaughterhouses/abattoirs*, check points, etc.
- Provide a summary table indicating, for the past 24 months, the number of suspected *cases*, the number of samples tested for PPR, species, type of sample, testing methods and results (including differential diagnosis). Provide an indication of the timelines of the response including completion of testing to confirm or exclude PPR. Provide details of follow-up actions taken on all suspicious and positive results.
- c) Serological *surveillance*. Are serological surveys conducted? If so, provide detailed information on the target population, design prevalence, confidence level, sample size, stratification, sampling methods and diagnostic tests used in accordance with Articles 14.7.27. to 14.7.33. of the *Terrestrial Code*. Are susceptible *wildlife* species included in serological surveys? If not, explain the rationale.
- Provide a summary table indicating, for the past 24 months, the number of samples tested for PPR, species, type of sample, testing methods and results (including differential diagnosis). Provide details of follow-up actions taken on all suspicious and positive results and on how these findings are acted upon. Provide criteria for selection of *populations* for targeted surveillance and numbers of animals examined and samples tested in diagnostic *laboratories*. Provide details of the methods selected and applied for monitoring the performance of the *surveillance* programme including indicators.
- d) Provide information on risks in different husbandry systems, and provide evidence that targeted studies are implemented to address gaps (e.g. targeted serological surveys, active *surveillance*, participatory epidemiology studies, *risk assessments*, etc.). Provide evidence of how the knowledge acquired through these activities assisted in more effective implementation of control measures.
- e) Provide details of the oversight of *surveillance* programmes by the *Veterinary Services* including training programmes for personnel involved in clinical and serological *surveillance*, and the approaches used to increase community involvement in PPR *surveillance* programmes.

6. PPR prevention

Describe the procedures in place to prevent the introduction of PPR into the country, including details of:

- a) Coordination with other countries. Describe any relevant factors in neighbouring countries that should be taken into account (e.g. size, distance from the border to affected *herds* or *flocks* or animals). Describe coordination, collaboration and information-sharing activities with other countries in the same region or ecosystem.

Are *protection zones* in place? If so, provide details of the measures that are applied (e.g. *vaccination*, intensified *surveillance*, density control of susceptible species), and provide a geo-referenced map of the *zones*.

- b) Describe the measures implemented to effectively prevent the introduction of the pathogenic agent, taking into consideration physical or geographical barriers. Describe the measures implemented to prevent the spread of the pathogenic agent within the country. Provide evidence that measures to reduce transmission of PPR are in place at markets, such as enhancing awareness of PPR transmission mechanisms and human behaviour that can interrupt transmission, and implementation of good *biosecurity*, hygiene and *disinfection* routines at critical points all along the production and marketing networks (typically where animals are being moved and marketed through the country or region).

c) Import control procedures

Provide information on countries, *zones* or *compartments* from which the country authorises the import of susceptible animals or their products into the country. Describe the criteria applied to approve such countries, *zones* or *compartments*, the controls applied to entry of such animals and products, and subsequent internal movement. Describe the import measures (e.g. quarantine) and test procedures required. Advise whether imported animals of susceptible species are required to undergo a quarantine or isolation period and, if so, the duration and location of quarantine. Advise whether import permits and *international veterinary certificates* are required.

Describe any other procedures used for assessing the *risks* posed by import of susceptible animals or their products. Provide summary statistics on imports of susceptible animals and their products for at least the past 24 months, including temporary import and re-entry, specifying countries, *zones* or *compartments* of origin, species and the quantity or volume and eventual destination in the country.

- i) Provide a map showing the number and location of all ports, airports and land border crossings. Describe the management structure, staffing levels and resources of the service responsible for import controls and its accountability to the *Veterinary Authority*. Describe the communication systems between the *Veterinary Authority* and the *border posts*, and between *border posts*.

- ii) Cite the regulations and describe procedures, type and frequency of checks, and management of noncompliance at the points of entry into the country or their final destination, concerning the import and follow-up of the following:
- animals;
 - genetic material (semen, oocytes and embryos);
 - animal products;
 - *veterinary medicinal products*;
 - other materials at risk of being contaminated with PPR virus.

7. Control measures and contingency planning

- a) List any written guidelines, including contingency plans, available to the *Veterinary Services* for dealing with suspected or confirmed *outbreaks* of PPR. The contingency plan should be attached as an annex in one of the WOAH official languages. If not available, provide a brief summary of what is covered. Provide information on any simulation exercise for PPR that was conducted in the country in the past five years.
- b) In the event of a suspected or confirmed PPR *outbreak*:
- i) Are quarantine measures imposed on *establishments* with suspected *cases*, pending final diagnosis? What other procedures are followed with respect to suspected *cases* (e.g. livestock standstills)?
 - ii) Indicate the sampling, dispatch and testing procedures that would be used to identify and confirm presence of the pathogenic agent;
 - iii) Describe the actions that would be taken to control the disease situation in and around the *establishments* where the *outbreak* is confirmed;
 - iv) Provide a detailed description of the control or *eradication* procedures (e.g. forward and backward tracing, *disinfection* of *establishments*, *vehicles* and equipment, including verification methods, *vaccination*, *stamping-out policy*, movement control, control of *wildlife*, pastured sheep and goats, methods of disposal of carcasses and other contaminated products or materials, decontamination, campaigns to promote awareness of farmers, etc.) that would be taken. In the case of emergency *vaccination*, indicate the source and type of vaccine and provide details of any vaccine supply scheme and stocks;
 - v) Describe the criteria and procedures that would be used to confirm that an *outbreak* has been successfully controlled or eradicated, including restocking strategies, use of sentinel animals, serological *surveillance* programmes, etc.;
 - vi) Give details of any compensation that would be made available to owners, farmers, etc. when animals are slaughtered for disease control or *eradication* purposes and the prescribed timetable for payments;
 - vii) Describe how control efforts, including *vaccination* and *biosecurity*, would target critical risk control points.

8. Recovery of free status

Member Countries applying for recognition of recovery of free status for a country should comply with the provisions of Article 14.7.7. of the *Terrestrial Code* and provide detailed information as specified in Sections 1 to 7 of this questionnaire.

Article 1.12.2.

Zone free from infection with peste des petits ruminants virus

The following information should be provided by WOAH Member Countries to support applications for official recognition of status as a *zone free from infection* with peste des petits ruminants (PPR) virus in accordance with Chapter 14.7. of the *Terrestrial Code*.

The dossier provided to WOAH should address concisely all the following topics under the headings provided to describe the actual situation in the country and the procedures currently applied, explaining how these comply with the *Terrestrial Code*.

The terminology defined in the WOAH *Terrestrial Code* and *Terrestrial Manual* should be referred to and used in compiling the dossier.

National legislation, regulations and *Veterinary Authority* directives may be referred to and annexed as appropriate in one of the WOAH official languages. Weblinks to supporting documents in one of the official languages of WOAH may also be provided, where they exist.

All annexes should be provided in one of the WOAH official languages.

The Delegate of the Member Country applying for recognition of PPR freedom for a *zone* must demonstrate compliance with the *Terrestrial Code*. That is, the Delegate should submit documentary evidence that the provisions of Article 14.7.3. have been properly implemented and supervised.

In addition, the Delegate of the Member Country must submit a declaration indicating that:

- 1) there has been no *outbreak* of PPR during the past 24 months;
- 2) no evidence of *infection* with PPR virus has been found during the past 24 months;
- 3) no *vaccination* against PPR has been carried out during the past 24 months;
- 4) importation of domestic ruminants and their semen, oocytes or embryos is carried out in accordance with Articles 14.7.8. to 14.7.26.

In addition, the Delegate of the Member Country applying for recognition of historical freedom must also submit documentary evidence that the provisions in Article 1.4.6. of the *Terrestrial Code* have been properly implemented and supervised.

1. Introduction

- a) Geographical features (rivers, mountain ranges, etc.). Provide a general description of the country and the *zone*, and where relevant of the region, including physical, geographical and other factors that are relevant to introduction of *infection* and spread of PPR virus, taking into account the countries or *zones* sharing common borders and other epidemiologic pathways for the potential introduction of *infection*.
The boundaries of the *zone* must be clearly defined, including a *protection zone* if applied. Provide maps identifying the features above, including a digitalised, geo-referenced map with a precise text description of the geographical boundaries of the *zone*.
- b) Livestock demographics. Describe the composition of the livestock industry in the country and the *zone*. In particular, describe:
 - i) the susceptible animal *population* by species and types of production systems in the country and the *zone*;
 - ii) the number of *herds* or *flocks*, etc. of each susceptible species;
 - iii) their geographical distribution;
 - iv) *herd* or *flock* density;
 - v) the degree of integration and role of producer organisations in the different production systems;
 - vi) any recent significant changes observed in the production (attach relevant documents if available).Provide tables and maps.
- c) *Wildlife* demographics. What susceptible *captive wild*, *wild* or *feral* species are present in the country and the *zone*? Provide estimates of *population* sizes and geographic distribution. What are the measures in place to prevent contact between domestic and susceptible *wildlife* species?
- d) *Slaughterhouses/abattoirs*, markets and events associated with the congregation of susceptible livestock (e.g. fairs, shows, competitions). Where are the major livestock marketing or collection centres? What are the patterns of movement of susceptible domestic species for marketing within the country or *zone*, and between *zones* of the same or different status? How are the susceptible animals sourced, transported and handled during these transactions? Provide maps as appropriate.

2. Veterinary system

- a) Legislation. Provide a table (and when available a weblink) listing all relevant veterinary legislation, regulations and *Veterinary Authority* directives in relation to PPR and a brief description of the relevance of each. The table should include, but not be limited to, the legislation on disease control measures and compensation systems.
- b) *Veterinary Services*. Describe how the *Veterinary Services* of the country comply with Chapters 1.1., 3.2. and 3.3. of the *Terrestrial Code*. Describe how the *Veterinary Services* supervise, control, enforce and monitor all PPR-related activities. Provide maps, figures and tables wherever possible.
- c) Provide information on any PVS evaluation conducted in the country and follow-up steps within the PVS Pathway and highlight the results relevant to PPR and the susceptible species.

- d) Provide a description of the involvement and the participation of industry, producers, farmers, including subsistence and small-scale producers, keepers, *veterinary paraprofessionals* including community animal health workers, and other relevant groups in PPR *surveillance* and control. Provide a description of the role and structure of the private veterinary sector, including the number of *veterinarians* and their distribution, in PPR *surveillance* and control. Include a description of continuing education and awareness programmes on PPR at all relevant levels.
- e) *Animal identification*, registration, traceability and movement control. Are susceptible animals identified (individually or at a group level)? Provide a description of the traceability system, including methods of *animal identification* and *establishment* or *herd* or *flock* registration, applicable to all susceptible species. How are animal movements controlled in and between *zones* of the same or different status for all susceptible species? Provide evidence of the effectiveness of *animal identification* and movement controls and a table describing the number, species, origin and destination of the animals and their products moved within the country in the past 24 months. Provide information on pastoralism, transhumance and related paths of movement.
- Describe the *risk management* strategy for uncontrolled movements of susceptible species (e.g. seasonal migration for pastures and water).
- Describe the actions available under national legislation. Provide information on illegal movements detected in the past 24 months and the action taken.

3. PPR eradication

- a) History. If *infection* has never occurred in the *zone*, or has not occurred within the past 25 years, state explicitly whether or not the *zone* is applying for recognition of historical freedom according to Article 1.4.6. of the *Terrestrial Code*.
- If *infection* has occurred in the *zone* within the past 25 years, provide a description of the PPR history in the country and *zone*, with emphasis on recent years. If applicable, provide tables and maps showing the date of first detection, the sources and routes of introduction of *infection*, the temporal and spatial distribution (number and location of *outbreaks* per year), the susceptible species involved, and the date of last case or *eradication* in the *zone*.
- b) Strategy. Describe how PPR was controlled and eradicated in the *zone* (e.g. *stamping-out policy*, modified stamping-out policy, zoning, *vaccination*, movement control). Provide the time frame for *eradication*. Describe and justify the corrective actions that have been implemented to prevent future *outbreaks* of PPR in response to any past incursions of PPR virus.
- c) Vaccines and *vaccination*. Briefly answer the following:
- i) Is there any legislation that prohibits *vaccination*? If so:
 - Provide the date when *vaccination* was formally prohibited;
 - Provide information on cases of detection of illegal *vaccination* during the reporting period and actions taken in response to the detection.
 - ii) Was *vaccination* ever used in the country? If so:
 - Provide the date when the last *vaccination* was carried out;
 - What type of vaccine was used in the *zone* and the rest of the country?
 - What species were vaccinated?
 - How were vaccinated animals identified?
 - What was the fate of those animals?
 - iii) In addition, if *vaccination* was applied during the past 24 months, provide a description and justification of the *vaccination* strategy and programme, including the following:
 - the vaccine strains;
 - the species vaccinated;
 - identification of vaccinated animals;
 - the way in which the *vaccination* of animals was certified or reported and the records maintained;
 - evidence that the vaccine used complies with Chapter 3.7.9. of the *Terrestrial Manual*.
- d) Provide a description of the legislation, organisation and implementation of the *eradication* campaign. Outline the legislation applicable to the *eradication* and how the campaign was organised at different levels. Indicate if detailed operational guidelines exist and give a brief summary.

4. PPR diagnosis

Provide documentary evidence that the relevant provisions of Chapters 1.1.2., 1.1.3. and 3.7.9. of the *Terrestrial Manual* are applied. The following points should be addressed:

- a) Is PPR *laboratory* diagnosis carried out in the country? If so, provide an overview of the PPR-approved *laboratories* in the country. Indicate the *laboratories* where samples originating from the *zone* are diagnosed. Address the following points:
 - i) How the work is shared between different *laboratories*, logistics for shipment of samples, the follow-up procedures and the time frame for reporting results;
 - ii) Details of test capability and the types of tests undertaken and their performance for their applied use (specificity and sensitivity per type of test). Provide details of the number of PPR tests performed in the past 24 months in national *laboratories* and in *laboratories* in other countries, if relevant;
 - iii) Procedures for quality assurance and for the official accreditation of *laboratories*. Give details of formal internal quality management systems, e.g. Good Laboratory Practice, ISO, etc. that exist in, or are planned for, the *laboratory* system;
 - iv) Provide details of performance in inter-*laboratory* validation tests (ring trials), including the most recent results and, if applicable, the corrective measures applied;
 - v) Provide details of the handling of live pathogenic agent, including a description of the biosecurity and biosafety measures applied;
 - vi) Provide a table identifying the tests carried out by each of the *laboratories* where they are performed, the quality accreditation and biosecurity standards followed and the proficiency tests carried out.
- b) If PPR *laboratory* diagnosis is not carried out in the country, provide the names of the *laboratories* in other countries providing the service as well as the arrangements in place, including logistics for shipment of samples and the time frame for reporting results.

5. PPR surveillance

Provide documentary evidence that *surveillance* for PPR in the *zone* complies with Articles 14.7.27. to 14.7.33. of the *Terrestrial Code* and Chapter 3.7.9. of the *Terrestrial Manual*. The following information should be included:

- a) What are the criteria for raising a suspicion of PPR? What is the procedure to notify (by whom and to whom), what incentives are there for reporting and what penalties are involved for failure to report?
- b) Describe how clinical *surveillance* is conducted, including which sectors of the livestock production system are included in clinical *surveillance*, such as *establishments*, markets, fairs, *slaughterhouses/abattoirs*, check points, etc.
Provide a summary table indicating, for the past 24 months, the number of suspected *cases*, the number of samples tested for PPR, species, type of sample, testing methods and results (including differential diagnosis). Provide an indication of the timelines of the response including completion of testing to confirm or exclude PPR. Provide details of follow-up actions taken on all suspicious and positive results.
- c) Serological *surveillance*. Are serological surveys conducted? If so, provide detailed information on the target population, design prevalence, confidence level, sample size, stratification, sampling methods and diagnostic tests used in accordance with Articles 14.7.27. to 14.7.33. of the *Terrestrial Code*. Are susceptible *wildlife* species included in serological surveys? If not, explain the rationale.
Provide a summary table indicating, for the past 24 months, the number of samples tested for PPR, species, type of sample, testing methods and results (including differential diagnosis). Provide details of follow-up actions taken on all suspicious and positive results and on how these findings are acted upon. Provide criteria for selection of *populations* for targeted surveillance and numbers of animals examined and samples tested in diagnostic *laboratories*. Provide details of the methods selected and applied for monitoring the performance of the *surveillance* programme including indicators.
- d) Provide information on risks in different husbandry systems, and provide evidence that targeted studies are implemented to address gaps (e.g. targeted serological surveys, active *surveillance*, participatory epidemiology studies, *risk assessments*, etc.). Provide evidence of how knowledge acquired through these activities assisted in more effective implementation of control measures.
- e) Provide details of the oversight of *surveillance* programmes by the *Veterinary Services* including training programmes for personnel involved in clinical and serological *surveillance*, and the approaches used to increase community involvement in PPR *surveillance* programmes.

6. PPR prevention

Describe the procedures in place to prevent the introduction of PPR into the country or *zone*, including details of:

- a) Coordination with other countries. Describe any relevant factors in neighbouring countries and *zones* that should be taken into account (e.g. size, distance from the border to affected *herds* or *flocks* or animals).

Describe coordination, collaboration and information-sharing activities with other countries and *zones* in the same region or ecosystem.

If the PPR free *zone* is established in a PPR infected country or borders an infected country or *zone*, describe the animal health measures implemented to effectively prevent the introduction of the pathogenic agent, taking into consideration existing physical or geographical barriers.

Are *protection zones* in place? If so, indicate whether or not the *protection zones* are included in the proposed free *zones*. Provide details of the measures that are applied (e.g. vaccination, intensified surveillance, density control of susceptible species), and provide a geo-referenced map of the *zones*.

- b) Describe the measures implemented to effectively prevent the introduction of the pathogenic agent, taking into consideration physical or geographical barriers. Describe the measures implemented to prevent the spread of the pathogenic agent within the country or *zone*. Provide evidence that measures to reduce transmission of PPR are in place at markets, such as enhancing awareness of PPR transmission mechanisms and human behaviour that can interrupt transmission, and implementation of good *biosecurity*, hygiene and *disinfection* routines at critical points all along the production and marketing networks (typically where animals are being moved and marketed through the country or region).

c) Import control procedures

Provide information on countries, *zones* or *compartments* from which the country authorises the import of susceptible animals or their products into the country or *zone*. Describe the criteria applied to approve such countries, *zones* or *compartments*, the controls applied to entry of such animals and products, and subsequent internal movement. Describe the import measures (e.g. quarantine) and test procedures required. Advise whether imported animals of susceptible species are required to undergo a quarantine or isolation period and, if so, the duration and location of quarantine. Advise whether import permits and *international veterinary certificates* are required.

Describe any other procedures used for assessing the *risks* posed by import of susceptible animals or their products. Provide summary statistics on imports of susceptible animals and their products for at least the past 24 months, including temporary import and re-entry, specifying countries, *zones* or *compartments* of origin, species and the quantity or volume and eventual destination in the country or *zone*.

- i) Provide a map showing the number and location of all ports, airports and land border crossings. Describe the management structure, staffing levels and resources of the service responsible for import controls and its accountability to the *Veterinary Authority*. Describe the communication systems between the *Veterinary Authority* and the *border posts*, and between *border posts*.
- ii) Cite the regulations and describe procedures, type and frequency of checks, and management of noncompliance at the points of entry into the *zone* or their final destination, concerning the import and follow-up of the following:
- animals;
 - genetic material (semen, oocytes and embryos);
 - animal products;
 - *veterinary medicinal products*;
 - other materials at risk of being contaminated with PPR virus.

7. Control measures and contingency planning

- a) List any written guidelines, including contingency plans, available to the *Veterinary Services* for dealing with suspected or confirmed *outbreaks* of PPR. The contingency plan should be attached as an annex in one of the WOAH official languages. If not available, provide a brief summary of what is covered. Provide information on any simulation exercise for PPR that was conducted in the country in the past five years.
- b) In the event of a suspected or confirmed PPR *outbreak*:
- i) Are quarantine measures imposed on *establishments* with suspected cases, pending final diagnosis? What other procedures are followed with respect to suspected cases (e.g. livestock standstills)?
- ii) Indicate the sampling, dispatch and testing procedures that would be used to identify and confirm presence of the pathogenic agent;
- iii) Describe the actions that would be taken to control the disease situation in and around the *establishments* where the *outbreak* is confirmed;

- iv) Provide a detailed description of the control or *eradication* procedures (e.g. forward and backward tracing, *disinfection* of establishments, vehicles and equipment, including verification methods, *vaccination*, *stamp-out policy*, movement control, control of *wildlife*, pastured sheep and goats, methods of disposal of carcasses and other contaminated products or materials, decontamination, campaigns to promote awareness of farmers, etc.) that would be taken; in the case of emergency *vaccination*, indicate the source and type of vaccine and provide details of any vaccine supply scheme and stocks;
- v) Describe the criteria and procedures that would be used to confirm that an *outbreak* has been successfully controlled or eradicated, including restocking strategies, use of sentinel animals, serological *surveillance* programmes, etc.;
- vi) Give details of any compensation that would be made available to owners, farmers, etc. when animals are slaughtered for disease control or *eradication* purposes and the prescribed timetable for payments;
- vii) Describe how control efforts, including *vaccination* and *biosecurity*, would target critical risk control points.

8. Recovery of free status

Member Countries applying for recognition of recovery of free status for a *zone* should comply with the provisions of Article 14.7.7. of the *Terrestrial Code* and provide detailed information as specified in Sections 1 to 7 of this questionnaire.

Article 1.12.3.

Application for endorsement by WOAH of an official control programme for peste des petits ruminants

The following information should be provided by WOAH Member Countries to support applications for endorsement by WOAH of an *official control programme* for peste des petits ruminants (PPR) in accordance with Chapter 14.7. of the *Terrestrial Code*.

The dossier provided to WOAH should address concisely all the topics under the headings provided in Sections 1 to 4 to describe the actual situation in the country and the procedures currently applied, explaining how these comply with the *Terrestrial Code*.

In Sections 3 f) to 3 i) describe concisely the work plan and timelines of the control programme for the next five years.

The terminology defined in the WOAH *Terrestrial Code* and *Terrestrial Manual* should be referred to and used in compiling the dossier.

National legislation, regulations and *Veterinary Authority* directives may be referred to and annexed as appropriate in one of the WOAH official languages. Weblinks to supporting documents in one of the official languages of WOAH may also be provided, where they exist.

All annexes should be provided in one of the WOAH official languages.

The Delegate of the Member Country applying for endorsement of the *official control programme* should submit documentary evidence that the provisions of Article 14.7.34. have been properly implemented and supervised. In addition, the Delegate of the Member Country must submit the detailed national official control programme for PPR.

1. Introduction

- a) Geographical features (rivers, mountain ranges, etc.). Provide a general description of the country and *zones*, and where relevant of the region, including physical, geographical and other factors that are relevant to introduction of *infection* and spread of PPR virus, taking into account the countries or *zones* sharing common

borders and other epidemiologic pathways for the potential introduction of *infection*. Provide maps identifying the features above. Specify whether the application includes any noncontiguous territories.

- b) If the endorsed plan is implemented in stages to specific parts of the country, the boundaries of the zones should be clearly defined, including the *protection zones* if applied. Provide a digitalised, geo-referenced map with a description of the geographical boundaries of the zones.
- c) Livestock demographics. Describe the composition of the livestock industry in the country and any zones. In particular, describe:
 - i) the susceptible animal *population* by species and types of production systems;
 - ii) the number of *herds* or *flocks*, etc. of each susceptible species;
 - iii) their geographical distribution;
 - iv) *herd* or *flock* density;
 - v) the degree of integration and role of producer organisations in the different production systems;
 - vi) any recent significant changes observed in the production (attach relevant documents if available).Provide tables and maps.
- d) *Wildlife* demographics. What susceptible *captive wild*, *wild* or *feral* species are present in the country and any zones? Provide estimates of *population* sizes and geographic distribution. What are the measures in place to prevent contact between domestic and susceptible *wildlife* species?
- e) *Slaughterhouses/abattoirs*, markets and events associated with the congregation of susceptible livestock (e.g. fairs, shows, competitions). Where are the major livestock marketing or collection centres? What are the patterns of movement of susceptible domestic species for marketing within the country? How are the susceptible animals sourced, transported and handled during these transactions? Provide maps as appropriate.

2. Veterinary system

- a) Legislation. Provide a table (and when available a weblink) listing all relevant veterinary legislation, regulations and *Veterinary Authority* directives in relation to the PPR control programme and a brief description of the relevance of each. The table should include, but not be limited to, the legislation on disease control measures and compensation systems.
- b) Veterinary Services. Describe how the *Veterinary Services* of the country comply with Chapters 1.1., 3.2. and 3.3. of the *Terrestrial Code*. Describe how the *Veterinary Services* supervise, control, enforce and monitor all PPR-related activities. Provide maps, figures and tables wherever possible.
- c) Provide information on any PVS evaluation conducted in the country and follow-up steps within the PVS Pathway and highlight the results relevant to PPR and the susceptible species.
- d) Provide a description of the involvement and the participation of industry, producers, farmers, including subsistence and small-scale producers, keepers, *veterinary paraprofessionals* including community animal health workers, and other relevant groups in PPR *surveillance* and control. Provide a description of the role and structure of the private veterinary sector, including the number of *veterinarians* and their distribution, in PPR *surveillance* and control. Include a description of continuing education and awareness programmes on PPR at all relevant levels.
- e) Animal identification, registration, traceability and movement control. Are susceptible animals identified (individually or at a group level)? Provide a description of the traceability system, including methods of *animal identification* and *establishment* or *herd* or *flock* registration applicable to all susceptible species. How are animal movements controlled in the country for all susceptible species? Provide evidence of the effectiveness of *animal identification* and movement controls and a table describing the number, species, origin and destination of the animals and their products moved within the country in the past 24 months. Provide information on pastoralism, transhumance and related paths of movement.

Describe the *risk management* strategy for uncontrolled movements of susceptible species (e.g. seasonal migration for pastures and water).

Describe the actions available under national legislation. Provide information on illegal movements detected in the past 24 months and the action taken.

3. Official control programme for PPR submitted for WOAH endorsement

Submit a concise plan of the measures for the control and eventual *eradication* of PPR in the country, including:

a) Epidemiology

- i) Describe the PPR history in the country, with emphasis on recent years. Provide tables and maps showing the date of first detection, the number and location of *outbreaks* per year, the sources and routes of introduction of *infection*, the types and lineages present, the susceptible species involved and the date of implementation of the control programme in the country.
- ii) Describe the epidemiological situation of PPR in the country and the surrounding countries or *zones* highlighting the current knowledge and gaps. Provide maps of:
 - the geography of the country with the relevant information concerning PPR situation;
 - small ruminant density and movements and estimated PPR prevalence.

b) PPR surveillance

Provide documentary evidence that *surveillance* for PPR in the country complies with Articles 14.7.27. to 14.7.33. of the *Terrestrial Code*, and Chapter 3.7.9. of the *Terrestrial Manual*. The following information should be included:

- i) What are the criteria for raising a suspicion of PPR? What is the procedure to notify (by whom and to whom) and what incentives are there for reporting and what penalties are involved for failure to report?
- ii) Describe how clinical *surveillance* is conducted, including which sectors of the livestock production system are included in clinical *surveillance*, such as *establishments*, markets, fairs, *slaughterhouses/abattoirs*, check points, etc. Provide details of follow-up actions taken on clinical suspicions.
- iii) Serological or virological *surveillance*. Explain whether or not serological or virological surveys are conducted and, if so, how frequently and for what purpose. Provide detailed information on the target population, design prevalence, confidence level, sample size, stratification, sampling methods and diagnostic tests used in accordance with Articles 14.7.27. to 14.7.33. of the *Terrestrial Code*. Are susceptible *wildlife* species included in serological or virological surveys? If not, explain the rationale.

Provide a summary table indicating, for at least the past 24 months, the number of suspected *cases*, the number of samples tested for PPR, species, type of sample, testing methods and results (including differential diagnosis). Provide procedural details of follow-up actions taken on suspicious and positive results and on how these findings are interpreted and acted upon.

Provide criteria for selection of *populations* for targeted surveillance and numbers of animals examined and samples tested in diagnostic *laboratories*. Provide details of the methods selected and applied for monitoring the performance of the *surveillance* programme including indicators.

- iv) Provide information on the level of *risk* in different husbandry systems, and provide evidence that targeted studies are implemented to address gaps (e.g. targeted serological surveys, active *surveillance*, participatory epidemiology studies, *risk assessments*, etc.) and that the acquired knowledge assists in more effective implementation of control measures.
- v) Provide details of the oversight of *surveillance* programmes by the *Veterinary Services* including training programmes for personnel involved in clinical, serological and virological *surveillance*, and the approaches used to increase community involvement in PPR *surveillance* programmes.
- vi) Provide evidence that surveys are carried out to assess *vaccination* coverage and population immunity of the target populations, show analysis of *surveillance* data to assess the change in PPR prevalence over time in the target populations, assess the control measures (cost effectiveness, degree of implementation, impact). Provide information on outcomes of *outbreak* investigations including *outbreaks* that have occurred despite control measures, documented inspections showing compliance with biosecurity and hygiene requirements.

c) PPR diagnosis

Provide documentary evidence that the relevant provisions of Chapters 1.1.2., 1.1.3. and 3.7.9. of the *Terrestrial Manual* are applied. The following points should be addressed:

- i) Is PPR *laboratory* diagnosis carried out in the country? If so, provide an overview of the PPR-approved *laboratories* in the country, including the following:
 - How the work is shared between different *laboratories*, logistics for shipment of samples, the follow-up procedures and the time frame for reporting results;
 - Details of test capability and the types of tests undertaken and their performance for their applied use (specificity and sensitivity per type of test). Provide details of the number of PPR tests performed in the past 24 months in national *laboratories* and in *laboratories* in other countries, if relevant;
 - Procedures for quality assurance and, if available, the official accreditation of *laboratories*. Give details of formal internal quality management systems, e.g. Good Laboratory Practice, ISO, etc. that exist in, or are planned for, the *laboratory* system;
 - Provide details of performance in inter-*laboratory* validation tests (ring trials), including the most recent results and, if applicable, the corrective measures applied;
 - Provide details of the handling of live pathogenic agent, including a description of the biosecurity and biosafety measures applied;
 - Provide a table identifying the tests carried out by each of the *laboratories* where they are performed, the quality accreditation and biosecurity standards followed and the proficiency tests carried out.
- ii) If PPR *laboratory* diagnosis is not carried out in the country, provide the names of the *laboratories* in other countries providing the service as well as the arrangements in place, including logistics for shipment of samples and the time frame for reporting results.

d) Strategies

- i) Provide a description of the legislation, organisation and implementation of the current PPR control programme. Outline the legislation applicable to the control programme and how its implementation is organised at different levels. Indicate if detailed operational guidelines exist and give a brief summary.
- ii) Describe PPR control strategies in the country or any *zones*, including in terms of animal movement control, fate of infected and in-contact animals and *vaccination*. Strategies should be based on the assessment of the PPR situation in the *zones*, country and region.
- iii) Provide information on what types of vaccines are used and which species are vaccinated. Provide evidence that the vaccine used complies with Chapter 1.1.8. of the *Terrestrial Manual*. Provide information on the licensing process for the vaccines used. Describe the *vaccination* programme in the country and any *zones*, including records kept, and provide evidence to show its effectiveness, such as *vaccination* coverage, population immunity, etc. Provide details of the studies carried out to determine the *vaccination* coverage and the population immunity, including the study designs and the results.
- iv) Describe how the *stamping-out policy* is implemented in the country or any *zones* and under which circumstances.
- v) In the event of *outbreaks*, provide evidence of the impact of the control measures already implemented on the reduction in number of *outbreaks* and their distribution. If possible, provide information on primary and secondary *outbreaks*.

e) PPR prevention

Describe the procedures in place to prevent the introduction of PPR into the country, including details of:

- i) Coordination with other countries. Describe any relevant factors in neighbouring countries and *zones* that should be taken into account (e.g. size, distance from the border to affected *herds* or *flocks* or animals). Describe coordination, collaboration and information-sharing activities with other countries and *zones* in the same region or ecosystem.

Are *protection zones* in place? If so, provide details of the measures that are applied (e.g. *vaccination*, intensified *surveillance*, density control of susceptible species), and provide a geo-referenced map of the *zones*.

- ii) Describe the measures implemented to effectively prevent the introduction of the pathogenic agent, taking into consideration physical or geographical barriers. Describe the measures implemented to prevent the spread of the pathogenic agent within the country or zone. Provide evidence that measures to reduce transmission of PPR are in place at markets, such as enhancing awareness of PPR transmission mechanisms and human behaviour that can interrupt transmission, and implementation of good *biosecurity*, hygiene and *disinfection* routines at critical points all along the production and marketing networks (typically where animals are being moved and marketed through the country or region).
- iii) Import control procedures

Provide information on countries, *zones* or *compartments* from which the country authorises the import of susceptible animals or their products into the country or any *zones*. Describe the criteria applied to approve such countries, *zones* or *compartments*, the controls applied to entry of such animals and products and subsequent internal movement. Describe the import measures (e.g. quarantine) and test procedures required. Advise whether imported animals of susceptible species are required to undergo a quarantine or isolation period and, if so, the duration and location of quarantine. Advise whether import permits and *international veterinary certificates* are required.

Describe any other procedures used for assessing the *risks* posed by import of susceptible animals or their products. Provide summary statistics on imports of susceptible animals and their products for at least the past 24 months, including temporary import and re-entry, specifying countries, *zones* or *compartments* of origin, species and the quantity or volume and eventual destination in the country. Provide information on whether or not *outbreaks* have been related to imports or transboundary movements of domestic animals.

 - Provide a map showing the number and location of all ports, airports and land border crossings. Describe the management structure, staffing levels and resources of the service responsible for import controls and its accountability to the *Veterinary Authority*. Describe the communication systems between the *Veterinary Authority* and the *border posts*, and between *border posts*.
 - Cite the regulations and describe procedures, type and frequency of checks, and management of noncompliance at the points of entry into the country or their final destination, concerning the import and follow-up of the following:
 - animals;
 - genetic material (semen, oocytes and embryos);
 - animal products;
 - *veterinary medicinal products*;
 - other materials at risk of being contaminated with PPR virus.
- iv) Describe the actions available under national legislation. Provide information on illegal movements detected in the past 24 months and the action taken.
- f) Work plan and timelines of the control programme for the next five years, including cessation of *vaccination*. Describe the progressive objectives including expected status to be achieved in the next five years: for *zones* (if applicable) and for the whole country.
- g) Performance indicators and timeline. The performance indicators should relate to the most important areas and steps where improvements in the programme are needed. These may include, but are not restricted to, strengthening *Veterinary Services*, legislation, reporting, availability and quality of vaccines, *animal identification* systems, *vaccination* coverage, population immunity, movement control, disease awareness, livestock owners' participatory perception on the effectiveness of the programme, etc. The progressive reduction of *outbreak* incidence towards elimination of PPR virus transmission in all susceptible livestock in at least one *zone* of the country should also be measured and monitored.
- h) Assessment of the evolution of the *official control programme* since the first date of implementation. This should include documented evidence demonstrating that the control programme has been implemented and that the first results are favourable. Measurable evidence of success such as the performance indicators should include, but not be limited to, *vaccination* data, decreased prevalence, successfully implemented import measures, control of animal movements and finally decrease or elimination of PPR *outbreaks* in the whole country or selected *zones* as described in the programme. This should include documented evidence of the effective implementation of Sections 3 d) to 3 e) above.
- i) Describe the funding for the control programme and annual budgets for its duration.

4. Control measures and emergency response

- a) List any written guidelines, including contingency plans, available to the *Veterinary Services* for dealing with suspected or confirmed *outbreaks* of PPR. The contingency plan should be attached as an annex in one of the WOAH official languages. If not available, provide a brief summary of what is covered. Provide information on any simulation exercise for PPR that was conducted in the country in the past five years.
 - b) In the event of a suspected or confirmed PPR *outbreak*:
 - i) Are quarantine measures imposed on *establishments* with suspected *cases*, pending final diagnosis? What other procedures are followed regarding suspected *cases* (e.g. livestock standstills)?
 - ii) Indicate the sampling, dispatch and testing procedures that would be used to identify and confirm presence of the pathogenic agent;
 - iii) Describe the actions that would be taken to control the disease situation in and around the *establishments* where the *outbreak* is confirmed;
 - iv) Describe in detail the control or *eradication* procedures (e.g. forward and backward tracing, *disinfection* of *establishments*, *vehicles* and equipment, including verification methods, *vaccination*, *stamping-out* policy, movement control, control of *wildlife*, pastured sheep and goats, methods of disposal of carcasses and other contaminated products or materials, decontamination, campaigns to promote awareness of farmers) that would be taken. In the case of emergency *vaccination*, indicate the source and type of vaccine and provide details of any vaccine supply scheme and stocks;
 - v) Describe the criteria and procedures that would be used to confirm that an *outbreak* has been successfully controlled or eradicated, including restocking strategies, use of sentinel animals, serological surveillance programmes, etc.;
 - vi) Provide details of any compensation that would be made available to owners, farmers, etc. when animals are slaughtered for disease control or *eradication* purposes and the prescribed timetable for payments;
 - vii) Describe how control efforts, including *vaccination* and *biosecurity*, would target critical risk control points.
-

NB: FIRST ADOPTED IN 2009; MOST RECENT UPDATE ADOPTED IN 2024.

SECTION 2.

RISK ANALYSIS

CHAPTER 2.1.

IMPORT RISK ANALYSIS

Article 2.1.1.

Introduction

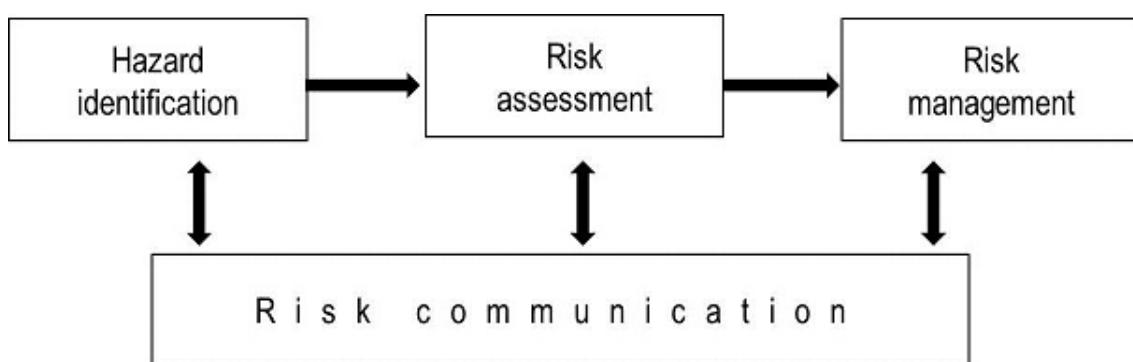
The importation of *animals* and animal products involves a certain level of disease *risk* to the *importing country*. This *risk* may be represented by one or several diseases, *infections* or *infestations*.

The principal aim of import *risk analysis* is to provide *importing countries* with an objective and defensible method of assessing the disease *risks* associated with the importation of *animals*, animal products, animal genetic material, feedstuffs, biological products and *pathological material*. The analysis should be transparent. Transparency means the comprehensive documentation and communication of all data, information, assumptions, methods, results, discussion and conclusions used in the *risk analysis*. This is necessary so that the *exporting country* and all interested parties are provided with clear reasons for the imposition of import conditions or refusal to import.

Transparency is also essential because data are often uncertain or incomplete and, without full documentation, the distinction between facts and the analyst's value judgements may blur.

This chapter provides recommendations and principles for conducting transparent, objective and defensible *risk analyses* for *international trade*. The components of *risk analysis* are *hazard identification*, *risk assessment*, *risk management* and *risk communication* (Figure 1).

Fig. 2. The four components of risk analysis



The *risk assessment* is the component of the analysis which estimates the *risks* associated with a *hazard*. *Risk assessments* may be qualitative or quantitative. For many diseases, particularly for those diseases listed in this *Terrestrial Code* where there are well developed internationally agreed standards, there is broad agreement concerning the likely *risks*. In such cases it is more likely that a qualitative assessment is all that is required. Qualitative assessment does not require mathematical modelling skills to carry out and so is often the type of assessment used for routine decision making. No single method of import *risk assessment* has proven applicable in all situations, and different methods may be appropriate in different circumstances.

The process of import *risk analysis* usually needs to take into consideration the results of an evaluation of Veterinary Services, zoning, compartmentalisation and surveillance systems in place for monitoring of animal health in the *exporting country*. These are described in separate chapters in the *Terrestrial Code*.

Article 2.1.2.

Hazard identification

The *hazard* identification involves identifying the pathogenic agents which could potentially produce adverse consequences associated with the importation of a *commodity*.

The *hazards* identified would be those appropriate to the species being imported, or from which the *commodity* is derived, and which may be present in the *exporting country*. It is then necessary to identify whether each *hazard* is already present in the *importing country*, and whether it is a *notifiable disease* or is subject to control or eradication in that country and to ensure that import measures are not more trade restrictive than those applied within the country.

Hazard identification is a categorisation step, identifying biological agents dichotomously as *hazards* or not. The *risk assessment* may be concluded if *hazard* identification fails to identify *hazards* associated with the importation.

The evaluation of the Veterinary Services, surveillance and control programmes and zoning and compartmentalisation systems are important inputs for assessing the likelihood of *hazards* being present in the animal population of the *exporting country*.

An *importing country* may decide to permit the importation using the appropriate sanitary standards recommended in the *Terrestrial Code*, thus eliminating the need for a *risk assessment*.

Article 2.1.3.

Principles of risk assessment

- 1) *Risk assessment* should be flexible to deal with the complexity of real life situations. No single method is applicable in all cases. *Risk assessment* should be able to accommodate the variety of animal *commodities*, the multiple *hazards* that may be identified with an importation and the specificity of each disease, detection and surveillance systems, exposure scenarios and types and amounts of data and information.
- 2) Both *qualitative risk assessment* and *quantitative risk assessment* methods are valid.
- 3) The *risk assessment* should be based on the best available information that is in accord with current scientific thinking. The assessment should be well-documented and supported with references to the scientific literature and other sources, including expert opinion.
- 4) Consistency in *risk assessment* methods should be encouraged and transparency is essential in order to ensure fairness and rationality, consistency in decision making and ease of understanding by all the interested parties.
- 5) *Risk assessments* should document the uncertainties, the assumptions made, and the effect of these on the final *risk estimate*.
- 6) *Risk* increases with increasing volume of *commodity* imported.
- 7) The *risk assessment* should be amenable to updating when additional information becomes available.

Article 2.1.4.

Risk assessment steps

1. Entry assessment

Entry assessment consists of describing the biological pathways necessary for an importation activity to introduce pathogenic agents into a particular environment, and estimating the probability of that complete process occurring, either qualitatively (in words) or quantitatively (as a numerical estimate). The entry assessment describes the probability of the “entry” of each of the *hazards* (the pathogenic agents) under each specified set of conditions with

respect to amounts and timing, and how these might change as a result of various actions, events or measures. Examples of the kind of inputs that may be required in the entry assessment are:

- a) Biological factors
 - species, age and breed of *animals*
 - agent predilection sites
 - *vaccination*, testing, treatment and quarantine.
- b) Country factors
 - incidence or prevalence
 - evaluation of *Veterinary Services, surveillance* and control programmes and zoning and compartmentalisation systems of the *exporting country*.
- c) Commodity factors
 - quantity of *commodity* to be imported
 - ease of contamination
 - effect of processing
 - effect of storage and transport.

If the entry assessment demonstrates no significant *risk*, the *risk assessment* does not need to continue.

2. Exposure assessment

Exposure assessment consists of describing the biological pathways necessary for exposure of *animals* and humans in the *importing country* to the *hazards* (in this case the pathogenic agents) from a given *risk source*, and estimating the probability of the exposures occurring, either qualitatively (in words) or quantitatively (as a numerical estimate).

The probability of exposure to the identified *hazards* is estimated for specified exposure conditions with respect to amounts, timing, frequency, duration of exposure, routes of exposure, such as ingestion, inhalation or insect bite, and the number, species and other characteristics of the animal and human populations exposed. Examples of the kind of inputs that may be required in the exposure assessment are:

- a) Biological factors
 - properties of the agent.
- b) Country factors
 - presence of potential *vectors*
 - human and animal demographics
 - customs and cultural practices
 - geographical and environmental characteristics.
- c) Commodity factors
 - quantity of *commodity* to be imported
 - intended use of the imported *animals* or products
 - disposal practices.

If the exposure assessment demonstrates no significant *risk*, the *risk assessment* may conclude at this step.

3. Consequence assessment

Consequence assessment consists of describing the relationship between specified exposures to a biological agent and the consequences of those exposures. A causal process should exist by which exposures produce adverse health or environmental consequences, which may in turn lead to socio-economic consequences. The consequence assessment describes the potential consequences of a given exposure and estimates the probability of them occurring. This estimate may be either qualitative (in words) or quantitative (a numerical estimate). Examples of consequences include:

- a) Direct consequences
 - animal *infection*, disease and production losses
 - public health consequences.
- b) Indirect consequences
 - *surveillance* and control costs
 - compensation costs

- potential trade losses
- adverse consequences to the environment.

4. Risk estimation

Risk estimation consists of integrating the results from the entry assessment, exposure assessment, and consequence assessment to produce overall measures of *risks* associated with the *hazards* identified at the outset. Thus *risk estimation* takes into account the whole of the *risk pathway* from *hazard* identified to unwanted outcome.

For a quantitative assessment, the final outputs may include:

- estimated numbers of *herds*, *flocks*, *animals* or people likely to experience health impacts of various degrees of severity over time;
- probability distributions, confidence intervals, and other means for expressing the uncertainties in these estimates;
- portrayal of the variance of all model inputs;
- a sensitivity analysis to rank the inputs as to their contribution to the variance of the *risk estimation* output;
- analysis of the dependence and correlation between model inputs.

Article 2.1.5.

Principles of risk management

- 1) *Risk management* is the process of deciding upon and implementing measures to address the *risks* identified in the *risk assessment*, whilst at the same time ensuring that negative effects on trade are minimised. The objective is to manage *risk* appropriately to ensure that a balance is achieved between a country's desire to minimise the likelihood or frequency of disease incursions and their consequences and its desire to import *commodities* and fulfil its obligations under *international trade* agreements.
- 2) The international standards of WOAH are the preferred choice of *sanitary measures* for *risk management*. The application of these *sanitary measures* should be in accordance with the intentions in the standards.

Article 2.1.6.

Risk management components

- 1) Risk evaluation - the process of comparing the *risk* estimated in the *risk assessment* with the reduction in *risk* expected from the proposed *risk management* measures.
- 2) Option evaluation - the process of identifying, evaluating the efficacy and feasibility of, and selecting measures to reduce the *risk* associated with an importation. The efficacy is the degree to which an option reduces the likelihood or magnitude of adverse health and economic consequences. Evaluating the efficacy of the options selected is an iterative process that involves their incorporation into the *risk assessment* and then comparing the resulting level of *risk* with that considered acceptable. The evaluation for feasibility normally focuses on technical, operational and economic factors affecting the implementation of the *risk management* options.
- 3) Implementation - the process of following through with the *risk management* decision and ensuring that the *risk management* measures are in place.
- 4) Monitoring and review - the ongoing process by which the *risk management* measures are continuously audited to ensure that they are achieving the results intended.

Article 2.1.7.

Principles of risk communication

- 1) *Risk communication* is the process by which information and opinions regarding *hazards* and *risks* are gathered from potentially affected and interested parties during a *risk analysis*, and by which the results of the *risk assessment* and proposed *risk management* measures are communicated to the decision-makers and interested parties in the *importing* and *exporting countries*. It is a multidimensional and iterative process and should ideally begin at the start of the *risk analysis* process and continue throughout.
- 2) A *risk communication* strategy should be put in place at the start of each *risk analysis*.
- 3) The *communication of the risk* should be an open, interactive, iterative and transparent exchange of information that may continue after the decision on importation.

- 4) The principal participants in *risk communication* include the authorities in the *exporting country* and other stakeholders such as domestic and foreign industry groups, domestic livestock producers and consumer groups.
 - 5) The assumptions and uncertainty in the model, model inputs and the *risk* estimates of the *risk assessment* should be communicated.
 - 6) Peer review is a component of *risk communication* in order to obtain scientific critique and to ensure that the data, information, methods and assumptions are the best available.
-

NB: FIRST ADOPTED IN 1998; MOST RECENT UPDATE ADOPTED IN 2018.

CHAPTER 2 . 2 .

CRITERIA APPLIED BY WOAH FOR ASSESSING THE SAFETY OF COMMODITIES

Article 2.2.1.

General provisions

For the purposes of this chapter the word 'safety' is applied only to animal and human health considerations for *listed diseases*.

In many disease-specific chapters, the second article lists *commodities* that can be traded from a country or *zone* regardless of its status with respect to the specific *listed disease*. The criteria for their inclusion in the list of *safe commodities* are based on the absence of the pathogenic agent in the traded *commodity*, either due to its absence in the tissues from which the *commodity* is derived or to its inactivation by the processing or treatment that the *animal products* have undergone.

The assessment of the safety of the *commodities* using the criteria relating to processing or treatment can only be undertaken when processing or treatments are well defined. It may not be necessary to take into account the entire process or treatment, so long as the steps critical for the inactivation of the pathogenic agent of concern are considered.

For the criteria in Article 2.2.2. to be applied, it is expected that processing or treatment (i) uses standardised protocols, which include the steps considered critical in the inactivation of the pathogenic agent of concern; (ii) is conducted in accordance with Good Manufacturing Practices; and (iii) that any other steps in the treatment, processing and subsequent handling of the *animal product* do not jeopardise its safety.

Article 2.2.2.

Criteria

For an *animal product* to be considered a *safe commodity* for *international trade* as described in the User's guide and Article 2.2.1., it should comply with the following criteria:

- 1) There is strong evidence that the pathogenic agent is not present in the tissues from which the *animal product* is derived in an amount able to cause *infection* in a human or *animal* by a natural exposure route. This evidence is based on the known distribution of the pathogenic agent in an infected *animal*, whether or not it shows clinical signs of disease.

OR

- 2) If the pathogenic agent may be present in, or may contaminate, the tissues from which the *animal product* is derived, the standard processing or treatment applied to produce the *commodity* to be traded, while not being

specifically directed at this pathogenic agent, inactivates it to the extent that possible *infection* of a human or *animal* is prevented through its action, which is:

- a) physical (e.g. temperature, drying, irradiation);

OR

- b) chemical (e.g. iodine, pH, salt, smoke);

OR

- c) biological (e.g. fermentation);

OR

- d) a combination of a) to c) above.

NB: FIRST ADOPTED IN 2017; MOST RECENT UPDATE ADOPTED IN 2018.

SECTION 3.

QUALITY OF VETERINARY SERVICES

CHAPTER 3.1.

INTRODUCTION TO RECOMMENDATIONS ON VETERINARY SERVICES

Article 3.1.1.

Veterinary Services are critical to global and national health security, food security and food safety, agricultural and rural development, poverty alleviation, safe national and *international trade*, *wildlife* health and environmental protection; as such they are considered a global public good. To achieve these goals, *Veterinary Services* require good governance, including effective policy and management, personnel and resources, veterinary professionals and collaboration with stakeholders in a One Health approach, involving all relevant sectors and disciplines across the human-animal-environment interface.

Member Countries have the sovereign right to structure and manage the delivery of animal health, *animal welfare* and veterinary public health in the veterinary domain in their countries as they consider appropriate. The veterinary domain covers a broad scope of possible activities. Section 3 focuses on aspects of the *Veterinary Services* that enable the WOAH standards to be met even when under the responsibility of one or more *Competent Authorities*.

Member Countries should implement the WOAH standards across their whole territory and should meet their obligations at the international level through representation by their respective WOAH Delegate. The *Veterinary Authority*, including the WOAH Delegate, should coordinate with other *Competent Authorities* to ensure that international standards and responsibilities are met.

Veterinary Services have responsibility for implementing the activities necessary for the Member Country to comply with WOAH standards. These activities can be delivered by a combination of individuals or organisations, public or private, that are responsible to one or more *Competent Authorities*. *Veterinary Services* also include the personnel of the *Competent Authorities* themselves. The term *Veterinary Services* refers to the combination of a number of separate actors, with different organisational affiliations.

Section 3 provides standards to assist the *Veterinary Services* of Member Countries in meeting their objectives of improving terrestrial animal health, *animal welfare* and veterinary public health, as well as in establishing and maintaining confidence in their *international veterinary certificates*.

NB: FIRST ADOPTED IN 2021; MOST RECENT UPDATE ADOPTED IN 2022.

CHAPTER 3 . 2 .

QUALITY OF VETERINARY SERVICES

Article 3.2.1.

General considerations

The quality of *Veterinary Services* depends on ethical, organisational, legislative and technical factors.

Compliance with standards of quality is critical for *Veterinary Services* to meet their animal health, *animal welfare*, and veterinary public health objectives, and is important for the establishment and maintenance of trust in *international trade*.

Veterinary Services should conform to the fundamental operating principles in Article 3.2.2., regardless of the political, economic or social situation of their country.

The key components of a country's *Veterinary Services* are presented in Articles 3.2.3. to 3.2.12. Four components are focused on governance aspects: Policy and Management, Personnel and Resources, the Veterinary Profession, and Stakeholders; and six components are focused on technical aspects: Animal Health, Animal Production Food Safety, Veterinary Medicinal Products, Laboratories, Animal Welfare and International Trade.

This chapter should be read in conjunction with other chapters in the *Terrestrial Code*, relevant chapters of the *Terrestrial Manual* with regard to quality of *laboratories*, diagnosis and vaccines, as well as relevant Codex Alimentarius texts.

Article 3.2.2.

Fundamental operating principles

Veterinary Services should comply with the following interrelating principles to ensure the quality of their activities.

1. Professional judgement

The personnel should have the relevant qualifications, expertise and experience to give them the competence to make sound professional judgements.

2. Independence and objectivity

Care should be taken to ensure that personnel are free from any undue commercial, financial, hierarchical, political or other pressures which might adversely affect their judgement or decisions. The *Veterinary Services* should, at all times, act in an objective manner.

3. Impartiality

Veterinary Services should be impartial. In particular, all the parties affected by their activities have a right to expect that their services are delivered reasonably and without discrimination.

4. Integrity

Veterinary Services should maintain a consistently high level of integrity. Any fraud, corruption or falsification should be identified and addressed.

5. Transparency

Veterinary Services should be as transparent as possible in all their governance and technical activities, including but not limited to, disease reporting, policy and programme decision-making, human resources and financial issues.

6. Scientific basis

Veterinary Services should develop and implement their activities on a scientific basis, incorporating relevant inputs from fields such as *risk analysis*, epidemiology, economics and social science.

7. Intersectoral collaboration

Veterinary Services should operate collaboratively, including via a One Health approach, sharing professional knowledge and experience with all relevant sectors and actors while optimising the use of resources.

Article 3.2.3.

Policy and management

Veterinary Services should have the leadership, organisational structure and management systems to develop, implement and update policies, legislation and programmes, incorporating *risk analysis*, and epidemiology, economics and social science principles. Decision-making by *Veterinary Services* should be free from undue financial, political and other non-scientific influences.

The *Veterinary Authority* should coordinate other relevant governmental authorities, and should undertake active international engagement with WOAH and other relevant regional and international organisations.

This component should comprise the following specific elements:

- 1) comprehensive national *veterinary legislation* in accordance with Chapter 3.4., regularly updated with reference to changing international standards and new scientific evidence;
- 2) implementation of *veterinary legislation* through a programme of communications and awareness, as well as formal, documented inspection and compliance activities;
- 3) capability to perform *risk analysis* and cost–benefit analysis to define, review, adapt and resource policies and programmes;
- 4) policies or programmes that are well documented, resourced and sustained, appropriately reviewed and updated to improve their effectiveness and efficiency, and that address emerging issues;
- 5) quality management systems with quality policies, procedures and documentation suited to the *Veterinary Services'* activities, including procedures for information sharing, complaints and appeals and for internal audits;
- 6) information management systems for collecting data to monitor and evaluate *Veterinary Services'* policies and activities and to perform *risk analysis*;
- 7) organisational structures with defined roles and responsibilities for effective internal coordination of activities from central to field levels (chain of command), which are periodically reviewed and updated as necessary;
- 8) formal external coordination mechanisms with clearly described procedures or agreements for activities (including preparedness and response mechanisms) between the *Veterinary Authority*, other *Competent Authorities*, other relevant governmental authorities and stakeholders, incorporating a One Health approach;
- 9) appropriate levels of official representation at international multilateral fora, involving consultation with stakeholders, active participation and sharing of information, and follow up on meeting outcomes.

Article 3.2.4.

Personnel and resources

Veterinary Services should be appropriately staffed, including *veterinarians*, *veterinary paraprofessionals* and other personnel, with appropriate competencies obtained through initial and continuing education to allow their functions to be undertaken effectively and efficiently.

Veterinary Services should have functional and well-maintained physical resources, adequate operational resources for their ongoing and planned activities, and access to extraordinary resources to respond effectively to emergency situations or new emerging issues.

This component should comprise the following specific elements:

- 1) a core of full-time civil service employees including qualified and sufficient *veterinarians* and *veterinary paraprofessionals*;
- 2) formal, consistent and merit-based recruitment and promotion procedures;

- 3) job descriptions, formal performance assessment and management procedures for *veterinarians*, *veterinary paraprofessionals* and other personnel that are defined and being implemented;
- 4) personnel remuneration, sufficient and regular to minimise the risk of conflicts of interest and to preserve independence;
- 5) *veterinarians'* and *veterinary paraprofessionals'* education, knowledge, skills and practices that are standardised and sufficient to perform relevant activities of the *Veterinary Services*;
- 6) *veterinary paraprofessionals* are adequately supervised by *veterinarians*;
- 7) all personnel have access to professional development, including continuing education programmes that are reviewed and updated as necessary;
- 8) established procedures for *Veterinary Services* to access personnel and other resources, including in emergencies;
- 9) access to suitable physical resources at all levels (national, state/provincial and local), including, but not limited to, functional buildings, furniture, equipment, communications, information technology, transport and cold chain, which are maintained or renewed as necessary;
- 10) access to sufficient operational resources for planned and continued activities, as well as for new or expanded operations, including but not limited to, contracts, fuel, per diem, vaccines, diagnostic reagents, personal protective equipment and other consumables.

Article 3.2.5.

The veterinary profession

Veterinarians and *veterinary paraprofessionals* are an essential component of *Veterinary Services*, whether as part of governmental authorities or as private service providers.

The *veterinary statutory body* should regulate *veterinarians* and *veterinary paraprofessionals* to effectively and independently maintain educational and professional standards relevant to their roles, including official tasks, veterinary clinical services and other veterinary tasks as appropriate. Mechanisms for coordination between the *Veterinary Authority*, the *veterinary statutory body* and veterinary educational establishments should be in place.

WOAH has produced guidelines on the expected competencies for *veterinarians* and *veterinary paraprofessionals* as well as guidelines on the curricula necessary to deliver those competencies.

This component should comprise the following specific elements:

- 1) There is an independent *veterinary statutory body* that is legally responsible and adequately resourced for:
 - a) licensing and registration of *veterinarians* and *veterinary paraprofessionals* to perform defined activities related to veterinary science or animal health;
 - b) setting minimum standards of education required to be registered or licensed as *veterinarians* or *veterinary paraprofessionals*;
 - c) setting minimum standards of professional conduct and competence of registered *veterinarians* and *veterinary paraprofessionals* and ensuring that these standards are met and maintained;
 - d) investigating complaints and applying disciplinary measures.
- 2) Independence of the *veterinary statutory body* is ensured through transparent governance and funding arrangements including an elected, representative council or equivalent, and financial arrangements for the collection and management of registration fees.
- 3) Sufficient quality veterinary clinical and extension services are available to meet the needs of animal owners, including providing awareness of and access to essential diagnosis and treatment for animal disease and injury.

Article 3.2.6.

Stakeholders

A range of individuals and organisations have an interest in or concern with the activities of the *Veterinary Services*, for example livestock farmers, processors, traders, *feed* manufacturers, *wildlife* managers, researchers, private *veterinarians* and *veterinary paraprofessionals*, as well as relevant non-governmental organisations (NGOs) and the general public.

Veterinary Services should communicate with these stakeholders in an effective, transparent and timely manner on Veterinary Services activities and developments in animal health, *animal welfare* and veterinary public health. They should also consult effectively with relevant stakeholders on Veterinary Services policies and programmes, involving mechanisms that actively seek stakeholders' views for consideration and response.

Competent Authorities should, where applicable, have the authority and capability to develop or engage in public private partnerships to deliver animal health, *animal welfare* or veterinary public health outcomes. That is:

- to accredit, authorise or delegate to the private sector;
- to develop or participate in collaborative joint programmes with producers or other stakeholders.

WOAH has produced guidelines for both public and private sectors to help advocate for, develop and implement public private partnerships in the veterinary domain.

This component should comprise the following specific elements:

- 1) good governance relevant to all stakeholder engagement, to ensure compliance with Article 3.2.2., incorporating transparency and effective monitoring and evaluation;
- 2) ongoing, targeted and effective communication with stakeholders in accordance with Chapter 3.5.;
- 3) consultation mechanisms, including written invitation, meetings or workshops with non-government stakeholder representatives, with consultation inputs documented and duly considered;
- 4) public private partnerships, in the form of official delegation or joint programmes, which have legal authority, formal agreements and documented procedures in accordance with Chapter 3.4.

Article 3.2.7.

Animal health

Veterinary Services should organise and implement programmes to prevent, detect, control or eradicate animal diseases, including through being able to identify *animals* to trace and control their movements.

Veterinary Services should organise and implement an effective animal health *surveillance* system and be prepared to respond effectively to sanitary emergencies.

This component should comprise the following specific elements:

- 1) effective *surveillance* for the early detection, monitoring and reporting of known and *emerging animal diseases*, including in *wildlife*, via an appropriate field animal health network, using laboratory confirmation and epidemiological disease investigation with prompt and transparent reporting and data analysis technologies, in accordance with relevant chapters, including Chapters 1.1., 1.2., 1.3., 1.4. and 1.5.;
- 2) an updated list of *notifiable diseases* that includes relevant *listed diseases*;
- 3) use of the formal procedures for self-declaration and official recognition by WOAH for both disease freedom and disease control programmes, in accordance with Chapter 1.6.;
- 4) emergency management, including preparedness and response planning, a legal framework, and access to the human, physical and financial resources to respond rapidly to sanitary emergencies in a well-coordinated manner, including for disposal and *disinfection* in accordance with Chapters 4.13. and 4.14.;
- 5) *official control programmes* for priority diseases with scientific and risk-based evaluation of their efficacy and efficiency, in accordance with the relevant chapters of the *Terrestrial Code*;
- 6) a programme for managing the risks to animal health from germplasm, including the collection, processing and distribution of semen, oocytes or embryos, in accordance with the relevant chapters in Section 4.;
- 7) a programme for the official health control of bee diseases, in accordance with Chapter 4.15.;
- 8) a programme for managing the risks to animal and public health from animal *feed*, including feeding animal materials to susceptible *animals*, in accordance with Chapter 6.4.;
- 9) a system for *animal identification*, *animal traceability* and movement control for specific animal *populations* as required for traceability or disease control, in accordance with Chapters 4.2. and 4.3.

Article 3.2.8.

Animal production food safety

Veterinary Services should contribute to assuring the safety of food of animal origin for domestic and export markets as part of a food safety system, with effective coordination of official controls between relevant Competent Authorities.

This component should comprise the following specific elements:

- 1) regulation, inspection, authorisation, supervision and auditing of establishments and processes for production and processing of food of animal origin (*slaughtering; rendering; dairy, egg, honey and other animal product processing*) for export, national and local markets, including the inspection, sampling and testing of products, in accordance with Chapters 6.1. and 6.2.;
- 2) implementation of procedures for ante-mortem and post-mortem inspection at slaughter facilities, including *slaughter* associated with live *animal markets*, incorporating *risk analysis* and principles of Hazard Analysis and Critical Control Point (HACCP), veterinary supervision, independent inspection, and the collection of information relevant to animal diseases including zoonoses, in accordance with Chapters 6.2. and 6.3. and the relevant Codex Alimentarius texts;
- 3) regulation and implementation of controls on animal *feed* safety covering processing, handling, storage, distribution and use of both commercial and on-farm produced animal *feed* and *feed ingredients*, including risks such as microbial, physical, chemical and toxin contamination;
- 4) a residue monitoring programme for veterinary medicines (e.g. antimicrobials and hormones), chemicals, pesticides, radionuclides, heavy metals, etc. and the capacity to respond appropriately to adverse findings;
- 5) identification and traceability of products of animal origin for the purposes of food safety, animal health or trade, in accordance with Chapter 6.2.;
- 6) procedures for corrective actions and for proportional and dissuasive sanctions in response to regulatory non-compliance to mitigate risks to the safety of food of animal origin for export or domestic markets in accordance with Article 6.2.3.;
- 7) preparedness and response planning to manage food or *feed* safety incidents of animal origin.

Article 3.2.9.

Veterinary medicinal products

Veterinary Services should regulate all *veterinary medicinal products* such as veterinary medicines, biologicals and medicated *feed*, in order to ensure their quality and safety, as well as their responsible and prudent use, including *monitoring* antimicrobial use and antimicrobial resistance, and minimising the associated risks.

This article should be read in conjunction with the *Terrestrial Manual*, which sets standards for the production and control of vaccines and other biological products.

This component should comprise the following specific elements:

- 1) effective regulatory and administrative control, in accordance with Article 3.4.11., including communications and compliance programmes for:
 - a) the market authorisation of *veterinary medicinal products*, including registration, import, manufacture, quality control and reducing the risk from illegal imports;
 - b) responsible and prudent use of *veterinary medicinal products*, including the labelling, distribution, sale, dispensing, prescription, administration and appropriate safe storage and disposal of these products;
- 2) *risk management* and *risk communication* for antimicrobial use and antimicrobial resistance, based on *risk assessment*. This includes *surveillance* and control of the use of antimicrobials and the development and spread of antimicrobial resistant pathogens in animal production and food products of animal origin. This should be coordinated using a One Health approach, and in accordance with Chapter 3.4. and relevant chapters of Section 6.

Article 3.2.10.

Laboratories

Veterinary Services should have access to quality *laboratory* diagnosis through a sustainable network of *laboratories*, capable of accurately identifying and reporting *infections* and *infestations* or other relevant *hazards*.

Veterinary Services require *laboratory* services for purposes such as early detection, measuring disease prevalence and progress with control, assessing the quality and effectiveness of *veterinary medicinal products*, implementing antimicrobial resistance *surveillance*, assessing the safety of food or *feed*, or supporting *international trade* (e.g. demonstration of *animal health status*), as well as for associated research. The *laboratory* services include official government laboratories and other *laboratories* authorised by the *Competent Authorities* to conduct official testing, including private laboratories or those abroad.

This article should be read in conjunction with the *Terrestrial Manual*, which sets *laboratory* diagnostic standards for all WOAH *listed diseases* as well as several other diseases of global importance.

This component should comprise the following specific elements:

- 1) access to *laboratory* diagnosis that meets the needs of the *Veterinary Services*, which is efficient and sustainable with an appropriate throughput of samples, in accordance with the *Terrestrial Manual*;
- 2) access to approved *laboratories*, such as national, regional or international reference *laboratories*, to obtain or confirm a correct diagnosis for *notifiable diseases* and to investigate *emerging diseases or hazards*, in accordance with the *Terrestrial Manual*;
- 3) appropriate levels of laboratory biosafety and *biosecurity*;
- 4) formal *laboratory* quality management systems and proficiency testing programmes, in accordance with the *Terrestrial Manual*.

Article 3.2.11.

Animal welfare

Veterinary Services should implement policies, legislation and programmes in accordance with Section 7.

This component should comprise the following specific elements:

- 1) *animal welfare* programmes, supported by suitable legislation, with appropriate stakeholder and public awareness and compliance inspection activities;
- 2) communication, consultation and coordination with stakeholders.

Article 3.2.12.

International trade

Through the implementation of WOAH standards, *Veterinary Services* play a critical role in ensuring the safety of *international trade of commodities* and *veterinary medicinal products*, while avoiding unjustified barriers.

Veterinary Services should implement risk-based measures for import and export following relevant provisions in the *Terrestrial Code* and in accordance with Chapter 5.3. Quality of *Veterinary Services* is essential for these measures to be recognised and trusted.

This component should comprise the following specific elements:

- 1) *sanitary measures* developed and implemented in accordance with Chapter 2.1. and other relevant chapters of the *Terrestrial Code*;
- 2) effective implementation of *official veterinary controls* to prevent the entry of diseases and other *hazards* through effective border inspection and quarantine operations, in accordance with Chapter 5.6.;
- 3) effective application of relevant animal health measures at or before departure for exports, during transit through the country, and on arrival for imports, in accordance with Chapters 5.4., 5.5. and 5.7.;
- 4) effective development and implementation of international veterinary certification for *animals*, animal products, services and processes for export under their mandate, in accordance with *importing country* requirements and relevant chapters in Section 5.;
- 5) effective development, implementation and maintenance of equivalence and other types of sanitary agreements with trading partners, where applicable, in collaboration with national stakeholders, and in accordance with Chapter 5.3.;
- 6) regular and timely official notification to WOAH, World Trade Organization, trading partners and other relevant organisations of changes in animal disease status, regulations and *sanitary measures* and systems, in accordance with the procedures established by these organisations, including Chapters 1.1. and 1.3.;

- 7) where applicable, effective implementation and maintenance of disease-free *zones*, *compartments* or other high health status *subpopulations* for the purposes of trade, in collaboration with producers and other stakeholders, and in accordance with relevant chapters in Sections 4. and 5.;
 - 8) active participation in the WOAH and Codex Alimentarius standard setting processes.
-

NB: FIRST ADOPTED IN 1998; MOST RECENT UPDATE ADOPTED IN 2024.

CHAPTER 3 . 3 .

EVALUATION OF VETERINARY SERVICES

Article 3.3.1.

General considerations

This chapter covers the evaluation of a country's *Veterinary Services*, including the various objectives and types of evaluation that may be considered.

Member Countries may develop their own mechanisms and methods for the evaluation of their *Veterinary Services*. The evaluation of the quality of *Veterinary Services* should be in accordance with Chapter 3.2.

The Tool for the Evaluation of Performance of Veterinary Services (PVS Tool) provides a thorough, benchmarked methodology for the consistent, comprehensive evaluation of *Veterinary Services*. The PVS Tool is aligned with the WOAH standards, in particular, with the quality standards for *Veterinary Services* defined in Chapter 3.2. Based on the PVS Tool, WOAH has developed a capacity-building platform, the PVS Pathway, for the sustainable improvement of the compliance of a country's *Veterinary Services* with WOAH standards.

Article 3.3.2.

Objectives of the evaluation of Veterinary Services

The evaluation of *Veterinary Services* has the following objectives:

- 1) to provide an independent, objective perspective on the performance of *Veterinary Services*;
- 2) to verify performance, provide confidence, enhance reputation and avoid complacency, and as part of a process of continuous improvement;
- 3) to demonstrate compliance of the *Veterinary Services* with Chapter 3.2.;
- 4) to better advocate for, allocate and prioritise resources;
- 5) to generate trust between trading partners in the quality and integrity of *Veterinary Services*.

The evaluation of *Veterinary Services* can be performed by the country itself (self-evaluation), by another country or countries, or by WOAH experts under the auspices of WOAH as part of the PVS Pathway.

Article 3.3.3.

Self-evaluation of the Veterinary Services of a Member Country

- 1) Member Countries should undertake self-evaluation of their *Veterinary Services* periodically as part of their quality management system.
- 2) Self-evaluation may be undertaken by the *Competent Authorities* for the whole or part of the *Veterinary Services*. The *Competent Authorities* should consider the principle of independence when carrying out self-evaluations.
- 3) Self-evaluation at the sub-national level such as individual regions, provinces or states can usefully supplement national level evaluation.
- 4) The use of the PVS Tool is encouraged.

Article 3.3.4.

Evaluation of the Veterinary Services of a Member Country by another Member Country

- 1) Every Member Country should recognise the right of another Member Country to request, in a non-discriminatory manner, an evaluation of its *Veterinary Services* to facilitate decision-making on trade.
- 2) The evaluation should be in accordance with Chapter 3.2.

- 3) The evaluation process may be desktop or field based, and cover whole or part of the *Veterinary Services*, depending on its objective.
- 4) A Member Country that intends to conduct an evaluation of another Member Country's *Veterinary Services* should give them notice in writing. This should define the purpose and scope of the evaluation and detail the information required.
- 5) Prior to the evaluation, the parties should agree on the objective, scope and approach of the evaluation, including any financing and confidentiality requirements.
- 6) The evaluation should be conducted in accordance with the fundamental operating principles set-out for *Veterinary Services* in Article 3.2.2. in a timely and efficient manner, ensuring that the evaluation activity is undertaken only to the extent necessary.
- 7) The evaluation should start with a review of available information including existing PVS Pathway or other reports, analysis of publicly available or previously provided information, or historical performance such as that relating to safe trade or transparency.
- 8) The outcome of the evaluation conducted by another Member Country should be provided in writing to the evaluated country as soon as possible. The evaluation report should detail any findings which affect trade prospects. The Member Country which conducts the evaluation should clarify any points of the evaluation on request, and provide the opportunity for the evaluated country to clarify or respond to the findings before the production of the final evaluation report.
- 9) The use of the PVS Tool is encouraged.

Article 3.3.5.

Evaluation of the Veterinary Services of a Member Country by WOAH experts, under the auspices of WOAH

- 1) WOAH has established procedures for the evaluation of the *Veterinary Services* of a Member Country using the PVS Tool, following a voluntary request from the Member Country.
 - 2) The report of such an evaluation belongs to the *Veterinary Authority* of the Member Country. WOAH encourages Member Countries to make their reports publicly available.
 - 3) Member Countries are encouraged to use these reports in a transparent way to achieve some or all of the objectives listed in Article 3.3.2.
 - 4) Support for further use of the evaluation report in national planning and targeted capacity building is available from WOAH as part of its PVS Pathway.
-

NB: FIRST ADOPTED IN 2002; MOST RECENT UPDATE ADOPTED IN 2021.

CHAPTER 3 . 4 .

VETERINARY LEGISLATION

Article 3.4.1.

Introduction and objective

Good governance is a recognised global public good and is of critical importance to Member Countries. Legislation is a key element in achieving good governance.

Veterinary legislation should, at a minimum, provide a basis for *Competent Authorities* to meet their obligations and the recommendations as defined in the *Terrestrial Code* and the relevant recommendations of the Codex Alimentarius Commission. It should also comply with the relevant requirements of international instruments related to the mitigation of biological threats. In addition, there is an obligation for World Trade Organization (WTO) Members under the Agreement on the Application of Sanitary and Phytosanitary Measures (SPS Agreement) to notify the WTO of changes in *sanitary measures*, especially changes in legislation that affect trade, and provide relevant information.

For the purposes of the *Terrestrial Code*, *veterinary legislation* comprises all legal instruments necessary for the governance of the veterinary domain.

The objective of this chapter is to provide advice and assistance to Member Countries for use when formulating or modernising *veterinary legislation* so as to comply with WOAH standards and other relevant international standards and instruments, thus ensuring good governance of the entire veterinary domain.

Article 3.4.2.

Definitions

For the purposes of this chapter the following definitions apply:

Hierarchy of legislation means the ranking of the legal instruments as prescribed under the fundamental law (e.g. the constitution) of a country. Respect for the hierarchy means that each legal instrument must comply with higher order legal instruments.

Legal instrument means the legally binding rule that is issued by a body with the required legal authority to issue the instrument.

Primary legislation means the legal instruments issued by the legislative body of a Member Country.

Secondary legislation means the legal instruments issued by the executive body of a Member Country under the authority of primary legislation.

Stakeholder means a person, group or organisation that can affect or be affected by the impacts of *veterinary legislation*.

Veterinary domain means all the activities that are directly or indirectly related to *animals*, their products and by-products which help to protect, maintain and improve animal health, *animal welfare* and veterinary public health.

Article 3.4.3.

General principles

1. Respect for the hierarchy of legislation

Veterinary legislation should respect the hierarchy between primary legislation and secondary legislation, to ensure that the primary legislation provides the legal basis for the application and enforcement of the secondary legislation.

2. Legal basis

Competent Authorities should have available the primary legislation and secondary legislation necessary to carry out their activities at all administrative levels within the whole territory.

When primary legislation requires that secondary legislation be made to implement the legislative scheme, or to provide details to the legislative scheme, the relevant secondary legislation should be developed and enacted as soon as possible.

Veterinary legislation should be consistent with national and international law, as appropriate, including civil, penal and administrative laws.

3. Transparency

Veterinary legislation should be inventoried and be readily accessible and intelligible for use, updating and modification, as appropriate.

Competent Authorities should ensure communication of *veterinary legislation* and related documentation to stakeholders.

4. Consultation

The drafting of new and revised legislation relevant to the veterinary domain should be a consultative process involving *Competent Authorities*, legal experts and other relevant stakeholders to ensure that the resulting legislation is scientifically, technically and legally sound. The resulting draft legislation should be evaluated through an impact analysis as appropriate.

To facilitate implementation of the *veterinary legislation*, *Competent Authorities* should establish relationships with stakeholders, including taking steps to ensure that all relevant stakeholders participate in the development of significant legislation and required follow-up.

5. Quality of legislation and legal certainty

Veterinary legislation should be clear and coherent, and should provide legal certainty and protect citizens, animals and the environment against unintended adverse side effects of legal instruments. The legislation should be stable but regularly evaluated and updated as appropriate to ensure that it is technically relevant, acceptable to society, able to be implemented effectively and sustainable in technical, financial and administrative terms. A high quality of legislation is essential for achieving legal certainty.

Article 3.4.4.

The drafting of veterinary legislation

Veterinary legislation should:

- 1) be drafted in a manner that establishes clear powers, rights, responsibilities and obligations (i.e. 'normative');
- 2) be accurate, clear, precise and unambiguous, and use consistent terminology;
- 3) include only definitions that are necessary and relevant to the country;
- 4) contain no definitions or provisions that create contradiction or unnecessary duplication;
- 5) include a clear statement of scope and objectives;
- 6) provide for the application of proportionate and dissuasive penalties and sanctions, either criminal or administrative, as appropriate to the situation;
- 7) when relevant, make provision for the collection, use and disclosure of information gathered under the *veterinary legislation*;
- 8) make provision for the financing needed for the execution of all activities of *Competent Authorities* or these activities should be supported by appropriate financing in accordance with the national funding system; and
- 9) indicate when the legislation comes into effect and its impact on similar pre-existing legislation, in particular secondary legislation.

Article 3.4.5.

Competent Authorities

Competent Authorities should be legally mandated, have the necessary technical, administrative and infrastructure capacity and be organised to ensure that all necessary actions are taken in a timely, coherent and effective manner to address animal health, *animal welfare* and veterinary public health matters of concern.

Veterinary legislation should provide for a chain of command that is effective, as short as possible, and with all responsibilities clearly defined. For this purpose, the responsibilities and powers of *Competent Authorities*, from the central level to those responsible for the implementation of legislation in the field, should be clearly defined. Where more than one *Competent Authority* is involved, for example in relation to environmental, food safety or other public health matters, including biological threats and natural disasters, a reliable system of coordination and cooperation should be in place, including clarifying the role of each *Competent Authority*.

Competent Authorities should appoint technically qualified officials to take any actions needed for implementation, review and verification of compliance with the *veterinary legislation*, respecting the principles of independence and impartiality prescribed in Article 3.2.2.

1. Necessary powers of the Competent Authority

The *veterinary legislation* should also ensure that:

- a) the *Competent Authority* has all the necessary legal authorities to achieve the purposes of the legislation, including the powers to enforce the legislation;
- b) while executing their legal mandate, officials are protected against legal action and physical harm for actions carried out in good faith and in accordance with professional standards;
- c) the powers and functions of officials are explicitly listed to protect the rights of stakeholders and the general public against any abuse of authority. This includes respecting confidentiality and transparency, as appropriate; and
- d) at least the following powers are available through the primary legislation:
 - i) access to premises and *vehicles/vessels* for carrying out inspections;
 - ii) access to documents;
 - iii) application of specific measures and procedures such as:
 - taking samples;
 - retention (setting aside) of *commodities*, pending a decision on final disposition;
 - seizure of *commodities* and fomites;
 - destruction of *commodities* and fomites;
 - suspension of one or more activities of a facility;
 - temporary, partial or complete closure of facilities;
 - suspension or withdrawal of authorisations or approvals;
 - restrictions on the movement of *commodities*, *vehicles/vessels* and, if required, other fomites and people;
 - listing disease for mandatory reporting; and
 - ordering of *disinfection*, *disinfestation* or pest control;
 - iv) establishment of compensation mechanisms.

These essential powers should be clearly identified because they can result in actions that may conflict with individual rights ascribed in fundamental laws.

2. Delegation of powers by the Competent Authority

The *veterinary legislation* should provide the possibility for *Competent Authorities* to delegate specific powers and tasks related to official activities. The specific powers and tasks delegated, the competencies required, the bodies or officers to which the powers and tasks are delegated, the conditions of supervision by the *Competent Authority* and the conditions of withdrawals of delegations should be defined.

Article 3.4.6.

Veterinarians and veterinary paraprofessionals

1. The regulation of veterinarians and veterinary paraprofessionals

Veterinary legislation should provide a basis for the regulation of *veterinarians* and *veterinary paraprofessionals* in the interests of the public. To this end, the legislation should:

- a) provide for the creation of a *veterinary statutory body*;
- b) describe the prerogatives, functioning and responsibilities of the *veterinary statutory body*;
- c) describe the general structure and system of regulation of *veterinarians* and *veterinary paraprofessionals* by the *veterinary statutory body*; and
- d) give authority to the *veterinary statutory body* to provide principles for or regulate the following matters:
 - i) various professional categories of *veterinarians* (e.g. specialisations) and categories of *veterinary paraprofessionals* recognised in the country in accordance with its needs, notably in animal health, animal welfare and food safety;
 - ii) prerogatives of the various professional categories of *veterinarians* (e.g. specialisations) and categories of *veterinary paraprofessionals* that are recognised in the country;
 - iii) minimum initial and continuous educational requirements and competencies for the various professional categories of *veterinarians* (e.g. specialisations) and categories of *veterinary paraprofessionals*;
 - iv) conditions for recognition of the qualifications for *veterinarian* and *veterinary paraprofessional*;
 - v) conditions for performing the activities of veterinary medicine/science, including the extent of supervision for each category of *veterinary paraprofessionals*;
 - vi) powers to deal with issues of conduct and competence, including licensing requirements and mechanisms to appeal, that apply to *veterinarians* and *veterinary paraprofessionals*;
 - vii) conditions (except those that are under the responsibility of the *Competent Authority*) under which persons other than *veterinarians* can undertake activities that are normally carried out by *veterinarians*.

- 2) In the event that a Member Country is yet to create a *veterinary statutory body* for the regulation of *veterinarians* and *veterinary paraprofessionals*, the legislation should at least address all the elements listed in paragraphs 1(d)(i) to 1(d)(vii) to ensure quality in the conduct of veterinary medicine/science.

Article 3.4.7.

Laboratories in the veterinary domain

1. Facilities

Veterinary legislation should define the role, responsibilities, obligations and quality requirements for:

- a) reference *laboratories*, which are responsible for controlling the veterinary diagnostic and analytical network, including the maintenance of reference methods;
- b) *laboratories* registered by the *Competent Authority* for carrying out the analysis of official samples; and
- c) *laboratories* that conduct testing required under the legislation for the purposes of safety and quality control.

Veterinary legislation should define the conditions for the classification, approval, operations and supervision of each of these types of *laboratory*, including conditions for laboratory biosafety and biosecurity.

2. Reagents, diagnostic kits and biological agents and products

Veterinary legislation should provide a basis for actions to address the following elements:

- a) procedures for authorising the use and transfer of reagents, diagnostic kits and biological agents and products that are used to perform official analyses and other purposes approved by the *Competent Authority*;
- b) quality assurance by manufacturers and providers of reagents used in official analyses and for other purposes approved by the *Competent Authority*; and
- c) oversight of marketing of reagents, diagnostic kits and biological agents and products where these can affect the quality of analyses required by the *veterinary legislation*.

3. Laboratory containment and control of biological agents and products

Veterinary legislation should make provisions for the effective containment and control of biological agents and products into, within and out of the laboratory, including their disposal when applicable, as described in Chapter 5.8. of the *Terrestrial Code* and Chapter 1.1.4. of the *Terrestrial Manual*.

Article 3.4.8.

Health provisions relating to animal production

1. Identification and traceability

Veterinary legislation should provide a basis for actions to address all the elements in point 6 of Article 4.3.3.

2. Animal markets and other gatherings

Veterinary legislation should address, for animal markets and other commercially or epidemiologically significant animal gatherings, the following elements:

- a) registration of animal markets and other animal gatherings;
- b) health measures to prevent disease transmission, including procedures for *disinfection*, and *animal welfare* measures; and
- c) provision for veterinary inspections.

3. Animal reproduction

Veterinary legislation should provide a basis for actions to address the health regulation of animal reproduction in relation to the *risk* of disease transmission. Health regulations may be implemented at the level of *animals*, genetic material, establishments or operators.

4. Animal feed

Veterinary legislation should provide a basis for actions to address the following elements:

- a) definition of the animal *feed* subject to the legislation;
- b) standards for the production, composition, packaging, labelling and quality control of animal *feed* in relation to the biological, chemical and physical *risks*;
- c) registration and, if necessary, approval of facilities and the provision of health requirements for relevant operations;
- d) distribution and use of animal *feed* in relation to the biological, chemical and physical *risks*; and
- e) recall from the market of any product likely to present a hazard to human health or animal health.

5. Animal by-products

Veterinary legislation should provide a basis for actions to address the following elements:

- a) definition of the animal by-products subject to the legislation;
- b) rules for sourcing, collection, transport, processing, use and disposal of animal by-products;
- c) registration and, if necessary, approval of facilities and the provision of health requirements for relevant operations.

6. Disinfection

Veterinary legislation should provide a basis for actions to address the regulation and use of products and methods of *disinfection* relating to the prevention and control of animal diseases.

Article 3.4.9.

Animal diseases

Veterinary legislation should provide a basis for *Competent Authorities* to manage diseases of importance to the country, present or not, as well as *emerging diseases*, using a risk-based approach. The legislation should provide for the listing and mandatory reporting of diseases of importance to the country. It should also provide powers for the *Veterinary Authority* to access information needed to comply with its *notification* obligations to WOAH.

1. Surveillance

Veterinary legislation should provide a basis for the collection, transmission, dissemination and utilisation of epidemiological data relevant to diseases listed by the *Competent Authority*.

2. Disease prevention and control

- a) *Veterinary legislation* should include general animal health measures applicable to all diseases and, if necessary, additional or specific measures such as *surveillance*, establishment of a regulatory programme or emergency response for particular diseases listed by the *Competent Authority*.
- b) The legislation should also provide a basis for emergency response plans for use in responding to disease, to include the following:
 - i) the administration and logistics necessary to activate, implement and coordinate activities;
 - ii) exceptional powers of the *Competent Authority*; and
 - iii) measures to address all identified *risks* to human or animal health including accidental or deliberate introduction of biological agents or products.
- c) *Veterinary legislation* should provide for the financing of animal disease control measures, such as operational expenses and, as appropriate, owners' compensation in the event of *killing* or *slaughter* of *animals* and seizure or destruction of carcasses, *meat*, animal *feed* or other things; alternatively, the financing of these measures should be ensured in accordance with the national funding system.

3. Emerging diseases

Veterinary legislation should provide for measures to investigate and respond to *emerging diseases* including those due to natural, accidental or deliberate introduction of biological agents or products, using a risk-based approach.

Article 3.4.10.

Animal welfare

1. General provisions

Veterinary legislation should provide a basis for actions to address the *animal welfare* related requirements in Section 7.

To this end, the legislation should contain, as a minimum, a legal definition of cruelty as an offence, and provisions for direct intervention of the *Competent Authority* in the case of cruelty or neglect.

2. Free-roaming dogs and abandoned domestic animals

Veterinary legislation should provide a basis for actions to address the requirements in Chapter 7.7. and, as appropriate, prohibition of the abandonment of *animals*, and management of abandoned *animals*, including transfer of ownership, veterinary interventions and *euthanasia*.

Article 3.4.11.

Veterinary medicinal products

Veterinary legislation should provide a basis for assuring the quality, safety and effectiveness of *veterinary medicinal products* and minimising the *risk* to human, animal and environmental health associated with their use, including the development of antimicrobial resistance, as described in Chapters 6.7. to 6.11.

1. General measures

Veterinary legislation should provide a basis for actions to address the following elements:

- a) definition of *veterinary medicinal products*, including any specific exclusions; and
- b) regulation of the authorisation, importation, manufacture, wholesale, retail, usage of, commerce in, storage and disposal of *veterinary medicinal products*.

2. Raw materials for use in veterinary medicinal products

Veterinary legislation should provide a basis for actions to address the following elements:

- a) quality standards for raw materials used in the manufacture or composition of *veterinary medicinal products* and arrangements for checking quality; and
- b) restrictions on substances in *veterinary medicinal products* that may, through their effects, interfere with the interpretation of veterinary diagnostic test results or the conduct of other veterinary checks.

3. Authorisation of veterinary medicinal products

- a) *Veterinary legislation* should ensure that only authorised *veterinary medicinal products* may be placed on the market.
- b) Special provisions should be made for:
 - i) *veterinary medicinal products* incorporated into *feed*;
 - ii) products prepared by authorised *veterinarians* or authorised pharmacists;
 - iii) emergencies and temporary situations;
 - iv) establishment of maximum residue limits for active substances and withdrawal periods for relevant *veterinary medicinal products* containing these substances; and
 - v) restrictions of use of *veterinary medicinal products* for food-producing animals.
- c) *Veterinary legislation* should address the technical, administrative and financial conditions associated with the granting, suspension, renewal, refusal and withdrawal of authorisations.
- d) In defining the procedures for seeking and granting, suspending, withdrawing or refusing authorisations, the legislation should:
 - i) describe the responsibilities of the relevant *Competent Authorities*; and
 - ii) establish rules providing for transparency in decision-making.
- e) *Veterinary legislation* may provide for the possibility of recognition of the equivalence of authorisations.

4. Facilities producing, storing and wholesaling veterinary medicinal products

Veterinary legislation should provide a basis for actions to address the following elements:

- a) registration or authorisation of all operators manufacturing, importing, exporting, storing, processing, wholesaling or otherwise distributing *veterinary medicinal products* or raw materials for use in making *veterinary medicinal products*;
- b) definition of the responsibilities of operators;
- c) good manufacturing practices and good distribution practices as appropriate;
- d) reporting on adverse effects to the *Competent Authority*; and
- e) mechanisms for traceability and recall.

5. Retailing, use and traceability of veterinary medicinal products

Veterinary legislation should provide a basis for actions to address the following elements:

- a) control over the distribution of *veterinary medicinal products* and arrangements for traceability, recall and conditions of use;
- b) establishment of rules for the prescription and provision of *veterinary medicinal products* to end users, including appropriate labelling;
- c) restriction to *veterinarians* or other authorised professionals and, as appropriate, authorised *veterinary paraprofessionals*, of commerce in *veterinary medicinal products* that are subject to prescription;
- d) obligation of *veterinarians*, other authorised professionals or authorised *veterinary paraprofessionals* to inform end users of the withdrawal periods of relevant *veterinary medicinal products* and the obligation of end users to observe those withdrawal periods when using those products;
- e) the supervision, by an authorised professional, of organisations approved for the holding and use of *veterinary medicinal products*;
- f) the regulation of advertising claims and other marketing and promotional activities;
- g) a system of *surveillance* of the quality of *veterinary medicinal products* marketed in the country, including a system of *surveillance* for falsification; and
- h) a system for the reporting on adverse effects to the *Competent Authority*.

Article 3.4.12.

Human food production chain

Veterinary legislation should provide a basis for actions to safeguard the human food production chain through controls at all critical steps, consistent with national food safety standards and taking into account the *risk* of accidental and deliberate contamination. The role of the *Veterinary Services* in food safety is described in Chapter 6.2.

1. General provisions

Veterinary legislation should provide a basis for actions to address the following elements:

- a) the conduct of ante- and post-mortem inspections at *slaughterhouses/abattoirs* in accordance with Chapter 6.3.;
- b) controls over all stages of the production, processing and distribution of food of animal origin;
- c) recording all significant animal and public health events that occur during primary production and *slaughter*;
- d) giving operators of food production facilities the primary responsibility for compliance with food safety requirements, including traceability established by the *Competent Authority*;
- e) inspection for compliance with food standards, where this is relevant to health or safety;
- f) inspection and audit of facilities;
- g) prohibition of the marketing of products not fit for human consumption; and
- h) provisions for recall from the marketplace of all products likely to be hazardous for human or animal health.

2. Products of animal origin intended for human consumption

Veterinary legislation should provide a basis for actions to address the following elements:

- a) health standards, including measures to control diseases and monitoring and enforcement of maximum residue levels (MRL); and
- b) the use of visible marks that indicate the product complies with the health standards.

The *Competent Authority* should have the necessary powers and means rapidly to withdraw any products deemed to be hazardous from the food chain or to prescribe uses or treatments that ensure the safety of such products for human or animal health.

3. Operators responsible for facilities and establishments pertaining to the food chain

Veterinary legislation should provide a basis for actions to address the following elements as appropriate:

- a) registration of facilities and establishments by the *Competent Authority*;
- b) the use of *risk-based* management procedures; and
- c) prior authorisation of operations that are likely to constitute a significant *risk* to human or animal health.

Article 3.4.13.

Import and export procedures and veterinary certification

Veterinary legislation should provide a basis for actions to address the elements referred to in Section 2 Risk Analysis and Section 5 Trade measures, import/export procedures and veterinary certification.

NB: FIRST ADOPTED IN 2012; MOST RECENT UPDATE ADOPTED IN 2022.

CHAPTER 3.5.

COMMUNICATION

Article 3.5.1.

General considerations

In general, communication entails the exchange of information between various individual, institutional and public groups for purposes of informing, guiding and motivating action. The application of the science and technique of communication involves modulating messages in accordance with situations, objectives and target audiences.

The recognition of communication as a discipline of the *Veterinary Services* and its incorporation within it is critical for their operations. The integration of veterinary and communication expertise is essential for effective communication.

Communication should be an integral part of all the activities of the *Veterinary Services* including animal health (*surveillance*, early detection and rapid response, prevention and control), *animal welfare* and veterinary public health (food safety, zoonoses) and veterinary medicine.

Objectives of this chapter on communication for the *Veterinary Services* are to provide guidance for the development of a communication system, strategic and operational communication plans and elements to assess their quality.

Article 3.5.2.

Principles of communication

- 1) *Veterinary Services* should have the authority and capability to communicate on matters within their mandate.
- 2) Veterinary and communication expertise should be combined, and have established linkages with relevant agencies, particularly for management of disasters which could have impact on animal health and *animal welfare*, and for exotic disease control.
- 3) Communication should be targeted and follow the fundamental criteria of transparency, consistency, timeliness, balance, accuracy, honesty and empathy and respect the fundamental principles of quality of *Veterinary Services* (Article 3.2.2.).
- 4) Communication should be a continuous process.
- 5) *Veterinary Services* should have oversight of planning, implementing, monitoring, evaluating and revising their strategic and operational communication plans.

Article 3.5.3.

Definitions

For the purposes of this chapter the following definitions apply:

Communication means the discipline of informing, guiding and motivating individual, institutional and public groups, ideally on the basis of interactive exchanges, about any issue under the competence of the *Veterinary Services*.

Crisis means a situation of great threat, difficulty or uncertainty when issues under the competence of the *Veterinary Services* require immediate action.

Crisis communication means the process of communicating information as accurately as possible, albeit potentially incomplete, within time constraints in the event of a crisis.

Outbreak communication means the process of communicating in the event of an *outbreak*. Outbreak communication includes notification.

Article 3.5.4.

Communication system

In addition to the Principles of Communication the following elements should be used in conjunction with Chapter 3.2., when planning, implementing and assessing a communication system:

1. Organisational chart indicating a direct link between the communication personnel and the Veterinary Authority, through the chain of command, such as dedicated communication unit or communication officer

2. Human resources
 - a) Identified and accessible official communication focal point
 - b) Job descriptions of communication personnel identifying roles and responsibilities
 - c) Sufficient number of qualified personnel with knowledge, skills, attitude and abilities relevant to communication
 - d) Continuous training and education on communication provided to communication personnel.

3. Financial and physical resources
 - a) Clearly identified budget for communication that provides adequate funding
 - b) Provision or access to appropriate material resources in order to carry out roles and responsibilities: suitable premises or accommodation that is adequately equipped with sufficient office and technical equipment, including information technology and access to the Internet.

4. Management of the communication system
 - a) Roles and responsibilities of the communication personnel
 - i) Report to the *Veterinary Authority*
 - ii) Engage in decision-making process by providing guidance and expertise on communication issues to the *Veterinary Services*
 - iii) Be responsible for the planning, implementation and evaluation of the strategic and operational plans for communication and relevant standard operating procedures
 - iv) Function as contact point on communication issues for the *Veterinary Services* with established linkages to relevant *Competent Authorities* with which *Veterinary Services* collaborate
 - v) Provide and coordinate continuous education on communication for the *Veterinary Services*.

 - b) Strategic plan for communication

A well-designed strategic plan for communication should support the *Veterinary Services* strategic plan and have management support and commitment. The strategic plan for communication should address all high level organisation-wide long-term communication objectives.

A strategic plan for communication should be monitored, periodically reviewed and should identify measurable performance objectives and techniques to assess the effectiveness of communication.

The strategic plan for communication should consider the different types of communication: routine communication, risk communication, outbreak communication and crisis communication, to allow individuals, affected or interested parties, an entire community or the general public to make best possible decisions and be informed of policy decisions and their rationale.

The key outcomes in effectively implementing a strategic plan for communication are increased knowledge and awareness of issues by the public and stakeholders, higher understanding of the role of the *Veterinary Services*, higher visibility of and improved trust and credibility in the *Veterinary Services*. These will enhance understanding or acceptance of policy decisions and subsequent change of perception, attitude or behaviour.

c) Operational plans for communication

Operational plans for communication should be based on the assessment of specific issues and should identify specific objectives and target audiences such as staff, partners, stakeholders, media and the general public.

Each operational plan for communication should consist of a well-planned series of activities using different techniques, tools, messages and channels to achieve intended objectives and utilising available resources within a specific timeframe.

NB: FIRST ADOPTED IN 2011; MOST RECENT UPDATE ADOPTED IN 2014.

SECTION 4.

DISEASE PREVENTION AND CONTROL

CHAPTER 4.1.

INTRODUCTION TO RECOMMENDATIONS FOR THE PREVENTION AND CONTROL OF TRANSMISSIBLE ANIMAL DISEASES

Article 4.1.1.

Effective prevention and control of transmissible animal diseases, including zoonoses, is a central mandate of the *Veterinary Services* of each Member Country.

Veterinary Services around the world, supported by significant progress in veterinary science, have developed and improved a number of tools to prevent, control and even eradicate transmissible animal diseases.

The chapters in this section describe these tools and the recommendations for disease prevention and control that should be implemented by the *Veterinary Services*.

To effectively prevent introduction and transmission of animal diseases while minimising potential negative impacts of *sanitary measures*, *Veterinary Services* should consider developing measures based on the recommendations in this section, taking into account various factors including their impact on trade, *animal welfare*, public health and environment. In parallel with disease-specific *sanitary measures*, *Veterinary Services* should consider relevant *commodity-based sanitary measures*.

Furthermore, although the general principles covering the measures described in this section are applicable to multiple diseases, *Veterinary Services* should adapt them to their circumstances, because characteristics of the pathogenic agents and the situations in which they occur differ between diseases and between countries. To this end, recommendations in this section should be read in conjunction with *listed disease-specific recommendations* in Sections 8 to 15.

Veterinary Services should ensure that any prevention and control programme be proportionate to the *risk*, practical and feasible within the national context and be based on *risk analysis*.

Prerequisites for developing such programmes include:

- quality *Veterinary Services* including legislative framework, *laboratory* capacity and adequate and committed funding;
- appropriate education and training to secure *veterinarians* and *veterinary paraprofessionals*;
- close links with research institutions;

- effective awareness of, and active cooperation with, private stakeholders;
 - public-private partnerships;
 - cooperation between the *Veterinary Authority* and other *Competent Authorities*;
 - regional cooperation among *Veterinary Authorities* on transboundary animal diseases.
-

NB: FIRST ADOPTED IN 2019; MOST RECENT UPDATE ADOPTED IN 2024.

CHAPTER 4.2.

GENERAL PRINCIPLES ON IDENTIFICATION AND TRACEABILITY OF LIVE ANIMALS

Article 4.2.1.

- 1) *Animal identification* and *animal traceability* are tools for addressing animal health (including zoonoses) and food safety issues. These tools may significantly improve the effectiveness of activities such as: the management of disease outbreaks and food safety incidents, *vaccination* programmes, *herd* or *flock* husbandry, zoning or compartmentalisation, *surveillance*, early response and notification systems, animal movement controls, inspection, certification, fair practices in trade and the utilisation of veterinary drugs, *feed* and pesticides at farm level.
- 2) There is a strong relationship between *animal identification* and the *traceability of animals* and products of animal origin.
- 3) *Animal traceability* and traceability of products of animal origin should have the capability to be linked to achieve traceability throughout the animal production and food chain taking into account relevant WOAH and Codex Alimentarius standards.
- 4) The objectives of *animal identification* and *animal traceability* for a particular country, *zone* or *compartment* and the approach used should be clearly defined following an *assessment of the risks* to be addressed and a consideration of the factors listed below. They should be defined through consultation between the *Veterinary Authority* and relevant sectors or stakeholders prior to implementation, and periodically reviewed.
- 5) There are various factors which may determine the system chosen for *animal identification* and *animal traceability*. Factors such as the outcomes of the *risk assessment*, the animal and public health situation (including zoonoses) and related programmes, animal population parameters (such as species and breeds, numbers and distribution), types of production, animal movement patterns, available technologies, trade in *animals* and animal products, cost/benefit analysis and other economic, geographical and environmental considerations, and cultural aspects, should be taken into account when designing the system.
- 6) *Animal identification* and *animal traceability* should be under the responsibility of the *Veterinary Authority*. It is recognised that other Authorities may have jurisdiction over other aspects of the food chain, including the traceability of food.
- 7) The *Veterinary Authority*, with relevant governmental agencies and in consultation with the private sector, should establish a legal framework for the implementation and enforcement of *animal identification* and *animal traceability* in the country. In order to facilitate compatibility and consistency, relevant international standards and obligations should be taken into account. This legal framework should include elements such as the objectives, scope, organisational arrangements including the choice of technologies used for identification and registration, obligations of all the parties involved including third parties implementing traceability systems, confidentiality, accessibility issues and the efficient exchange of information.
- 8) Whatever the specific objectives of the chosen *animal identification system* and *animal traceability*, there is a series of common basic factors, and these must be considered before implementation, such as the legal framework, procedures, the *Competent Authority*, identification of *establishments* or owners, *animal identification* and animal movements.
- 9) The equivalent outcomes based on performance criteria rather than identical systems based on design criteria should be the basis for comparison of *animal identification systems* and *animal traceability*.

NB: FIRST ADOPTED IN 2006; MOST RECENT UPDATE ADOPTED IN 2007.

CHAPTER 4 . 3 .

DESIGN AND IMPLEMENTATION OF IDENTIFICATION SYSTEMS TO ACHIEVE ANIMAL TRACEABILITY

Article 4.3.1.

Introduction and objectives

These recommendations are based on the general principles presented in Article 4.2.1. The recommendations outline for Member Countries the basic elements that need to be taken into account in the design and implementation of an *animal identification system* to achieve *animal traceability*. Whatever *animal identification system* the country adopts, it should comply with relevant WOAH standards, including Chapters 5.10. to 5.12. for *animals* and animal products intended for export. Each country should design a programme in accordance with the scope and relevant performance criteria to ensure that the desired *animal traceability* outcomes can be achieved.

Article 4.3.2.

Definitions

For the purposes of this chapter the following definitions apply:

Desired outcomes describe the overall goals of a programme and are usually expressed in qualitative terms, e.g. 'to help ensure that *animals* or animal products are safe and suitable for use'. Safety and suitability for use could be defined in terms such as animal health, food safety, trade and aspects of animal husbandry.

Performance criteria are specifications for performance of a programme and are usually expressed in quantitative terms, such as 'all *animals* can be traced to the *establishment* of birth within 48 hours of an enquiry'.

Reporting means advising the *Veterinary Authority* and other partner organisations as appropriate in accordance with the procedures listed in the programme.

Scope specifies the targeted species, population or production or trade sector within a defined area (country, *zone*) or *compartment* that is the subject of the *identification* and *traceability* programme.

Transhumance means periodic or seasonal movements of *animals* between different pastures within or between countries.

Article 4.3.3.

Key elements of the animal identification system

1. Desired outcomes

Desired outcomes should be defined through consultation between the *Veterinary Authority* and interested parties, which should include those in the animal production and processing chain, private sector *veterinarians*, scientific

research organisations and other public and private organisations. Desired outcomes may be defined in terms of any or all of the following:

- a) animal health (e.g. disease *surveillance* and notification; detection and control of disease; *vaccination* programmes);
- b) public health (e.g. *surveillance* and control of zoonotic diseases and food safety);
- c) management of emergencies e.g. natural catastrophes or man-made events;
- d) trade (support for inspection and certification activities of *Veterinary Services*, as described in Chapters 5.10. to 5.12. which reproduce model international veterinary certificates);
- e) aspects of animal husbandry such as animal performance, and genetic data.

2. Scope

Scope should also be defined through consultation between the *Veterinary Authority* and other parties, as discussed above. The scope of *animal identification systems* is often based on the definition of a species and sector, to take account of particular characteristics of the farming systems e.g. pigs in pork export production; *poultry* in a defined *compartment*; cattle within a defined FMD free zone. Different systems will be appropriate in accordance with the production systems used in countries and the nature of their industries and trade.

3. Performance criteria

Performance criteria are also designed in consultation with other parties, as discussed above. The performance criteria depend on the desired outcomes and scope of the programme. They are usually described in quantitative terms in accordance with the epidemiology of the disease. For example, some countries consider it necessary to trace susceptible *animals* within 24–48 hours when dealing with highly contagious diseases such as FMD and avian influenza. For food safety, animal tracing to support investigation of incidents may also be urgent. For chronic animal diseases that are not zoonoses, it may be considered appropriate that *animals* can be traced over a longer period.

4. Preliminary studies

In designing *animal identification systems* it is useful to conduct preliminary studies, which should take into account:

- a) animal populations, species, distribution, *herd* management,
- b) farming and industry structures, production and location,
- c) animal health,
- d) public health,
- e) trade issues,
- f) aspects of animal husbandry,
- g) zoning and compartmentalisation,
- h) animal movement patterns (including transhumance),
- i) information management and communication,
- j) availability of resources (human and financial),
- k) social and cultural aspects,
- l) stakeholder knowledge of the issues and expectations,
- m) gaps between current enabling legislation and what is needed long term,
- n) international experience,
- o) national experience,
- p) available technology options,
- q) existing *identification systems*,
- r) expected benefits from the *animal identification systems* and *animal traceability* and to whom they accrue,
- s) issues pertaining to data ownership and access rights,
- t) reporting requirements.

Pilot projects may form part of the preliminary study to test the *animal identification system* and *animal traceability* and to gather information for the design and the implementation of the programme.

Economic analysis may consider costs, benefits, funding mechanisms and sustainability.

5. Design of the programme

a) General provisions

The programme should be designed in consultation with the stakeholders to facilitate the implementation of the *animal identification system* and *animal traceability*. It should take into account the scope, performance criteria and desired outcomes as well as the results of any preliminary study.

All the specified documentation should be standardised as to format, content and context.

To protect and enhance the integrity of the system, procedures should be incorporated into the design of the programme to prevent, detect and correct errors e.g. use of algorithms to prevent duplication of identification numbers and to ensure plausibility of data.

b) Means of animal identification

The choice of a physical animal or group identifier should consider elements such as the durability, human resources, species and age of the *animals* to be identified, required period of identification, cultural aspects, *animal welfare*, technology, compatibility and relevant standards, farming practices, production systems, animal population, climatic conditions, resistance to tampering, trade considerations, cost, and retention and readability of the identification method.

The *Veterinary Authority* is responsible for approving the materials and equipment chosen, to ensure that these means of animal identification comply with technical and field performance specifications, and for the supervision of their distribution. The *Veterinary Authority* is also responsible for ensuring that identifiers are unique and are used in accordance with the requirements of the *animal identification system*.

The *Veterinary Authority* should establish procedures for *animal identification* and *animal traceability* including:

- i) the *establishment* of birth, and time period within which an *animal* is born;
- ii) when *animals* are introduced into an *establishment*;
- iii) when an *animal* loses its identification or the identifier becomes unusable;
- iv) arrangements and rules for the destruction or reuse of identifiers;
- v) penalties for the tampering or removal of official animal identification devices.

Where group identification without a physical identifier is adequate, documentation should be created specifying at least the number of *animals* in the group, the species, the date of identification, the person legally responsible for the *animals* or *establishment*. This documentation constitutes a unique group identifier and it should be updated to be traceable if there are any changes.

Where all *animals* in the group are physically identified with a group identifier, documentation should also specify the unique group identifier.

c) Registration

Procedures need to be incorporated into the design of the programme in order to ensure that relevant events and information are registered in a timely and accurate manner.

Depending on the scope, performance criteria and desired outcomes, records as described below should specify, at least, the species, the unique animal or group identifier, the date of the event, the identifier of the *establishment* where the event took place, and the code for the event itself.

i) Establishments or owners or responsible keepers

Establishments where *animals* are kept should be identified and registered, including at least their physical location (such as geographical coordinates or street address), the type of establishment and the species kept. The register should include the name of the person legally responsible for the *animals* at the establishment.

The types of establishments that may need to be registered include holdings (farms), assembly centres (e.g. agriculture shows and fairs, sporting events, transit centres, breeding centres), *markets*, *slaughterhouses/abattoirs*, rendering plants, dead stock collection points, transhumance areas, centres for necropsy and diagnosis, research centres, zoos, *border posts*, *quarantine stations*.

In cases where the registration of establishments is not applicable e.g. some transhumance systems, the animal owner, the owner's place of residence and the species kept should be recorded.

ii) Animals

Animal identification and species should be registered for each establishment or owner. Other relevant information about the *animals* at each establishment or owner may also be recorded (e.g. date of birth,

production category, sex, breed, number of *animals* of each species, *animal identification* of the parents).

iii) Other events

The *registration* of animal movements is necessary to achieve *animal traceability*. When an *animal* is introduced into or leaves an establishment, these events constitute a movement.

Some countries classify birth, *slaughter* and death of the *animal* as movements. When establishments are not registered as part of the *animal identification system*, ownership and location changes constitute a movement record.

The information registered should include the date of the movement, the establishment from which the *animal* or group of *animals* was dispatched, the number of *animals* moved, the destination establishment, and any establishment used in transit. The movement record may also include a description of the means of transport and the identification of the *vehicle/vessel*.

Procedures should be in place to maintain *animal traceability* during transport and when *animals* arrive at and leave an establishment.

The following events may also be registered:

- birth, *slaughter* and death of the *animal* (when not classified as a movement),
- attachment of the unique identifier to an *animal*,
- change of owner or keeper regardless of change of establishment,
- observation of an *animal* on an establishment (testing, health investigation, health certification, etc.),
- animal imported: a record of the *animal identification* from the *exporting country* should be kept and linked with the *animal identification* assigned in the *importing country*,
- animal exported: a record of the *animal identification* from the *exporting country* should be provided to the *Veterinary Authority* in the *importing country*,
- animal identifier lost or replaced,
- animal missing (lost, stolen, etc.),
- animal identifier retired (at *slaughter*, following loss of the identifier or death of the *animal* on a farm, at diagnostic *laboratories*, etc.).

d) Documentation

Documentation requirements should be clearly defined and standardised, in accordance with the scope, performance criteria and desired outcomes and supported by the legal framework.

e) Reporting

Depending on the scope, performance criteria and desired outcomes, relevant information (such as *animal identification*, movement, events, changes in numbers of livestock, *establishments*) should be reported to the *Veterinary Authority* by the person responsible for the *animals*.

f) Information system

An information system should be designed in accordance with the scope, performance criteria and desired outcomes. This may be paper based or electronic. The system should provide for the collection, compilation, storage and retrieval of information on matters relevant to *registration*. The following considerations are important:

- have the potential for linkage to traceability in the other parts of the food chain;
- minimise duplication;
- relevant components, including databases, should be compatible;
- confidentiality of data;
- appropriate safeguards to prevent the loss of data, including a system for backing up the data.

The *Veterinary Authority* should have access to this information system as appropriate to meet the scope, performance criteria and desired outcomes.

g) Laboratories

The results of diagnostic tests should record the animal identifier or the group identifier, the date of sample was taken from the *animal* and the establishment where the sample was collected.

- h) Slaughterhouses/abattoirs, rendering plants, dead stock collection points, markets and assembly centres
Slaughterhouses/abattoirs, rendering plants, dead stock collection points, markets and assembly centres should document arrangements for the maintenance of *animal identification* and *animal traceability* in compliance with the legal framework.

These establishments are critical points for control of animal health and food safety.

Animal identification should be recorded on documents accompanying samples collected for analysis.

The components of the *animal identification system* operating within *slaughterhouses/abattoirs* should complement and be compatible with arrangements for tracking animal products throughout the food chain. At a *slaughterhouse/abattoir*, *animal identification* should be maintained during the processing of the *animal's* carcass until the carcass is deemed fit for human consumption.

The *animal identification* and the establishment from which the *animal* was dispatched should be registered by the *slaughterhouse/abattoir*, rendering plant and dead stock collection points.

Slaughterhouses/abattoirs, rendering plants and dead stock collection points should ensure that identifiers are collected and disposed of in accordance with the procedures established and regulated within the legal framework. These procedures should minimise the risk of unauthorised reuse and, if appropriate, should establish arrangements and rules for the reuse of identifiers.

Reporting of movement by *slaughterhouses/abattoirs*, rendering plants and dead stock collection points should occur in accordance with the scope, performance criteria and desired outcomes and the legal framework.

- i) Penalties

Different levels and types of penalties should be defined in the programme and supported by the legal framework.

6. Legal framework

The *Veterinary Authority*, with other relevant governmental agencies and in consultation with stakeholders, should establish a legal framework for the implementation and enforcement of *animal identification system* and *animal traceability* in the country. The structure of this framework will vary from country to country.

Animal identification, *animal traceability* and animal movement should be under the responsibility of the *Veterinary Authority*.

This legal framework should address:

- a) desired outcomes and scope;
- b) obligations of the *Veterinary Authority* and other parties;
- c) organisational arrangements, including the choice of technologies and methods used for the *animal identification system* and *animal traceability*;
- d) management of animal movement;
- e) confidentiality of data;
- f) data access or accessibility;
- g) checking, verification, inspection and penalties;
- h) where relevant, funding mechanisms;
- i) where relevant, arrangements to support a pilot project.

7. Implementation

- a) Action plan

For implementing the *animal identification system*, an action plan should be prepared specifying the timetable and including the milestones and performance indicators, the human and financial resources, and checking, enforcement and verification arrangements.

The following activities should be addressed in the action plan:

- i) Communication

The scope, performance criteria, desired outcomes, responsibilities, movement and registration requirements and sanctions need to be communicated to all parties.

Communication strategies need to be targeted to the audience, taking into account elements such as the level of literacy (including technology literacy) and spoken languages.

- ii) Training programmes

It is desirable to implement training programmes to assist the *Veterinary Services* and other parties.

- iii) Technical support

Technical support should be provided to address practical problems.

b) Checking and verification

Checking activities should start at the beginning of the implementation to detect, prevent and correct errors and to provide feedback on programme design.

Verification should begin after a preliminary period as determined by the *Veterinary Authority* in order to determine compliance with the legal framework and operational requirements.

c) Auditing

Auditing should be carried out under the authority of the *Veterinary Authority* to detect any problems with the *animal identification system* and *animal traceability* and to identify possible improvements.

d) Review

The programme should be subject to periodic review, taking into account the results of checking, verification and auditing activities.

NB: FIRST ADOPTED IN 2002; MOST RECENT UPDATE ADOPTED IN 2011.

CHAPTER 4.4.

ZONING AND COMPARTMENTALISATION

Article 4.4.1.

Introduction

The purpose of this chapter is to provide recommendations on the principles of zoning and compartmentalisation to Member Countries wishing to establish and maintain different *subpopulations* with specific health status within their territory. These principles should be applied in accordance with the relevant chapters of the *Terrestrial Code*. This chapter also outlines a process by which trading partners may recognise such *subpopulations*.

Establishing and maintaining a disease-free status throughout the country should be the final goal for Member Countries. However, given the difficulty of achieving this goal, there may be benefits to a Member Country in establishing and maintaining a *subpopulation* with a specific health status within its territory for the purposes of *international trade* or disease prevention or control. *Subpopulations* may be separated by natural or artificial geographical barriers or by the application of appropriate *biosecurity* management.

While zoning applies to an animal *subpopulation* defined primarily on a geographical basis, compartmentalisation applies to an animal *subpopulation* defined primarily by management and husbandry practices related to *biosecurity*. In practice, spatial considerations and appropriate management, including *biosecurity plans*, play important roles in the application of both concepts.

Zoning may encourage the more efficient use of resources within certain parts of a country. Compartmentalisation may allow the functional separation of a *subpopulation* from other domestic or *wild animals* through *biosecurity*, which would not be achieved through geographical separation. In a country where a disease is endemic, establishment of *free zones* may assist in the progressive control and eradication of the disease. To facilitate disease control and the continuation of trade following a disease *outbreak* in a previously free country or *zone*, zoning may allow a Member Country to limit the extension of the disease to a defined restricted area, while preserving the status of the remaining territory. For the same reasons, the use of compartmentalisation may allow a Member Country to take advantage of epidemiological links among *subpopulations* or common practices relating to *biosecurity*, despite diverse geographical locations.

A Member Country may thus have more than one *zone* or *compartment* within its territory.

Article 4.4.2.

General considerations

The *Veterinary Services* of a Member Country that is establishing a *zone* or *compartment* within its territory should clearly define the *subpopulation* in accordance with the recommendations in the relevant chapters of the *Terrestrial Code*, including those on *surveillance*, on *animal identification* and *animal traceability* and on *official control programmes*.

The procedures used to establish and maintain the specific *animal health status* of a *zone* or *compartment* depend on the epidemiology of the disease, including the presence and role of *vectors* and susceptible *wildlife* and environmental factors, on the animal production systems as well as on the application of *biosecurity* and *sanitary measures*, including movement control.

Biosecurity and *surveillance* are essential components of zoning and compartmentalisation, and should be developed through active cooperation between industry and *Veterinary Services*.

The *Veterinary Services*, including *laboratories*, should be established and should operate in accordance with Chapters 3.2. and 3.3., to provide confidence in the integrity of the *zone* or *compartment*. The final authority over the *zone* or *compartment*, for the purposes of domestic and *international trade*, lies with the *Veterinary Authority*. The *Veterinary Authority* should conduct an assessment of the resources needed and available to establish and maintain a *zone* or *compartment*. These include the human and financial resources and the technical capability of the *Veterinary*

Services and of the relevant industry and production system (especially in the case of a *compartment*), including for surveillance, diagnosis and, when appropriate, vaccination, treatment and protection against vectors.

In the context of maintaining the *animal health status* of a *population* or *subpopulation* of a country, *zone* or *compartment*, importations into the country as well as movements of *animals* and their products, and fomites, into the *zones* or *compartments* should be the subject of appropriate *sanitary measures* and *biosecurity*.

The *Veterinary Services* should provide movement certification, when necessary, and carry out documented periodic inspections of facilities, *biosecurity*, records and *surveillance* procedures. *Veterinary Services* should conduct or audit *surveillance*, reporting, *laboratory* diagnostic examinations and, when relevant, vaccination.

The production sector's responsibilities include, in consultation with the *Veterinary Services* if appropriate, the application of *biosecurity*, documenting and recording movements of *commodities* and personnel, managing quality assurance schemes, documenting the implementation of corrective actions, conducting *surveillance*, rapid reporting and maintenance of records in a readily accessible form.

Article 4.4.3.

Principles for defining and establishing a zone or compartment

The following principles apply when Member Countries define a *zone* or a *compartment*.

- 1) The extent of a *zone* and its geographical limits should be established by the *Veterinary Authority* on the basis of natural, artificial or legal boundaries, and made public through official channels.
- 2) The factors defining a *compartment* should be established by the *Veterinary Authority* on the basis of relevant criteria such as management and husbandry practices related to *biosecurity*, and communicated to the relevant operators through official channels.
- 3) *Animals* and *herds* or *flocks* belonging to *subpopulations* of *zones* or *compartments* should be recognisable as such through a clear epidemiological separation from other *animals* and all factors presenting a *risk*. The measures taken to ensure the identification of the *subpopulation* and to establish and maintain its health status through a *biosecurity plan* should be documented in detail. These measures should be appropriate to the particular circumstances, and depend on the epidemiology of the disease, environmental factors, the health status of *animals* in adjacent areas, applicable *biosecurity* (including movement controls, use of natural, artificial or legal boundaries, spatial separation of *animals*, control of fomites, and commercial management and husbandry practices), and *surveillance*.
- 4) Relevant *commodities* within the *zone* or *compartment* should be identified in such a way that their movements are traceable. Depending on the system of production, identification may be done at the *herd* or *flock* or individual animal level. Relevant movements of *commodities* into and out of the *zone* or *compartment* should be well documented and controlled. The existence of an *animal identification system* is a prerequisite to assess the integrity of the *zone* or *compartment*.
- 5) For a *compartment*, the *biosecurity plan* should describe the partnership between the relevant industry and the *Veterinary Authority*, and their respective responsibilities. It should also describe the standard operating procedures to provide clear evidence that the *surveillance* conducted, the *animal identification* and *traceability* system, and the management and husbandry practices are adequate to meet the definition of the *compartment*. In addition to information on controls of movements of relevant *commodities*, the plan should include *herd* or *flock* production records, *feed*, water and bedding sources, *surveillance* results, birth and death records, visitor logbook, morbidity and mortality history and investigations, medications, *vaccinations*, documentation of training of relevant personnel and any other criteria necessary for evaluation of *risk management*. The information required may vary in accordance with the species and diseases under consideration. The *biosecurity plan* should also describe how the measures will be audited to ensure that the *risk*s are being managed and regularly reassessed, and the measures adjusted accordingly.

Articles 4.4.4. to 4.4.7. describe different types of *zones* that can be established by Member Countries. However, other types of *zones* may be established for the purposes of disease control or trade.

Article 4.4.4.

Free zone

A *free zone* is one in which the absence of a specific *infection* or *infestation* in an *animal population* has been demonstrated in accordance with the relevant requirements of the *Terrestrial Code*.

In conjunction with Articles 4.4.2. and 4.4.3., and depending on the prevailing epidemiological situation, the attainment or maintenance of free status may require past or ongoing specific *surveillance* and *vector surveillance*, as well as appropriate *biosecurity* and *sanitary measures*, within the *zone* and at its borders. The *surveillance* should be conducted in accordance with Chapter 1.4. and the relevant chapters of the *Terrestrial Code*.

The free status can apply to one or more susceptible animal species populations, domestic or *wild*.

So long as an ongoing *surveillance* demonstrates there is no occurrence of the specific *infection* or *infestation*, and principles determined for its definition and establishment are respected, the *zone* maintains its free status.

Article 4.4.5.

Infected zone

An *infected zone* is one either in which an *infection* or *infestation* has been confirmed, or that is defined as such in the relevant chapters of the *Terrestrial Code*.

An *infected zone* in which an *infection* or *infestation* has been confirmed may be:

- 1) a *zone* of a country where the *infection* or *infestation* is present and has not yet been eradicated, while other *zones* of the country may be free; or
- 2) a *zone* of a previously free country or *zone*, in which the *infection* or *infestation* has been introduced or reintroduced, while the rest of the country or *zone* remains unaffected.

To gain free status in an *infected zone*, or regain free status following an *outbreak* in a previously *free zone*, Member Countries should follow the recommendations in the relevant chapters of the *Terrestrial Code*.

Article 4.4.6.

Protection zone

A *protection zone* may be established to preserve the *animal health status* of an *animal population* in a free country or a *free zone* by preventing the introduction of a pathogenic agent of a specific *infection* or *infestation* from neighbouring countries or *zones* of different *animal health status*.

A *protection zone* may be established as a temporary measure in response to an increased *risk* of disease. In such case, it may be maintained up to 24 months.

The *protection zone* can be established within or outside a *free zone* or within a free country. Based on the results of a *risk assessment*, more than one *protection zone* may be established.

Biosecurity and *sanitary measures* should be implemented in the *protection zone* on the basis of the animal management systems, the epidemiology of the disease under consideration and the epidemiological situation prevailing in the neighbouring infected countries or *zones*.

In addition to the general considerations in Article 4.4.2. and the principles in Article 4.4.3., these measures should include intensified movement control, *animal identification* and *animal traceability* to ensure that *animals* in the *protection zone* are clearly distinguishable from other populations. *Vaccination* of susceptible *animals* in accordance with Chapter 4.18. may also be applied.

Increased *surveillance*, in accordance with Chapter 1.4. and the relevant disease-specific chapter, should be implemented in the *protection zone* and the rest of the country or *zone*, including *surveillance* of *wildlife* and *vectors* as relevant.

If the *animal health status* of an established *protection zone* changes owing to the occurrence of a *case*, the *animal health status* of the rest of the country or *zone* is not affected, provided the measures in place prevent the spread of disease and allow the subsequent establishment of a *containment zone* in accordance with the criteria in Article 4.4.7.

Unless otherwise specified in the relevant disease-specific chapters of the *Terrestrial Code*, if the *animal health status* of an established *protection zone* changes because of *vaccination*, the *animal health status* of the rest of the country or *zone* is not affected.

Regarding diseases for which WOAH grants official recognition of *animal health status*:

- a *protection zone* is considered as effectively established when the conditions described in this article and in the relevant disease-specific chapters have been applied and documented evidence has been submitted to and accepted by WOAH;
- if a Member wishes to make the *protection zone* permanent, the process for official recognition by WOAH should be followed in accordance with Chapter 1.6. and the relevant disease-specific chapters.

Article 4.4.7.

Containment zone

- 1) In the event of *outbreaks* in a country or *zone* previously free from a disease, a *containment zone*, which includes all epidemiologically linked *outbreaks*, may be established to minimise the impact on the rest of the country or *zone*.
- 2) A *containment zone* is an *infected zone* that should be managed in such a way that *commodities* for *international trade* can be shown to have originated from either inside or outside the *containment zone*.
- 3) Establishment of a *containment zone* should be based on a rapid response, prepared in a contingency plan, that includes:
 - appropriate control of movement of *animals* and other *commodities* upon declaration of suspicion of the specified disease;
 - epidemiological investigation (trace-back, trace-forward) after confirmation of *infection* or *infestation*, demonstrating that the *outbreaks* are epidemiologically related and all are contained within the defined boundaries of the *containment zone*;
 - a *stamping-out policy* or another effective emergency control strategy aimed at eradicating the disease;
 - *animal identification* of the susceptible population within the *containment zone*, enabling its recognition as belonging to the *containment zone*;
 - increased passive and targeted *surveillance* in accordance with Chapter 1.4. in the rest of the country or *zone*, demonstrating no occurrence of *infection* or *infestation*;
 - *biosecurity* and *sanitary measures*, including ongoing *surveillance* and control of the movement of *animals*, other *commodities* and fomites within and from the *containment zone*, consistent with the *listed disease-specific chapter*, when there is one, to prevent spread of the *infection* or *infestation* from the *containment zone* to the rest of the country or *zone*.
- 4) A *containment zone* is considered to be effectively established when the following is demonstrated, unless otherwise specified in the disease-specific chapter:

EITHER

 - a) there have been no new *cases* in the *containment zone* within a minimum of two *incubation periods* from the disposal of the last detected *case*;

OR

 - b) it comprises an *inner zone* where *cases* may continue to occur and an *outer zone* where no *outbreaks* have occurred for at least two *incubation periods* after the control measures above have been put in place and which separates the *inner zone* from the rest of the country or *zone*.
- 5) The free status of the areas outside the *containment zone* is suspended pending the effective establishment of the *containment zone*. Once the *containment zone* has been established, the areas outside the *containment zone* regain free status.
- 6) The free status of the *containment zone* should be regained in accordance with the relevant *listed disease-specific chapters* or, if there are none, with Article 1.4.6.
- 7) In the event of an occurrence of a *case* of the *infection* or *infestation* for which the *containment zone* was established, either in the *containment zone* described in point 4 a) or in the *outer zone* where no *outbreaks* had occurred as described in point 4 b), the rest of the country or *zone* loses its free status.

Article 4.4.8.

Bilateral recognition of country or zone status by trading countries

While WOAH has procedures for official recognition of status for a number of *infections* (refer to Chapter 1.6.), for other *infections* or *infestations*, countries may recognise each other's status through a bilateral process. Trading partners should exchange information allowing the recognition of different *subpopulations* within their respective territories. This

recognition process is best implemented through establishing parameters and gaining agreement on the necessary measures prior to *outbreaks* of disease.

The *Veterinary Services* of an *exporting country* should be able to explain to the *Veterinary Services* of an *importing country* the basis for claiming a specific *animal health status* for a given *zone* or *compartment* under consideration.

The *exporting country* should be able to demonstrate, through detailed documentation provided to the *importing country*, that it has implemented the recommendations in the *Terrestrial Code* for establishing and maintaining such a *zone* or *compartment*.

In accordance with Chapter 5.3., an *importing country* should recognise the existence of this *zone* or *compartment* when the appropriate measures recommended in the *Terrestrial Code* are applied and the *Veterinary Authority* of the *exporting country* is able to demonstrate that this is the case.

NB: FIRST ADOPTED IN 1998; MOST RECENT UPDATE ADOPTED IN 2021.

CHAPTER 4.5.

APPLICATION OF COMPARTMENTALISATION

Article 4.5.1.

Introduction and objectives

The recommendations in this chapter provide a structured framework for the application and recognition of *compartments* within countries or *zones*, based on Chapter 4.4. with the objective to facilitate trade in *animals* and products of animal origin and as a tool for disease management.

Establishing and maintaining a disease free status throughout the country should be the final goal for Member Countries. However, establishing and maintaining a disease free status for an entire country may be difficult, especially in the case of diseases that can easily cross international boundaries. For many diseases, Member Countries have traditionally applied the concept of zoning to establish and maintain an animal *subpopulation* with a different animal health status within national boundaries.

The essential difference between zoning and compartmentalisation is that the recognition of *zones* is based on geographical boundaries whereas the recognition of *compartments* is based on management practices and *biosecurity*. However, spatial considerations and good management practices play a role in the application of both concepts.

Compartmentalisation is not a new concept for *Veterinary Services*; in fact, it has been applied for a long time in many disease control programmes that are based on the concept of disease free *herds* or *flocks*.

The fundamental requirement for compartmentalisation is the implementation and documentation of management and *biosecurity* measures to create a functional separation of *subpopulations*.

For example, an animal production operation in an infected country or *zone* might have *biosecurity* measures and management practices that result in negligible *risk* from diseases or agents. The concept of a *compartment* extends the application of a 'risk boundary' beyond that of a geographical interface and considers all epidemiological factors that can help to create an effective disease-specific separation between *subpopulations*.

In disease free countries or *zones*, *compartments* preferably should be defined prior to the occurrence of a disease *outbreak*. In the event of an *outbreak* or in infected countries or *zones*, compartmentalisation may be used to facilitate trade.

For the purpose of *international trade*, *compartments* should be under the responsibility of the *Veterinary Authority* in the country. For the purposes of this chapter, compliance by Member Countries with Chapters 1.1. and 3.2. is an essential prerequisite.

Article 4.5.2.

Principles for defining a compartment

A *compartment* may be established with respect of a specific disease or diseases. A *compartment* should be clearly defined, indicating the location of all its components including *establishments*, as well as related functional units (such as *feed mills*, *slaughterhouses/abattoirs*, rendering plants, etc.), their interrelationships and their contribution to an epidemiological separation between the *animals* in a *compartment* and *subpopulations* with a different health status. The definition of *compartment* may revolve around disease-specific epidemiological factors, animal production systems, *biosecurity* practices infrastructural factors and *surveillance*.

Article 4.5.3.

Separation of a compartment from potential sources of infection

The management of a *compartment* should provide to the *Veterinary Authority* documented evidence on the following:

1. Physical or spatial factors that affect the status of biosecurity in a compartment

While a *compartment* is primarily based on management and *biosecurity* measures, a review of geographical factors is needed to ensure that the functional boundary provides adequate separation of a *compartment* from adjacent animal populations with a different health status. The following factors should be taken into consideration in conjunction with *biosecurity* measures and, in some instances, may alter the degree of confidence achieved by general *biosecurity* and *surveillance* measures:

- a) disease status in adjacent areas and in areas epidemiologically linked to the *compartment*;
- b) location, disease status and *biosecurity* of the nearest *epidemiological units* or other epidemiologically relevant premises. Consideration should be given to the distance and physical separation from:
 - i) *flocks or herds* with a different health status in close proximity to the *compartment*, including *wildlife* and their migratory routes;
 - ii) *slaughterhouses/abattoirs*, rendering plants or *feed mills*;
 - iii) *markets*, fairs, agricultural shows, sporting events, zoos, circuses and other points of animal concentration.

2. Infrastructural factors

Structural aspects of the *establishments* within a *compartment* contribute to the effectiveness of its *biosecurity*. Consideration should be given to:

- a) fencing or other effective means of physical separation;
- b) facilities for people entry including access control, changing area and showers;
- c) *vehicle* access including washing and *disinfection* procedures;
- d) *unloading* and *loading* facilities;
- e) isolation facilities for introduced *animals*;
- f) facilities for the introduction of material and equipment;
- g) infrastructure to store *feed* and veterinary products;
- h) disposal of carcasses, manure and waste;
- i) water supply;
- j) measures to prevent exposure to living mechanical or biological *vectors* such as insects, rodents and *wild birds*;
- k) air supply;
- l) *feed* supply or source.

More detailed recommendations for certain *establishments* can be found in Sections 4 and 6.

3. Biosecurity plan

The integrity of the *compartment* relies on effective *biosecurity*. The management of the *compartment* should develop, implement and monitor a comprehensive *biosecurity plan*.

The *biosecurity plan* should describe in detail:

- a) potential pathways for introduction and spread into the *compartment* of the agents for which the *compartment* was defined, including animal movements, rodents, fauna, aerosols, arthropods, *vehicles*, people, biological products, equipment, fomites, *feed*, waterways, drainage or other means. Consideration should also be given to the survivability of the agent in the environment;
- b) the critical control points for each pathway;
- c) measures to mitigate exposure for each critical control point;
- d) standard operating procedures including:
 - i) implementation, maintenance, monitoring of the measures,
 - ii) application of corrective actions,
 - iii) verification of the process,
 - iv) record keeping;
- e) contingency plan addressing any potential future changes in the *risk* factors;

- f) reporting procedures to the *Veterinary Authority*;
- g) the programme for educating and training workers to ensure that all persons involved are knowledgeable and informed on *biosecurity* principles and practices;
- h) the *surveillance* programme in place.

In any case, sufficient evidence should be submitted to assess the efficacy of the *biosecurity plan* in accordance with the level of *risk* for each identified pathway. This evidence should be structured in line with the principles of Hazard Analysis and Critical Control Point (HACCP). The *biosecurity* risk of all operations of the *compartment* should be regularly re-assessed and documented at least on a yearly basis. Based on the outcome of the assessment, concrete and documented mitigation steps should be taken to reduce the likelihood of introduction of the pathogenic agent into the *compartment*.

4. Traceability system

A prerequisite for assessing the integrity of a *compartment* is the existence of a valid *traceability* system. All *animals* within a *compartment* should be individually identified and registered in such a way that their history and movements can be documented and audited. In cases where individual identification may not be feasible, such as broilers and day-old chicks, the *Veterinary Authority* should provide sufficient assurance of *traceability*.

All animal movements into and out of the *compartment* should be recorded at the *compartment* level, and when needed, based on a *risk assessment*, certified by the *Veterinary Authority*. Movements within the *compartment* need not be certified but should be recorded at the *compartment* level.

Article 4.5.4.

Documentation

Documentation should provide clear evidence that the *biosecurity*, *surveillance*, *traceability* and management practices defined for a *compartment* are effectively and consistently applied. In addition to animal movement information, the necessary documentation should include *herd* or *flock* production records, *feed sources*, *laboratory tests*, birth and death records, the visitor logbook, morbidity history, medication and *vaccination* records, *biosecurity plans*, training documentation and any other criteria necessary for the evaluation of disease exclusion.

The historical status of a *compartment* for the diseases for which it was defined should be documented and demonstrate compliance with the requirements for freedom in the relevant *Terrestrial Code* chapter.

In addition, a *compartment* seeking recognition should submit to the *Veterinary Authority* a baseline animal health report indicating the presence or absence of *listed diseases* for the animal species of interest to the *compartment* in accordance with Chapter 1.3. This report should be regularly updated to reflect the current animal health situation of the *compartment*.

Vaccination records including the type of vaccine and frequency of administration should be available to enable interpretation of *surveillance* data.

The time period for which all records should be kept may vary in accordance with the species and diseases for which the *compartment* was defined.

All relevant information should be recorded in a transparent manner and be easily accessible so as to be auditable by the *Veterinary Authority*.

Article 4.5.5.

Surveillance for the agent or disease

The *surveillance* system should comply with Chapter 1.4. and the specific recommendations for *surveillance* for the diseases for which the *compartment* was defined, if available.

If there is an increased *risk* of exposure to the agent for which the *compartment* has been defined, the sensitivity of the internal and external *surveillance* system should be reviewed and, where necessary, increased. At the same time, *biosecurity* measures in place should be reassessed and increased if necessary.

1. Internal surveillance

Surveillance should involve the collection and analysis of disease or *infection* data so that the *Veterinary Authority* can certify that the animal *subpopulation* contained in all the *establishments* comply with the defined status of that *compartment*. A *surveillance* system that is able to ensure early detection in the event that the agent enters a *subpopulation* is essential. Depending on the diseases for which the *compartment* was defined, different *surveillance* strategies may be applied to achieve the desired confidence in disease freedom.

2. External surveillance

The *biosecurity* measures applied in a *compartment* should be appropriate to the level of exposure of the *compartment*. External *surveillance* will help identify a significant change in the level of exposure for the identified pathways for disease introduction into the *compartment*.

An appropriate combination of active and passive *surveillance* is necessary to achieve the goals described above. Based on the recommendations of Chapter 1.4., targeted *surveillance* based on an assessment of *risk factors* may be the most efficient *surveillance* approach. Targeted *surveillance* should in particular include *epidemiological units* in close proximity to the *compartment* or those that have a potential epidemiological link with it.

Article 4.5.6.

Diagnostic capabilities and procedures

Officially-designated *laboratory* facilities complying with the WOAH standards for quality assurance, as defined in Chapter 1.1.5. of the *Terrestrial Manual*, should be available for sample testing. All *laboratory* tests and procedures should comply with the recommendations of the *laboratory* for the specific disease. Each *laboratory* that conducts testing should have systematic procedures in place for rapid reporting of disease results to the *Veterinary Authority*. Where appropriate, results should be confirmed by an WOAH Reference Laboratory.

Article 4.5.7.

Emergency response and notification

Early detection, diagnosis and notification of disease are critical to minimise the consequences of *outbreaks*.

In the event of suspicion of occurrence of the disease for which the *compartment* was defined, the free status of the *compartment* should be immediately suspended. If confirmed, the status of the *compartment* should be immediately revoked and *importing countries* should be notified following the provisions of Article 5.3.7.

In case of an occurrence of any infectious disease not present in accordance with the baseline animal health report of the *compartment* referred to in Article 4.5.4., the management of the *compartment* should notify the *Veterinary Authority*, and initiate a review to determine whether there has been a breach in the *biosecurity* measures. If a significant breach in *biosecurity*, even in the absence of *outbreak*, is detected, export certification as a free *compartment* should be suspended. Disease free status of the *compartment* may only be reinstated after the *compartment* has adopted the necessary measures to re-establish the original *biosecurity* level and the *Veterinary Authority* re-approves the status of the *compartment*.

In the event of a *compartment* being at risk from a change, in the surrounding area, in the disease situation for which the *compartment* was defined, the *Veterinary Authority* should re-evaluate without delay the status of the *compartment* and consider whether any additional *biosecurity* measures are needed to ensure that the integrity of the *compartment* is maintained.

Article 4.5.8.

Supervision and control of a compartment

The authority, organisation, and infrastructure of the *Veterinary Services*, including *laboratories*, should be clearly documented in accordance with Chapter 3.3., to provide confidence in the integrity of the *compartment*.

The Veterinary Authority has the final authority in granting, suspending and revoking the status of a *compartment*. The Veterinary Authority should continuously supervise compliance with all the requirements critical to the maintenance of the *compartment* status described in this chapter and ensure that all the information is readily accessible to the *importing countries*. Any significant change should be notified to the *importing country*.

NB: FIRST ADOPTED IN 2008; MOST RECENT UPDATE ADOPTED IN 2012.

CHAPTER 4.6.

SEMEN COLLECTION, PROCESSING AND STORAGE

Article 4.6.1.

General provisions

The objective of this chapter is to provide recommendations that aim at reducing the likelihood of introduction and spread of *listed diseases* and contamination of fresh, chilled or frozen semen from various species of donor animals with pathogenic agents in a *semen collection centre*.

1) This chapter provides recommendations on:

- a) procedures for the collection, processing and storage of semen from bovine, ovine, caprine, porcine, equine, and cervid donor animals;
- b) *biosecurity for semen collection centres*;
- c) conditions applicable to the management and housing of semen donor animals and teasers.

Veterinary Services play a key role in identifying, assessing and managing disease *risk* posed by the collection, processing and storage of semen from various species of donor animals in a *semen collection centre* and establishing appropriate measures to minimise this risk. The *Veterinary Authority* should provide the regulatory standards and oversight to ensure that the recommendations in this chapter, as appropriate, are complied with.

The recommendations in this chapter apply to semen collected, processed and stored for international trade or for domestic distribution.

Recommendations on *animal welfare* in accordance with the principles in Chapter 7.1. of the *Terrestrial Code* should be applied to the animals kept within the *semen collection centre*.

Recommendations regarding specific animal health requirements for donor animals to provide assurance of the absence of selected *listed diseases*, *infections* and *infestations* are found in Chapter 4.7. and relevant disease-specific chapters.

2) For the purposes of the *Terrestrial Code*, the *semen collection centre* comprises:

- a) animal accommodation facilities;
- b) semen collection facilities;
- c) semen processing facilities, including mobile processing units;
- d) semen storage facilities;
- e) administration offices.

The listed facilities may be in one location or consist of single or multiple entities in several locations.

3) For the purposes of this chapter:

- a) 'biosecure' refers to the state of a place or facility, in which *biosecurity* is implemented effectively;
- b) 'resident facility' means a biosecure animal accommodation facility where donor and teaser animals are kept for the purpose of semen collection;
- c) 'pre-entry isolation facility' means a biosecure animal accommodation facility where donor and teaser animals are subjected to testing prior to entering the resident facility;
- d) 'cryogenic tank' means a sealable tank for storage and transport of frozen semen, embryos or oocytes.

Article 4.6.2.

General conditions applicable to semen collection centres

Each facility in the *semen collection centre* should be under the direct supervision of a *veterinarian* who is responsible for ensuring that, in the facilities under their supervision, the health and welfare of animals are monitored, the *biosecurity plan* is implemented, and all documentation including records of procedures is kept current and accessible. The supervising *veterinarian* should communicate directly with the *Veterinary Services* in the event of a disease incursion or serious adverse hygiene event.

Animal identification, animal traceability and movement *registration* should be in accordance with Chapter 4.2. and Chapter 4.3.

The *semen collection centre* should implement and document processes that ensure identification and traceability of semen from collection to processing, storage and final dispatch from the semen storage facility. Fresh, chilled, or frozen semen products dispatched from the semen storage facility should be identified to allow accurate and transparent identification of the donor animal, where the semen was collected and processed, and when it was collected.

Donor and teaser animals should be kept in animal accommodation facilities separately from animals not associated with the *semen collection centre*.

Biosecurity plans should be developed for the *semen collection centre* in accordance with a *risk analysis* and should, at a minimum, address the following:

- 1) Personnel at the *semen collection centre* should be technically competent and apply personal hygiene to prevent the introduction of pathogenic agents. Personnel should receive regular training and demonstrate competency in skills applicable to the *semen collection centre* and covering their specific responsibilities at the centre, which are documented.
- 2) In general, only donor and teaser animals of the same species should be permitted at the *semen collection centre*. All donor and teaser animals should meet the health requirements as determined by the *semen collection centre* and comply with the regulations set out by the *Veterinary Authority*. If other animals are needed at the *semen collection centre*, such as dogs for herding purposes, these should be kept at the *semen collection centre* and not transferred from one establishment to another, and measures to prevent their contact with *wildlife* should be implemented. If other species are needed at the *semen collection centre*, appropriate pre-entry tests should have been conducted and *biosecurity* should be in place to ensure they meet the health requirements as determined by the *semen collection centre* prior to entry.
- 3) Isolation facilities should be washed and disinfected prior to the admittance of each new group of animals. Animals exhibiting any signs of illness upon arrival or during the isolation period should be removed to a separate area.
- 4) Natural mating should be avoided for at least 30 days prior to entry into the pre-entry isolation facility and should not occur after entry into the animal accommodation facility or semen collection facility.
- 5) Measures should be in place to prevent the entry of *wild* or *feral* animals including rodents, arthropods or other domestic animals susceptible to pathogenic agents transmissible to the animals in the *semen collection centre*.
- 6) In accordance with a *biosecurity plan*:
 - a) the entry of visitors to any part of the *semen collection centre* where *biosecurity* is required should only be allowed if authorised and controlled;
 - b) appropriate protective clothing and footwear only for use within the *semen collection centre* facilities should be provided;
 - c) footbaths should be provided, where necessary, and regularly cleaned and the disinfectant renewed based on the manufacturer's recommendations;
 - d) any additional measures such as complete change of clothing or shower may be required depending on the risks; and
 - e) records should be kept of the daily movements of all staff and visitors that enter the *semen collection centre*.
- 7) Appropriate *disinfection* of work areas and equipment should be implemented and documented regularly by trained and competent staff.
- 8) *Vehicles* for the transport of animals, *feed* and waste and manure removal should be used in a manner which minimises health risks to animals in the *semen collection centre*.
- 9) Up-to-date and accessible records should be kept of all movements of animals and *germinal products* associated with the *semen collection centre* to ensure *traceability*.

For the approval of the *semen collection centre* by the *Veterinary Authority*, the *Veterinary Services* should conduct regular audits of *biosecurity plans*, protocols, procedures and records on the health of the animals in the *semen collection centre* and on the hygienic production, storage and dispatch of semen, at least annually, and request and verify appropriate corrective actions, if needed.

Article 4.6.3.

Recommendations applicable to animal accommodation facilities

Animal accommodation facilities should be designed so that cleaning and *disinfection* measures can be implemented efficiently. Individual and group housing pens should be kept clean.

The animal accommodation facilities should include dedicated areas for *feed* storage, manure storage, bedding storage, and for the isolation of any sick animals. Animal accommodation facilities should be species specific, where relevant.

There should be a separate pre-entry isolation facility that is managed as a separate biosecure facility for holding animals that are required to complete testing and isolation prior to entry to the resident facility. Procedures for animal identification, blood sampling and vaccination of animals within the *semen collection centre* should be conducted in accordance with relevant recommendations in the *Terrestrial Code*. In the instance where the *Veterinary Authority* has determined that a pre-entry isolation facility is not required, such as for the collection of equine semen, pre-entry conditions for entering the resident facility or semen collection facility should be included in the *biosecurity plan* of the *semen collection centre*.

The decision to house animals indoors or outdoors will be determined by the *semen collection centre* in accordance with the *biosecurity plan*. Donor animals and teasers that are housed outdoors, or allowed access outdoors, should be accommodated to minimise *vector* attacks and adequately protected from adverse weather conditions.

All donor and teaser animal accommodations should be adapted to the needs of the species of donor. Watering and feeding systems should be constructed so that they provide minimum contact between donor animals and can be easily cleaned.

Bedding should be clean and dry, soft, and easy to spread and remove. Bedding should be removed regularly and replaced, following thorough cleaning and *disinfection* of relevant surfaces.

Feed and bedding material should be kept in a dry place, stored in a manner to prevent access by *wildlife* or pests, and stored in conditions that are well monitored.

Manure, litter, and bedding material should be disposed of in such a way as to prevent the transmission of diseases.

Article 4.6.4.

Recommendations applicable to semen collection and semen collection facilities

The semen collection facility can be co-located with the resident facility and share *biosecurity* to accommodate the same designated *animal health status* as the resident facility. If the semen collection facility is co-located with a resident facility, the semen collection facility should not be used to collect from other donor animals not housed in the resident facility. If the semen collection facility is a separate facility, *biosecurity* should be in place to allow only animals that meet the same health requirements to be permitted entry into that facility.

Donors and teaser animals should be kept and prepared in such a way as to facilitate the hygienic collection of semen. Donor animals should be dry and clean when arriving in the semen collection area.

Semen should be collected from donor animals in the semen collection facility and not in the resident facility. Any exception should be justified and adequately managed by the *biosecurity plan*.

In addition to point 5 of Article 4.6.2., personnel and visitors may be provided with specific protective clothing and footwear for use only at the semen collection facilities and worn at all times, and waiting periods before re-entering the centre can be required.

Equipment used for the animals should be dedicated to the semen collection facility and, if not new, disinfected before being introduced to the *semen collection centre*. All other equipment and tools brought to the semen collection facility should be examined and disinfected, if necessary, to minimise the introduction of pathogenic agents.

The semen collection facility and associated equipment should be designed in such a way as to allow for effective cleaning and *disinfection*, where applicable.

The floor of the mounting area should be clean and provide safe footing. When rubber mats are used, they should be cleaned after each collection.

Preputial orifices of donor animals should be clean and free of excessive hair or wool to avoid contamination of the semen. Hair or wool at the preputial orifice should be regularly trimmed as needed but not completely removed to avoid excessive irritation of the preputial mucosa while urinating.

Hair or wool on the hindquarters of teaser animals should be kept short to avoid contamination during the collection process. A teaser animal should have its hindquarters thoroughly cleaned before each collection session. A plastic

apron can be used to cover the hindquarters of the teaser animal, but the apron should be replaced with a clean apron or thoroughly cleaned and disinfected between donor animals.

A dummy mount, if used, should be made of a material that is easy to clean and disinfect and should be thoroughly cleaned after each collection. Disposable plastic covers may be used.

When used, an artificial vagina should be cleaned completely after each collection. It should be dismantled, washed, rinsed, dried and protected from dust. The inside of the body of the device and the cone should be disinfected before re-assembly using *disinfection* procedures approved by the Veterinary Authority.

Lubricant used in the artificial vagina should be new and the equipment used to spread the lubricant should be clean and free of dust.

The artificial vagina should be handled in a manner to prevent dirt and debris from entering.

When successive ejaculates are being collected from the same donor, a new artificial vagina should be used for each collection to prevent any contamination. The artificial vagina should also be changed when the animal has inserted its penis without ejaculating.

All semen should be collected into a labelled sterile receptacle, either disposable or sterilised by autoclaving or heating and kept clean prior to use.

After semen collection, the receptacle should be left attached to the cone within its sleeve or sheath until it has been moved from the semen collection facility to the semen processing facility.

During collection, the technician should wear disposable gloves and change them between donor animals.

Article 4.6.5.

General principles applicable to semen processing and semen processing facilities

The semen processing facility should be physically separated from the semen collection facilities and may include separate areas for the preparation and cleaning of artificial vaginas, semen evaluation and processing, semen pre-storage and storage.

The semen processing facility should be constructed with materials that permit effective cleaning and *disinfection*, in accordance with Chapter 4.14.

Entry to the facility should be restricted to authorised personnel only.

Protective clothing for use only in the semen processing facility should be provided and worn at all times.

The facility and its equipment should be regularly cleaned and well maintained. Work surfaces for semen evaluation and processing should be regularly cleaned and disinfected.

Only semen from the same species and from donors that meet the same health requirements should be processed at the same time. Semen from donors that do not meet the same health requirements or from different species may be processed consecutively if appropriate hygienic measures in accordance with the *biosecurity plan* have been implemented.

Semen should be collected and processed in a manner that ensures accurate identification and traceability of collecting tubes from the time of semen collection until storage.

All containers and instruments used for the collection, processing, preservation or freezing of semen should be single-use or be cleaned and disinfected or sterilised before use, depending on the manufacturer's instructions.

If not immediately processed, the receptacle containing freshly collected semen should be covered to prevent contamination as soon as possible after collection, until processing. During processing, containers containing the semen should be covered during times when diluent or other components are not being added.

Equipment used for gender-sorting of sperm should be clean and disinfected between ejaculates in accordance with the recommendations of the manufacturer. Where seminal plasma, or components thereof, is added to sorted semen prior to cryopreservation and storage, it should be derived from animals that meet the same health requirements.

Recommendations regarding the use of diluents for processing semen:

- 1) Buffer solutions used in diluents prepared on the premises should be sterilised or be prepared using sterile water before adding egg yolk (if applicable) or equivalent additives, or antibiotics.
- 2) In the case of ready-to-use commercial extenders, the manufacturer's recommendations should be followed.
- 3) If the constituents of a diluent are supplied in commercially available powder form, the water used for preparing the semen diluent should have been distilled or demineralised, sterilised, stored correctly and allowed to cool before use.
- 4) Whenever milk, egg yolk or any other animal protein is used in preparing the semen diluent, the product should be free from pathogenic agents or sterilised. When egg yolk only is used as the extender, it should be separated from the egg white using aseptic techniques. Alternatively, commercial egg yolk prepared for human consumption may be used, or egg yolk treated to reduce bacterial contamination. Commercial ultra-high temperature (UHT) milk or powdered skimmed milk for human consumption may be used. Other additives should be sterilised before use.
- 5) Diluent should be stored according to the manufacturer's instructions. Storage vessels should be closed.
- 6) Antibiotics may be added to the diluent to minimise the growth of bacterial contaminants or control specific venereal pathogens that may be present in semen. The names of the antibiotics and their concentration should be recorded.

Article 4.6.6.

General principles applicable to semen storage and storage facilities

Semen storage facilities and cryogenic tanks should allow for easy cleaning and *disinfection*.

Cryogenic tanks, if not new, should be disinfected before being introduced to the *semen collection centre*.

The manufacturer's instructions for the safe *disinfection* of cryogenic tanks should be complied with.

Movement of cryogenic tanks from one semen storage facility to another should be completed under controlled conditions subject to the *biosecurity plan* of the *semen collection centre*.

Measures should be in place to ensure that access to the semen storage facility is restricted to authorised personnel.

Accurate records should be maintained that identify semen being transferred into, stored and transferred out of the semen storage facility. Semen straws should be clearly and permanently identified.

Only semen from the same species and from donors that meet the same health requirements should be stored in the same liquid nitrogen.

Only new liquid nitrogen should be used to fill or top up cryogenic tanks.

NB: FIRST ADOPTED IN 1986; MOST RECENT UPDATE ADOPTED IN 2024.

CHAPTER 4.7.

COLLECTION AND PROCESSING OF BOVINE, SMALL RUMINANT AND PORCINE SEMEN

Article 4.7.1.

General considerations

The purposes of official sanitary control of semen production are to:

- 1) maintain the health of animals on a *semen collection centre* at a level which permits the international distribution of semen with a negligible risk of infecting other animals or humans with pathogenic agents transmissible by semen;
- 2) ensure that semen is hygienically collected, processed and stored.

Semen collection centres should comply with recommendations in Chapter 4.6.

Standards for diagnostic tests are described in the *Terrestrial Manual*.

Article 4.7.2.

Conditions applicable to testing of bulls and teaser animals

Bulls and teaser animals should enter a *semen collection centre* only when they fulfil the following requirements.

1. Prior to entering pre-entry isolation facility

The animals should comply with the following requirements prior to entry into isolation at the pre-entry isolation facility where the country or *zone* of origin is not free from the diseases in question.

- a) Brucellosis – Chapter 8.4.
- b) Bovine tuberculosis – Article 8.12.7.
- c) Bovine viral diarrhoea (BVD)

The animals should be subjected to:

- i) a virus isolation test or a test for virus antigen, with negative results; and
 - ii) a serological test to determine the serological status of every animal.
- d) Infectious bovine rhinotracheitis/infectious pustular vulvovaginitis
If the *semen collection centre* is to be considered as infectious bovine rhinotracheitis/infectious pustular vulvovaginitis free (IBR/IPV), the animals should either:
 - i) come from an IBR/IPV free herd as defined in Article 11.8.3.; or
 - ii) be subjected, with negative results, to a serological test for IBR/IPV on a blood sample.
 - e) Bluetongue
The animals should comply with Articles 8.3.7. or 8.3.8., depending on the bluetongue status of the country or *zone* of origin of the animals.

2. Testing in the pre-entry isolation facility prior to entering the semen collection facilities

Prior to entering the semen collection facilities of the *semen collection centre*, bulls and teaser animals should be kept in a pre-entry isolation facility for at least 28 days. The animals should be tested as described below a minimum of 21 days after entering the pre-entry isolation facility, except for *Campylobacter fetus* subsp. *venerealis* and *Tritrichomonas foetus*, for which testing may commence after 7 days in pre-entry isolation. All the results should be negative except in the case of BVD antibody serological testing (see point 2 b) i) below).

- a) Brucellosis

The animals should be subjected to a serological test with negative results.

- b) BVD
 - i) The animals should be subjected to a virus isolation test or a test for virus antigen, with negative results. Only when all the animals in pre-entry isolation have had negative results, may the animals enter the semen collection facilities.
 - ii) All animals should be subjected to a serological test to determine the presence or absence of BVD antibodies.
 - iii) Only if no seroconversion occurs in the animals which tested seronegative before entry into the pre-entry isolation facility, may any animal (seronegative or seropositive) be allowed entry into the semen collection facilities.
 - iv) If seroconversion occurs, all the animals that remain seronegative should be kept in pre-entry isolation until there is no more seroconversion in the group for a period of three weeks. Serologically positive animals may be allowed entry into the semen collection facilities.
- c) *Campylobacter fetus* subsp. *venerealis*
 - i) Animals less than six months old or kept since that age only in a single sex group prior to pre-entry isolation should be tested once on a preputial specimen, with a negative result.
 - ii) Animals aged six months or older that could have had contact with females prior to pre-entry isolation should be tested three times at weekly intervals on a preputial specimen, with a negative result in each case.
- d) *Tritrichomonas foetus*
 - i) Animals less than six months old or kept since that age only in a single sex group prior to pre-entry isolation, should be tested once on a preputial specimen, with a negative result.
 - ii) Animals aged six months or older that could have had contact with females prior to pre-entry isolation should be tested three times at weekly intervals on a preputial specimen, with a negative result in each case.
- e) IBR/IPV
 - If the *semen collection centre* is to be considered as IBR/IPV free, the animals should be subjected, with negative results, to a diagnostic test for IBR/IPV on a blood sample. If any animal tests positive, the animal should be removed immediately from the pre-entry isolation facility and the other animals of the same group should remain in pre-entry isolation and be retested, with negative results, not less than 21 days after removal of the positive animal.
- f) Bluetongue
 - The animals should comply with the provisions referred to in Articles 8.3.6., 8.3.7. or 8.3.8., depending on the bluetongue status of the country or zone where the pre-entry isolation facility is located.

3. Testing programme for bulls and teasers resident in the semen collection facilities

All bulls and teasers resident in the semen collection facilities should be tested at least annually for the following diseases, with negative results, where the country or zone where the semen collection facilities are located is not free:

- a) Brucellosis
- b) Bovine tuberculosis
- c) BVD
 - Animals negative to previous serological tests should be retested to confirm absence of antibodies.
 - Should an animal become serologically positive, every ejaculate of that animal collected since the last negative test should be either discarded or tested for virus with negative results.
- d) *Campylobacter fetus* subsp. *venerealis*
 - i) A preputial specimen should be tested.
 - ii) Only bulls on semen production or having contact with bulls on semen production need to be tested. Bulls returning to collection after a lay-off of more than six months should be tested not more than 30 days prior to resuming production.
- e) Bluetongue
 - The animals should comply with the provisions referred to in Article 8.3.9. or Article 8.3.10.
- f) *Tritrichomonas foetus*
 - i) A preputial specimen should be cultured.
 - ii) Only bulls on semen production or having contact with bulls on semen production need to be tested. Bulls returning to collection after a lay-off of more than six months should be tested not more than 30 days prior to resuming production.

g) IBR/IPV

If the *semen collection centre* is to be considered as IBR/IPV free, the animals should comply with the provisions in point 2 c) of Article 11.8.3.

4. Testing for BVD prior to the initial dispatch of semen from each serologically positive bull

Prior to the initial dispatch of semen from BVD serologically positive bulls, a semen sample from each animal should be subjected to a virus isolation or virus antigen test for BVD. In the event of a positive result, the bull should be removed from the centre and all of its semen destroyed.

5. Testing of frozen semen for IBR/IPV in semen collection centres not considered as IBR/IPV free

Each aliquot of frozen semen should be tested as per Article 11.8.7.

Article 4.7.3.

Conditions applicable to testing of rams/bucks and teaser animals

Rams/bucks and teaser animals should only enter a *semen collection centre* if they fulfil the following requirements.

1. Prior to entering pre-entry isolation facility

The animals should comply with the following requirements prior to entry into isolation at the pre-entry isolation facility where the country or *zone* of origin is not free from the diseases in question.

- a) Brucellosis – Chapter 8.4.
- b) Ovine epididymitis – Article 14.6.3.
- c) Contagious agalactia – Points 1 and 2 of Article 14.2.1.
- d) Peste des petits ruminants – Points 1, 2 a) or 3 of Article 14.7.10.
- e) Contagious caprine pleuropneumonia – Article 14.3.7., depending on the CCPP status of the country or *zone* of origin of the animals.
- f) Paratuberculosis – Free from clinical signs for the past two years.
- g) Scrapie – Comply with Article 14.8.8. if the animals do not originate from a scrapie free country or *zone* as defined in Article 14.8.3.
- h) Maedi-visna – Article 14.5.2.
- i) Caprine arthritis/encephalitis – Article 14.1.2. in the case of goats.
- j) Bluetongue
The animals should comply with Articles 8.3.7. or 8.3.8., depending on the bluetongue status of the country or *zone* of origin of the animals.
- k) Tuberculosis – In the case of goats, a single or comparative tuberculin test, with negative results.

2. Testing in the pre-entry isolation facility prior to entering the semen collection facilities

Prior to entering the semen collection facilities of the *semen collection centre*, rams/bucks and teasers should be kept in a pre-entry isolation facility for at least 28 days. The animals should be tested as described below a minimum of 21 days after entering the pre-entry isolation facility, with negative results.

- a) Brucellosis – Chapter 8.4.
- b) Ovine epididymitis – Point 1 d) of Article 14.6.4.
- c) Maedi-visna and caprine arthritis/encephalitis – Test on animals.
- d) Bluetongue

The animals should comply with the provisions referred to in Articles 8.3.6., 8.3.7. or 8.3.8., depending on the bluetongue status of the country or *zone* where the pre-entry isolation facility is located.

3. Testing programme for rams/bucks and teasers resident in the semen collection facilities

All rams/bucks and teasers resident in the semen collection facilities should be tested at least annually for the following diseases, with negative results, where the country or *zone* where the semen collection facilities are located is not free:

- a) Brucellosis;
- b) ovine epididymitis;
- c) Maedi-visna and caprine arthritis/encephalitis;

- d) tuberculosis (for goats only);
- e) bluetongue.

The animals should comply with the provisions referred to in Article 8.3.9. or Article 8.3.10.

Article 4.7.4.

Conditions applicable to testing of boars

Boars should only enter a *semen collection centre* if they fulfil the following requirements.

1. Prior to entering pre-entry isolation facility

The animals should be clinically healthy, physiologically normal and comply with the following requirements within 30 days prior to entry into isolation at the pre-entry isolation facility where the country or *zone* of origin is not free from the diseases in question.

- a) Brucellosis – Chapter 8.4.
- b) Foot and mouth disease – Articles 8.8.10., 8.8.11. or 8.8.12.
- c) Aujeszky's disease – Article 8.2.9. or Article 8.2.10.
- d) Transmissible gastroenteritis – Article 15.5.2.
- e) African swine fever – Article 15.1.6. or Article 15.1.7.
- f) Classical swine fever – Article 15.2.9. or Article 15.2.10.
- g) Porcine reproductive and respiratory syndrome – Test complying with the standards in the *Terrestrial Manual*.

2. Testing in the pre-entry isolation facility prior to entering the semen collection facilities

Prior to entering the semen collection facilities of the *semen collection centre*, boars should be kept in a pre-entry isolation facility for at least 28 days. The animals should be subjected to diagnostic tests as described below a minimum of 21 days after entering the pre-entry isolation facility, with negative results.

- a) Brucellosis – Chapter 8.4.
- b) Foot and mouth disease – Articles 8.8.13., 8.8.14., 8.8.15. or 8.8.16.
- c) Aujeszky's disease – Articles 8.2.13., 8.2.14. or 8.2.15.
- d) Transmissible gastroenteritis – Article 15.5.4.
- e) African swine fever – Article 15.1.9. or Article 15.1.10.
- f) Classical swine fever – Article 15.2.11. or Article 15.2.12.
- g) Porcine reproductive and respiratory syndrome – The test complying with the standards in the *Terrestrial Manual*.

3. Testing programme for boars resident in the semen collection facilities

All boars resident in the semen collection facilities should be tested at least annually for the following diseases, with negative results, where the country or *zone* where the semen collection facilities are located is not free:

- a) Brucellosis – Chapter 8.4.
- b) Foot and mouth disease – Articles 8.8.13., 8.8.14., 8.8.15. or 8.8.16.
- c) Aujeszky's disease – Articles 8.2.13., 8.2.14. or 8.2.15.
- d) Transmissible gastroenteritis – Article 15.5.4.
- e) African swine fever – Article 15.1.9. or Article 15.1.10.
- f) Classical swine fever – Article 15.2.11. or Article 15.2.12.
- g) Porcine reproductive and respiratory syndrome – The test complying with the standards in the *Terrestrial Manual*.

CHAPTER 4.8.

COLLECTION AND PROCESSING OF IN VIVO DERIVED EMBRYOS FROM LIVESTOCK AND EQUIDS

Article 4.8.1.

Aims of control

The purpose of official sanitary control of *in vivo* derived embryos intended for movement internationally is to ensure that specific pathogenic agents, which could be associated with embryos, are controlled and transmission of *infection* to recipient animals and progeny is avoided.

Article 4.8.2.

Conditions applicable to the embryo collection team

The embryo collection team is a group of competent technicians, including at least one *veterinarian*, to perform the collection, processing and storage of embryos. The following conditions should apply:

- 1) The team should be approved by the *Competent Authority*.
- 2) The team should be supervised by a team *veterinarian*.
- 3) The team *veterinarian* is responsible for all team operations which include verification of donor health status, sanitary handling and surgery of donors and *disinfection* and hygienic procedures.
- 4) Team personnel should be adequately trained in the techniques and principles of disease control. High standards of hygiene should be practiced to preclude the introduction of *infection*.
- 5) The collection team should have adequate facilities and equipment for:
 - a) collecting embryos;
 - b) processing and treatment of embryos at a permanent site or mobile laboratory;
 - c) storing embryos.These facilities need not necessarily be at the same location.
- 6) The embryo collection team should keep a record of its activities, which should be maintained for inspection by the *Veterinary Authority* for a period of at least two years after the embryos have been exported.
- 7) The embryo collection team should be subjected to regular inspection at least once a year by an *Official Veterinarian* to ensure compliance with procedures for the sanitary collection, processing and storage of embryos.

Article 4.8.3.

Conditions applicable to processing laboratories

A processing laboratory used by the embryo collection team may be mobile or permanent. It is a facility in which embryos are recovered from collection media, examined and subjected to any required treatments such as washing and being examined and prepared for freezing and storage.

A permanent laboratory may be part of a specifically designed collection and processing unit, or a suitably adapted part of an existing building. It may be on the premises where the donor animals are kept. In either case, the laboratory should be physically separated from animals. Both mobile and permanent laboratories should have a clear separation between dirty areas (animal handling) and the clean processing area.

Additionally:

- 1) The processing laboratory should be under the direct supervision of the team *veterinarian* and be regularly inspected by an *Official Veterinarian*.

- 2) While embryos for export are being handled prior to their storage in ampoules, vials or straws, no embryos of a lesser health status should be processed.
- 3) The processing laboratory should be protected against rodents and insects.
- 4) The processing laboratory should be constructed with materials which permit its effective cleansing and *disinfection*. This should be done frequently, and always before and after each occasion on which embryos for export are processed.

Article 4.8.4.

Conditions applicable to the introduction of donor animals

1. Donor animals
 - a) The *Veterinary Authority* should have knowledge of, and authority over, the *herd* or *flock* from which the donor animals have been sourced.
 - b) The donor animals should not be situated in a *herd* or *flock* subject to veterinary restrictions for WOAH *listed disease* or pathogenic agents for relevant species (see Chapter 1.3.), other than those that are in International Embryo Technology Society (IETS) Category 1 for the species of embryos being collected (see Article 4.8.14.).
 - c) At the time of collection, the donor animals should be clinically inspected by the team *veterinarian*, or by a *veterinarian* responsible to the team *veterinarian* and certified to be free of clinical signs of diseases.
2. Semen donors
 - a) Semen used to inseminate donor animals artificially should have been produced and processed in accordance with Chapter 4.6.
 - b) When the donor of the semen used to inseminate donor females for embryo production is dead, and when the health status of the semen donor concerning a particular infectious disease or diseases of concern was not known at the time of semen collection, additional tests may be required of the inseminated donor female after embryo collection to verify that these infectious diseases were not transmitted. An alternative may be to test an aliquot of semen from the same collection date.
 - c) Where natural service or fresh semen is used, donor sires should meet the health conditions set out in Chapter 4.7. as appropriate to the species.

Article 4.8.5.

Risk management

With regard to disease transmission, transfer of *in vivo* derived embryos is a very low risk method for moving animal genetic material. Irrespective of animal species, there are three phases in the embryo transfer process that determine the final level of risk:

- 1) The first phase, which is applicable to diseases not included in Category 1 of the IETS categorisation (Article 4.8.14.), comprises the risk potential for embryo contamination and depends on:
 - a) the disease situation in the *exporting country or zone*;
 - b) the health status of the *herds* or *flocks* and the donors from which the embryos are collected;
 - c) the characteristics of the specified pathogenic agents that are of concern to the *Veterinary Authority* of the *importing country*.
- 2) The second phase covers risk mitigation by use of internationally accepted procedures for processing of embryos which are set out in the Manual of the IETS. These include the following:
 - a) The embryos should be washed at least ten times with at least 100-fold dilutions between each wash, and a fresh pipette should be used for transferring the embryos through each wash.
 - b) Only embryos from the same donor should be washed together, and no more than ten embryos should be washed at any one time.
 - c) Sometimes, for example when inactivation or removal of certain viruses, such as bovine herpesvirus-1 and Aujeszky's disease virus, is required, the standard washing procedure should be modified to include additional washes with the enzyme trypsin, as described in the Manual of the IETS.
 - d) The zona pellucida of each embryo, after washing, should be examined over its entire surface area at not less than 50X magnification to ensure that it is intact and free of adherent material.

- e) All shipments of embryos should be accompanied by a statement signed by the team veterinarian certifying that these embryo processing procedures have been completed.
- 3) The third phase, which is applicable to diseases not included in Category 1 of the IETS categorisation (Article 4.8.14.) and which are of concern to the Veterinary Authority of the *importing country*, encompasses the risk reductions resulting from:
 - a) post-collection surveillance of the donors and donor herd or flock based on the recognised *incubation periods* of the diseases of concern to determine retrospectively the health status of donors whilst the embryos are stored (in species where effective storage by cryopreservation is possible) in the *exporting country*;
 - b) testing of embryo-collection (flushing) fluids and non-viable embryos, or other samples such as blood, in a laboratory for presence of specified pathogenic agents.

Article 4.8.6.

Conditions applicable to the collection and storage of embryos

1. Media

Any biological product of animal origin used in the media and solutions for collection, processing, washing or storage of embryos should be free from pathogenic agents. Media and solutions used in the collection and storage of embryos should be sterilised by approved methods in accordance with the Manual of the IETS and handled in such a manner as to ensure that sterility is maintained. Antibiotics should be added to collection, processing, washing and storage media as recommended in the Manual of the IETS.

2. Equipment

- a) All equipment used to collect, handle, wash, freeze and store embryos should ideally be new or at least sterilised prior to use as recommended in the Manual of the IETS.
- b) Used equipment should not be transferred between countries for re-use by the embryo collection team.

Article 4.8.7.

Optional tests and treatments

- 1) The testing of samples can be requested by an *importing country* to confirm the absence of pathogenic agents that may be transmitted via *in vivo* derived embryos, or to help assess whether the degree of quality control of the collection team (with regard to adherence to procedures as described in the Manual of the IETS) is at an acceptable level. Samples may include:
 - a) Non-viable embryos and oocytes
Where the viable, zona pellucida intact embryos from a donor are intended for export, all non-fertilised oocytes and degenerated or zona pellucida compromised embryos collected from that donor should be washed in accordance with the Manual of the IETS and pooled for testing if requested by the *importing country*. Non-viable embryos and oocytes from the donor should be processed and stored together.
 - b) Embryo collection (flushing) fluids
The collection fluid should be placed in a sterile, closed container and, if there is a large amount, it should be allowed to stand undisturbed for one hour. The supernatant fluid should then be removed and the bottom 10–20 ml, along with accumulated debris, decanted into a sterile bottle. If a filter is used in the collection of embryos and oocytes then any debris that is retained on the filter should be rinsed off into the retained fluid.
 - c) Washing fluids
The last four washes of the embryos and oocytes should be pooled in accordance with the Manual of the IETS.
 - d) Samples
The samples referred to above should be stored at 4°C and tested within 24 hours. If this is not possible, then samples should be stored frozen at -70°C or lower.
- 2) When treatment of the viable embryos is modified to include additional washings with the enzyme trypsin (see point 2 c) in Article 4.8.5.), the procedure should be carried out in accordance with the Manual of the IETS. Enzyme treatment is necessary only when pathogenic agents for which the IETS recommends this additional treatment (such as with trypsin) may be present. It should be noted that such a treatment is not always beneficial and it should not be regarded as a general disinfectant. It may also have adverse effects on embryo viability, for instance in the case of equine embryos where the embryonic capsule could be damaged by the enzyme.

Article 4.8.8.

Conditions applicable to the storage and transport of embryos

- 1) The embryos for export should be stored in sealed sterile ampoules, vials or straws under strict hygienic conditions at a storage place approved by the *Veterinary Authority* of the *exporting country* where there is no risk of contamination of the embryos.
- 2) Only embryos from the same individual donor should be stored together in the same ampoule, vial or straw.
- 3) The embryos should if possible, depending on the species, be frozen, stored with fresh liquid nitrogen in cleaned and sterilised tanks or containers under strict hygienic conditions at the approved storage place.
- 4) Ampoules, vials or straws should be sealed at the time of freezing (or prior to export where cryopreservation is not possible), and they should be clearly identified by labels in accordance with the standardised system recommended in the Manual of the IETS.
- 5) Liquid nitrogen containers should be sealed under the supervision of the *Official Veterinarian* prior to shipment from the *exporting country*.
- 6) Embryos should not be exported until the appropriate veterinary certificates are completed.

Article 4.8.9.

Procedure for micromanipulation

When micromanipulation of the embryos is to be carried out, this should be done after completion of the treatments described in point 2 of Article 4.8.5. and conducted in accordance with Chapter 4.10.

Article 4.8.10.

Specific conditions applicable to porcine embryos

The *herd* or *flock* of origin should be free of clinical signs of swine vesicular disease and brucellosis.

The development of effective cryopreservation methods for the storage of zona pellucida-intact porcine embryos is still at a very early stage.

Article 4.8.11.

Specific conditions applicable to equine embryos

The recommendations apply principally to embryos from animals continuously resident in national equine populations and therefore may be found unsuitable for those from horses routinely involved in events or competitions at the international level. For instance, in appropriate circumstances horses travelling with an *international veterinary certificate* may be exempt where mutually agreed upon on a bilateral basis between the respective *Veterinary Authorities*.

Article 4.8.12.

Specific conditions applicable to camelid embryos

South American camelid embryos recovered from the uterine cavity by the conventional non-surgical flushing technique at 6.5 to 7 days post-ovulation are almost invariably at the hatched blastocyst stage, and thus the zona pellucida has already been shed. Since the embryos do not enter the uterus and cannot be recovered before 6.5 to 7 days, it would be unrealistic to stipulate for these species that only zona pellucida-intact embryos can be used in *international trade*. The development of cryopreservation methods for storage of camelid embryos is still at an early stage, and also that pathogenic agent interaction studies with camelid embryos have not yet been carried out.

Article 4.8.13.

Specific conditions applicable to cervid embryos

The recommendations apply principally to embryos derived from animals continuously resident in national domestic or ranched cervid populations and therefore may be found to be unsuitable for those from cervids in feral or other circumstances related to biodiversity or germplasm conservation efforts.

Article 4.8.14.

Recommendations regarding the risk of disease transmission via *in vivo* derived embryos

Based on the conclusions of the IETS, the following diseases and pathogenic agents are categorised into four categories, which applies only to *in vivo* derived embryos.

1. Category 1

- a) Category 1 diseases or pathogenic agents are those for which sufficient evidence has accrued to show that the risk of transmission is negligible provided that the embryos are properly handled between collection and transfer in accordance with the Manual of the IETS.
- b) The following diseases or pathogenic agents are in category 1:
 - Bluetongue (cattle)
 - Bovine spongiform encephalopathy (cattle)
 - *Brucella abortus* (cattle)
 - Enzootic bovine leukosis
 - Foot and mouth disease (cattle)
 - Infection with Aujeszky's disease virus (pigs): trypsin treatment required
 - Infectious bovine rhinotracheitis/infectious pustular vulvovaginitis: trypsin treatment required
 - Scrapie (sheep).

2. Category 2

- a) Category 2 diseases are those for which substantial evidence has accrued to show that the risk of transmission is negligible provided that the embryos are properly handled between collection and transfer in accordance with the Manual of the IETS, but for which additional transfers are required to verify existing data.
- b) The following diseases are in category 2:
 - Bluetongue (sheep)
 - Caprine arthritis/encephalitis
 - Infection with classical swine fever virus.

3. Category 3

- a) Category 3 diseases or pathogenic agents are those for which preliminary evidence indicates that the risk of transmission is negligible provided that the embryos are properly handled between collection and transfer in accordance with the Manual of the IETS, but for which additional *in vitro* and *in vivo* experimental data are required to substantiate the preliminary findings.
- b) The following diseases or pathogenic agents are in category 3:
 - Atypical scrapie (not a *listed disease*)
 - Bovine immunodeficiency virus (not a *listed disease*)
 - Bovine spongiform encephalopathy (goats) (not a *listed disease* of goats)
 - Bovine viral diarrhoea virus (cattle)
 - *Campylobacter fetus* (sheep) (not a *listed disease* of sheep)
 - Foot and mouth disease (pigs, sheep and goats)
 - *Haemophilus somnus* (cattle) (not a *listed disease*)
 - Infection with rinderpest virus (cattle)

- Maedi-visna (sheep)
- *Mycobacterium paratuberculosis* (cattle)
- *Neospora caninum* (cattle) (not a *listed disease*)
- Ovine pulmonary adenomatosis (not a *listed disease*)
- Porcine circovirus (type 2) (pigs) (not a *listed disease*)
- Porcine reproductive and respiratory disease syndrome (PRRS)
- Swine vesicular disease (not a *listed disease*).

4. Category 4

- a) Category 4 diseases or pathogenic agents are those for which studies have been done, or are in progress, that indicate:
 - i) that no conclusions are yet possible with regard to the level of transmission risk; or
 - ii) the risk of transmission via embryo transfer might not be negligible even if the embryos are properly handled in accordance with the Manual of the IETS between collection and transfer.
- b) The following diseases or pathogenic agents are in category 4:
 - African swine fever
 - Akabane (cattle) (not a *listed disease*)
 - Bovine anaplasmosis
 - Bluetongue (goats)
 - Border disease (sheep) (not a *listed disease*)
 - Bovine herpesvirus-4 (not a *listed disease*)
 - *Chlamydia psittaci* (cattle, sheep)
 - Contagious equine metritis
 - Enterovirus (cattle, pigs) (not a *listed disease*)
 - *Escherichia coli* 09:K99 (cattle) (not a *listed disease*)
 - Infection with equid herpesvirus 1 (Equine rhinopneumonitis)
 - Infection with equine arteritis virus
 - *Leptospira borgpetersenii* serovar *hardjobovis* (cattle) (not a *listed disease*)
 - *Leptospira* sp. (pigs) (not a *listed disease*)
 - Lumpy skin disease
 - *Mycobacterium bovis* (cattle)
 - *Mycoplasma* spp. (pigs)
 - Ovine epididymitis (*Brucella ovis*)
 - Parainfluenza-3 virus (cattle) (not a *listed disease*)
 - Parvovirus (pigs) (not a *listed disease*)
 - Q fever (*Coxiella burnetii*)
 - Scrapie (goats)
 - *Tritrichomonas foetus* (cattle)
 - *Ureaplasma* and *Mycoplasma* spp. (cattle, goats) (not a *listed disease*)
 - Vesicular stomatitis (cattle, pigs) (not a *listed disease*).

NB: FIRST ADOPTED IN 1986; MOST RECENT UPDATE ADOPTED IN 2015.

CHAPTER 4.9.

COLLECTION AND PROCESSING OF OOCYTES AND *IN VITRO* PRODUCED EMBRYOS FROM LIVESTOCK AND HORSES

Article 4.9.1.

Aims of control

Production of embryos *in vitro* involves the collection of oocytes from the ovaries of donors, *in vitro* maturation and fertilisation of the oocytes, then *in vitro* culture to the morula or blastocyst stage. At this stage, they are ready for transfer into recipients. The purpose of official sanitary control of *in vitro* produced embryos intended for movement internationally is to ensure that specific pathogenic agents, which could be associated with such embryos, are controlled and transmission of *infection* to recipient animals and progeny is avoided. The conditions outlined in this chapter are also applicable where the movement of *in vitro* maturing (IVM) oocytes is intended.

Article 4.9.2.

Conditions applicable to the embryo production team

The embryo production team is a group of competent technicians, including at least one *veterinarian*, to perform the collection and processing of ovaries and oocytes and the production and storage of *in vitro* produced embryos. The following conditions should apply:

- 1) The team should be approved by the *Competent Authority*.
- 2) The team should be supervised by a team *veterinarian*.
- 3) The team *veterinarian* is responsible for all team operations which include the hygienic collection of ovaries and oocytes and all other procedures involved in the production of embryos intended for international movement.
- 4) Team personnel should be adequately trained in the techniques and principles of disease control. High standards of hygiene should be practised to preclude the introduction of *infection*.
- 5) The production team should have adequate facilities and equipment for:
 - a) collecting ovaries or oocytes;
 - b) processing of oocytes and production of embryos at a permanent or mobile laboratory;
 - c) storing oocytes or embryos.

These facilities need not necessarily be at the same location.

- 6) The embryo production team should keep a record of its activities, which should be maintained for inspection by the *Veterinary Services* for a period of at least two years after the embryos have been exported.
- 7) The embryo production team should be subjected to regular inspection at least once a year by an *Official Veterinarian* to ensure compliance with procedures for the sanitary collection and processing of oocytes and the production and storage of embryos.

Article 4.9.3.

Conditions applicable to the processing laboratories

A processing laboratory used by the embryo production team may be mobile or permanent. It may be contiguous with the oocyte recovery area or at a separate location. It is a facility where oocytes recovered from ovaries are then matured and fertilised, and where the resulting embryos are further cultured *in vitro*.

Embryos may also be subjected to any required treatments such as washing and storage and quarantine in this laboratory.

Additionally:

- 1) The laboratory should be under the direct supervision of the team *veterinarian* and regularly inspected by an *Official Veterinarian*.
- 2) While embryos for export are being produced prior to their storage in ampoules, vials or straws, no oocyte nor embryo of a lesser health status should be recovered or processed in the same laboratory.
- 3) The laboratory should be protected against rodents and insects.
- 4) The processing laboratory should be constructed with materials which permit its effective cleansing and *disinfection*. This should be done frequently and always before and after each occasion when embryos for export are processed.
- 5) The processing laboratory should have and use appropriate facilities to handle and process embryos for export, in accordance with the recommendations in the Manual of the International Embryo Technology Society (IETS).

Article 4.9.4.

Conditions applicable to donor animals

Oocytes for the *in vitro* production of embryos are obtained from donors basically in two different ways: individual collection or batch collection. The recommended conditions for these differ.

Individual collection usually involves the aspiration of oocytes from the ovaries of individual live animals on the farm where the animal resides, or at the laboratory. Occasionally oocytes may also be recovered from individual live donors by aspiration from surgically excised ovaries. When oocytes are recovered from individual live animals, the conditions for these donors should resemble those set out in Article 4.8.4.

In these cases the cleaning and sterilisation of equipment (e.g. ultrasound guided probes) is especially important and should be carried out between each donor in accordance with the recommendations in the Manual of the IETS.

Batch collection involves the removal of ovaries from batches of donors slaughtered at a *slaughterhouse/abattoir*; these ovaries are then transported to the processing laboratory where the oocytes are recovered from the ovarian follicles by aspiration or slicing techniques. Batch collection has the disadvantage that it is usually impractical to trace the ovaries transported to the laboratory back to the donors slaughtered at the *slaughterhouse/abattoir*. Nevertheless, it is critical to ensure that only healthy tissues are obtained and that they are removed from the donors and transported to the laboratory in a hygienic manner.

Additionally:

- 1) The *Veterinary Services* should have knowledge of the *herds* or *flocks* from which the donor animals were sourced.
- 2) The donor animals should not originate from *herds* or *flocks* that are subject to veterinary restrictions for foot and mouth disease or *peste des petits ruminants*, and neither should the removal of any tissue or aspiration of oocytes take place in an *infected zone*, or one that is subject to veterinary restrictions for those diseases.
- 3) In the case of oocyte recovery from live donors, post-collection surveillance of the donors and donor *herds* or *flocks* should be conducted based on the recognised *incubation periods* of the diseases of concern to determine retrospectively the health status of donors.
- 4) In the case of oocyte recovery from batches of ovaries collected from a *slaughterhouse/abattoir*, the *slaughterhouse/abattoir* should be officially approved and under the supervision of a *veterinarian* responsible for ensuring that ante- and post-mortem inspections of potential donor animals are carried out, and for certifying them free from clinical or pathological signs of the diseases listed in point 2.
- 5) Donor animals slaughtered at a *slaughterhouse/abattoir* should not be animals designated for compulsory *slaughter* for a *notifiable disease* or be slaughtered at the same time as such animals.
- 6) Batches of ovaries and other tissues collected from a *slaughterhouse/abattoir* should not be transported to the processing laboratory before confirmation has been obtained that ante-mortem and post-mortem inspections of donors have been carried out with favourable results.
- 7) Equipment for the removal and transport of ovaries and other tissues should be cleaned and sterilised before use and used exclusively for these purposes.
- 8) Records of the identities and origins of all donors should be maintained for inspection by the *Veterinary Services* for a period of at least two years after the embryos have been exported. While this may be difficult to achieve in the case of batch collection, it is to be expected that the identities of the *herds* or *flocks* from which the donors originated will be maintained.

Article 4.9.5.

Tests and treatments

A supplementary approach for ensuring that *in vitro* produced embryos do not transmit disease is testing various materials to confirm the absence of pathogenic agents listed in point 2 of Article 4.9.4.

Tests may also be used to assess whether quality control procedures being applied in the processing laboratory are of an acceptable standard.

Tests may be carried out on the following materials:

- 1) non-viable oocytes or embryos from any stage of the *in vitro* production line from batches intended for export;
- 2) samples of *in vitro* maturation medium taken prior to mixing the oocytes with semen for the fertilisation process;
- 3) samples of embryo culture medium taken immediately prior to embryo storage;
- 4) a pool of the last three washes from the ten washes performed on the embryos.

These samples should be stored at 4°C and tested within 24 hours. If this is not possible, then the samples should be stored frozen at minus 70°C or lower.

Additionally:

- 1) Semen used to fertilise oocytes *in vitro* should have been collected and processed in accordance with Chapter 4.6. and meet the health requirements in Chapter 4.7. as appropriate to the species and in relevant *listed disease-specific chapters*.

When the donor of the semen used to fertilise the oocytes is dead, and when the health status of the semen donor concerning a particular infectious disease or diseases of concern was not known at the time of semen collection, additional tests on the spare embryos may be required to verify that these infectious diseases were not transmitted.

An alternative may be to test an aliquot of semen from the same collection date.

- 2) Any biological product of animal origin, including co-culture cells and media constituents, used in oocyte recovery, maturation, fertilisation, culture, washing and storage should be free from pathogenic agents. Media should be sterilised prior to use by approved methods in accordance with the Manual of the IETS and handled appropriately to ensure that sterility is maintained. Antibiotics should be added to all fluids and media as recommended in the Manual of the IETS.
- 3) All equipment used to recover, handle, culture, wash, freeze and store oocytes or embryos should be new or cleaned and sterilised prior to use as recommended in the Manual of the IETS.

Article 4.9.6.

Risk management

With regard to disease transmission, transfer of *in vitro* produced embryos is a low risk method for moving animal genetic material although the risk is not quite as low as for *in vivo* derived embryos. It should be noted that categorisation of diseases and pathogenic agents by the IETS, as described for *in vivo* derived embryos in Article 4.8.14., does not apply in the case of *in vitro* produced embryos. Irrespective of the animal species, there are three phases in the embryo production and transfer process that determine the final level of risk. These are as follows:

- 1) the first phase comprises the risk potential for ovary, oocyte or embryo contamination and depends on:
 - a) the disease situation in the *exporting country or zone*;
 - b) the health status of the *herds or flocks* and the donors from which the ovaries, oocytes, embryos or semen for fertilisation of oocytes are collected;
 - c) the characteristics of the pathogenic agents listed in point 2 of Article 4.9.4.;
- 2) the second phase covers risk mitigation by the use of internationally accepted procedures for the processing of embryos which are set out in the Manual of the IETS. These include the following:
 - a) oocytes and embryos should be washed between each stage of production;
 - b) after the *in vitro* culture period is finished the embryos should be washed at least 10 times with at least 100-fold dilutions between each wash, and a fresh pipette should be used for transferring the embryos through each wash;
 - c) only embryos from the same donor (in the case of individual collection) or from the same batch (in the case of batch collection) should be washed together, and no more than ten embryos should be washed at any one time;

- d) sometimes, for example when inactivation or removal of certain viruses (e.g. bovine herpesvirus-1, or Aujeszky's disease virus) is required, the standard washing procedure should be modified to include additional washes with the enzyme trypsin, as described in the Manual of the IETS;
 - e) the zona pellucida of each embryo, after washing, should be examined over its entire surface area at not less than 50X magnification to ensure that it is intact and free from adherent material;
- 3) the third phase, which is applicable to diseases listed in point 2 of Article 4.8.14. encompasses the risk reductions resulting from:
- a) post-collection surveillance of the donors and donor *herds* or *flocks* based on the recognised *incubation periods* of the diseases of concern to determine retrospectively the health status of the donors whilst the embryos are stored (in species where effective storage by cryopreservation is possible) in the *exporting country*. Post-collection surveillance of donors is not, of course, possible in the case of batch collection from a *slaughterhouse/abattoir*, although surveillance of the *herds* or *flocks* of origin may be possible;
 - b) testing of oocytes, embryos, co-culture cells, media and other samples (e.g. blood) (as referred to in Article 4.9.5.) in a laboratory for presence of pathogenic agents.

Article 4.9.7.

Conditions applicable to the storage, transport and export of oocytes and embryos

Oocytes and *in vitro* produced embryos can be stored and transported fresh, chilled or frozen.

Fresh embryos may undergo culture in portable incubators during transportation and should arrive at the recipient animal within five days, in time for transfer of the mature blastocysts. Chilled embryos should be transferred within ten days of chilling.

The Veterinary Services should have knowledge of the variety of oocyte and embryo storage systems available and should have procedures in place for the safe and timely inspection and certification of these oocytes and embryos to ensure their viability.

- 1) Only embryos from the same individual donor or from the same batch collection should be stored together in the same ampoule, vial or straw.
- 2) For frozen oocytes and embryos:
 - a) sterile ampoules, vials or straws should be sealed prior to freezing or after vitrification and should be labelled according to the Manual of the IETS;
 - b) the frozen oocytes and embryos should be frozen in liquid nitrogen that has not been used previously then stored in liquid phase nitrogen that has not been used previously or in the vapour phase of liquid nitrogen disinfected containers under strict hygienic conditions at a storage place;
 - c) liquid nitrogen containers should be sealed prior to shipment from the *exporting country*.
- 3) For fresh or chilled oocytes and embryos:
 - a) sterile ampoules, vials or straws should be sealed prior to storing in portable incubators and should be labelled in accordance with the Manual of the IETS;
 - b) the fresh or chilled oocytes and embryos should be stored under strict hygienic conditions in portable incubators disinfected in accordance with the Manual of the IETS and manufacturer's instructions;
 - c) portable incubators should be sealed prior to shipment from the *exporting country*.
- 4) Oocytes and embryos should not be exported until the appropriate veterinary certificates are completed.

Article 4.9.8.

Procedure for micromanipulation

When micromanipulation of the embryos is to be carried out, this should be done after completion of the treatments described in point 2 of Article 4.9.6. and conducted in accordance with Chapter 4.10.

NB: FIRST ADOPTED IN 1992; MOST RECENT UPDATE ADOPTED IN 2018.

CHAPTER 4.10.

COLLECTION AND PROCESSING OF MICROMANIPULATED OOCYTES OR EMBRYOS FROM LIVESTOCK AND HORSES

Article 4.10.1.

Introduction

Neither Chapter 4.8. which recommends official sanitary control measures for the international movement of *in vivo* derived embryos nor Chapter 4.9. which recommends measures for *in vitro* produced embryos or *in vitro* maturing oocytes covers embryos which have been subjected to biopsy, splitting, transgene injection, intracytoplasmic sperm injection (ICSI), nuclear transfer or other interventions which breach the integrity of the zona pellucida. Such oocytes or embryos are those referred to here as having been "micromanipulated".

It should be noted that complete removal of granulosa cells or other adherent material from the outer surface of the zona pellucida of oocytes, zygotes and embryos is necessary prior to micromanipulation to avoid lowering their health status.

Removal of such material from the zona pellucida of immature oocytes can be difficult. However, to bring micromanipulated oocytes or embryos within the scope of the above mentioned chapters, the following conditions should apply.

Article 4.10.2.

- 1) Prior to any micromanipulation which involves breaching the zona pellucida, all oocytes or embryos should be collected and processed in accordance with the sanitary conditions laid down in Chapter 4.8. (*in vivo* derived embryos), or produced in accordance with the sanitary conditions laid down in Chapter 4.9. (*in vitro* produced oocytes or embryos).
- 2) Responsibility for the oocytes or embryos remains with the embryo collection team (*in vivo* derived embryos) or with the embryo production team (*in vitro* produced embryos), and all processing involving micromanipulation should be carried out in an approved processing laboratory under supervision of an approved team *veterinarian* (see Articles 4.8.2. and 4.8.3., and Articles 4.9.2. and 4.9.3., as appropriate).
- 3) Donor animals should comply with the conditions laid down in Article 4.8.4. (*in vivo* derived embryos) or Article 4.9.4. (*in vitro* produced embryos), whichever is appropriate. Risk management and criteria for testing samples to ensure that embryos are free from pathogenic agents are laid down in Articles 4.8.5. and Article 4.8.7. and in Articles 4.9.5. and 4.9.6. respectively, and these should be followed.
- 4) All embryos to be micromanipulated should be washed in accordance with the protocols laid down in the Manual of the International Embryo Technology Society (IETS) and they should be observed to have an intact zona pellucida before and after washing. Only embryos from the same donor, or, in the case of some *in vitro* produced embryos, embryos originating from the same batch of ovaries from a *slaughterhouse/abattoir* (see Chapter 4.9.), should be washed together at the same time. After washing, but before micromanipulation, the zona pellucida of each embryo should be examined over its entire surface area at not less than 50X magnification and certified to be intact and free of adherent material.
- 5) If surrogate zonae are used, they should be from the same species and the oocytes or embryos from which they are obtained should be treated in the same manner as if they were *in vivo* derived or *in vitro* produced embryos intended for international movement.

Article 4.10.3.

Procedures for micromanipulation

The term "micromanipulated" covers several different procedures and a variety of specialised microsurgical instruments and other equipment may be used. However, from the standpoint of animal health, any cutting, penetrating or breaching of the integrity of the zona pellucida is an action that can alter the health status of an embryo. To maintain health status during and after micromanipulation, the following conditions should apply:

1. Media

Any product of animal origin, including co-culture cells and media constituents, used in the collection or production of oocytes, embryos or other cells, and in their micromanipulation, culture, washing and storage should be free from pathogenic agents (including transmissible spongiform encephalopathy agents, sometimes called prions). All media and solutions should be sterilised by approved methods in accordance with the Manual of the IETS and handled in such a manner as to ensure that sterility is maintained. Antibiotics should be added to all fluids and media as recommended in the Manual of the IETS.

2. Equipment

Equipment (e.g. microsurgical instruments which have direct contact with embryos) should either be of the single-use type (disposed of after each oocytes or embryos batch) or should be effectively sterilised between oocytes or embryos batch in accordance with recommendations in the Manual of the IETS.

3. Nuclei for transplantation ("nuclear transfer")

- a) Where it is intended to transplant nuclei derived from pre-hatching stage (i.e. zona pellucida intact) embryos, the parent embryos from which those nuclei are derived should fulfil the conditions of this chapter. Where nuclei derived from other types of donor cell (e.g. post-hatching stage embryos, embryonic, fetal and adult cells, including spermatozoa or spermatids for ICSI) are to be transplanted, the parent embryo, fetus or animal from which those donor cells originate, and the methods whereby they are derived, including cell culture, should comply with the relevant animal health standards recommended elsewhere in this *Terrestrial Code* and in the *Terrestrial Manual*.
- b) Where it is intended to transplant a nucleus into an intact oocyte (e.g. for ICSI), or into an enucleated oocyte (for nuclear transfer), those oocytes should be collected, cultured and manipulated in accordance with the recommendations in this chapter.

Article 4.10.4.

Optional tests and treatments

The *importing country* may request that tests be carried out on certain samples or that embryos be treated to ensure that specified pathogenic agents are absent.

1. Samples

Samples to be tested may include those referred to in Article 4.8.7. and in Article 4.9.5. Where cells other than from zona pellucida-intact embryos (e.g. somatic or sperm cells) are used as donors of nuclei for transplantation, then samples or cultures of those donor cells may also be tested.

2. Treatments

Treatments of embryos with the enzyme trypsin or other substances proven to inactivate or remove pathogenic agents may be requested when pathogenic agents that are not removed by washing may be present. If used, such treatments should also be applied prior to any micromanipulation, and in accordance with the Manual of the IETS.

Article 4.10.5.

Conditions applicable to storage, quarantine and transport

Micromanipulated embryos should be stored, quarantined and transported in accordance with the conditions laid down in Article 4.8.8. or in Article 4.9.7. as appropriate. Veterinary certification documents should identify all micromanipulations, where and when they were carried out.

NB: FIRST ADOPTED IN 1992; MOST RECENT UPDATE ADOPTED IN 2009.

CHAPTER 4.11.

COLLECTION AND PROCESSING OF LABORATORY RODENT AND RABBIT OOCYTES OR EMBRYOS

Article 4.11.1.

Microbial status of laboratory animal colonies

Colonies of the various species and genotypes of laboratory animals are usually kept within specialised premises and their microbial status depends largely on the system whereby the colony was formed and is maintained. In this chapter the microbial status of colonies is considered to be of three main types: "defined", "conventional" and "undefined". Colonies of defined status are those where, at least initially, the animals are totally free of pathogenic and non-pathogenic agents (i.e. gnotobiotic), although sometimes a cocktail of known, non-pathogenic agents has been given subsequently. In either case defined colonies are kept in highly controlled environments in barrier maintained rooms, with strict protocols in place to exclude all potential sources of unwanted microbiological contamination. Colonies of conventional status are those where the animals are kept in closed colonies but where known ("specific") pathogenic agents as well as non-pathogenic agents may exist. While management protocols for conventional colonies may be less rigid than those for defined colonies, they are designed to control potential sources of microbial contamination. Simple aseptic precautions (e.g. the autoclaving of food and bedding) are taken to ensure that the animals do not become infected with any unwanted microflora. Finally, laboratory animals may be kept in microbiologically undefined colonies which are unrestricted and may include free ranging animals. Details of these different types of colony can be found in the FELASA Report¹.

The health status of defined and conventional colonies should be confirmed at least quarterly by bacteriological, virological, parasitological, serological and other tests on pre-designated sentinel animals or other representative members of the colony. Older breeding males which have sired multiple litters are often selected for this purpose.

The purpose of official sanitary control of laboratory rodent and rabbit embryos intended for movement internationally is to ensure that specific pathogenic agents, which could be associated with such embryos, are controlled and transmission of *infection* to recipient animals, progeny and colonies, is avoided. Requirements for the management of donors and processing of embryos vary depending on the microbial status of the colony, i.e. whether it is defined (including gnotobiotic), conventional, or undefined.

Article 4.11.2.

Conditions applicable to the embryo collection team

The embryo collection team is a group of competent technicians including at least one experienced professional to perform the collection, processing and storage of oocytes or embryos.

The following conditions should apply:

- 1) The team should be supervised by a team professional.
- 2) The team professional is responsible for all team operations which include verification of colony and donor health status, sanitary handling and surgery of donors, *disinfection* and hygienic procedures. The team professional should be responsible to the institute *veterinarian*.
- 3) The institute *veterinarian* should be certified or accredited in laboratory animal care and should be specifically approved for the purpose of embryo collection for export. It is the responsibility of the institute *veterinarian* to ensure that required health profiling procedures appropriate for the colony status are implemented. He or she is responsible for certifying that the embryo handling procedures and laboratory facilities conform to the requirements laid down in this chapter.
- 4) Team personnel should be adequately trained in the techniques and principles of disease control and in the use of aseptic techniques in embryo handling. The zoonotic potential of specific pathogenic agents affecting the various laboratory animal species should be identified and understood so as to avoid contamination of colonies via human vectors, and vice versa.

- 5) High standards of hygiene should be practiced to preclude the introduction of *infection* to the donor animals, colonies, facilities, and equipment. Restrictions should be established to prevent free access of personnel into the embryo collection and handling facilities especially after such personnel have been exposed to other animal facilities.
- 6) The team should have adequate facilities and equipment for:
 - a) collecting embryos;
 - b) processing and treatment of embryos at a permanent or mobile laboratory;
 - c) storing embryos.
- 7) It is the responsibility of the institute *veterinarian* to ensure that complete animal and embryo records, including records of collection, processing and storage of embryos, are maintained. Record sheets of the type shown in the Manual of the International Embryo Technology Society (IETS) for livestock species should be used where applicable, and data such as genotypic identification of the donors, embryo quality grading, morphological stage and should be given. The embryo collection team should keep a record of its activities which should be maintained for inspection by the *Veterinary Authority* for at least two years after the embryos have been exported.
- 8) The embryo collection team, if involved in the export of embryos, should be approved by the *Competent Authority* and be subject to regular inspection by an *Official Veterinarian* to ensure compliance with procedures for the sanitary collection, processing and storage of embryos.

Article 4.11.3.

Conditions applicable to the processing laboratory

A processing laboratory used by the embryo collection team is a facility in which embryos are recovered from donors (or from their excised reproductive tracts), and from the collection media. Here also the embryos are examined and subjected to any required treatments such as washing, cryopreservation for storage and quarantine pending results of any diagnostic procedures. The processing laboratory may be part of a specifically designed collection and processing unit, or a suitably adapted part of an existing building. It may be on the premises where the donor animals are kept but in this case should be physically separated from animals.

Additionally:

- 1) The processing laboratory should be under the supervision of the institute *veterinarian* and be inspected by an *Official Veterinarian*.
- 2) While embryos for export are being handled prior to their storage in ampoules, vials or straws, no embryos of lesser health status should be processed.
- 3) The processing laboratory should be constructed with materials which permit its effective cleansing and *disinfection*. This should be done frequently, and always before and after each occasion on which embryos for export are processed.

Article 4.11.4.

Risk management

With regard to disease transmission, transfer of *in vivo* derived embryos is a very low risk method for moving the genetic material of laboratory animals. Irrespective of animal species, there are three phases in the embryo transfer process that determine the final level of risk:

- 1) The first phase comprises the risk potential for embryo contamination and depends on:
 - a) the disease situation in the *exporting country or zone*;
 - b) the microbial status of the colony (i.e. defined, conventional or undefined) and the donors from which the embryos are collected;
 - c) the characteristics of the specified pathogenic agents that are of concern to the *Veterinary Authority* of the *importing country*.
- 2) The second phase covers risk mitigation by use of internationally accepted procedures for processing of embryos which are set out in the Manual of the IETS. These include the following:
 - a) Depending on microbial status of the colony, the embryos should be washed up to ten times with at least 100-fold dilutions between each wash, with a fresh pipette being used for transferring the embryos through each wash.

- b) Only embryos from the same donor should be washed together, and no more than ten embryos should be washed at any one time.
 - c) Sometimes, for example when removal of certain viruses (e.g. herpesviruses) is required, the standard washing procedure should be modified to include additional washes with the enzyme trypsin, as described in the Manual of the IETS.
 - d) The zona pellucida of each embryo, after washing, should be examined over its entire surface area at not less than 50X magnification to ensure that it is intact and (apart from the mucin layer in the case of rabbit embryos) free of adherent material.
- 3) The third phase, which is applicable to diseases of concern to the *Veterinary Authority of the importing country*, encompasses risk mitigation resulting from:
- a) post-collection surveillance of the microbial status of the donor colony based on the recognised incubation periods of the diseases of concern to determine retrospectively the health status of the colony whilst the embryos are stored (in species where effective storage by cryopreservation is possible) in the *exporting country*;
 - b) post-mortem testing of the donors or other samples such as blood, embryo-collection (flushing) fluids and non-viable embryos, in a laboratory for presence of specified disease agents.

Article 4.11.5.

Conditions applicable to the embryo team or institute veterinarian

- 1) It is the responsibility of the institute *veterinarian* to ensure that required health testing procedures are implemented to demonstrate microbial status of the colony (i.e. defined, conventional or undefined). Colony microbial status should be reviewed by the institute *veterinarian* before shipment of the embryos.
- 2) The *veterinarian* is responsible for certifying that the embryo handling procedures and laboratory conditions were maintained in accordance with Articles 4.11.2. and 4.11.3.
- 3) The *veterinarian* is responsible for the risk management procedures outlined in Article 4.11.4.
- 4) The *veterinarian* should authorise all embryo shipments, ensuring that the correct embryo collection records and veterinary certification documents have been completed and are included in the shipments.

Article 4.11.6.

Conditions applicable to donors from animal colonies of different microbial status

It should be noted that the conditions applicable to donor animals vary in accordance with the microbial status of the colony from which they originate, i.e. defined, conventional or undefined.

Sentinel animals in each donor colony of defined and conventional status should be subjected to routine microbial screening, preferably monthly, but at least quarterly. Testing for specific pathogenic agents depends on the animal species and may be influenced by geographical location. Recommendations regarding specific pathogenic agents to be tested for in different laboratory animal species have been published elsewhere¹.

1. Defined microbial status

- a) Microbiologically defined colonies (Article 4.11.1.) represent the cleanest sources of gametes, and the embryos recovered from these animals can be regarded as pathogen free.
- b) Since the male and female donors are pathogen free, dissection of the female reproductive tract and embryo collection procedures should be performed under aseptic laboratory conditions, using a biological safety cabinet if appropriate.
- c) Embryo washed as described in point 2 of Article 4.11.4. is not necessary but it is recommended that embryos are washed two or three times. In each wash, embryos should be gently agitated in the medium.
- d) The embryos should be recorded as coming from a germfree or microbiologically defined, barrier maintained colony, thus indicating that special risk management procedures (Article 4.11.4.) for the removal of pathogenic agents are not necessary. The need to quarantine the embryo recipients is a matter for the importing institute.

2. Conventional conditions

- a) Colonies of conventional microbial status are usually closed and their health status is routinely monitored (Article 4.11.1.). The animals may have been exposed to various pathogenic agents, resulting in *infection*, with positive antibody titres or even active clinical disease, but the pathogenic agents of concern in each individual colony should be well known.
- b) Reproductive tracts (uteri, oviducts or ovaries) should be removed at a separate site and then taken into the embryo processing laboratory. These procedures should be performed by different technicians or, at the minimum, their protective clothing should be changed between locations. If animals should be handled in the laboratory, the tracts should be dissected out within a biological safety cabinet. This will help protect against the possible shedding of pathogenic agents into the laboratory itself.
- c) Once the reproductive tracts have been removed, embryo recovery should be performed under aseptic conditions. Depending on which, if any, pathogenic agents are known to occur in the colony, embryos should be processed in accordance with the risk management procedures, including washing, as described in Article 4.11.4., and in the Manual of the IETS.
- d) Embryos derived from animals that have positive antibody titres or other evidence of specific pathogenic agents should only be transferred into a new colony via a quarantine system, using microbiologically defined recipient females. Quarantine may also be appropriate if there is any uncertainty about the microbial status of the donor colony or the donors. In situations where the embryos could have been exposed to bacterial *infection*, they should be cultured in a medium containing appropriate antibiotic for 24 hours before cryopreservation, or in the interval between thawing and transfer into recipients.
- e) If the recipient institution does decide to quarantine the recipient dam and offspring until their health status is confirmed, the recipients should be tested post-weaning for pathogenic agents of concern, and introduction of offspring into the colony should only take place if the test results are satisfactory.

3. Undefined microbial conditions

- a) Embryos from free ranging animals or from colonies of unknown health status require the full range of risk management procedures that are described in Article 4.11.4. and in the Manual of the IETS. The procedures resemble those used for embryos of livestock as recommended in Chapters 4.8. and 4.9. of this *Terrestrial Code*. Ideally, the breeder males and donor females should be separated from other animals and tested 15 days before and on the day of breeding (for males) or at embryo collection (for females). Alternatively, the animals could be incorporated into a conventional colony, where, over time, a health history can be documented to reduce the strict monitoring and embryo handling requirements.
- b) Biological safety cabinet should be used for handling donors and reproductive tissues, and for processing embryos.
- c) Post-mortem testing of the donor females for diseases or pathogenic agents of concern to the *importing country* may be appropriate after the oocytes or embryos have been collected. Alternatively if embryos are collected surgically an aliquot of flush fluid from each donor, or a pooled sample, should be tested for the presence of specific pathogenic agents of concern.
- d) Embryos should be washed at least ten times in accordance with the protocols in the Manual of the IETS and trypsin treatment should be used if presence of certain pathogenic herpesviruses is of concern.
- e) Cryopreserved embryos should be stored in the exporting laboratory until such time as the necessary disease screening of colonies, tissues or fluids is completed and the supporting documents for certification completed and signed by the institute *veterinarian*.
- f) On arrival in the *importing country* the embryos should be transferred into recipients in a quarantine system. Recipients should be tested at intervals appropriate to recognised incubation periods of the diseases of concern. In addition to testing recipients after transfer, the offspring should be tested at 12 weeks of age and before their introduction into breeding colonies outside the quarantine facility

Article 4.11.7.

Conditions applicable to the storage and transport of embryos

- 1) Embryos for export should be frozen in fresh liquid nitrogen and then stored in fresh liquid nitrogen in cleaned and disinfected tanks or containers.
- 2) The embryos should be stored in sealed sterile ampoules, vials or straws under strict hygienic conditions at a storage place approved by the *Veterinary Authority* of the *exporting country*. Only embryos from the same donor should be stored together in the same ampoule, vial or straw.

- 3) Ampoules, vials or straws should be sealed at the time of freezing (or prior to export where cryopreservation is not possible) and they should be clearly identified in accordance with or similar to the system recommended in the Manual of the IETS. Identification should include details of the species or genotype of the donors, microbial status (e.g. defined, conventional or undefined), collection or cryopreservation date, number and developmental stage of the embryos, container number and details of any specialised procedure such as *in vitro* fertilisation, micromanipulation.
- 4) Liquid nitrogen storage containers should be sealed under the supervision of the *Official Veterinarian* prior to shipment from the *exporting country*.
- 5) Embryos should not be exported until the appropriate veterinary certificates are completed.

Article 4.11.8.

Procedures for *in vitro* fertilisation and micromanipulation

If embryos are to be produced by *in vitro* fertilisation of oocytes, it is advised that the washed sperm should be used so as to minimise the risk of possible exposure to pathogenic agents. If embryos are to undergo micromanipulation procedures that involve penetration of the zona pellucida, any required risk management steps (including washing) should be carried out first, as described in Chapter 4.10.

NB: FIRST ADOPTED IN 1998; MOST RECENT UPDATE ADOPTED IN 2010.

1

Recommendations for the health monitoring of mouse, rat, hamster, guineapig and rabbit breeding colonies.- Report of the Federation of European Laboratory Animal Science Associations (FELASA), Working Group on Animal Health accepted by the FELASA Board of Management, November 1992.

CHAPTER 4.12.

SOMATIC CELL NUCLEAR TRANSFER IN PRODUCTION LIVESTOCK AND HORSES

Article 4.12.1.

Preface

Following the first meeting of the OIE *ad hoc* Group on Biotechnology held from 3 to 5 April 2006, the WOAH Biological Standards Commission suggested restricting the mandate "to develop recommendations on the animal health *risks* arising from somatic cell nuclear transfer (SCNT) cloning of production animals, including criteria for assessing the health of embryos and animals derived from such cloning." The following articles are a starting point for identifying, characterising and providing a basis for discussion on the animal health *risks* associated with SCNT cloning technology.

Article 4.12.2.

Overview

At the first meeting of the *ad hoc* Group on Biotechnology, it was recommended that the Subgroup on Reproductive Animal Biotechnologies should draft recommendations on *risk analysis*, based on the life-cycle approach, for biotechnology-derived animals. The definition of "Reproductive Animal Biotechnology" was proposed as "the generation of animals through the use of assisted reproductive technologies, which range from artificial insemination through to technologies involving a significant in-vitro component, such as *in vitro* fertilisation, embryo transfer, embryo splitting and including asexual reproduction such as nuclear transfer". The following recommendations are restricted to SCNT and are based on a *risk analysis* approach to biotechnology-derived animals categorised in accordance with the life-cycle approach consisting of: i) embryos, ii) recipients, iii) offspring, and iv) progeny of animal clones.

Article 4.12.3.

Scope

These recommendations address animal health aspects of production animals derived from some reproductive biotechnologies.

Recognising the mandate of WOAH and the suggestion of the WOAH Biological Standards Commission, it is the recommendation of the *ad hoc* Group on Biotechnology to identify *risk analysis* parameters for animal health and their implication for environmental safety and food and *feed* safety. These recommendations will focus initially on the scientific basis for the *risk assessment* aspects, prevention measures and guidance for production livestock and horses derived from SCNT cloning. This is without prejudice to the addition of any relevant issue at a later stage. At present, these recommendations include the following:

- identification of animal health *risks* and recommendations for management of those *risks* in embryos, recipients, animal clones and progeny of clones;
- *risk* and prevention measures related with SCNT cloning technology;
- some *welfare* issues related to animal health.

Recognising further that the following issues have been discussed or may be addressed by other bodies or instruments, or that they may be addressed at a later stage by WOAH, the document does not address:

- safety and nutritional aspects of food derived from assisted reproductive technologies, for example transgenics (addressed by Codex);
- *risks* related to the environmental release of animal clones;
- *risks* related to transgenic animals that have not involved SCNT or other cloning technology;

- non-reproductive animal biotechnologies;
- risks related to animals produced for xenotransplantation or organ donors;
- technologies related to stem cells;
- risks related to aquatic animal health, including fish clones;
- risks related to other terrestrial animals, such as wild mammals and non-mammals, including avian species and insects.

Article 4.12.4.

Background: risk analysis – general principles

- 1) *Risk analysis* in general includes *hazard identification*, *risk assessment*, *risk management* and *risk communication*. The *risk assessment* is the component of the analysis that estimates the *risks* associated with a *hazard* (see Chapter 2.1.). These principles are routinely used by regulators in making decisions about experimental or commercial releases. These analyses can then be used to determine whether the outcomes require management or regulation. *Risk management* is the process by which *risk managers* evaluate alternative actions or policies in response to the results of the *risk assessment* taking into consideration the various social, economic, and legal considerations that form the environment in which such activities occur.
- 2) For animal diseases, particularly those listed in the *Terrestrial Code*, there is broad agreement concerning the likely *risks* and *risk assessments* can be qualitative or quantitative (see Chapter 2.1.). In disease scenarios it is more likely that a *qualitative risk assessment*, in which the outputs on the likelihood of the outcome or the magnitude of the consequences are expressed in qualitative terms such as “high”, “medium”, “low” or “negligible”, is all that is required. *Qualitative assessments* do not require mathematical modelling to carry out routine decision-making. *Quantitative risk assessments* assign magnitudes to the *risks* in numerical terms (e.g. 1/1,000,000).
- 3) In the context of animal cloning, two broad categories of *risk assessments* are considered: absolute *risk assessment* and comparative *risk assessments*. Absolute *risk assessments* characterise *risk* independent of a comparator (e.g. the likelihood of an animal transmitting a specific livestock disease). A comparative *risk assessment* (or relative *risk assessment*) puts the *risk* in the context of a comparator. For example the degree to which an animal produced by one reproductive technology can transmit a particular disease to another animal of the same species compared with the degree to which a similar animal produced by another reproductive technology transmits the same disease to another animal of same species.
- 4) Regardless of the methodology used, *hazard identification* is an early step in all science-based *risk assessments*. In the context of assessing the *risks* associated with animal cloning (SCNT) and starting with the embryo and moving on through animal clone development and subsequent progeny, it is important to be clear at this juncture that only a comparative *risk assessment* can be completed. A systematic, absolute, *quantitative risk assessment* of potential *risks* is difficult, due to the relative newness of the technology, and the variability in outcomes among laboratories and species cloned. Furthermore, with the technology of SCNT there is no introduced *hazard* from the insertion of novel genes (which may potentially happen in transgenesis). Thus, to analyse what factors contribute to animal health *risks*, the existing baseline must be analysed.
- 5) In short, the specific points where the *risk assessment* needs to be focused need to be identified. As illustrated in the accompanying diagram – the focus is to look at the basics of creating an embryo – using current terminology, starting from the selection of donor of oocyte and the cells to the creation of an embryo by the cloning methodology. The second phase will focus on the recipient of the embryo clone and the animal health and care considerations for the animals. The actual embryo clone that is born as an offspring is the third part of the paradigm that needs clear recommendations for assessment, and the next generation, either the progeny of the animal clone (which is a result of normal sexual reproduction) or animals produced by recloning (clones of clones) is the fourth and final stage.

Article 4.12.5.

Managing animal health risks associated with embryos

Embryo production by *in vitro* techniques has been applied for many years. Although the additional steps involved in cloning add a new dimension to this procedure, many of the *risks* associated with SCNT have previously been identified

for established animal reproductive biotechnologies (see Chapter 4.9.). An analysis of SCNT methodology allows the procedural details to be categorised into:

- 1) Oocytes (obtained from the slaughterhouse/abattoir, recovered from trans-vaginal ultrasound-guided procedures or by laparotomy procedures)

Ovaries which are collected at an *slaughterhouse/abattoir* should be collected, transported and processed in accordance with the recommendations laid down in Chapter 4.9.

The primary *risks* are associated with the health status of the animal from which the ovaries are harvested and the quality of the oocytes.

- 2) Donor cells (cells obtained from animals chosen to be cloned – by biopsy, harvesting at slaughter or after death)

Currently there are no specific new *risks* identified with SCNT cloning. There is a proposed *risk* related to activation of endogenous retroviruses during cell transfer procedures, however, this may be more theoretical than practical. In some current experimental procedures, the donor cell may be treated with chemicals to modify its composition, for example cell cycle inhibitors or chromatin modifiers.

- 3) *In vitro* culture of reconstructed embryos (procedure used to fuse the donor and recipient material and to culture the reconstructed embryo)
- 4) *Risks* associated with the method of fusing donor cells with enucleated recipient oocytes and with culture conditions.

In addition, the practitioner should ensure that the clone pregnancy is compatible to the surrogate dam's breed, anatomy and physiology.

1. Oocytes

The laboratory or the producer should establish a detailed record of ovaries – their origin, health of the animal from which the ovaries are obtained, details of any systemic lesion on the animal and proper *herd* or *flock* data. This is particularly useful where the pooling of ovaries may provide cross-contamination of ovarian tissue.

Follicular fluids may carry various infectious agents like bovine viral diarrhoea virus (BVDV) and can contaminate pooled follicular fluid from healthy animals. Furthermore, the technique for collecting oocytes, such as aspiration or slicing of the ovarian follicles, determines the extent of blood contamination or extraneous material. A representative sample to demonstrate the absence of infectious biological material should be done with each pooled batch.

Oocytes are matured as cumulus oocyte complexes (COCs) and then matured in most instances in the culture or maturation media. Care and efforts should be taken to carefully select and mature the oocytes from the pools that are morphologically good; also the media used should have been quality tested. Use of serum or protein components from an undefined or untested source should be avoided. Addition of proper and safe antibiotics in the culture media to control opportunistic bacteria should be encouraged.

Use of proper sanitary and *disinfection* procedures is of utmost importance and should be emphasised in any *in vitro* fertilisation (IVF) laboratory. Proper handling and following sanitary protocols during the maturation and further culture of embryos should be encouraged.

2. Donor cells

In order to minimise *risks*:

- Donor cells should be properly harvested from the animal and cultured under proper sanitary conditions using good laboratory practices.
- When applicable, the passaging of the cells used for the cloning procedure should be documented and at different stage sampling may be warranted to look at the chromosomal component of the cell lines. If possible, procedures should be in place for regular sampling of the cells for morphological and other characteristics.
- Master cell lines (to be used for cloning at a later stage) should be stored under conditions found to be optimal for maintaining viability. Freedom from extraneous agents should be established by testing for bacteria, fungi, mycoplasmas or viruses, using appropriate tests (see Manual of the International Embryo Technology Society [IETS]).

3. Cloning procedures or reconstruction

The cloning procedure that employs the use of chemicals or other reagents should be carefully evaluated, in terms of the quality of embryos and overall efficiency.

During the fusion of recipient and donor material by chemical or physical means care and control should be employed. The optimisation of the procedure based on the laboratory protocols or published reports should be determined to avoid early embryonic mortalities.

If co-culture of the cell is used for the culture procedure after reconstruction of embryos, proper screening of the co-culture cells should be done. A sample of each batch may be tested for the bacterial, fungal, mycoplasmal or viral component.

Embryos should be cultured and harvested for an appropriate time and stage to transfer them or to cryo-preserve them for later use. Proper procedures based on the international standards (IETS Codes of Practice) for washing and preservation of the embryos should be followed.

Care should be taken with regard to grading the embryos before transfer (see Chapters 4.8. and 4.9.).

Article 4.12.6.

Managing animal health risks related to the recipients (surrogate dams)

1. Animal health risks to the surrogate dams

Currently, when compared with *in vitro* produced embryos, SCNT has a higher rate of pregnancy failure and, in some species, placental abnormalities. Loss due to defects in the embryo or failure to implant in the uterus of the surrogate dam does not pose a *hazard* to the dam. Rather, the surrogate dam simply resorbs any embryonic tissue and returns to cycling. Mid- and late-term spontaneous abortions may be hazardous to surrogates if they are unable to expel the fetus and its associated membranes. Most abortions in natural service and artificial insemination (AI) pregnancies in cattle remain undiagnosed due to the expense of laboratory work and the low profit margin in both the beef and dairy industry. Producers and veterinarians become concerned when the rate of abortion exceeds 3–5% in a *herd* or *flock*. The same potential impact of external influences should be considered with pregnancy evaluation with SCNT and other reproductive technologies. Disease, under-nutrition, and severe environmental conditions are stressors known to interfere with animal fertility and embryo survival. Under these circumstances, the *risk* to the pregnancy is directly related to stress factors and not to the technology used.

To date, a species-specific effect has been seen. Abnormalities in clones may result from incomplete reprogramming of the donor nucleus. Epigenetic reprogramming occurs at different times in embryos in different species. Many of the abnormalities reported in cattle and sheep pregnancies have not been noted in goats or swine carrying SCNT clones. The amount of *in vitro* manipulation of an embryo inversely correlates to the chances for successful pregnancy outcomes. This has been observed in both SCNT embryos and *in vitro* produced fertilised embryos. Unlike other forms of other reproductive technologies SCNT pregnancy losses occur at all stages of gestation in cattle. Clone pregnancies have been lost during the second and third trimesters and have been accompanied by reports of hydrops, enlarged umbilicus, and abnormal placentation.

2. Animal health risks posed by the surrogate dam to the clone embryos

No new animal health *risks* have been identified for the developing clone fetus from the surrogate dam compared with conventional pregnancies. The latter include vertically transmitted diseases and abnormalities due to metabolic or physiological stress.

With respect to the animal health *risks* associated with the surrogate dam, it is difficult to document the relative frequency of early stage losses of SCNT embryos compared with early stage losses of other pregnancies as these abortions are not typically diagnosed with other reproductive technologies. Additionally, external stressors will similarly impact SCNT pregnancies.

Veterinarians should monitor the progress of pregnancy as the common gestational anomalies seen in other assisted reproductive technologies may be exhibited and diagnosed during the physical examination. A database of commonly encountered problems in clone pregnancies would be useful if available to animal health experts.

- Care should be taken to assess the general health of the recipient dam before selection to carry the embryo clones. The general health status of the recipient should be determined in terms of freedom from *infection* and disease, proper *vaccination* and follow-up, and, if applicable, proof of earlier uneventful pregnancies, absence of birthing problems, and proper post-pregnancy recovery.
- Pregnancy loss is greatest with SCNT embryos prior to 60 days' gestation in cattle. This is similar to the pattern seen with other reproductive technologies. However, in clones, high pregnancy losses during this time of placental formation (between 45–60 days) suggest that embryonic death may be a consequence of faulty placentation. Abnormal placentation may lead to a build-up of wastes in the fetus and associated membranes,

or inadequate transfer of nutrients and oxygen from the dam to the fetus. Care should be taken to monitor the recipient dam during pregnancy. Once the pregnancy is established and confirmed, regular veterinary assessments and monitoring of animal health status is desirable up to the birth of the offspring.

- To ensure that the recipient is pregnant and to monitor its health during the first trimester, it is useful to perform ultrasonographic assessments, determine hormonal profiles and assess the general physiological parameters. Based on these profiles, proper attention should be paid to aid in the proper establishment of pregnancy by providing proper husbandry conditions and nutrition.
- The animals should be observed carefully for the signs of labour nearing the time of birth. In some species, one of the more common problems is uterine inertia and the absence of contractions. The absence of contractions may result in prolonged pregnancies with associated sequelae that may require assistance with deliveries.
- A surgical intervention should be decided and should be available for the near term animal if the situation so warrants. Proper procedures should be employed to ascertain the proper handling of the offspring and the surrogate dam.
- Health concerns may arise as a result of surgical procedures, excessive traction, or other complications such as retained fetal membranes. In these cases post-partum care may be necessary.

3. Managing animal health risks of animal clones

The health problems of individual clones can be observed *in utero* and *post-partum*. These appear to be the same as observed in other assisted reproductive technologies, but they may be more common in clones. It is important to determine whether the abnormalities are of genetic or epigenetic origin. Large offspring syndrome (LOS), probably in relation to placental abnormalities rather than fetal abnormalities, have been particularly observed in cloned sheep and cattle following suboptimal *in vitro* handling. These abnormalities are becoming less frequent in small ruminants.

- Appropriate husbandry practices are important to the health of animal clones. Care should be taken to provide colostrums and a clean and hygienic environment, supervision for the first few weeks after birth should be practiced.
- The animal clones must be checked routinely for the most common phenotypic anomalies, such as atresia anii, umbilical hernia, flexor muscle contractions, respiratory or cardiac insufficiency, and failure to suckle. This will allow proper treatment and care of the newborn and increase the survival of the young one.
- To consolidate current understanding of the health status of animal clones, a comprehensive veterinary examination should be performed to monitor the progress of the clone, as unexplained fatalities or fatalities arising from systemic complications have been reported. It is encouraged to follow the health profile of the animals to at least the reproductive maturity stage, and to record the ability to reproduce (fertility index).
- *Animal welfare* concerns ranging from LOS to serious abnormalities are notable in the debates pertaining to cloning technology. Proper research and peer-reviewed data should be generated. The animal clones should undergo species-specific basic *welfare* assessments. If *welfare* concerns are detected at initial screening, a more extensive characterisation of that phenotype should be performed to document the *animal welfare* concerns.
- Proper monitoring of the animal population during different stages of life from birth to puberty should be documented to address and validate the genomic potential of the animal clones.

4. Managing animal health risks related to sexually reproduced progeny of clones

Presently there is no evidence of an increased health *risk* if sexual reproduction is used for obtaining progeny. Some data indicate that the reprogramming errors during the cloning process may actually be corrected during the natural mating and reproduction process:

- a) Characterisation of the health profile, including health status and data on *animal welfare*, would consolidate the knowledge of sexually reproduced progeny.
- b) Monitoring the reproductive performance of sexually reproduced progeny of clones would be useful to assess their reproductive capacity in comparison with their conventional counterparts.

5. Managing animal health risks associated with re-cloning or clones of clones

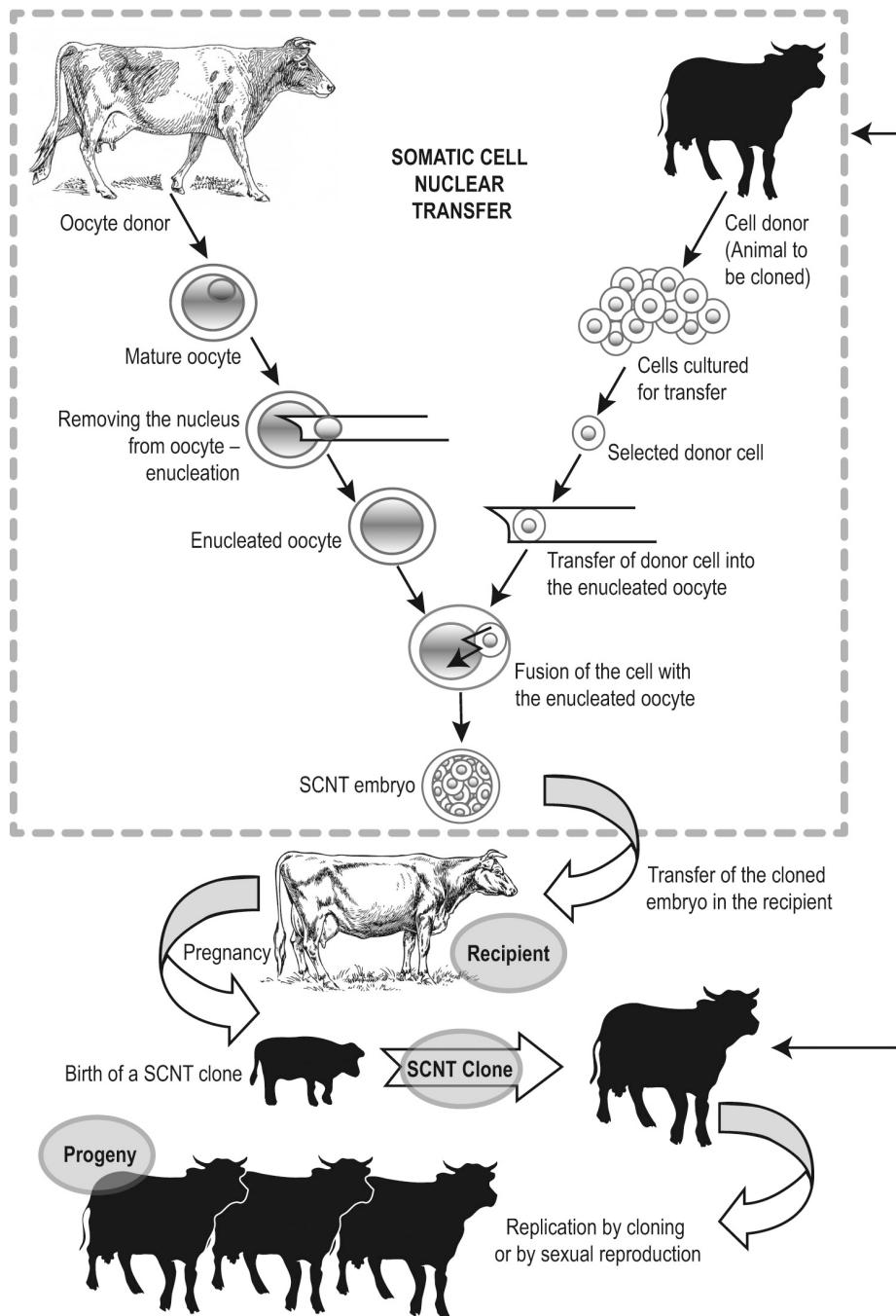
Information on recloning is only beginning to appear. It is therefore necessary to follow the approach below:

- a) The health profile (health status and data on *animal welfare*) should be characterised to consolidate the knowledge.
- b) The reproductive performance of clones of clones should be monitored to assess the capacity of the animals to perform in comparison with their conventional counterparts.

Article 4.12.7.

Review

The goal of this chapter is to provide a scientific basis and recommendations on animal health and *welfare risks* to animals involved in SCNT cloning compared with other assisted reproductive technologies. These recommendations will focus initially on the scientific basis for the *risk assessment* aspects, prevention measures and guidance for production livestock and horses, derived from SCNT cloning and should be reviewed in light of new scientific information.



NB: FIRST ADOPTED IN 2008; MOST RECENT UPDATE ADOPTED IN 2023.

CHAPTER 4.13.

DISPOSAL OF DEAD ANIMALS

Article 4.13.1.

Introduction

The mass disposal of dead *animals* associated with an animal disease *outbreak* is often subject to intense public and media scrutiny thereby obligating the *Veterinary Authority* of a Member Country to not only conduct disposal operations within acceptable scientific principles to destroy the pathogenic agent but also to address public and environmental concerns.

The recommendations in this chapter are general in nature. The choice of one or more of the recommended methods should be in compliance with relevant local and national legislation and be attainable with the resources available. The recommendations should also be applied in conjunction with the procedures described for the *killing* of *animals* in Chapter 7.6.

Strategies for the disposal of dead *animals* (entire *animals* or parts thereof) should be prepared well in advance of any emergency. Major issues related to the disposal of dead *animals* include the number of *animals* involved, *biosecurity* concerns over the movement of infected or exposed *animals*, people and equipment, environmental concerns, and the psychological distress experienced by farmers and *animal handlers*.

Article 4.13.2.

Regulations and jurisdiction

The legislation regulating animal health and the organisation of the *Veterinary Authority* should give the *Veterinary Services* the authority and the legal powers to carry out the activities necessary for the efficient and effective disposal of dead *animals*. Cooperation between the *Veterinary Service* and other relevant government bodies is necessary to developing a coherent set of legal measures for the disposal of dead *animals* in advance of any emergency. In this context the following aspects should be regulated:

- 1) Powers of *Veterinary Services* (inspectors, veterinary officers, etc.) to effect controls and direct persons as well as the right of entry to an *establishment* for the *Veterinary Services* and associated personnel;
- 2) movement controls and the authority to make exemptions under certain *biosecurity* conditions, for example for transport of dead *animals* to another location for disposal;
- 3) the obligation on the involved farmer and *animal handlers* to cooperate with the *Veterinary Services*;
- 4) any need to transfer the ownership of *animals* to the *Competent Authority*;
- 5) the determining of the method and location of disposal, and the necessary equipment and facilities, by the *Veterinary Services*, in consultation with other involved authorities including national and local governmental organisations competent for the protection of human health and of the environment.

Should the chosen option for the disposal of dead *animals* be applied near the border of a neighbouring country, the relevant *Competent Authority* of that country should be consulted.

Article 4.13.3.

Preparedness

The mass *killing* and disposal of *animals* in the event of a disease *outbreak* or disposal of *animals* in the event of natural disasters such as floods, usually should proceed with the minimum delay. The success is determined by the structures, policies and infrastructure established in advance:

1. Relationship with industry

A relationship with industry organisations, such as farmer associations, commodity representatives, *animal welfare* organisations, security services, media and consumer representatives is essential to obtain compliance with animal health policies.

2. Standard operating procedures

Standard operating procedures should be developed (including documented decision-making processes, training of staff).

3. Financial preparedness

Financial preparedness means a compensation or insurance mechanism, an access to emergency funding and an access to personnel through agreements with private *veterinarians*.

4. Communication plan

Information sharing with officials involved in the *outbreak*, affected farmers, professional organisations, politicians and the media is essential. A well informed spokesperson should be available at all times to answer enquiries.

5. Resources

The management of resources should address such items as personnel, transport, storage facilities, equipment (such as mobile handling facilities for *animals*, *disinfection* equipment), fuel, protective and disposable material and logistical support.

6. Special equipment

Special equipment such as trucks, tractors, bulldozers, and front-end loaders should be available.

Article 4.13.4.

Critical elements

Critical elements which need to be considered in planning and implementation include:

1. Timeliness

Early detection of new *infections*, immediate *killing* of infected *animals* and rapid removal of the dead *animals* with inactivation of the pathogenic agent are important. Spread of the pathogenic agent from the dead *animals* and their surroundings should be blocked as soon and as effectively as possible.

2. Occupational health and safety

Disposal should be organised in such a way that the workers are safeguarded against the risks of handling decomposing dead *animals*. Special attention should be given to zoonotic aspects. Workers should receive appropriate training and be sufficiently protected against *infection* with protective clothing, gloves, face masks, effective respirators, goggles, *vaccination*, and effective anti-viral medicines. Workers should also receive regular health checks.

3. Pathogen inactivation

The disposal procedure should be selected to result in inactivation of the pathogenic agent.

4. Environmental concerns

Different methods of the disposal of dead *animals* have different effects on the environment. For instance, pyre burning will produce smoke and smells; burial might lead to gas and leachate production resulting in potential contamination of air, soil, surface and sub-surface water.

5. Availability of capacity

An assessment of capacities of different methods of disposal should be made prior to any emergency. Temporary storage of dead *animals* in cold stores may relieve a lack of processing capacity.

6. Adequate funding

Adequacy of funding for the options chosen should be ascertained and committed at the earliest possible stage.

7. Staff resources

Availability of sufficient and well trained staff resources in particular for extended and/or large operations should be ensured. This is particularly important for technical and inspection personnel who are usually in short supply.

8. Societal acceptance

Societal acceptance is an important point in choosing a disposal method.

9. Acceptance by farmers

Farmers will be sensitive to the safety measures taken to prevent spread of the disease by disposal method selected and the transport of the dead *animals* to the disposal site. Adequate compensation of owners for the loss of *animals* or for burial or burning sites will improve acceptability.

10. Equipment

Equipment used in the disposal of dead *animals* can transfer *infection* to other premises. The cleaning and *disinfection* of the outside surfaces of equipment such as cranes, *containers* and trucks, and the departure of *vehicles* from the farm should receive special attention. Trucks transporting dead *animals* should be leak proof.

11. Scavengers and vectors

When disposing of dead *animals*, full attention should be given to preventing scavengers and *vectors* gaining access to dead *animals*, which might cause spread of the pathogenic agent.

12. Economic impact (short and long term including recovery)

The method of disposal used has a significant bearing on economic impact.

Article 4.13.5.

Practical considerations

1. Selection of disposal site

Sufficient top soil to cover the site; soil type; water drainage; prevailing wind conditions; easy access to transport; availability of meteorological data; separation from sensitive public sites, and the effect on future use.

2. Contractors

Contractors – availability of manpower, materials and equipment including transport *vehicles*; can they supply in all the needs; exclusive use of *vehicles* or would they also be used for other purposes (risk of disease transmission); access to available roads; suitable for the purpose to be used.

3. Logistical preparedness for the appropriate technology

Availability of fuel; sufficient manual labour available; sites and availability of *disinfection* tents for personnel; storage and disposal of protective clothing; housing for personnel to minimise the spread of *infection*; facilities for entry and exit control; availability of electricity for night operations; personal facilities for personnel such as toilets, drinking water; availability of communication – mobile phone reception; protection (e.g. *vaccination*) of personnel; rendering capacity at rendering plants; arms and ammunition, additional cold storage and holding facilities at rendering plants and *slaughterhouses/abattoirs*.

4. Procedures and policies for disposal of other possibly contaminated products

Animal products such as litter, manure, wool, eggs and milk; animal *feed*; non-animal products such as protective clothing.

5. Wildlife

Need to minimise the risks posed by *wildlife*, including by excluding or repelling them from the disposal site.

Article 4.13.6.

Recommended methods for the disposal of dead animals

The methods chosen should be based on local conditions and the required capacity and speed of outcome and on the conditions required for the inactivation of the pathogenic agent.

Some of the methods below may require on-farm pre-processing prior to transportation of dead *animals* to central facilities for rendering or incineration. Pre-processing could include the grinding of dead *animals* which can then be transported in sealed *containers*, or be subjected to fermentation, composting or freezing.

1. Rendering

This is a closed system for mechanical and thermal treatment of animal tissues leading to stable, sterilised products, e.g. animal fat and dried animal protein. The technology exists in dedicated facilities. It produces an effective inactivation of all pathogenic agents with the exception of prions where infectivity is reduced. The availability of the capacity should be determined in advance.

2. Incineration in a dedicated facility

In such a facility, whole dead *animals* or parts of *animals* can be completely burned and reduced to ash, often in conjunction with other substances (such as municipal waste, hazardous waste or hospital waste). Effective inactivation of pathogenic agents, including spores, occurs. Fixed facility incineration is wholly contained and has some advantages from the environmental viewpoint as the exhausts may be fitted with afterburner chambers to completely burn hydrocarbon gases and particulate matter from the main combustion chamber.

3. Rendering and incineration

These may be combined for improved security and to provide additional fuel for furnaces in facilities used for other purposes such as in cement kilns and electricity generation plants.

4. Air curtain incineration

This process fan-forces a mass of air through a manifold, thereby creating a turbulent environment in which incineration is accelerated up to six times for example in a burn-pit. The equipment can be mobile and, because it can be used on site, there is no requirement for transportation of the animal material. It also produces effective inactivation of pathogenic agents.

5. Pyre burning

This open system of burning dead *animals* is a well-established procedure that can be conducted on site with no requirement for transportation of animal material. However, it takes an extended period of time and has no way of verifying inactivation of pathogenic agents, and there may be particulate dissemination from incomplete combustion. Further, because the process is open to view, there may be a lack of acceptance by the public.

6. Composting

Composting is a natural biological decomposition process that takes place in the presence of oxygen. In the first phase, the temperature of the compost pile increases, organic materials break down into relatively small compounds, soft tissue decomposes, and bones soften partially. In the second phase, the remaining materials, mainly bones, break down fully to a dark brown or black humus containing primarily non-pathogenic bacteria and plant nutrients. However, some viruses and spore forming bacteria, such as *Bacillus anthracis*, and other pathogenic agents such as *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* may survive.

7. Burial

In this method, whole dead *animals* are buried and covered by soil. Burial is an established procedure which may be conducted on site. It may not inactivate all pathogenic agents. In some circumstances, dead *animals* may be disposed of by mounding whereby they are covered by a layer of soil above ground.

8. Biogas production

This is a closed system of anaerobic fermentation which would require for the disposal of dead *animals* or their parts prior mechanical and thermal treatment of the input material (such as the liquid product of rendering plants). This process may not inactivate all pathogenic agents.

9. Alkaline hydrolysis

This method uses sodium hydroxide or potassium hydroxide to catalyse the hydrolysis of biological material into a sterile aqueous solution consisting of small peptides, amino acids, sugars, and soaps. Heat is applied (150°C) to accelerate the process. The only solid by-products are the mineral constituents of bones and teeth. This residue (2% of the original weight of the animal) is sterile and easily crushed into a powder. The temperature and alkali conditions of the process destroy the protein coats of viruses and the peptide bonds of prions. Both lipids and nucleic acids are degraded. The process is carried out in an insulated steam-jacketed, stainless steel pressure vessel.

10. Bio-refining

Bio-refining is a process of high pressure, high temperature, thermal hydrolysis conducted in a sealed pressurised chamber. The waste material is treated with high-pressure saturated steam at 180°C under a minimum of 10 bar pressure and continuous disruption by mechanical stirring for a period of 40 minutes. The whole procedure, from the loading of the chamber until the discharge from the chamber, occupies approximately 120 minutes. All microbiological agents are inactivated and the infectivity of the infectious agents causing transmissible spongiform encephalopathies is destroyed.

11. Dead animal disposal at sea

International Conventions define the conditions to be met for the disposal of dead *animals* at sea.

Article 4.13.7.

Recommendations for decision-making for the disposal of dead animals

The disposal of large numbers of dead *animals* will be expensive. As well, fixed and variable costs will vary with the choice of the disposal method. Each method used will result in indirect costs on the environment, local economies, producers, and the livestock industry. In addition to *biosecurity* considerations, decision makers need to understand the economic, social, environmental protection and aesthetic impact of various disposal technologies.

A disposal option hierarchy may be incapable of fully capturing and systematizing the relevant dimensions at stake, and decision makers may be forced to consider the least preferred means. It therefore requires a comprehensive understanding of any array of dead animal disposal technologies and should reflect a balance between the scientific, economic, and social issues at stake. Timely *slaughter*, maintenance of security and prevention of further spread of disease, are the essential considerations in terms of disease control.

The following is an example of a possible process for aiding decision-making by comparing the suitability of various disposal options against factors that are considered important for the specific disposal event in question:

- 1) Step 1 – Define the factors to be considered. Include all relevant factors and allow enough flexibility to permit modifications for different situations and locations. Examples of possible factors include operator safety, community concerns, international acceptance, transport availability, industry standards, cost effectiveness and speed of resolution. These factors can be modified or changed, as is shown in the following example, to best fit the situation of event involved.
- 2) Step 2 – Assess the relative importance of the factors by weighting each on their considered importance to addressing the event in question. The sum of all the weightings, regardless of the number of factors, should total 100.
- 3) Step 3 – Identify and list all disposal options under consideration. Rate each disposal option against each factor and assign a Utility Rating of between 1 to 10 to each comparison. The Utility Rating (U) is a number between 1 and 10 which is allocated in accordance with how well the option achieves the ideal with respect to each factor (e.g. 1 = the worst possible fit, and 10 = the best fit).
- 4) Step 4 – For each factor and each disposal option, multiply the Factor Weight (F) x Utility Rating (U) to yield a numeric Balanced Value (V), (e.g. V = F x U).
- 5) Step 5 – By adding the Balanced Values to a sum for each disposal option, it is possible to compare the suitability of disposal options by numerically ranking the sums of the Balanced Values for each disposal option. The largest sum would suggest that disposal option is the best balanced choice.

An example of the use of this process follows in Table 1. In this example, rendering achieved the highest sum and would be considered as the best balanced choice and the most suitable disposal option for the factors considered.

Table 1. Decision Making Process

Method		Rendering		Fixed Incineration		Pyre Burning		Composting		Mass Burial		On-Farm Burial		Commercial Landfill	
	Weight	Utility	Value	Utility	Value	Utility	Value	Utility	Value	Utility	Value	Utility	Value	Utility	Value
Factors															
Operator Safety	20	7	140	4	80	8	160	3	60	7	140	8			
Speed of Resolution	20	8	160	8	160	2	40	5	100	5	100	6			
Pathogen Inactivation	15	10	150	10	150	8	120	5	75	4	60	4			
Impact on Environment	10	10	100	8	80	3	30	10	100	3	30	3			
Reaction of the Public	10	10	100	7	70	1	10	9	90	3	30	4			
Transport Availability	5	1	5	1	5	8	40	5	25	3	15	8			
Acceptable to Industry	5	7	35	7	35	7	35	7	35	6	30	7			
Cost	5	4	20	1	5	6	30	9	45	8	40	9			
Risk to Wildlife	5	10	50	10	50	5	25	4	20	5	25	5			
Capacity to Meet Requirements	5	5	25	3	15	9	45	9	45	9	45	9			
Total Weight to Equal 100 Units	100	sum	785	sum	650	sum	535	sum	595	sum	515	sum		sum	

NB: FIRST ADOPTED IN 2006; MOST RECENT UPDATE ADOPTED IN 2024.

CHAPTER 4.14.

GENERAL RECOMMENDATIONS ON DISINFECTION AND DISINSECTION

Article 4.14.1.

General provisions

Veterinary Authorities are requested to draw up regulations in their respective countries concerning the use of disinfectants and insecticides on the basis of the principles described below:

- 1) The choice of disinfectants and of procedures for *disinfection* should be made taking into account the causal agents of *infection* and the nature of the premises, *vehicles* and objects which are to be treated.
- 2) Disinfectants and insecticides should be authorised only after thorough tests have been carried out under field condition.
- 3) The following should be considered:
 - a) few universal disinfectants exist;
 - b) whereas hypochlorite, which is very often used, may be regarded as a universal disinfectant, its effectiveness is diminished by prolonged storage and it is therefore necessary to check its activity before use; a concentration of 0.5% active chlorine appears necessary for satisfactory *disinfection*;
 - c) no matter what substances are used, *disinfection* techniques should comprise the following:
 - i) thorough soaking of bedding and litter as well as faecal matter with the disinfectant;
 - ii) washing and cleaning by careful brushing and scrubbing of the ground, floors and walls;
 - iii) then further washing with the disinfectant;
 - iv) washing and disinfecting the outside of *vehicles*; these procedures will be carried out, if possible, with liquids applied under pressure and the washing, disinfecting or destroying of articles used for tying up the *animals* (ropes, reins, etc.) should not be omitted.

Article 4.14.2.

Pathogen-specific disinfection

- 1) Foot and mouth disease virus is easily destroyed by a high or low pH but the disinfectants used may be caustic or corrosive in concentrated form.
- 2) Mycobacteria are very resistant to disinfectants and a high concentration is required to destroy the organisms, as well as prolonged action.
- 3) *Bacillus anthracis*
 - a) In situations in which manure, dung or bedding may be contaminated with *Bacillus anthracis* (*B. anthracis*) spores, the following are recommended:
 - i) small volumes by incineration; or
 - ii) chemothermal treatment by composting as follows:
 - mix with one of the following at a rate of 1–1.5 litre/m³;
 - 10% formaldehyde (approximately 30% formalin), or
 - 4% gluteraldehyde (pH 8.0–8.5);
 - turn the material after five weeks;
 - leave for a further five weeks.

[Note: Spontaneous combustion of the composting pile is possible. Also note: Formalin is a dangerous chemical and as such the appropriate personal protective equipment should be used and safety training on the handling of this chemical should be provided.]

- b) In situations in which liquid manure (slurry) may be contaminated with *B. anthracis* spores, *disinfection* with formalin (35% aqueous solution of formaldehyde) with stirring for one hour daily is recommended:
 - i) for slurry up to 5% dry matter, 50 kg formalin per m³ for 4 days;
 - ii) for slurry >5% and <10% dry matter, 100 kg formalin per m³ for 4 days.

[Note: Formalin is a dangerous chemical and as such the appropriate personal protective equipment should be used and safety training on the handling of this chemical should be provided.]
- c) In situations in which surfaces in animal houses, stables, vehicles, etc. may be contaminated with *B. anthracis* spores, the following three-step approach is recommended:
 - i) a preliminary *disinfection* should be carried out using one of the following disinfectants at a rate of 1–1.5 litres/m³ for 2 hours;
 - 10% formaldehyde (approximately 30% formalin); or
 - 4% glutaraldehyde (pH 8.0–8.5);
 - ii) all surfaces should be washed and scrubbed using ample hot water and, when cleaned and waste water is free from dirt particles, dried;
 - iii) a final *disinfection* step should be carried out using one of the following disinfectants applied at a rate of 0.4 litre/m³ for 2 hours;
 - 10% formaldehyde (approximately 30% formalin), repeated after one hour; or
 - 4% glutaraldehyde (pH 8.0–8.5), repeated after one hour; or
 - 3% hydrogen peroxide; or
 - 1% peracetic acid, repeated after one hour; or
 - 5–10% sodium hypochloride solution.
- d) Contaminated rooms which cannot be cleared before cleaning and *disinfection* can be fumigated to eliminate *B. anthracis* spores. The following procedure is recommended:
 - i) all windows, doors and vents to the outside should be sealed with heavy adhesive tape; and
 - ii) for rooms up to 30 m³, 4 litres of water containing 400 ml of concentrated formalin (37% w/v formaldehyde) in an electric kettle (with a timing switch to turn it off) should be boiled away and the room left overnight. Room temperature should be >15°C.

[Note: Formaldehyde fumigation is hazardous and proper respirators should be on hand for operator safety. The effectiveness of the fumigation process should be verified by exposing dried discs of filter paper which have been dipped in a suspension of spores of *B. subtilis* var. *globigii* or *B. cereus* or Sterne vaccine strain of *B. anthracis* and placed in the room before fumigation is started. At the end of fumigation, the discs should be placed on nutrient agar plates containing 0.1% histidine and incubated overnight at 37°C. If fumigation has been effective, there will be no bacterial growth.]

NB: FIRST ADOPTED IN 1976; MOST RECENT UPDATE ADOPTED IN 2014.

CHAPTER 4.15.

OFFICIAL HEALTH CONTROL OF BEE DISEASES

Article 4.15.1.

Purpose

This chapter is intended to set out guidelines for *official health control* of bee diseases. These are needed for the control of endemic bee diseases at the country level and to detect incursions of exotic diseases, thereby ensuring safe *international trade* of bees, bee products and used apicultural equipment. The guidelines are designed to be general in nature and more specific recommendations or requirements are made in chapters on bee diseases.

Article 4.15.2.

Overview

In each country or region, official health control of bee diseases should include:

- 1) official *registration* of the *apiaries* by the *Veterinary Authority* or other *Competent Authority* in the whole country or region;
- 2) an organisation for permanent health *surveillance*;
- 3) approval of breeding *apiaries* for export trade;
- 4) measures for cleaning, *disinfection* and *disinfestation* of apicultural equipment;
- 5) rules precisely stating the requirements for issuing an *international veterinary certificate*.

Article 4.15.3.

Official registration of the apiaries by the Veterinary Authority or other Competent Authority in the whole country or region

The *registration* of *apiaries* is the first step in developing a regional management plan for bee disease *surveillance* and control. With knowledge of bee density and location it is possible to design valid sampling schemes, to predict the spread of disease and to design inspection programmes to target areas of high risk.

The official *registration* of *apiary* sites should be annual and may provide information such as the presumptive locations of the *apiary* sites in the next 12 months, the average number of colonies in each *apiary* site, and the name and address of the principal owner of the bees in the *apiary*.

The main *apiary* locations (places where the *bee hives* are located the longest time in the year) should be registered first, followed as far as possible by the seasonal *apiary* locations.

Article 4.15.4.

Organisation for permanent official sanitary surveillance of apiaries

Veterinary Authorities or other *Competent Authorities* of countries are requested to regulate the organisation for permanent official sanitary *surveillance* of *apiaries*.

Permanent official sanitary *surveillance* of *apiaries* should be under the authority of the *Veterinary Authority* or other *Competent Authority* and should be performed either by representatives of this *Authority* or by representatives of an approved organisation, with the possible assistance of bee-keepers specially trained to qualify as "health inspectors and advisers".

The official *surveillance* service thus established should be entrusted with the following tasks:

- 1) visit *apiaries*:
 - a) annual visits to an appropriate sample of *apiaries*, based on the estimated risk in the whole country or region, during the most appropriate periods for the detection of diseases;
 - b) additional visits to *apiaries* may be carried out for specific purposes including trade or transfer to other regions, or any other purpose whereby diseases could be spread;
- 2) collect samples required for the diagnosis of diseases and despatch them to a *laboratory*; the results of *laboratory* examinations should be communicated within the shortest delay to the *Veterinary Authority* or other *Competent Authority*;
- 3) apply hygiene measures, comprising, in particular, treatment of colonies of bees, as well as *disinfection* of the equipment and possibly the destruction of affected or suspect colonies and of the contaminated equipment so as to ensure rapid eradication of any *outbreak* of a disease.

Article 4.15.5.

Conditions for approval of breeding apiaries for export trade

Veterinary Authorities or other *Competent Authorities* of *exporting countries* are requested to regulate the conditions for approval of breeding *apiaries* for export trade.

The *apiaries* should:

- 1) have received, for at least the past two years, visits by a health inspector and adviser, carried out at least once a year using a *risk-based* approach during the most appropriate periods for detection of *listed diseases* of bees. During these visits, there should be a systematic examination of at least 10% of the hives containing bees and of the used apicultural equipment (especially stored combs), and the collection of samples to be sent to a *laboratory* and, depending on the situation of the *importing* and *exporting countries*, no positive results were reported to the *Veterinary Authorities* or other *Competent Authorities* for the relevant *listed disease* of bees;
- 2) be regularly sampled, depending on the epidemiological situation of the *importing* and *exporting countries*, and found free from the relevant *listed diseases* of bees. To achieve this, a statistically valid number of bee colonies should be examined by any method complying with the relevant chapters of the *Terrestrial Manual*.

Bee-keepers should:

- 3) immediately notify the *Veterinary Authority* or other *Competent Authority* of any suspicion of a *listed disease* of bees in the breeding *apiary* and in other epidemiologically linked *apiaries*;
- 4) not introduce into the *apiary* any bee (including pre-imago stages) or used apicultural equipment or product originating from another *apiary* unless that *apiary* is recognised by the *Veterinary Authority* or other *Competent Authority* to be of equivalent or higher health status or the used apicultural equipment or product has been treated in agreement with a procedure described in the relevant chapters of the *Terrestrial Code*;
- 5) apply special breeding and despatch techniques to ensure protection against any outside contamination, especially for the breeding and sending of queen-bees and accompanying bees and to enable retesting in the *importing country*;
- 6) collect at least every 30 days, during the breeding and despatch period, appropriate samples to be sent to a *laboratory* and all the positive results officially reported to the *Veterinary Authority* or other *Competent Authority*.

Article 4.15.6.

Conditions for sanitation and disinfection or disinfestation of apicultural equipment

Veterinary Authorities or other *Competent Authorities* of countries are requested to regulate the use of products and means for sanitation and *disinfection* or *disinfestation* of apicultural equipment in their own country, taking into account the following recommendations.

- 1) Any apicultural equipment kept in an *establishment* which has been recognised as being affected with a contagious disease of bees should be subjected to procedures ensuring the elimination of pathogens.
- 2) In all cases, these procedures comprise the initial cleaning of the equipment, followed by sanitation or *disinfection* or *disinfestation* depending on the disease concerned.
- 3) Any infested or contaminated equipment which cannot be subjected to the above-mentioned procedures should be destroyed, preferably by burning.

- 4) The products and means used for sanitation and *disinfection* or *disinfestation* should be accepted as being effective by the *Veterinary Authority* or other *Competent Authority*. They should be used in such a manner as to exclude any risk of contaminating the equipment which could eventually affect the health of bees or adulterate the products of the hive.

Article 4.15.7.

Preparation of the international veterinary certificate for export

This certificate covers hives containing bees, brood-combs, royal cells, used apicultural equipment and bee products.

This document should be prepared in accordance with the model contained in Chapter 5.10. and taking into account the chapters on bee diseases.

NB: FIRST ADOPTED IN 1976; MOST RECENT UPDATE ADOPTED IN 2022.

CHAPTER 4.16.

HYGIENE PRECAUTIONS, IDENTIFICATION, BLOOD SAMPLING AND VACCINATION

Article 4.16.1.

The use of microchip implanters, needles and syringes in a wide range of routine veterinary procedures relative to identification, blood sampling, *vaccination* and the injection of medicinal products or devices is now commonplace.

Unsterilised equipment and the use of opened vials of vaccine and medicinal products for different *herds* should be unacceptable professionally.

The use of unsterilised and contaminated equipment (microchip implanters, needles, syringes, etc.) or products is of special importance for different *herds* and *animals* to be exported. It is a requirement, particularly applicable for *animals* to be exported, that care is taken to ensure the sterility of all equipment and veterinary products associated with the conditions of the export certificate.

These precautions have particular importance for teams of *veterinarians* and paraveterinarians.

The range of organisms capable of being transmitted includes viruses, bacteria and protozoa. The list of infectious agents transmissible in the context of this chapter continues to expand for all species of *animals*.

NB: FIRST ADOPTED IN 1982.

CHAPTER 4.17.

HIGH HEALTH STATUS HORSE SUBPOPULATION

Article 4.17.1.

General provisions

This chapter provides recommendations for the establishment of a *subpopulation* of horses that are moved internationally to compete in equestrian competitions, including thoroughbred races, and that have a high health status certified by the *Veterinary Authority*, in order to facilitate their safe temporary importation, onward movement and return to the country of usual residence.

For the purpose of the *Terrestrial Code*, a high health status horse *subpopulation* is one with a distinct status with respect to specified *listed diseases*, which has been established in accordance with the provisions in Chapter 4.5., by the application of documented health management practices and biosecurity measures to create and maintain a functional separation between horses within the defined *subpopulation* and all other equids at all times.

For the purpose of the *Terrestrial Code*, a high health, high performance (HHP) horse means one belonging to a high health status *subpopulation* and registered by the International Equestrian Federation (FEI) or the International Federation of Horseracing Authorities (IFHA) as eligible to take part in international competitions and races accompanied by a certificate for temporary international movement in accordance with the *Terrestrial Code*.

Horses that are moved internationally for the purpose of breeding or any other purpose not linked to competitions are excluded from the high health status *subpopulation*.

Article 4.17.2.

Criteria for the inclusion of horses in the high health status subpopulation

1. High health status

Each horse in the *subpopulation* is subjected to specific measures to establish its health status, and preserve its health status and that of the other horses in the *subpopulation*.

These measures comprise a specific set of *laboratory* tests, treatments, isolation periods and *vaccinations* appropriate to the disease status of the country or region of usual residence and temporary import of the horse. Records of all treatments and *vaccinations*, and results of tests and clinical examinations are documented in an individual passport that complies with Chapter 5.12.

2. Identification and traceability

Consistent with the provisions of Chapters 4.2. and 4.3., horses in the *subpopulation* are individually identified as follows:

- a) Each horse bears a permanent unique identifier, preferably a microchip.
- b) Each horse is accompanied at all times by its individual passport that contains information on the horse's unique identifier.
- c) Each horse has an attachment to its passport that identifies it as a member of the high health status *subpopulation*.
- d) Horses are registered in an international database that contains relevant information linked to the passport and the identifier to which *Veterinary Authorities* have access.

3. Management of the subpopulation

- a) In the course of each veterinary examination of a horse, its passport is checked, its identity verified and the details of any tests and treatments, including *vaccinations*, are recorded and signed by the examining *veterinarian*.
For certification purposes, the passport is examined, verified and signed by an *Official Veterinarian*, in accordance with Article 5.2.2. For international movements of not more than 90 days, HHP horses should be accompanied by an *international veterinary certificate* in accordance with the *Terrestrial Code*.
- b) The high health status of each horse in the *subpopulation* is maintained by ensuring compliance at all times with an international biosecurity plan approved by the *Veterinary Authorities* of the *importing and exporting countries*, in accordance with the relevant recommendations of WOAH. This compliance is assured and validated through continual veterinary supervision of horses at the *establishment* of usual residence, during transport and at competition venues. This supervision is provided by *veterinarians* authorised for that purpose by a *Veterinary Authority*. Non-compliance results in suspension of the high health status of the horse.
- c) An appropriate qualification period is required for entry or re-entry of a horse into the *subpopulation*. The procedures for qualification should be described in the international biosecurity plan.
- d) A maximum period is set for each absence of a horse from its country of usual residence, as specified in the international biosecurity plan.

Article 4.17.3.

Recommendations for the Veterinary Authorities

Organisations that are responsible for ensuring compliance with this chapter should be authorised and supervised by the *Veterinary Authorities*. *Veterinary Authorities* are encouraged to develop specific protocols for the temporary importation of horses of high health status entering the country for the purpose of competition at equestrian events or for their onward movement to other such events and for their return to their country of usual residence.

Veterinary Authorities are encouraged to recognise the international biosecurity plan developed by the FEI and IFHA on the basis of the WOAH *Handbook for the Management of High Health, High Performance Horses*.

NB: FIRST ADOPTED IN 2014; MOST RECENT UPDATE ADOPTED IN 2017.

CHAPTER 4.18.

VACCINATION

Article 4.18.1.

Introduction and objectives

Vaccination is intended to prevent and control the occurrence of a disease and reduce the transmission of the pathogenic agent. Ideally, vaccines should induce immunity that prevents *infection*. However, some vaccines may only prevent clinical signs, or reduce multiplication and shedding of the pathogenic agent.

Vaccination may contribute to improvement of *animal* and human health, *animal welfare*, agricultural sustainability and to reduction of the use of *antimicrobial agents* in *animals*.

The objective of this chapter is to provide guidance to *Veterinary Services* for the use of *vaccination* in support of disease prevention and control programmes. The recommendations in this chapter may be refined by the specific approaches described in the *listed disease-specific chapters* of the *Terrestrial Code*. Furthermore, the recommendations in this chapter may also be used for any diseases for which a vaccine exists.

The *vaccination* strategy applied depends on biological, technical and policy considerations, available resources and the feasibility of implementation.

The prerequisites to enable a Member Country to successfully implement *vaccination* include compliance with:

- 1) the recommendations on *surveillance* in Chapter 1.4.;
- 2) the relevant provisions in Chapters 3.2. and 3.4.;
- 3) the recommendations on *vaccination* in the *listed disease-specific chapters* of the *Terrestrial Code*;
- 4) in vaccine-producing countries, the relevant general and specific recommendations for veterinary vaccine production and quality control in the *Terrestrial Manual*.

Article 4.18.2.

Definitions

For the purposes of this chapter the following definitions apply:

Emergency vaccination means a *vaccination* programme applied in immediate response to an *outbreak* or increased risk of introduction or emergence of a disease.

Population immunity means the proportion of the target population effectively immunised at a specific time.

Systematic vaccination means an ongoing routine *vaccination* programme.

Vaccination coverage means the proportion of the target population to which vaccine was administered during a specified timeframe.

Vaccination programme means a plan to apply *vaccination* to an epidemiologically appropriate proportion of the susceptible animal *population* for the purposes of disease prevention or control.

Article 4.18.3.

Vaccination programmes

The objectives and strategy of a *vaccination* programme should be defined by the *Veterinary Authority* before the implementation of *vaccination*, taking into account the epidemiology of the disease, its impact and zoonotic potential, the species affected and their distribution.

If these factors indicate that the programme should be expanded beyond national boundaries, the *Veterinary Authority* should liaise with the *Veterinary Authorities* of neighbouring countries. When appropriate, a regional approach to harmonise *vaccination* programmes is recommended.

Veterinary Authorities should liaise, as relevant, with public health authorities when developing and implementing *vaccination* programmes against zoonoses.

Vaccination programmes may include systematic *vaccination* and emergency *vaccination*.

- 1) Systematic *vaccination* in infected countries aims to reduce the *incidence*, *prevalence* or impact of a disease with the objective of prevention, control and possible eradication. In free countries or *zones*, the objective of systematic *vaccination* is to prevent the introduction of a disease from an infected neighbouring country or *zone*, or to limit the impact in the case of the introduction of that disease.
- 2) Emergency *vaccination* provides an adjunct to the application of other essential *biosecurity* and disease control measures and may be applied to control *outbreaks*. Emergency *vaccination* may be used in response to:
 - a) an *outbreak* in a free country or *zone*;
 - b) an *outbreak* in a country or *zone* that applies systematic *vaccination*, but when revaccination is applied to boost existing immunity;
 - c) an *outbreak* in a country or *zone* that applies systematic *vaccination*, but when the vaccine employed does not provide protection against the strain of the pathogenic agent involved in the *outbreak*;
 - d) a change in the risk of introduction of a pathogenic agent or emergence of a disease in a free country or *zone*.

Vaccination programmes should be integrated with other ongoing animal health-related activities involving the target population. This can improve the efficiency of the programme and reduce the cost by optimisation of resources.

Article 4.18.4.

Launching a vaccination programme

When deciding whether to initiate a *vaccination* programme the *Veterinary Authority* should consider, among others, the following:

- 1) the epidemiology of the disease;
- 2) the probability that the disease cannot be rapidly contained by means other than *vaccination*;
- 3) the *incidence* and *prevalence* of the disease, if present;
- 4) the likelihood of introduction of a pathogenic agent or emergence of a disease;
- 5) the zoonotic potential of the disease;
- 6) the density of the exposed susceptible animal *population*;
- 7) the level of population immunity;
- 8) the risk of exposure of specific *subpopulations* of susceptible animals;
- 9) the suitability of a *vaccination* programme as an alternative to or an adjunct to other disease control measures such as a *stamp-out policy*;
- 10) the existence of an *animal identification system* to differentiate vaccinated from unvaccinated *subpopulations*;
- 11) the availability of a safe and effective vaccine;
- 12) the availability of human, financial, and material resources;
- 13) the cost-benefit analysis of the *vaccination* programme, including its impact on trade and public health.

Article 4.18.5.

Vaccination strategies

Different *vaccination* strategies may be applied alone or in combination, taking into account the epidemiological and geographical characteristics of occurrence of the disease. The following strategies may be applied:

- 1) **Barrier vaccination** means *vaccination* in an area along the border of an infected country or *zone* to prevent the spread of *infection* into or from a neighbouring country or *zone*.
- 2) **Blanket vaccination** means *vaccination* of all susceptible animals in an area or an entire country or *zone*.

- 3) **Ring vaccination** means *vaccination* of all susceptible animals in a delineated area surrounding the location where an *outbreak* has occurred.
- 4) **Targeted vaccination** means *vaccination* of a *subpopulation* of susceptible animals.

Article 4.18.6.

Choice of vaccine

Depending on the disease, several vaccines may be available. To achieve the objectives of the *vaccination* programme, the choice of a vaccine is a critical element that depends on several factors including:

1. Availability and cost
 - a) Availability of the vaccine including relevant regulatory approvals and adequate quantities at the time required;
 - b) capacity of the providers to supply the vaccine for the duration of the *vaccination* campaign and to respond to increased needs;
 - c) flexibility in the number of doses per vial to match the structure of the target population;
 - d) a comparison of the costs of vaccines that meet the technical specifications established in the *vaccination* programme.
2. Vaccine characteristics
 - a) Physical characteristics
 - Route and ease of administration;
 - volume of dose;
 - type of adjuvant and other components.
 - b) Biological characteristics
 - Immunity against circulating strains;
 - live, inactivated or biotechnology-derived vaccines;
 - number of strains and pathogens included in the vaccine;
 - potency of the vaccine;
 - onset of immunity;
 - shelf-life and expiry date;
 - thermotolerance;
 - duration of the effective immunity;
 - number of doses required to achieve effective immunity;
 - ability to be monitored for vaccine-induced immunity;
 - ability for vaccinated animals to be differentiated from infected animals, at the individual or group level;
 - suitability of vaccine formulation for species, age or physiological status of animals in the target population;
 - safety for the users, the consumers and the environment.
 - c) Side effects
 - Adverse reactions;
 - unintentional transmission of live vaccine strains;
 - reversion of attenuated strains to virulence.

When a single vaccine only is available, the same factors listed above should be considered in deciding whether or not to launch a *vaccination* programme.

Article 4.18.7.

Other critical elements of a vaccination programme

In addition to the choice of vaccine, the *vaccination* programme should include the following other critical elements. The *vaccination* programme should be communicated to all stakeholders.

1. Legal basis

There should be a legal basis for the *vaccination* programme, including for possible compulsory compliance and for possible compensation of animal owners for adverse reactions in their animals.

2. Target population

The *vaccination* programme should define the animal *population* to be vaccinated and the geographical area where the target population is located.

The target population may include the entire susceptible population or an epidemiological relevant *subpopulation* depending on the likelihood of exposure, the consequences of the disease, the role of the different *subpopulations* in the epidemiology of the *infection* and the resources available. The target population may include *wildlife*.

Factors to consider in determining the target population may include species, age, health status, maternal immunity, sex, production types, geographical distribution as well as the number of animals and *herds*. These factors should be reviewed and updated regularly.

3. Vaccination coverage

It may be difficult to immunise the entire target population. The *vaccination* programme should define the minimum *vaccination* coverage necessary to achieve a sufficient population immunity to fulfil the objectives of the programme. The minimum population immunity required will vary according to the epidemiology of the disease, density of susceptible animals, and geographical factors.

Measuring population immunity during the monitoring of the *vaccination* programme may assist in identifying subsets of the target population that have not been adequately immunised.

4. Stakeholder involvement

Veterinary Services should demonstrate good governance of the *vaccination* programme by clearly identifying the involvement of different stakeholders including other governmental organisations, animal owners, farmer organisations, private sector veterinarians, non-governmental organisations, *veterinary paraprofessionals*, local government authorities and vaccine suppliers. Stakeholder acceptance of *vaccination* is crucial for the success of the *vaccination* programme. Different stakeholders should preferably be involved in the planning and implementation of *vaccination*, the awareness campaigns, the monitoring of *vaccination*, the production and delivery of vaccines and the financing of the *vaccination* programme.

5. Resources

Vaccination programmes may often span several years. To achieve the desired objective, human, financial and material resources should be available throughout the estimated duration of the *vaccination* programme.

6. Actions and timeline

The *vaccination* programme should describe the responsibilities, expected deliverables and timeline for each activity.

7. Timing of vaccination campaigns

The *vaccination* programme should describe the periodicity of any *vaccination* campaigns. Depending on the disease and type of vaccine, animals may be vaccinated once or several times during their lifetime.

The objective of a *vaccination* campaign should be to achieve the *vaccination* coverage necessary to attain or maintain the minimum population immunity in the target population within a defined timeframe. The *vaccination* campaign should be implemented in such a manner as to ensure that the majority of the target population is

immunised within as short a time as possible. The *vaccination* programme should include a detailed description of the implementation of *vaccination* campaigns, including frequency and starting and ending dates of each campaign.

The frequency, timing and duration of *vaccination* campaigns should be determined taking into consideration the following factors:

- a) vaccine characteristics and manufacturer's directions for use;
- b) vaccine storage facilities and delivery systems;
- c) accessibility of the target population;
- d) animal handling facilities;
- e) animal body condition and physiological state;
- f) geographical factors;
- g) climate conditions;
- h) vector activity;
- i) awareness, acceptance and engagement of stakeholders;
- j) types of production systems and animal movement patterns;
- k) timing of agricultural, social or cultural activities;
- l) availability of resources.

8. Auditing of vaccination campaigns

The *vaccination* programme should include periodic auditing of all the participants in any *vaccination* campaigns. Auditing ensures that all components of the system function and provide verifiable documentation of procedures. Auditing may detect deviations of procedures from those documented in the programme.

Indicators related to auditing of a *vaccination* campaign may include:

- a) proportion of the targeted population of animals and *herds* vaccinated within the defined timeframe;
- b) number of vaccine doses used compared with number of animals vaccinated;
- c) number of animals vaccinated compared to census figures for the relevant animal *population*;
- d) number of reports of breaches of the cold chain;
- e) performance of vaccinator teams in complying with the standard operating procedures;
- f) timing and duration of the campaign;
- g) overall cost and cost per individual animal vaccinated.

To enable auditing of the *vaccination* programme, a recording system should be in place to measure the indicators above.

Article 4.18.8.

Logistics of vaccination

Vaccination campaigns should be planned in detail and well in advance considering the following elements:

1. Procurement of vaccine

The vaccine selected for use in a *vaccination* programme should have been subjected to the relevant regulatory approval procedure of the country, which is congruent with the recommendation of the International Cooperation on Harmonisation of Technical Requirements for Registration of Veterinary Medicinal Products (VICH).

For systematic *vaccination* campaigns, the process of procurement of the selected vaccine should be initiated in advance to ensure timely delivery to meet the timeframe of the *vaccination* campaign.

National disease contingency plans should provide for emergency *vaccination*. These provisions may allow for simplified procedures to procure vaccine and grant authorisation for temporary use. If *vaccination* is to be used systematically, definitive relevant regulatory approval should be obtained.

Vaccine banks, established in accordance with Chapter 1.1.10. of the *Terrestrial Manual*, facilitate the timely procurement of vaccines.

2. Procurement of equipment and consumables

In addition to the vaccine itself, the planning of the *vaccination* campaigns should include the procurement of all necessary equipment and consumables.

3. Implementation of the vaccination programme

Standard operating procedures should be established to:

- a) implement the communication plan;
- b) establish, maintain and monitor the fixed and mobile components of the cold chain;
- c) store, transport and administer the vaccine;
- d) clean and disinfect equipment and *vehicles*, including heat sterilisation of reusable equipment;
- e) dispose of waste;
- f) determine the disposition of partially used or unused containers of vaccine, such as ampoules, vials and bottles;
- g) implement *biosecurity* to ensure *vaccination* teams do not transmit the pathogenic agent between *establishments*;
- h) identify vaccinated animals;
- i) ensure the safety and welfare of animals;
- j) ensure the safety of *vaccination* teams;
- k) record activities of *vaccination* teams;
- l) document *vaccination*.

The availability of appropriate animal handling facilities is essential to ensure effective *vaccination* as well as safety and welfare of animals and *vaccination* teams.

4. Human resources

Vaccination should be conducted by appropriately trained and authorised personnel under the supervision of the *Veterinary Services*. The *vaccination* programme should provide for periodic training sessions including updated written standard operating procedures for field use.

The number of *vaccination* teams should be sufficient to implement the *vaccination* campaign within the defined timeframe. The *vaccination* teams should be adequately equipped and have means of transport to reach the places where *vaccination* is carried out.

5. Public awareness and communication

The *Veterinary Services* should develop a communication strategy in accordance with Chapter 3.5., which should be directed at all stakeholders and the public to ensure awareness and acceptability of the *vaccination* programme, its objectives and potential benefits.

The communication plan may include details on the timing and location of the *vaccination*, target population and other technical aspects that may be relevant for the public to know.

6. Animal identification

Animal identification allows for the differentiation of vaccinated from unvaccinated domestic animals and is required for the monitoring and certification of *vaccination*.

Identification can range from temporary to permanent identifiers and can be individual or group-based. *Animal identification* should be implemented in accordance with Chapters 4.2. and 4.3.

7. Record keeping and vaccination certificates

Vaccination programmes under the *Veterinary Service's* responsibility should provide for maintenance of detailed records of the vaccinated population.

Whenever needed, the *Veterinary Services* should consider issuing official certificates of the *vaccination* status of animals or groups of animals.

8. Additional animal health-related activities

In addition to *vaccination* against a specific pathogenic agent, *vaccination* programmes may include other animal health-related activities such as *vaccination* against other pathogenic agents, treatments, *biosecurity*, *surveillance*, *animal identification* and communication.

Including additional animal health-related activities may enhance the acceptability of the *vaccination* programme. These activities should not negatively affect the primary objective of the *vaccination* programme.

Simultaneous *vaccination* against multiple pathogenic agents may be conducted, provided that compatibility has been demonstrated and the efficacy of the immune response against each of the pathogenic agents is not compromised.

Article 4.18.9.

Evaluation and monitoring of a vaccination programme

A *vaccination* programme should provide for outcome-based evaluation and monitoring to assess its achievements. Evaluation and monitoring should be carried out periodically during the campaign to enable the timely application of corrective measures and to enhance the sustainability of the *vaccination* programme.

Based on the objectives and targets of the *vaccination* programme, the following outcomes should be assessed:

- 1) *vaccination* coverage stratified by species, age, geographical location and type of production system;
- 2) population immunity measured by testing, stratified by species, geographical location and type of production system;
- 3) frequency and severity of side effects;
- 4) reduction of *incidence*, *prevalence* or impact of the disease.

If the objectives and targets of the *vaccination* programme are not achieved, the reasons for this should be identified and addressed.

Article 4.18.10.

Exit strategy of a vaccination programme

The *vaccination* programme may provide for an exit strategy to cease *vaccination*. The cessation of *vaccination* may apply to the entire target population or to a subset of it, as defined by the risk of exposure and as determined by the *Veterinary Authority*.

Criteria to cease *vaccination* may include:

- 1) eradication of the disease in a country or zone has been achieved;
- 2) *risk analysis* demonstrates sufficient reduction of likelihood of introduction of the pathogenic agent or emergence of the disease;
- 3) reduction of the *incidence*, *prevalence* or impact of the disease to a level where alternative measures such as a *stamping-out policy* may be more appropriate to achieve disease control;
- 4) inability of the programme to meet the desired objectives;
- 5) adverse public reaction to the *vaccination* programme;
- 6) a revised cost-benefit analysis leads to decision to cease the *vaccination* programme.

When the achievement of free status requires the cessation of *vaccination*, the *Veterinary Authority* should prohibit *vaccination* and take appropriate measures to control remaining vaccine stocks as well as vaccine importation.

The cessation of *vaccination* may require the revision of the contingency plan and enhanced *biosecurity*, *sanitary measures* and *surveillance* for early detection of disease.

Article 4.18.11.

Impact on disease status and management of vaccinated animals

Vaccination has proved its capacity to help prevent, control and eradicate several diseases in addition to or as alternative to *stamping-out policy*. However, depending on the disease and type of vaccine used, *vaccination* may mask underlying *infections*, affect disease *surveillance* and have implications for the movement of vaccinated animals and their products.

When appropriate, *vaccination* programmes should include provisions for the management of vaccinated animals such as 'vaccination to live' or 'suppressive vaccination' policies. *Listed disease*-specific chapters of the *Terrestrial Code* provide additional recommendations on the management and trade of vaccinated animals and their products.

Free countries or *zones* applying systematic or emergency *vaccination* in response to an increased *risk* of introduction of a disease should inform trading partners and WOAH of their *vaccination* programme, as appropriate. Unless otherwise specified in the relevant *listed disease*-specific chapter, in the absence of *cases*, demonstrated by adequate *surveillance*, *vaccination* of animals does not affect the status of the country or *zone* and should not disrupt trade.

NB: FIRST ADOPTED IN 2018.

CHAPTER 4.19.

OFFICIAL CONTROL PROGRAMMES FOR LISTED AND EMERGING DISEASES

Article 4.19.1.

Introduction

The purpose of this chapter is to provide recommendations for the preparation, development and implementation of *official control programmes* for *listed* and *emerging diseases*. It is not aimed at providing ready-made fit-for-all solutions, but rather at outlining principles to follow when combating transmissible animal diseases, including zoonoses. Although this chapter focuses primarily on *listed* and *emerging diseases*, the recommendations may also be used by the *Veterinary Authorities* for any *notifiable diseases* or diseases against which they have established *official control programmes*.

The *Veterinary Authority* should determine the diseases against which *official control programmes* are to be prepared, developed and implemented, according to an evaluation of the actual or likely impact of the disease. *Official control programmes* should be prepared by the *Veterinary Authority* and other *Competent Authorities* in close collaboration with the relevant stakeholders and other authorities, as appropriate.

When a *listed disease* or *emerging disease* occurs in a Member Country, the *Veterinary Authority* should implement control measures proportionate to the likely impact of the disease in order to minimise its spread and consequences and, if possible, eradicate it. These measures can vary from a rapid response (e.g. to the first occurrence of a disease) to long-term control (e.g. of an endemic disease).

Official control programmes should be justified by rationales developed on the basis of *risk analyses* and taking into account animal health, public health, socio-economic, *animal welfare* and environmental aspects. They should preferably be supported by relevant cost-benefit analysis and should include the necessary regulatory, technical and financial tools.

Official control programmes should be developed with the aim of achieving defined measurable objectives, in response to a situation in which private action is not sufficient. Depending on the prevailing epidemiological, environmental and socio-economic situations, the goal may vary from the reduction of impact to the *eradication* of a given *infection* or *infestation*.

The general components of an *official control programme* should include:

- 1) a plan of the programme to control or eradicate the relevant *infection* or *infestation* in the country or *zone*;
- 2) appropriate *veterinary legislation*;
- 3) emergency preparedness plans and emergency response plans;
- 4) *surveillance* of the relevant *infection* or *infestation* in accordance with Chapter 1.4.;
- 5) regular and prompt animal disease reporting;
- 6) detection and management of cases of the relevant *infection* or *infestation*, to reduce the *incidence* and the *prevalence* by minimising transmission;
- 7) measures implemented to prevent introduction or spread of the relevant *infection* or *infestation*, including *biosecurity* and *sanitary measures* such as movement control;
- 8) a *vaccination* programme, if appropriate;
- 9) measures to protect public health, if appropriate;
- 10) communication and collaboration among all relevant *Competent Authorities*;
- 11) awareness programme for relevant stakeholders including the general public if appropriate.

The critical components of *official control programmes* for diseases that are not present in the country or *zone* are measures to prevent their introduction, an *early warning system*, and a plan for rapid response and effective action, possibly followed by long-term measures. Such programmes should include options for revising or ending them.

Official control programmes and the application of their components should be regularly evaluated. Learning from past outbreaks, from both epidemic or endemic situations, reviewing the response sequence and revising the methods are

critical for adaptation to evolving circumstances and for better future performance. Experiences of the Veterinary Services of other Member Countries may also provide useful lessons. Plans should be tested regularly to ensure that they are fit-for-purpose, practical, feasible and well understood, and that staff are proficient and other stakeholders are fully aware of their respective roles and responsibilities.

Article 4.19.2.

Legal framework and regulatory environment

- 1) In order to be able to control *listed diseases* and *emerging diseases* effectively, the Veterinary Authority should ensure that:
 - the Veterinary Services comply with the principles of Chapter 3.2., especially the services dealing with the prevention and control of transmissible animal diseases, including zoonoses;
 - the *veterinary legislation* complies with the principles of Chapter 3.4.
- 2) In particular, in order for the Veterinary Services to be most effective, the following should be addressed in the *veterinary legislation* or other relevant legal framework:
 - legal powers and structure of command and responsibilities, including responsible officials with defined authority, especially those with a right of entry to *establishments* or other related enterprises such as live animal markets, *slaughterhouses/abattoirs* and processing plants for animal products, for regulated purposes of *surveillance* and disease control actions, with the possibility of obliging owners or operators to assist;
 - sources of finance for dedicated staff and additional support staff when needed;
 - sources of finance for epidemiological enquiries, laboratory diagnosis, disinfectants, insecticides, vaccines and other critical supplies;
 - sources of finance for communication and awareness campaigns;
 - sources of finance and a compensation policy for *commodities* and property that may be lost or destroyed;
 - coordination with other authorities, especially law enforcement and public health authorities.
- 3) Furthermore, the specific regulations, policies, or guidance on disease control activities should include the following:
 - *risk analysis* to assess and prioritise *risks*, including a regularly updated list of *notifiable diseases*;
 - definitions and procedures for the reporting and management of a suspected case or a confirmed case of a *listed disease* or an *emerging disease*;
 - procedures for the management of *establishments* directly or indirectly affected by the disease;
 - procedures for epidemiological investigation of *outbreaks* including forward and backward tracing of *commodities* and fomites;
 - definitions and procedures for the declaration and management of *infected zones* and other *zones*, such as *free zones*, *protection zones*, *containment zones*, or less specific *zones* such as *zones* of intensified *surveillance*;
 - procedures for the collection, transport and testing of samples;
 - procedures for *animal identification* and the management of *animal identification systems*;
 - procedures for the restriction of movements, including possible standstill or compulsory veterinary certification, of relevant *commodities* and fomites within, to, or from given *zones* or *establishments* or other related enterprises;
 - procedures for the destruction or *slaughter* and safe disposal or processing of infected or potentially infected *animals*, including relevant *wildlife*;
 - procedures for collection, treatment and safe disposal of contaminated or potentially contaminated products of animal origin;
 - procedures for collection, treatment or safe disposal of contaminated or potentially contaminated fomites such as fodder bedding, litter, manure and waste water;
 - procedures for *disinfection* and disinsection of *establishments* and related premises, *vehicles/vessels* or equipment;
 - procedures of compensation for the owners of *commodities*, including defined standards and means of implementing such compensation;
 - procedures for the implementation of *vaccination* programmes or treatment of *animals*, as relevant, and for any other necessary disease control actions;
 - procedures for post-control *surveillance* and possible gain or recovery of status, as relevant.

Article 4.19.3.

Emergency preparedness

Rapid and effective response to animal health emergencies, such as occurrence of an *emerging disease* or a *listed disease* that was not present in the country or zone, or a sudden increase in the *incidence* of a *listed disease* that is already present, is dependent on the level of preparedness.

The *Veterinary Authority* should define emergencies and integrate emergency preparedness including planning, equipping, training and exercises within the *official control programmes* for these diseases as part of its core functions.

Emergency preparedness should be supported by *risk analysis*, should be planned in advance, and should include capacity building and simulation exercises.

1. Risk analysis

Risk analysis, including import *risk analysis*, in accordance with Chapter 2.1., should be used to determine a list of *notifiable diseases* that require emergency preparedness planning, and the level of preparedness needed.

A *risk analysis* identifies the pathogenic agents that present the greatest *risk* and for which preparedness is most important, and therefore helps to prioritise the range of disease threats and define the consequent actions. It also helps to define the best strategies and control options.

The *risk analysis* should be reviewed regularly to detect changes (e.g. new pathogenic agents, changes in distribution and virulence of pathogenic agents previously identified as presenting the major *risk* or changes in possible pathways) and be updated accordingly, taking into account the latest scientific findings.

2. Planning

Emergency planning consists of describing the following in advance of an emergency:

- what national and subnational authorities, and relevant stakeholders should do;
- how they should be organised, equipped, trained and exercised to be ready to do it;
- how their actions should be activated, managed and coordinated.

This implies the development of:

- a) an emergency preparedness plan, which outlines what should be done before an emergency;
- b) an emergency response plan (or contingency plan), which details what should be done in an emergency, beginning from the triggering point;
- c) a comprehensive set of instructions for staff and other stakeholders on how to undertake specific tasks required by the response or contingency plan;
- d) a recovery plan for the safe restoration of normal activities, including food supply, possibly including procedures and practices modified in light of the experience gained during the management of previous emergencies, for example following an after-action review.

3. Simulation exercises

A simulation exercise is a controlled activity where a situation, that could exist in reality, is imitated for training, assessment of capabilities and testing of plans. The *Veterinary Services* and all stakeholders should be made aware of the sequence of measures to be taken in the framework of an emergency response plan, through the organisation of simulation exercises mobilising a sufficient number of staff and stakeholders to evaluate the level of preparedness and fill possible gaps in the plan or in staff capacity. Simulation exercises may be organised within a country or among the *Veterinary Services* of several countries and with other relevant agencies.

Article 4.19.4.

Surveillance and early warning systems

Depending on the priorities identified by the *Veterinary Authority*, *Veterinary Services* should implement adequate *surveillance* for *listed diseases* in accordance with Chapter 1.4. and *listed disease*-specific chapters, in order to detect suspected *cases* and either rule out or confirm them. The *surveillance* should be adapted to the specific epidemiological and environmental situation. *Early warning systems* are an integral component of emergency management. They should be in place for diseases for which a rapid response is desired, and should comply with the relevant articles of Chapter 1.4. When used, *vector surveillance* should be conducted in accordance with Chapter 1.5.

Strong suspicion based on supportive, but not definitive, findings should lead to at least the implementation of pre-emptive control measures. Once a case is confirmed, full *sanitary measures* should be implemented.

Article 4.19.5.

General considerations for outbreak management

Upon confirmation of an *outbreak* of a *listed disease* or an *emerging disease* that is subject to an *official control programme*, effective *risk management* should be applied. This depends on the implementation of a combination of measures operating concurrently or consecutively. These measures should aim at:

- 1) tracing forward and backward in-contact *animals* and potentially infected or contaminated *commodities* or fomites through epidemiological investigation;
- 2) eliminating the source of the pathogenic agent, by:
 - the *killing* or *slaughter* of *animals* infected or suspected of being infected, as appropriate, and safe disposal of dead *animals* and disposal or treatment of other potentially contaminated *commodities* and fomites, such as beddings and single use clothing and equipment;
 - the cleaning, *disinfection* and, if relevant, disinsection of premises and other fomites such as *vehicles*, clothing and equipment;
- 3) preventing the spread of disease, *infection* or *infestation* through:
 - movement restrictions on *commodities* and fomites, as appropriate;
 - *biosecurity*;
 - *vaccination*, treatment or selective *killing* of *animals*;
 - control of *vectors*;
 - communication and public awareness.

Different strategies may be chosen depending on the objective and expected outcome of the *official control programme* (i.e. *eradication*, containment or prevalence control) and the epidemiological, environmental, economic and social situation. The *Veterinary Authority* should assess the situation beforehand and at the time of *outbreak* detection. For example, the wider the spread of the disease and the more locations affected at the beginning of the implementation of the measures, the less likely it will be that selective *killing* will be effective as the main *eradication* tool, and the more likely it will be that other control tools such as *vaccination* or treatment, either in conjunction with selective *killing* or alone, will be needed. The involvement of *vectors* or *wildlife* will also have a major influence on the control strategy and different options chosen. The strategies chosen will, in turn, influence the final outcome of the *official control programme*.

The costs of the response measures, including the compensation of owners for losses incurred by the measures as described in regulations, policies or guidance, should be considered in relation to the benefits expected.

In case of highly transmissible or high-impact disease events, the response measures should be closely coordinated through an inter-sectoral mechanism such as an incident command system.

Article 4.19.6.

Selective killing of animals and disposal of dead animals and other potentially contaminated commodities

Living infected *animals* can be the most significant source of pathogenic agents. These *animals* may directly transmit the pathogenic agent to other *animals*. They may also cause indirect transmission of pathogenic agents through living organisms (*vectors*, people) or through the contamination of fomites, including breeding and handling equipment, bedding, *feed*, *vehicles/vessels*, and people's clothing and footwear, or contamination of the environment. Although in some cases carcasses may remain infective for a period after death, shedding of the pathogenic agent ceases when the *animal* is killed or slaughtered. Thus, selective *killing* of *animals* is often a preferred strategy for the control of transmissible diseases.

Veterinary Services should adapt any strategy for selective *killing* of *animals* or disposal of dead *animals* and other potentially contaminated *commodities* to the transmission pathways of the pathogenic agent. A *stamping-out policy* is the preferred strategy for highly transmissible diseases and for situations where the country or zone was previously free or freedom was impending. Other strategies, such as "test and cull", are better suited to less transmissible diseases and situations where the disease is endemic.

For control measures, including destruction of *animals* or other *commodities*, to be most effective, *animal identification* and *animal traceability* should be in place, in accordance with Chapters 4.2. and 4.3.

The *slaughter* or *killing* of *animals* should be performed in accordance with Chapter 7.5. or Chapter 7.6., respectively.

The disposal of dead *animals* and other potentially contaminated *commodities* should be performed in accordance with Chapter 4.13.

1. Stamping-out policy

A *stamping-out policy* consists primarily of the *killing* of all the *animals* infected or suspected of being infected, including those that have been directly or indirectly exposed to the causal pathogenic agent.

A *stamping-out policy* can be limited to the affected *establishments* and, where appropriate, other *establishments* found to be epidemiologically linked with an affected *establishment*, or be broadened to a defined *zone*, when pre-emptive depopulation can be used to stop the transmission of a rapidly spreading pathogenic agent.

A *stamping-out policy* can be applied to all the animal species present on an affected *establishment*, or to all susceptible species, or only to the same species as the infected *animals*, based on the assessment of associated *risks*.

Selective *killing* and carcass disposal can be applied to *wildlife* within a defined *zone*, based on the assessment of associated *risks*.

Killing should preferably be performed on site, and the carcasses either disposed of on site or transported directly and safely to a rendering plant or other dedicated site for destruction. If they are to be killed outside the *establishment* or slaughtered, the *animals* should be transported directly to a dedicated *approved* rendering plant or *slaughterhouse/abattoir*, respectively, avoiding any possible direct or indirect contacts with other susceptible *animals*. These slaughtered *animals* and their products should be processed separately from others.

Products originating from killed or slaughtered *animals*, ranging from carcasses, *meat*, *milk*, eggs or genetic material to hair, wool, feathers or manure, should be destroyed or processed in a way that inactivates the pathogenic agent. The inactivating process should be carried out in accordance with the relevant articles of the *listed disease-specific chapters*.

Stamping-out policy procedures include the cleaning and *disinfection* of *establishments* and *vehicles/vessels* used for the transport of *animals*, carcasses or products, as well as of any equipment and material that has been in direct or indirect contact with the *animals*. The procedures may include disinsection or *disinfestation* in the case of vector-borne disease or parasitic *infestation*. These procedures should be conducted in accordance with the relevant articles of Chapter 4.14. Where premises cannot be practically disinfected, alternate means of elimination of the causal pathogenic agent, such as extended fallowing periods or composting, may be considered.

2. "Test and cull"

This strategy consists primarily of finding the infected *animals* in order to remove them from the population for either *slaughter* or *killing* and disposal. *Veterinary Services* may apply different "test and cull" strategies based on the epidemiology of the *infection* or *infestation* or on the characteristics of available diagnostic tests. In particular, the design of the "test and cull" strategy will depend on the sensitivity and specificity of the tests. *Veterinary Services* may adjust "test and cull" strategies in response to changes in the *prevalence*.

Apart from the selection of *animals* to be killed, the same principles apply as for a *stamping-out policy* in terms of processing, treatment and disposal of dead or slaughtered *animals* and their products.

Article 4.19.7.

Movement control

Disease spread due to the movement of live *animals* and other *commodities* and fomites should be controlled by movement restrictions that are adequately enforced.

These restrictions can be applied to one or more animal species and their associated *commodities*, and to different types of fomite (e.g. people, clothing, *vehicles/vessels* and equipment). Based on *risk analysis*, they may vary from pre-movement certification to total standstill, and be limited to one *establishment* only or multiple *establishments*, or cover specific *zones* or the entire country. The restrictions can include the complete isolation of individual *animals* or groups of *animals*, and specific rules may be applied to movements, such as protection from *vectors*.

Specific rules covering movement controls should apply to each of any defined *zones*. Physical barriers may be installed as needed, to ensure the effective application of movement restrictions.

Movement controls should be in place until the end of other disease control operations, such as a *stamping-out policy*, and after *surveillance* and a revised *risk assessment* have demonstrated that they are no longer needed.

When implementing movement control operations, *Veterinary Services* should coordinate with other relevant authorities such as local authorities and law enforcement agencies, and with communication media, as well as with the *Veterinary Services* of neighbouring countries in the case of transboundary animal diseases.

Article 4.19.8.

Zoning

The *Veterinary Authority* should use the tool of zoning in *official control programmes*, in accordance with Chapter 4.4.

The use of zoning for disease control and *eradication* is inherently linked with measures of *killing* or *slaughter*, movement control, *vaccination*, *surveillance*, *biosecurity* and communication, which apply differently according to the *zones*. In particular, efforts should be concentrated on those parts of a territory affected by the disease, to prevent the spread of the pathogenic agent and to preserve the status of the parts of the territory not affected by the disease.

Zones established in response to *outbreaks* of *listed diseases* or *emerging diseases* are usually *infected zones*, *containment zones* and *protection zones*. However, other types of *zone*, such as *zones* where specific *surveillance*, *vaccination* or other activities are conducted, can also be used.

Article 4.19.9.

Biosecurity

In order to avoid the spread of the pathogenic agent outside the affected *establishments* or *infected zones*, and in addition to the management measures described in Articles 4.19.5. to 4.19.7., *biosecurity* should be applied. In particular measures should be taken to avoid the contamination of clothing and shoes, equipment, *vehicles/vessels*, the environment or anything capable of acting as a fomite.

Disinfection and disinsection should be applied in accordance with Chapter 4.14. When *disinfection* is applied, specific disinfectant solutions should be used for footbaths or disinfectant baths for *vehicles'* wheels. Single-use material and clothes, or material and clothes that can be effectively cleaned and disinfected, should be used for the handling of *animals* and other *commodities*. Protection of premises from *wildlife* and other unwanted *animals* should be ensured. Wastes, waste-water and other effluents should be collected and treated appropriately.

Article 4.19.10.

Vaccination and treatment

Vaccination as part of an *official control programme* should be conducted in accordance with Chapter 4.18.

Vaccination programmes, especially in response to an *outbreak*, require planning to identify potential sources of vaccine, including vaccine or antigen banks, and to determine the possible strategies for application, such as barrier, blanket, ring or targeted *vaccination*.

The properties of the vaccines should be well understood, especially the level of protection against *infection* or disease and the possibility of differentiating the immune response produced by the vaccine from that induced by *infection* with the pathogenic agent, or differentiating live vaccine strains from field strains.

Although *vaccination* may hide ongoing *infection* or transmission of pathogenic agents, it can be used to increase the *herd immunity* for and decrease the shedding of the pathogenic agent, hence reducing the reproductive rate of the *infection*. In particular, when stamping-out is not feasible, *vaccination* can be used to reduce the *prevalence* of the *infection* until its level is low enough for the implementation of another strategy such as a "test and cull" strategy.

Vaccination may also be used to minimise the impact of an *infection* by reducing clinical signs or economic losses.

Whenever *vaccination* is to be used as a tool to control *outbreaks* or spread of disease, the *official control programme* should consider a cost-benefit analysis with regard to trade and public health and an exit strategy, i.e. when and how to stop the *vaccination* or whether *vaccination* should become systematic.

Treatment can also be used as part of an *official control programme*. It requires planning to identify potential sources of *veterinary medicinal products*, and to determine the possible strategies for application and an exit strategy.

Article 4.19.11.

Communication

For the best implementation of disease control measures, *Veterinary Services* should ensure good communication with all concerned stakeholders, including the general public. This should be part of the *official control programme* and be carried out, among others, through awareness campaigns targeted at animal owners or keepers, *veterinarians*, *veterinary paraprofessionals*, local authorities, the media, consumers and the general public. Communication with *Competent Authorities* of neighbouring countries and trading partners is important for the control of transboundary animal diseases.

Veterinary Services should communicate before, during and after *outbreaks*, in accordance with Chapter 3.5.

Article 4.19.12.

Specific post-control surveillance

Specific *surveillance* should be applied in order to monitor the effectiveness of the *official control programme*, and to assess the status of the *animal populations* in the different *zones* established by the *Veterinary Services*.

The results of this *surveillance* should be used to reassess the measures applied, including reshaping of the *zones* and re-evaluation of the selective *killing* or *vaccination* strategies, and for the eventual recovery of free status, if possible.

This *surveillance* should be conducted in accordance with Chapter 1.4. and with the relevant articles of the *listed disease-specific chapters*.

Article 4.19.13.

Further outbreak investigation, monitoring, evaluation and review

In order to gather information required for any management information system, *Veterinary Services* should conduct an in-depth epidemiological investigation of each *outbreak* to build up detailed first-hand, field-based knowledge of how the disease is transmitted, to inform further disease control plans. This requires staff who have been trained in appropriate methods and in the use of the standardised data collection forms.

Furthermore, feedback from persons involved in the organisation and implementation of *official control programmes* should be gathered.

The information gathered and experience gained should be used to monitor, evaluate and review the *official control programmes* in order to improve them.

NB: FIRST ADOPTED IN 2021; MOST RECENT UPDATE ADOPTED IN 2024.

SECTION 5.

TRADE MEASURES, IMPORT/EXPORT PROCEDURES AND VETERINARY CERTIFICATION

CHAPTER 5.1.

GENERAL OBLIGATIONS RELATED TO CERTIFICATION

Article 5.1.1.

Safety of *international trade* in *animals* and animal products depends on a combination of factors which should be taken into account to ensure unimpeded trade, without incurring unacceptable *risks* to human and animal health.

Because of differences between countries in their animal health situations, various options are offered by the *Terrestrial Code*. The animal health situation in the *exporting country*, in the *transit country* or *countries* and in the *importing country* should be considered before determining the requirements for trade. To maximise harmonisation of the sanitary aspects of *international trade*, *Veterinary Authorities* of Member Countries should base their import requirements on the standards of WOAH.

These requirements should be included in the model certificates approved by WOAH which are included from Chapters 5.10. to 5.12.

Certificates should be exact and concise, and should clearly convey the requirements of the *importing country*. For this purpose, prior consultation between *Veterinary Authorities* of *importing* and *exporting countries* may be necessary. It enables the setting out of the exact requirements so that the signing *veterinarian* can, if necessary, be given a note of guidance explaining the understanding between the *Veterinary Authorities* involved.

The certification requirements should not include conditions for diseases that are not transmitted by the *commodity* concerned. The certificate should be signed in accordance with Chapter 5.2.

When officials of a *Veterinary Authority* wish to visit another country for matters of professional interest to the *Veterinary Authority* of the other country, the latter should be informed.

Article 5.1.2.

Responsibilities of the importing country

- 1) The import requirements included in the *international veterinary certificate* should assure that *commodities* introduced into the *importing country* comply with the standards of WOAH. *Importing countries* should align their requirements with the recommendations in the relevant standards of WOAH. If there are no such recommendations or if the country chooses a level of protection requiring measures more stringent than the standards of WOAH, these should be based on an import *risk analysis* conducted in accordance with Chapter 2.1.
- 2) The *international veterinary certificate* should not include requirements for the exclusion of pathogenic agents or animal diseases which are present in the *importing country* and are not subject to any *official control programme*. The measures imposed on imports to manage the *risks* posed by a specific pathogenic agent or disease should not be more stringent than those applied as part of the *official control programme* operating within the *importing country*.

- 3) The *international veterinary certificate* should not include measures against pathogenic agents or diseases which are not WOAH listed, unless the *importing country* has demonstrated through import *risk analysis*, carried out in accordance with Section 2., that the pathogenic agent or disease poses a significant *risk* to the *importing country*.
- 4) The transmission by the *Veterinary Authority* of certificates or the communication of import requirements to persons other than the *Veterinary Authority* of another country, necessitates that copies of these documents are also sent to the *Veterinary Authority*. This important procedure avoids delays and difficulties which may arise between traders and *Veterinary Authorities* when the authenticity of the certificates or permits is not established.

This procedure is under the responsibility of *Veterinary Authorities*. However, it can be undertaken by private sector *veterinarians* at the place of origin of the *commodities* when this practice is the subject of appropriate approval and authentication by the *Veterinary Authority*.

- 5) Situations may arise which result in changes to the consignee, identification of the means of transportation, or *border post* after a certificate is issued. Because these do not change the animal or public health status of the consignment, they should not prevent the acceptance of the certificate.

Article 5.1.3.

Responsibilities of the exporting country

- 1) An *exporting country* should, on request, supply the following to *importing countries*:
 - a) information on the animal health situation and national animal health information systems to determine whether that country is free or has *zones* or *compartments* free from *listed diseases*, including the regulations and procedures in force to maintain its free status;
 - b) regular and prompt information on the occurrence of *notifiable diseases*;
 - c) details of the country's ability to apply measures to control and prevent the relevant *listed diseases*;
 - d) information on the structure of the *Veterinary Services* and the authority which they exercise in accordance with Chapters 3.2. and 3.3.;
 - e) technical information, particularly on biological tests and vaccines applied in all or part of the national territory.
- 2) *Veterinary Authorities* of *exporting countries* should:
 - a) have official procedures for authorisation of certifying *veterinarians*, defining their functions and duties as well as conditions of oversight and accountability, including possible suspension and termination of the authorisation;
 - b) ensure that the relevant instructions and training are provided to certifying *veterinarians*;
 - c) monitor the activities of the certifying *veterinarians* to verify their integrity and impartiality.
- 3) The *Veterinary Authority* of the *exporting country* is ultimately accountable for veterinary certification used in *international trade*.

Article 5.1.4.

Responsibilities in case of an incident related to importation

- 1) *International trade* involves a continuing ethical responsibility. Therefore, if within the recognised *incubation periods* of the various diseases subsequent to an export taking place, the *Veterinary Authority* becomes aware of the appearance or reappearance of a disease which has been specifically included in the *international veterinary certificate*, there is an obligation for this *Authority* to notify the *importing country*, so that the imported *commodities* may be inspected or tested and appropriate action be taken to limit the spread of the disease should it have been inadvertently introduced.
- 2) If a disease condition appears in imported *commodities* within a time period after importation consistent with the recognised *incubation period* of the disease, the *Veterinary Authority* of the *exporting country* should be informed so as to enable an investigation to be made, since this may be the first available information on the occurrence of the disease in a previously free *herd* or *flock*. The *Veterinary Authority* of the *importing country* should be informed of the result of the investigation since the source of *infection* may not be in the *exporting country*.

- 3) In case of suspicion, on reasonable grounds, that an official certificate may be fraudulent, the *Veterinary Authorities* of the *importing country* and *exporting country* should conduct an investigation. Consideration should also be given to notifying any third country that may have been implicated. All associated consignments should be kept under official control, pending the outcome of the investigation. The *Veterinary Authorities* of all countries involved should fully cooperate with the investigation. If the certificate is found to be fraudulent, every effort should be made to identify those responsible so that appropriate action can be taken in accordance with the relevant legislation.
-

NB: FIRST ADOPTED IN 1982; MOST RECENT UPDATE ADOPTED IN 2024.

CHAPTER 5 . 2 .

CERTIFICATION PROCEDURES

Article 5.2.1.

Protection of the professional integrity of the certifying veterinarian

Certification should be based on the highest possible ethical standards, the most important of which is that the professional integrity of the certifying *veterinarian* should be respected and safeguarded in accordance with Chapters 3.2. and 3.3.

It is essential to include in any requirements only those specific statements that can be accurately and honestly signed by a certifying *veterinarian*. For example, these requirements should not include certification of an area as being free from diseases other than *notifiable diseases*, or the occurrence of which the signing *veterinarian* is not necessarily informed about. It is unacceptable to ask for certification for events which will take place after the document is signed when these events are not under the direct control and supervision of the signing *veterinarian*.

Certification of freedom from diseases based on purely clinical freedom and *herd* or *flock* history is of limited value. This is also true of diseases for which there is no specific diagnostic test, or the value of the test as a diagnostic aid is limited.

The note of guidance referred to in Article 5.1.1. is not only to inform the signing *veterinarian* but also to safeguard professional integrity.

Article 5.2.2.

Certifying veterinarians

Certifying *veterinarians* should:

- 1) be authorised by the *Veterinary Authority* of the *exporting country* to sign *international veterinary certificates*;
- 2) only certify matters that are within their own knowledge at the time of signing the certificate, or that have been separately attested by another competent party;
- 3) sign only at the appropriate time certificates that have been completed fully and correctly; where a certificate is signed on the basis of supporting documentation, the certifying *veterinarian* should have verified or be in possession of that documentation before signing;
- 4) have no conflict of interest in the commercial aspects of the *animals* or animal products being certified and be independent from the commercial parties.

Article 5.2.3.

Preparation of international veterinary certificates

Certificates should be drawn up in accordance with the following principles:

- 1) Certificates should be designed so as to minimize the potential for fraud including use of a unique identification number, or other appropriate means to ensure security. Paper certificates should bear the signature of the certifying *veterinarian* and the official identifier (stamp) of the issuing *Veterinary Authority*. Each page of a multiple page certificate should bear the unique certificate number and a number indicating the number of the page out of the total number of pages. Electronic certification procedures should include equivalent safeguards.
- 2) Certificates should be written using terms that are simple, unambiguous and as easy to understand as possible, without losing their legal meaning.
- 3) If so required, certificates should be written in the language of the *importing country*. In such circumstances, they should also be written in a language understood by the certifying *veterinarian*.
- 4) Certificates should require appropriate identification of *animals* and animal products except where this is impractical (e.g. *day-old birds*).

- 5) Certificates should not require a *veterinarian* to certify matters that are outside his/her knowledge or which he/she cannot ascertain and verify.
- 6) Where appropriate, when presented to the certifying *veterinarian*, certificates should be accompanied by notes of guidance indicating the extent of enquiries, tests or examinations expected to be carried out before the certificate is signed.
- 7) The text of a certificate should not be amended except by deletions which should be signed and stamped by the certifying *veterinarian*.
- 8) The signature and stamp should be in a colour different from that of the printing of the certificate. The stamp may be embossed instead of being a different colour.
- 9) Replacement certificates may be issued by a *Veterinary Authority* to replace certificates that have been, for example, lost, damaged, contain errors, or where the original information is no longer correct. These replacements should be provided by the issuing authority and be clearly marked to indicate that they are replacing the original certificate. A replacement certificate should reference the number and the issue date of the certificate that it supersedes. The superseded certificate should be cancelled and, where possible, returned to the issuing authority.
- 10) Only original certificates are acceptable.

Article 5.2.4.

Electronic certification

- 1) Certification may be provided by electronic exchange of data sent directly from the *Veterinary Authority* of the *exporting country* to the *Veterinary Authority* of the *importing country*.
 - a) Systems providing electronic certificates normally provide an interface with the commercial organisation marketing the *commodity* for provision of information to the certifying authority. The certifying *veterinarian* should have access to all information such as *laboratory results* and *animal identification* data.
 - b) When exchanging electronic certificates and in order to fully utilise electronic data exchange the *Veterinary Authorities* should use internationally standardised language, message structure and exchange protocols. Guidance for electronic certification in standardised Extensible Markup Language (XML) as well as secure exchange mechanisms between *Veterinary Authorities* is provided by the United Nations Centre for Trade Facilitation and Electronic Business (UN/CEFACT).
 - c) A secure method of electronic data exchange should be ensured by digital authentication of the certificates, encryption, non-repudiation mechanisms, controlled and audited access and firewalls.
- 2) Electronic certificates may be in a different format but should carry the same information as conventional paper certificates.
- 3) The *Veterinary Authority* should have in place systems for the security of electronic certificates against access by unauthorised persons or organisations.
- 4) The certifying *veterinarian* should be officially responsible for the secure use of his/her electronic signature.

NB: FIRST ADOPTED IN 1986; MOST RECENT UPDATE ADOPTED IN 2015.

CHAPTER 5.3.

WOAH PROCEDURES RELEVANT TO THE AGREEMENT ON THE APPLICATION OF SANITARY AND PHYTOSANITARY MEASURES OF THE WORLD TRADE ORGANIZATION

Article 5.3.1.

The Agreement on the Application of Sanitary and Phytosanitary Measures and role and responsibility of WOAH

The *Agreement on the Application of Sanitary and Phytosanitary Measures* (SPS Agreement) specifically encourages the Members of the World Trade Organization to base their *sanitary measures* on international standards, guidelines and recommendations, where they exist. Members may choose to implement *sanitary measures* more stringent than those in international standards, if these are deemed necessary to protect animal or human health and are scientifically justified by a *risk analysis*. In such circumstances, Members should adopt a consistent approach to *risk management*.

To promote transparency, the SPS Agreement, in Article 7, obliges WTO Members to notify changes in, and provide relevant information on, *sanitary measures* that may, directly or indirectly, affect *international trade*.

The SPS Agreement recognises WOAH as the relevant international organisation responsible for the development and promotion of international animal health standards, guidelines, and recommendations affecting trade in live *animals* and animal products.

Article 5.3.2.

Introduction to the determination of the equivalence of sanitary measures

The importation of *animals* and animal products involves a degree of *risk* to animal and human health in an *importing country*. The estimation of that *risk* and the choice of the appropriate *risk management* options are made difficult by differences among the *animal health management* systems and animal production and processing systems in Member Countries. However, significantly different systems and measures may achieve equivalent animal and human health protection for the purpose of *international trade*.

The recommendations in this chapter are intended to assist Member Countries to determine whether *sanitary measures* arising from different systems achieve the same level of animal and human health protection. They discuss principles that may be utilised in a determination of equivalence, and outline a step-wise process for trading partners to follow. These provisions are applicable whether equivalence applies to specific measures or on a systems-wide basis, and whether equivalence applies to specific areas of trade or *commodities*, or in general.

Article 5.3.3.

General considerations on the determination of the equivalence of sanitary measures

Before trade in *animals* or their products occurs, an *importing country* should be assured that animal and human health in its territory will be appropriately protected. In most cases, the *risk management* measures adopted will rely in part on judgements made about the *animal health management* and animal production systems in the *exporting country* and the effectiveness of *sanitary measures* applied there. Systems operating in the *exporting country* may differ from those in the *importing country* and from those in other countries with which the *importing country* has traded. Differences may be in infrastructure, policies or operating procedures, *laboratory* systems, approaches to control of diseases, *infections* and *infestations* present, border security and internal movement controls.

If trading partners agree that the measures applied achieve the same level of health protection, these measures are considered equivalent. Benefits of applying equivalence may include:

- 1) minimising costs associated with *international trade* by allowing *sanitary measures* to be tailored to local circumstances;
- 2) maximising animal health outcomes for a given level of resource input;
- 3) facilitating trade by achieving the required health protection through less trade restrictive *sanitary measures*; and
- 4) decreased reliance on relatively costly *commodity* testing and isolation procedures.

The *Terrestrial Code* recognises equivalence by recommending alternative *sanitary measures* for many diseases, *infections* and *infestations*. Equivalence may be achieved, for example, by enhanced *surveillance* and monitoring, by the use of alternative test, treatment or isolation procedures, or by combinations of the above. To facilitate the determination of equivalence, Member Countries should base their *sanitary measures* on WOAH standards and guidelines.

Member Countries should use *risk analysis* to establish the basis for a determination of equivalence.

Article 5.3.4.

Prerequisite considerations for the determination of equivalence

1) Application of risk assessment

Risk assessment provides a structured basis for judging equivalence among different *sanitary measures* as it allows a comparison of the effect of a measure on a particular step in the importation pathway with the effect of a proposed alternative measure.

A determination of equivalence should compare the effectiveness of the *sanitary measures* against the particular *risk* or group of *risks* against which they are designed to protect.

2) Categorisation of sanitary measures

Proposals for equivalence may consider a single component (e.g. an isolation or sampling procedure, a test or treatment requirement, a certification procedure) or multiple components (e.g. a production system for a *commodity*) of a measure, or a combination of measures. Measures may be applied consecutively or concurrently.

Sanitary measures are described in the disease-specific chapter of the *Terrestrial Code* to manage *risks* posed by that disease, *infection* or *infestation*.

For the purposes of determining equivalence, *sanitary measures* can be broadly categorised as:

- a) infrastructure: including the legislative base (e.g. animal health law) and administrative systems (e.g. organisation of *Veterinary Services*);
- b) programme design and implementation: including documentation of systems, performance and decision criteria, *laboratory* capability, and provisions for certification, audit and enforcement;
- c) specific technical requirement: including requirements applicable to the use of secure facilities, treatment (e.g. retorting of cans), specific test (e.g. ELISA) and procedures (e.g. pre-export inspection).

Sanitary measures proposed for a determination of equivalence may fall into one or more of these categories, which are not mutually exclusive.

In some cases, such a method for inactivation of pathogenic agents, a comparison of specific technical requirements may suffice. In many instances, however, assessment of whether the same level of protection will be achieved may only be determined through an evaluation of all relevant components of an *exporting country's animal health management* systems and animal production systems.

Article 5.3.5.

Principles for determination of equivalence

Determination of the equivalence of *sanitary measures* should be based on application of the following principles:

- 1) an *importing country* has the right to set the level of protection it deems appropriate in relation to human and animal life and health in its territory; this may be expressed in qualitative or quantitative terms;
- 2) the *importing country* should be able to describe the reason for each *sanitary measure* i.e. the level of protection intended to be achieved by application of the identified measure against a *risk*;

- 3) an *importing country* should recognise that *sanitary measures* different from the ones it has proposed may be capable of achieving the same level of protection; in particular, it should consider the existence of *free zones* or *free compartments*, and of *safe commodities*;
- 4) the *importing country* should, upon request, consult with the *exporting country* with the aim of facilitating a determination of equivalence;
- 5) any *sanitary measure* or combination of *sanitary measures* can be proposed for determination of equivalence;
- 6) an interactive process should be followed that applies a defined sequence of steps, and utilises an agreed process for exchange of information, so as to limit data collection to that which is necessary, to minimise administrative burden, and to facilitate resolution of claims;
- 7) the *exporting country* should be able to demonstrate objectively how the alternative *sanitary measures* proposed as equivalent will provide the same level of protection;
- 8) the *exporting country* should present a submission for equivalence in a form that facilitates determination by the *importing country*;
- 9) the *importing country* should evaluate submissions for equivalence in a timely, consistent, transparent and objective manner, and in accordance with appropriate *risk assessment* principles;
- 10) the *importing country* should take into account any knowledge of and prior experience with the *Veterinary Authority* or other *Competent Authority* of the *exporting country*;
- 11) the *importing country* should take into account any arrangements it has with other *exporting countries* on similar issues;
- 12) the *importing country* may also take into account any knowledge of the *exporting country's* arrangements with other *importing countries*;
- 13) the *exporting country* should provide access to enable the procedures or systems that are the subject of the equivalence determination to be examined and evaluated upon request of the *importing country*;
- 14) the *importing country* should be the sole judge of equivalence, but should provide to the *exporting country* a full explanation for its judgement;
- 15) to facilitate a determination of equivalence, Member Countries should base their *sanitary measures* on relevant WOAH standards and guidelines, where these exist. However, they may choose to implement more stringent *sanitary measures* if these are scientifically justified by a *risk analysis*;
- 16) to allow the determination of equivalence to be reassessed if necessary, the *importing country* and the *exporting country* should keep each other informed of significant changes to infrastructure, health status or programmes that may bear on the determination of equivalence; and
- 17) appropriate technical assistance from an *importing country*, following a request by an *exporting country*, may facilitate the successful completion of a determination of equivalence.

Article 5.3.6.

Sequence of steps to be taken in determination of equivalence

There is no single sequence of steps that should be followed in all determinations of equivalence. The steps that trading partners choose will generally depend on the circumstances and their trading experience. Nevertheless, the interactive sequence of steps described below may be useful for assessing any *sanitary measures* irrespective of their categorisation as infrastructure, programme design and implementation or specific technical requirement components of an *animal health management system* or animal production system.

This sequence assumes that the *importing country* is meeting its obligations under the WTO SPS Agreement and has in place a transparent measure based either on an international standard or a *risk analysis*.

Recommended steps are:

- 1) the *exporting country* identifies the measure for which it wishes to propose an alternative and requests from the *importing country* a reason for its *sanitary measure* in terms of the level of protection intended to be achieved against a *risk*;
- 2) the *importing country* explains the reason for the measure in terms that would facilitate comparison with an alternative *sanitary measure* and consistent with the principles set out in these provisions;
- 3) the *exporting country* demonstrates the case for equivalence of an alternative *sanitary measure* in a form that facilitates evaluation by an *importing country*;
- 4) the *exporting country* responds to any technical concerns raised by the *importing country* by providing relevant further information;
- 5) determination of equivalence by the *importing country* should take into account as appropriate:
 - a) the impact of biological variability and uncertainty;
 - b) the expected effect of the alternative *sanitary measure*;
 - c) WOAH standards and guidelines;
 - d) the results of a *risk assessment*;
- 6) the *importing country* notifies the *exporting country* of its judgement and its reasons within a reasonable period of time. The judgement:
 - a) recognises the equivalence of the *exporting country's* alternative *sanitary measure*; or
 - b) requests further information; or
 - c) rejects the case for equivalence of the alternative *sanitary measure*;
- 7) an attempt should be made to resolve any differences of opinion over judgement of a case by using an agreed mechanism such as the WOAH informal procedure for dispute mediation (Article 5.3.8.);
- 8) depending on the category of measures involved, the *importing country* and the *exporting country* may informally acknowledge the equivalence or enter into a formal agreement of equivalence giving effect to the judgement.

An *importing country* recognising the equivalence of an *exporting country's* alternative *sanitary measure* should ensure that it acts consistently with regard to applications from third countries for recognition of equivalence applying to the same or a very similar measure. Consistent action does not mean however that a specific measure proposed by several *exporting countries* should always be judged as equivalent because a measure should not be considered in isolation but as part of a system of infrastructure, policies and procedures, in the context of the animal health situation in the *exporting country*.

Article 5.3.7.

Sequence of steps to be taken in establishing a zone or compartment and having it recognised for international trade purposes

The terms 'zone' and 'zoning' in the *Terrestrial Code* have the same meaning as 'region', 'area' and 'regionalisation' in the SPS Agreement of the WTO.

The establishment of a disease-free *zone* or *compartment* is described in Chapter 4.4. and should be considered by trading partners when establishing *sanitary measures* for trade. Recommended steps are:

1. For zoning

- a) The *exporting country* identifies a geographical area within its territory, which, based on *surveillance*, it considers to contain an animal *subpopulation* with a distinct health status with respect to a specific disease, *infection* or *infestation*.
- b) The *exporting country* describes in the *biosecurity plan* for the *zone* the measures applied to distinguish such an area epidemiologically from other parts of its territory, in accordance with the recommendations in the *Terrestrial Code*.
- c) The *exporting country* provides:
 - i) the above information to the *importing country*, with an explanation of why the area can be treated as an epidemiologically separate zone for *international trade* purposes;
 - ii) access to enable the procedures or systems that establish the *zone* to be examined and evaluated upon request by the *importing country*.
- d) The *importing country* determines whether it accepts such an area as a *zone* for the importation of *animals* or animal products, taking into account:
 - i) an evaluation of the *exporting country's Veterinary Services*;
 - ii) the result of a *risk assessment* based on the information provided by the *exporting country* and its own research;
 - iii) its own animal health situation with respect to the disease concerned; and
 - iv) other relevant WOAH standards or guidelines.
- e) The *importing country* notifies the *exporting country* of its judgement and its reasons, within a reasonable period of time, being:
 - i) recognition of the *zone*; or
 - ii) request for further information; or
 - iii) rejection of the area as a *zone* for *international trade* purposes.
- f) An attempt should be made to resolve any differences over recognition of the *zone* by using an agreed mechanism such as the WOAH informal procedure for dispute mediation (Article 5.3.8.).
- g) The *Veterinary Authorities* of the *importing* and *exporting countries* should enter into an agreement recognizing the *zone*.

2. For compartmentalisation

- a) Based on discussions with the relevant industry, the *exporting country* identifies within its territory a *compartment* comprising an animal *subpopulation* contained in one or more *establishments*, and other premises operating under common management practices and a *biosecurity plan*. The *compartment* contains an identifiable animal *subpopulation* with a distinct health status with respect to a specific disease. The *exporting country* describes how this status is maintained through a partnership between the relevant industry and the *Veterinary Authority* of the *exporting country*.
- b) The *exporting country* examines the *compartment's biosecurity plan* and confirms through an audit that:
 - i) the *compartment* is epidemiologically closed throughout its routine operating procedures as a result of effective implementation of its *biosecurity plan*; and
 - ii) the *surveillance* and monitoring programme in place is appropriate to verify the status of such a *subpopulation* with respect to the disease in question.
- c) The *exporting country* describes the *compartment*, in accordance with Chapters 4.4. and 4.5.
- d) The *exporting country* provides:
 - i) the above information to the *importing country*, with an explanation of why such a *subpopulation* can be treated as an epidemiologically separate *compartment* for *international trade* purposes; and
 - ii) access to enable the procedures or systems that establish the *compartment* to be examined and evaluated upon request by the *importing country*.
- e) The *importing country* determines whether it accepts such a *subpopulation* as a *compartment* for the importation of *animals* or animal products, taking into account:
 - i) an evaluation of the *exporting country's Veterinary Services*;
 - ii) the result of a *risk assessment* based on the information provided by the *exporting country* and its own research;
 - iii) its own animal health situation with respect to the disease concerned; and
 - iv) other relevant WOAH standards or guidelines.

- f) The *importing country* notifies the *exporting country* of its judgement and its reasons, within a reasonable period of time, being:
 - i) recognition of the *compartment*; or
 - ii) request for further information; or
 - iii) rejection of such a *subpopulation* as a *compartment* for *international trade* purposes.
- g) An attempt should be made to resolve any differences over recognition of the *compartment* by using an agreed mechanism such as the WOAH informal procedure for dispute mediation (Article 5.3.8.).
- h) The *Veterinary Authorities* of the *importing* and *exporting countries* should enter into an agreement recognizing the *compartment*.

Article 5.3.8.

The WOAH informal procedure for dispute mediation

WOAH maintains a voluntary in-house mechanism for assisting Member Countries to resolve differences. In-house procedures that will apply are that:

- 1) Both parties agree to give WOAH a mandate to assist them in resolving their differences.
 - 2) If considered appropriate, the Director General of WOAH recommends an expert, or experts, and a chairman, as requested, agreed by both parties.
 - 3) Both parties agree on the terms of reference and working programme, and to meet all expenses incurred by WOAH.
 - 4) The expert or experts are entitled to seek clarification of any of the information and data provided by either country in the assessment or consultation processes, or to request additional information or data from either country.
 - 5) The expert or experts submit a confidential report to the Director General of WOAH, who then transmits it to both parties.
-

NB: FIRST ADOPTED IN 2003; MOST RECENT UPDATE ADOPTED IN 2017.

CHAPTER 5.4.

ANIMAL HEALTH MEASURES APPLICABLE BEFORE AND AT DEPARTURE

Article 5.4.1.

Animals for breeding, rearing or slaughter

- 1) Countries should only authorise the exportation from their territory of *animals for breeding or rearing* or *animals for slaughter* which are correctly identified and which meet the requirements of the *importing country*.
- 2) Biological tests and/or vaccinations required by the *importing country* should be carried out in accordance with the recommendations in the *Terrestrial Code* and *Terrestrial Manual*, as well as *disinfection* and *disinfestation* procedures.
- 3) Observation of the *animals* before leaving the country may be carried out either in the *establishment* where they were reared, or in a *quarantine station*. The *animals* should be transported to the *place of shipment* in specially constructed *vehicles*, previously cleansed and, if required, disinfected. This must be done without delay and without the *animals* coming into contact with other susceptible *animals*, unless these *animals* have animal health guarantees similar to those of the transported *animals*. An *international veterinary certificate* should attest that the *animals* have been found to be clinically healthy and of the health status agreed by the *importing country* and *exporting country*.
- 4) The transportation of the *animals for breeding or rearing* or *animals for slaughter* from the *establishment* of origin to the point of departure from the *exporting country* should be carried out in conformity with the conditions agreed between the *importing country* and *exporting country*.

Article 5.4.2.

Semen, oocytes, embryos and hatching eggs

Countries should only undertake the export from its territory of:

- 1) semen,
- 2) oocytes and embryos,
- 3) hatching eggs,

from , *collection centres* or farms which meet the requirements of the *importing country*.

Article 5.4.3.

Notification

Countries exporting *animals*, semen, oocytes, embryos or *hatching eggs* should inform the country of destination and where necessary the *transit countries* if, after exportation, a *listed disease* occurs within the *incubation period* of that particular disease, in the *establishment* of origin, or in an *animal* which was in an *establishment* or in a *market*, at the same time as the exported *animals*.

Article 5.4.4.

Certificate

Before the departure of *animals*, semen, oocytes, embryos, *hatching eggs* and brood-combs of bees, an *Official Veterinarian* should, within the 24 hours prior to shipment, provide an *international veterinary certificate* conforming with the models approved by WOAH as shown in Chapters 5.10. to 5.13. and worded in the languages agreed upon between the *exporting country* and the *importing country*, and, where necessary, with the *transit countries*.

Article 5.4.5.

Live animals

- 1) Before the departure of an *animal* or a consignment of *animals* on an international journey, the *Veterinary Authority* of the port, airport or district in which the *border post* is situated may, if it is considered necessary, carry out a clinical examination of the *animal* or consignment. The time and place of the examination should be arranged taking into account customs and other formalities and in such a way as not to impede or delay departure.
- 2) The *Veterinary Authority* referred to in point 1 above should take necessary measures to:
 - a) prevent the shipment of *animals* affected or suspected of being affected with any *listed disease* or with any other infectious disease as agreed by the *importing country* and the *exporting country*;
 - b) avoid entry into the *vehicle* of possible *vectors* or causal agents of *infection*.

Article 5.4.6.

Products of animal origin

- 1) Countries should only authorise the export from their territory of *meat* and products of animal origin intended for human consumption, which are fit for human consumption. They must be accompanied by an *international veterinary certificate* conforming with the models approved by WOAH. These must be worded in the languages agreed upon between the *exporting country* and the *importing country*, and, where necessary, with the *transit countries*.
 - 2) Products of animal origin intended for use in animal feeding, or for pharmaceutical or surgical or agricultural or industrial use, should be accompanied by an *international veterinary certificate* conforming with the models approved by WOAH.
-

NB: FIRST ADOPTED IN 1968; MOST RECENT UPDATE ADOPTED IN 2014.

CHAPTER 5.5.

ANIMAL HEALTH MEASURES APPLICABLE DURING TRANSIT FROM THE PLACE OF DEPARTURE IN THE EXPORTING COUNTRY TO THE PLACE OF ARRIVAL IN THE IMPORTING COUNTRY

Article 5.5.1.

- 1) Any country through which the transit of *animals* is required, and which normally conducts commercial transactions with the *exporting country*, should not refuse transit, subject to the reservations mentioned below and on condition that advance notice is given of the proposed transit to the *Veterinary Authority* in charge of *border posts*.

This advance notice shall state the species and number of *animals*, the methods of transport and the *border posts* of entry and exit in accordance with a previously arranged and authorised itinerary in the *transit country*.

- 2) Any country through which transit is to take place may refuse if it considers that certain diseases exist in the *exporting country*, or in a *transit country* which precedes it in the itinerary, which are capable of being transmitted to its own *animals*.
- 3) Any *transit country* may require the presentation of *international veterinary certificates*. Such a country may, in addition, cause an examination to be made by an *Official Veterinarian* of the health status of *animals* in transit, except in cases where transport in sealed *vehicles* or *containers* is a condition of transit.
- 4) Any *transit country* may refuse passage through its territory of *animals* presented at one of its *border posts* if an examination carried out by an *Official Veterinarian* shows that the *animal* or consignment of *animals* in transit is affected by or infected with any of the notifiable epizootic diseases, or if the *international veterinary certificate* is inaccurate and/or unsigned.

In these circumstances, the *Veterinary Authority* of the *exporting country* shall be informed immediately, thereby providing an opportunity for checking the findings or correcting the *certificate*.

If the diagnosis of an epizootic disease is confirmed, or if the *certificate* cannot be corrected, the *animal* or consignment of *animals* in transit shall either be returned to the *exporting country* or be slaughtered or destroyed.

- 5) This article does not apply to bees that are transported in securely closed *vehicles* or *containers*.

Article 5.5.2.

- 1) Any *transit country* may require railway wagons and road *vehicles* used for the transit of *animals* through its territory to be so constructed as to prevent the escape and dispersion of excrement.
- 2) The *unloading* of *animals* in transit shall be permitted in the territory of the *transit country* only for purposes of watering and feeding or for welfare or other essential reasons. This must be under the effective control of an *Official Veterinarian* of the *transit country*, who should ensure that the *animals* have no contact with any other *animals*. The *importing country* shall be informed of any unforeseen *unloading* in the *transit country*.

Article 5.5.3.

Any country through which transit is required of the following *commodities*:

- 1) semen,
- 2) oocytes or embryos,
- 3) *hatching eggs*,
- 4) brood-combs of bees,
- 5) animal products,

and which allows the importation of those products, should not refuse their transit, subject to the following conditions:

- 1) Advance notice shall be given of the proposed transit to the *Veterinary Authority* in charge of the control of the *border posts*.

This advance notice shall contain information on the identification of the species and the quantity of the products, the method of transport, and the *border posts* of entry into and exit from the country, in accordance with a previously arranged and authorised itinerary in the *transit country*.

- 2) If inspection indicates that the above-mentioned products are capable of being dangerous to the health of persons or animals, the *Veterinary Authority* of the *transit country* may order their return to the *exporting country*.

If they cannot be returned, the *Veterinary Authority* of the *exporting country* shall be informed immediately, thereby providing an opportunity for confirming the findings before destruction of the products.

- 3) Strict health requirements need not apply to the transit of the products mentioned above when they are transported in sealed *vehicles* or *containers*.

Article 5.5.4.

Vessels stopping in a port or passing through a canal or other navigable waterway situated in the territory of a country, on their way to a port situated in the territory of another country, must comply with the conditions required by the *Veterinary Authority*, especially to prevent the *risk* of introduction of diseases transmitted by insects.

Article 5.5.5.

- 1) If, for reasons beyond the control of its captain, a ship or aircraft calls or lands somewhere other than at a port or airport, or at a port or airport other than that at which it should normally call or land, the captain of the ship or aircraft shall immediately notify the nearest *Veterinary Authority* or other public authority of the new port of call or place of landing.
- 2) As soon as the *Veterinary Authority* is notified of the calling or landing place, it shall take appropriate action.
- 3) Except for the circumstances mentioned in point 5 below, the *animals* and the attendants on board the ship or aircraft shall not be permitted to leave the vicinity of the docking or landing place. The removal from the vicinity, of any equipment, bedding or feedstuffs accompanying them shall not be permitted.
- 4) When the measures prescribed by the *Veterinary Authority* have been carried out, the ship or aircraft shall be permitted, for animal health purposes, to proceed to the port or airport at which it would normally have called or landed. If there are technical reasons why this cannot be done, it may be permitted to proceed to a port or an airport that is more suitable.
- 5) In an emergency, the captain of the ship or aircraft shall take all necessary measures to maintain the health and safety of the passengers, crew, attendants and *animals* on board.

NB: FIRST ADOPTED IN 1968.

CHAPTER 5.6.

BORDER POSTS AND QUARANTINE STATIONS IN THE IMPORTING COUNTRY

Article 5.6.1.

- 1) Countries and their *Veterinary Authorities* should, wherever possible, take the necessary action to ensure that the *border posts* and *quarantine stations* in their territory should be provided with an adequate organisation and sufficient equipment for the application of the measures recommended in the *Terrestrial Code*.
- 2) Each *border post* and *quarantine station* should be provided with facilities for the feeding and watering of *animals*.

Article 5.6.2.

When justified by the amount of *international trade* and by the epidemiological situation, *border posts* and *quarantine stations* should be provided with a *Veterinary Service* comprising personnel, equipment and premises as the case may be and, in particular, means for:

- 1) making clinical examinations and obtaining specimens of material for diagnostic purposes from live *animals* or carcasses of *animals* affected or suspected of being affected by an epizootic disease, and obtaining specimens of animal products suspected of contamination;
- 2) detecting and isolating *animals* affected by or suspected of being affected by an epizootic disease;
- 3) carrying out *disinfection* and possibly *disinfestation* of *vehicles* used to transport *animals* and animal products.

In addition to this, each port and international airport should ideally be provided with equipment for the sterilisation or incineration of swill or any other material dangerous to animal health.

The presence of disease or *infection* in imported *animals* in a *quarantine station* does not affect the *animal health status* of the country or zone.

Article 5.6.3.

When required for the transit of *commodities* in *international trade*, airports should provide areas of direct transit. These should, however, comply with the conditions required by *Veterinary Authorities*, especially to prevent the contact between *animals* of different health status and the *risk* of introducing diseases transmitted by insects.

Article 5.6.4.

Each *Veterinary Authority*, when requested, should make available for the *Headquarters* and any interested country on request:

- 1) a list of *border posts*, *quarantine stations*, approved *slaughterhouses/abattoirs* and storage depots in its territory which are approved for *international trade*;
- 2) the period of time required for notice to be given for the application of the arrangements contained in point 2 of Articles 5.7.1. to 5.7.4.;
- 3) a list of airports in its territory which are provided with an area of direct transit, approved by the *Veterinary Authority* and placed under its immediate control, where *animals* stay for a short time pending further transport to their final destination.

NB: FIRST ADOPTED IN 1968; MOST RECENT UPDATE ADOPTED IN 2024.

CHAPTER 5.7.

ANIMAL HEALTH MEASURES APPLICABLE ON ARRIVAL

Article 5.7.1.

- 1) An *importing country* should only accept into its territory *animals* which have been subjected to a health examination by an *Official Veterinarian* of the *exporting country* and which are accompanied by an *international veterinary certificate* provided by the *Veterinary Authority* of the *exporting country*.
- 2) An *importing country* may require adequate advance notice regarding the proposed date of entry into its territory of *animals*, stating the species, quantity, means of transport and the name of the *border post* to be used.
In addition, *importing countries* shall publish a list of the *border posts* equipped to conduct control operations related to importation and enabling the importation and transit procedures to be carried out in the quickest and most effective way.
- 3) An *importing country* may prohibit the introduction into its territory of *animals* if it considers that certain diseases exist in the *exporting country*, or *transit countries* which precede it in the itinerary, which are capable of being transmitted to its own *animals*. In the case of *transit countries*, the prohibition should not apply to bees which are transported in securely closed *vehicles* or *containers*.
- 4) An *importing country* may prohibit the introduction into its territory of *animals* if these are found, on examination at the *border post* by an *Official Veterinarian*, to be affected by, suspected of being affected by or infected with a disease capable of being transmitted to the *animals* in its territory.
Animals which are not accompanied by an *international veterinary certificate* conforming with the requirements of the *importing country* may also be refused entry.
In these circumstances, the *Veterinary Authority* of the *exporting country* shall be informed immediately, thereby providing an opportunity for confirming the findings or correcting the *certificate*.
However, the *importing country* may prescribe that the importation be placed immediately in quarantine in order to carry out clinical observation and biological examinations with a view to establishing a diagnosis.
If the diagnosis of an epizootic disease is confirmed, or if the *certificate* cannot be corrected, the *importing country* may take the following measures:
 - a) return the *animals* to the *exporting country*, if this measure does not involve transit through a third country;
 - b) slaughter and destroy in cases where return to the *exporting country* would be dangerous from the health point of view or impossible from a practical point of view.
- 5) *Animals*, accompanied by a valid *international veterinary certificate* and found to be healthy by the *Veterinary Authority* at the *border post*, shall be permitted to be imported and transported in accordance with the requirements of the *importing country* to the point of destination.

Article 5.7.2.

- 1) Any *importing country* should only accept into its territory:
 - a) semen,
 - b) oocytes or embryos,
 - c) *hatching eggs*,
 - d) brood-combs of bees,which are accompanied by an *international veterinary certificate*.
- 2) An *importing country* may require adequate advance notice regarding the proposed date of entry into its territory of any consignment of the above-mentioned products, stating the species, quantity, nature and packaging of the products, and the name of the *border post* to be used.
- 3) A country may prohibit the importation of the above-mentioned products into its territory if it considers that certain diseases exist in the *exporting country*, or in the *transit countries* which precede it in the itinerary, which are capable of being introduced by these products into its territory.

- 4) A country may prohibit the introduction into its territory of the above-mentioned products presented at one of its *border posts*, if they are not accompanied by an *international veterinary certificate* complying with the requirements of the *importing country*.

In these circumstances, the *Veterinary Authority* of the *exporting country* shall be notified at once, and the products may be returned to the *exporting country* or placed in quarantine and/or destroyed.

Article 5.7.3.

- 1) An *importing country* should only accept into its territory *meat* and products of animal origin intended for human consumption which comply with point 1 of Article 5.4.6.
- 2) An *importing country* may require adequate advance notice regarding the proposed date of entry into its territory of a consignment of *meat* or products of animal origin intended for human consumption together with information on the nature, quantity and packaging of the *meat* or products, and the name of the *border post* to be used.
- 3) If inspection of the consignment shows that the *meat* or the products of animal origin intended for human consumption might be a danger to the health of persons or *animals*, or if the *international veterinary certificate* is not correct or does not apply to the products, the *Veterinary Authority* of the *importing country* may cause the *meat* or products to be returned or be subjected to adequate treatment to ensure that they are safe. When the products are not returned, the *Veterinary Authority* of the *exporting country* shall be informed immediately, thereby providing an opportunity for confirming the findings.

Article 5.7.4.

- 1) An *importing country* should only accept into its territory products of animal origin intended for use in animal feeding, or for pharmaceutical or surgical or agricultural or industrial use which are accompanied by an *international veterinary certificate* provided by the relevant *Veterinary Authority* of the *exporting country*.
- 2) An *importing country* may require adequate advance notice regarding the proposed date of entry into its territory of a consignment of products of animal origin intended for use in animal feeding, or for pharmaceutical or surgical or agricultural or industrial use, together with information on the nature, quantity and packaging of these products, and the name of the *border post* to be used.
- 3) An *importing country* may prohibit the importation into its territory of products of animal origin intended for use in animal feeding, or for pharmaceutical or surgical or agricultural or industrial use if it considers that certain diseases exist in the *exporting country*, which are capable of being introduced by these products. There may also be prohibition of transit through countries where these diseases exist, except where the transport is carried out in sealed vehicles or containers.
- 4) When the *international veterinary certificates* have been examined and found to be correct, the importation of the above-mentioned products shall be permitted.
- 5) An *importing country* may require that the products of animal origin intended for use in animal feeding, or for pharmaceutical or surgical or agricultural or industrial use, be consigned to establishments approved by the *Veterinary Authority* and under its supervision.
- 6) If inspection of the consignment shows that the products are capable of endangering the health of persons or *animals*, or if the *international veterinary certificates* are not correct or do not apply to the products, the *Veterinary Authority* of the *importing country* may either return the products to the *exporting country* or cause them to be made safe.

When the products are not returned, the *Veterinary Authority* of the *exporting country* shall be informed immediately, thereby providing an opportunity for confirming the findings or correcting the *certificate*.

Article 5.7.5.

On the arrival at a *border post* of a *vehicle* transporting an *animal* or *animals* infected with any *listed disease*, the *vehicle* shall be considered as contaminated, and the *Veterinary Authority* shall apply the following measures:

- 1) *unloading* of the *vehicle* and immediate transportation of the *animal* or *animals*, in a leak-proof *vehicle* direct to:
 - a) an establishment approved by the *Veterinary Authority* for the *slaughter* of the *animal* or *animals* and the destruction or possibly sterilisation of their carcasses; or
 - b) a *quarantine station* or, in the absence of a *quarantine station*, to a place assigned in advance which is well isolated and near the *border post*;

- 2) *unloading* of the *vehicle* and immediate transportation of the litter, forage and any other potentially contaminated material to an establishment assigned in advance for their destruction, and strict application of the animal health measures required by the *importing country*;
- 3) *disinfection* of:
 - a) all baggage of the attendants;
 - b) all parts of the *vehicle* which were used in the transport, feeding, watering, moving and *unloading* of the *animal* or *animals*;
- 4) *disinfestation*, in cases where any insect *vector* diseases are present.

Article 5.7.6.

On the arrival at a *border post* of a *vehicle* transporting an *animal* or *animals* suspected of being affected with any *listed disease*, the *vehicle* shall be considered as being contaminated, and the *Veterinary Authority* may apply the measures provided in Article 5.7.5.

Article 5.7.7.

The *vehicle* shall no longer be considered as contaminated when the measures prescribed by the *Veterinary Authority* in accordance with Article 5.7.5. have been carried out.

The *vehicle* may then be allowed to enter.

Article 5.7.8.

Ships and aircraft should not be refused access to a port or airport for animal health reasons in cases of emergency.

Nevertheless, the ship or aircraft should be subjected to all of the animal health measures which the port or airport *Veterinary Authority* may consider necessary.

Article 5.7.9.

- 1) An aircraft transporting *animals* or animal products need not be regarded as coming from an *infected zone* solely because it landed in such a zone at one or more airports as long as these airports are not infected.
This should be considered direct transit provided no offloading of *animals* and animal products takes place.
 - 2) Any aircraft coming from a foreign country where animal diseases transmitted by insect *vectors* are present shall be subjected to *disinfestation* immediately after landing, except when such a *disinfestation* was carried out immediately before departure or during the flight.
-

NB: FIRST ADOPTED IN 1968.

CHAPTER 5.8.

INTERNATIONAL TRANSFER AND LABORATORY CONTAINMENT OF ANIMAL PATHOGENIC AGENTS

Article 5.8.1.

Object

To prevent the introduction and spread of animal diseases caused by pathogenic agents.

Article 5.8.2.

Introduction

- 1) The consequences of the introduction into a country of an infectious disease or an animal pathogenic agent or new strain of pathogenic agent from which it is currently free, are potentially very serious. This is because animal health, human health, the agricultural economy and trade may all be adversely affected to a greater or a lesser degree. Countries will already have in place a range of measures, such as requirements for pre-import testing and quarantine, to prevent such introductions through the importation of live *animals* or their products.
- 2) However, there is also the *risk* that disease may occur as a result of the accidental release of animal pathogenic agents from laboratories that are using them for various purposes such as research, diagnosis or the manufacture of vaccines. Such pathogenic agents may already occur in the country or they may have been imported deliberately or inadvertently. It is therefore necessary to have in place measures to prevent their accidental release. These measures may be applied either at national borders by prohibiting or controlling the importation of specified pathogenic agents or their carriers (see Article 5.8.4.) or within national boundaries by specifying the conditions under which laboratories must handle them. In practice, a combination of external and internal controls is likely to be applied depending on the risk to animal health posed by the pathogenic agent in question.

Article 5.8.3.

Classification of pathogenic agents

Pathogenic agents should be categorised in accordance with the risk they pose to both human and animal health. They are grouped into four risk categories. Detailed information is provided in the *Terrestrial Manual*.

Article 5.8.4.

Importation of animal pathogenic agents

- 1) The importation of any animal pathogenic agent, pathological material or organisms carrying the pathogenic agent should be permitted only under an import licence issued by the relevant authority. The import licence should contain conditions appropriate to the risk posed by the pathogenic agent and, in relation to air transport, the appropriate standards of the International Air Transport Association concerning the packaging and transport of hazardous substances. The import licence for risk groups 2, 3 or 4 should only be granted to a laboratory that is licensed to handle the particular pathogenic agent as in Article 5.8.5.
- 2) When considering applications to import pathological material from other countries, the authorities should have regard to the nature of the material, the *animal* from which it is derived, the susceptibility of that *animal* to various diseases and the animal health situation of the country of origin. It may be advisable to require that material is pre-treated before import to minimise the risk of inadvertent introduction of a pathogenic agent.

Article 5.8.5.

Laboratory containment of animal pathogenic agents

- 1) Guidance on the laboratory containment of animal pathogenic agents and on the import conditions applicable to them is found in Chapter 1.1.4. of the *Terrestrial Manual*. Additional guidance on human safety is also found in this chapter.
- 2) A laboratory should be allowed to possess and handle animal pathogenic agents in group 3 or 4 only if it can satisfy the relevant authority that it can provide containment facilities appropriate to the group. However, depending on the particular circumstances of an individual country, the authority might decide that the possession and handling of certain pathogenic agents in group 2 should also be controlled. The authority should first inspect the facilities to ensure they are adequate and then issue a licence specifying all relevant conditions. There should also be a requirement for appropriate records to be kept and for the authority to be notified if it is suspected that a material being handled contains a pathogenic agent not covered by the licence. The authority should visit the laboratory periodically to ensure compliance with the licence conditions. It is important that authority staff carrying out the visit should not have any contact with species susceptible to the pathogenic agents being handled at the laboratory for a specified period after visiting the laboratory. The length of this period will depend on the pathogenic agent.
- 3) Licences should specify:
 - a) how the pathogenic agent is to be transported and the disposal of the packaging;
 - b) the name of the person responsible for the work;
 - c) whether the pathogenic agent may be used *in vivo* (and if so whether in laboratory animals or other animals) and/or only *in vitro*;
 - d) how the pathogenic agent and any experimental animals should be disposed of when the work is completed;
 - e) limitations on contact by laboratory staff with species susceptible to the pathogenic agents being used;
 - f) conditions for the transfer of pathogenic agents to other laboratories;
 - g) specific conditions relating to the appropriate containment level and *biosecurity* procedures and practices.

NB: FIRST ADOPTED IN 1968; MOST RECENT UPDATE ADOPTED IN 2008.

CHAPTER 5.9.

QUARANTINE MEASURES APPLICABLE TO NON-HUMAN PRIMATES

Article 5.9.1.

General principles

This chapter defines the standards to be followed in the case of a non-human primate being imported directly from a country within the natural range of the animal's species concerned, and where only limited health guarantees can be given, or in cases where Article 6.12.2., last paragraph, applies.

Quarantine programmes are designed to both facilitate the detection of communicable diseases and to make accurate assessments of the overall health status of individuals or groups entering a new population. Prudence dictates that for public health and safety the infectious disease status of all incoming *animals* is considered at best uncertain. Non-human primates can harbour infectious organisms that cause only mild disease for their species but can be severely pathogenic to other species of non-human primate, either in captive collections or in wild populations, or to humans.

Quarantines are defined by their duration and by the activities and procedures practised to assess health status.

The minimal duration of the quarantine period, as defined by Articles 6.12.4., 6.12.5. and 6.12.6., may be extended until any adverse events during the quarantine period are fully investigated and resolved, and no evidence of transmission of infectious agents within the quarantined group exists.

Quarantine activities and procedures should be directed towards defining as much as possible the health status of quarantined *animals*, while protecting persons and other *animals* from inadvertent exposure to communicable agents and providing for the health and well-being of quarantined *animals*. Therefore, quarantine practices should:

- 1) encompass measures which effectively isolate *animals* or groups of *animals* thereby preventing the spread of communicable diseases;
- 2) protect the health of personnel working in the quarantine;
- 3) encompass measures to promote the health and welfare of quarantined *animals* including social and behavioural needs of non-human primates.

At a minimum, quarantine programmes should have the following key components:

Article 5.9.2.

Management policies

Management should restrict access to the quarantine facility to authorised and essential personnel, who do not pose a communicable disease risk to non-human primates.

Management should instruct personnel about the potential risks of working in the quarantine facility, and the need to conduct all activities in a safe manner. There should be periodic retraining of personnel.

Management may prohibit persons who may be at increased risk of acquiring *infections* or for whom an *infection* might be unusually hazardous from the quarantine facility. Management may require other personnel health promotion activities, such as those mentioned in point 5 of Article 6.12.7.

Article 5.9.3.

Quarantine facility infrastructure design and equipment

- 1) The construction or location, and the operation of the quarantine facility should provide for strict segregation and isolation of quarantined *animals* from other *animals* and from personnel not essential to the operation of the quarantine.
- 2) Methods to attain this isolation include:
 - a) The use of security measures such as physical barriers and procedural access control systems.
 - b) As part of the security system, a hazard warning sign should be posted at the entrance to the quarantine stating that exposure to infectious diseases may occur in the quarantine. The names and telephone numbers of contact persons responsible for the quarantine area should be provided, and all special requirements for entering the quarantine area should be listed.
 - c) The implementation of an effective rodent, *feral animal*, and insect control programme, which does not pose a health risk to the quarantined *animals*.
 - d) The complete physical separation of groups of quarantined *animals* from other groups of quarantined *animals* to prevent exposure to and the introduction of infectious agents from one group to another during the quarantine period. As a rule, only *animals* arriving in one shipment from the same exporter should be grouped together. *Animals* may not be exchanged between groups or groups mixed during the quarantine period, unless the newly formed group restarts the entire quarantine process.
- 3) The quarantine facility should be designed to allow for the secure holding of quarantined *animals* and to allow for the safe, easy and efficient cleaning and decontamination of the animal holding area and the access area during and after use.
 - a) A quarantine facility should consist of a minimum of two discrete areas physically separated from the outside and from each other, including an access area where clothes, footwear and protective articles are changed, and where locker, hand-washing and, if possible, showering facilities are provided. Procedures should be in place to prevent the cross-contamination of clothes and footwear worn outside the quarantine facility from potentially contaminated protective clothing worn inside the animal holding area.
 - b) Animal holding room wall, floor, and ceiling surfaces should be water resistant to facilitate cleaning and disinfecting. Any holes or penetrations in these surfaces should be sealed or be capable of being sealed to facilitate fumigation or space decontamination. Doors to animal rooms should open inward, and should always be kept closed when *animals* are present. Any windows should be closed and sealed, unless the facility is sufficiently separated (distance, fences, other means of separation) from non-quarantined area.
 - c) In facilities that are operated with the windows closed and sealed, a ventilation system should be operated and monitored in such a manner to assure the provision of an optimal isolation of these *animals*, while also providing for their health and comfort. The direction of the airflow in the quarantine facility should be inward from the outside of the quarantine facility, to quarantine access areas, to animal holding rooms. Air exhausted or re-circulated within the facility must be filtered. In addition, exhaust air should be dispersed away from the building and other occupied areas. Heating, ventilating, and air-conditioning systems should be designed so that their operation can be continued, even at reduced capacity in the event of electrical or other support system failure.
 - d) If floor drains are present, their drain traps should always be filled with water or a suitable disinfectant.
 - e) A hand washing sink should be available in the animal holding room for personnel usage.
 - f) Adequate equipment and space should be available both in the animal holding area and in the quarantine facility in general for the adequate decontamination and the proper disposal or processing and storing of all supplies and equipment used in the quarantine.

Article 5.9.4.

Personnel protection practices

- 1) Eating, drinking, smoking and storing of food for human use should not be permitted in the quarantine facility.
- 2) All staff entering the quarantine should wear (preferably disposable) protective clothing and devices.
- 3) Protective clothing, gloves, and mucus membrane protection should not be used in more than one quarantine animal holding room. This may require the changing of protective clothing by staff as they go between rooms in the performance of their duties.
- 4) Foot or shoe baths should be provided and used at the exits of the animal holding area and of each animal holding room. They should be changed often enough to remain fresh and free of organic matter.

- 5) Showering after contact with non-human primates, their body waste or secretions or at a minimum before leaving the quarantine facility is highly recommended.
- 6) Intermittent and frequent hand washing while working in the quarantine facility is highly recommended. This is especially important as protective gloves may become inadvertently torn or ruptured.
- 7) Baseline serum samples from quarantine personnel should be collected and stored. Additional serum samples may be collected periodically, as an aid to epidemiological investigations.
- 8) Management should encourage quarantine staff developing signs of illness to seek medical attention.

Article 5.9.5.

Husbandry and animal care practices

- 1) If a quarantine facility maintains more than one animal holding room, husbandry practices should be designed so as to minimise the risk of transmission of zoonotic diseases between rooms. In particular, there should be separate cleaning tools and other animal care equipment for each room. All cages and other non-disposable equipment should be decontaminated when removed from the room.
- 2) All husbandry and animal care procedures should be carefully performed to minimise the creation of aerosols and limit the spread of potentially infectious materials, while also providing for the appropriate care and well-being of the *animals* concerned.
Waste, uneaten food, and other potentially contaminated materials leaving the quarantine area must be suitably contained, while being transported to a site of physical or chemical decontamination, or incineration.
- 3) Work surfaces should always be decontaminated after use or whenever soiled. Equipment should not be stored on the floor.
- 4) Care should be taken to avoid scratches, bites or other injuries from non-human primates through anaesthesia, tranquillisation or physical restraint of the *animals* during handling. Physical restraint should only be performed by personnel knowledgeable and experienced in handling non-human primates, and it should never be done by persons working alone.
- 5) Caution must be used to prevent injury to personnel or the spread of infectious materials between *animals* through the use of potentially contaminated needles, scalpels, or other sharp instruments, particularly during the disposal of these items. Only single use disposable syringes and needles, scalpel blades, and other sharp items should be used. They should never be recapped, bent, broken or otherwise manipulated by hand, and they should be discarded into puncture-resistant containers kept as close to the work site as practical. Containers should be decontaminated before disposal.
- 6) If multiple-dose vials of materials or medications are used, care must be taken to avoid contamination of such vials and their contents between uses.
- 7) Dead *animals* should be removed from their animal holding room and taken to a dedicated necropsy room in a sealed, impervious, leak-proof container or bag.
- 8) Responsible quarantine officials should immediately notify the *Veterinary Authority* of any severe and/or unusual illnesses and deaths occurring in quarantined non-human primates.
- 9) After *animals* are removed from quarantine, a thorough decontamination of the animal holding room is necessary whether there is a history of communicable disease presence in the room or not.

NB: FIRST ADOPTED IN 1999; MOST RECENT UPDATE ADOPTED IN 2011.

CHAPTER 5.10.

MODEL VETERINARY CERTIFICATES FOR INTERNATIONAL TRADE IN LIVE ANIMALS, HATCHING EGGS AND PRODUCTS OF ANIMAL ORIGIN

Article 5.10.1.

Notes for guidance on the veterinary certificates for international trade in live animals, hatching eggs and products of animal origin

1. General

Please complete the certificate on paper in capitals. To confirm an option, mark the box with a cross (X). Ensure that no portion of certificate is left blank in a manner that would allow it to be amended. Non-applicable fields may be crossed out.

2. Part I. Details of dispatched consignment

Country:	Name of the country that issues the certificate.
Box I.1.	Name and full address of the natural or legal person dispatching the consignment. Information on telephone and fax numbers or e-mail address is recommended.
Box I.2.	The certificate reference number is the number used by the Veterinary Authority of the country to identify the certificate.
Box I.3.	Name of the Veterinary Authority.
Box I.4.	Name and full address of the natural or legal person to whom the consignment is destined at the time the certificate is issued.
Box I.5.	Name of the country from which the animals, hatching eggs, oocytes, embryos, semen or brood combs are being exported. For products, name the countries where the finished products were produced, manufactured or packed. "ISO code" refers to the international standard two-letter code (ISO 3166-1 Alpha-2 Code) for a country produced by the International Organization for Standardization.
Box I.6.	Name of the zone or compartment of origin, if relevant, in part II of the certificate.
Box I.7.	Name of the country of destination. "ISO code" refers to the international standard two-letter code (ISO 3166-1 Alpha-2 Code) for a country produced by the International Organization for Standardization.
Box I.8.	Name of the zone or compartment of destination, if relevant, in part II of the certificate.
Box I.9.	Name and full address of the places from which the animals or products are being exported; and official approval or registration number when required. For animals and hatching eggs: the establishments, wildlife or hunting reserves. For semen: the artificial insemination centre. For oocytes and embryos: the name, address and official approval number of the collection team (not the premises of storage).

Box I.9. (contd)	For products of animal origin: the premises from which the products are to be dispatched.
Box I.10.	Name of the place from which the animals or products are being shipped (this will be a land, sea or airport).
Box I.11.	Date of departure. For animals include the expected time of departure.
Box I.12.	Details of the means of transport. Identification of the means of transport at the time the certificate is issued: for air transport, the flight number; for maritime transport, the name of the vessel; for rail transport, the number of the train and the wagon and for road transport, the registration number of the road vehicle and the number of the trailer where used.
Box I.13.	Name of expected border post and, if available, its UN/LOCODE (refer to the United Nations Code for Trade and Transport Locations).
Box I.14.	CITES permit numbers if the commodity concerns species listed in the Convention on International Trade in Endangered Species of Wild Fauna and Flora.
Box I.15.	Describe the commodity or use the titles as they appear in the Harmonised System of the World Customs Organization.
Box I.16.	Heading or HS Code of the Harmonized System set up by the World Customs Organization.
Box I.17.	Total quantity of the commodity. For animals, hatching eggs and animal products (semen, oocytes, embryos) give the total count of animals, eggs or straws. For products give the gross weight and the net weight in kg of the whole consignment.
Box I.18.	Temperature of products for transport and storage.
Box I.19.	Total number of boxes, cages or stalls in which the animals or hatching eggs are being transported. Total number of cryogenic containers for semen, oocytes, embryos. Total number of packages for products.
Box I.20.	Identify the containers/seal numbers where required.
Box I.21.	Identify the type of packaging of products as defined in Recommendation No. 21 – Code of Passengers, Type of Cargo, Package and Packaging Materials of UN/CEFACT (United Nation Centre for Trade Facilitation and Electronic Business).
Box I.22.	Intended use of the imported animals or products. Breeding/rearing: applies to animal for breeding or rearing and hatching eggs. Slaughter: applies to animal for slaughter. Wildlife management: applies to wildlife for the purpose of managing populations. Pet: applies to animals kept for companionship or enjoyment. This excludes livestock species. Exhibition/education: applies to animals exhibited in zoos, circuses or sporting activities or for educational purposes. Human consumption: applies to products intended for human consumption. Animal feed: means any product of animal origin (single or multiple), whether processed, semi-processed or raw, which is intended to be fed to animals. Further processing: applies to products of animal origin which have to be further processed before being suitable for end use. Technical use: applies to products not intended for human or animal consumption. These include animal products that are intended for use in the pharmaceutical, medical, cosmetic and other industries. Such products may be subjected to extensive further processing. Other: intended for purposes not listed elsewhere in this classification.

Box I.23.	Mark, if appropriate.
Box I.24.	Details on the nature of the commodity sufficient to identify it.
	For animals and hatching eggs: Species (scientific name); Identification system; Identification number or other identification details; Quantity and if required, Breed / Category (e.g. heifer, steer, layer, broiler); Age; Sex. For animals holding an official passport, the international animal passport number should be provided, and a copy of the details on the passport attached to the certificate.
	For oocytes, embryos and semen: Species (Scientific name); Identification mark in accordance with the International Embryo Transfer Society (IETS) or the International Committee for Animal Recording (ICAR); Collection date; Approval number of the centre/team; Identification of the donor animal; Quantity. If required, Breed.
	For bees and brood combs: Category means hive with bees, swarm, consignment of bees (worker bees, drones), queen bees, brood-combs, royal cells, etc. Identification details include peculiarities (e.g. Marks or age or weight or surface). Breed / Variety if required.
	For products of animal origin: Species (Scientific name); Nature of commodity; Treatment type; approval number of establishments (e.g. slaughterhouse/abattoir; cutting plant; processing plant; cold store); Lot identification/date code; Quantity; Number of packages; Net weight.

3. Part II. Zoosanitary information

Box II.	Complete this part in accordance with the requirements agreed between the Veterinary Authorities of the importing and exporting countries in accordance with the recommendations in the Terrestrial Code.
Box II.a.	Reference number: see box I.2.
Official veterinarian	Name, address, official position, date of signature and official stamp of the Veterinary Services.

Article 5.10.2.

Model veterinary certificate for international trade in live animals and hatching eggs

COUNTRIES:

Part I: Details of dispatched consignment	I.1. Consignor: Name: Address:	I.2. Certificate reference number: I.3. Veterinary Authority:	
	I.4. Consignee: Name: Address:		
	I.5. Country of origin: ISO Code*:	I.6. Zone or compartment of origin**:	
	I.7. Country of destination: ISO Code*:	I.8. Zone or compartment of destination**:	
	I.9. Place of origin: Name: Address:		
	I.10. Place of shipment:	I.11. Date of departure:	
	I.12. Means of transport: Aeroplane <input type="checkbox"/> Ship <input type="checkbox"/> Railway wagon <input type="checkbox"/> Road vehicle <input type="checkbox"/> Other <input type="checkbox"/> Identification:	I.13. Expected border post:	
		I.14. CITES permit No(s)**:	
		I.15. Description of commodity:	I.16. Commodity code (HS code): I.17. Total quantity:
		I.18.	I.19. Total number of packages:
		I.20. Identification of container/seal number:	I.21.
		I.22. Commodities intended for use as: Breeding/rearing <input type="checkbox"/> Competition <input type="checkbox"/> Slaughter <input type="checkbox"/> Wildlife management <input type="checkbox"/> Pets <input type="checkbox"/> Exhibition/education <input type="checkbox"/> Other <input type="checkbox"/>	
		I.23. For import or admission: Definitive import <input type="checkbox"/> Re-entry <input type="checkbox"/> Temporary admission <input type="checkbox"/>	
		I.24. Identification of commodities: Species (Scientific name): Breed*/Category*: Identification system: Identification number/details: Age*: Sex*: Quantity:	

* Optional.

** If referenced in Part II.

COUNTRIES:

<p>Part II: Zoosanitary information</p>	<p>II.a. Certificate reference number:</p> <p>The undersigned Official Veterinarian certifies that the animals and hatching eggs described above satisfy the following requirements:</p> <p>Official Veterinarian: Name and address (in capital letters): Date: Stamp:</p> <p>Official position: Signature:</p>
--	---

Article 5.10.3.

Model veterinary certificate for international trade in oocytes, embryos or semen

COUNTRIES:

Part I: Details of dispatched consignment	I.1. Consignor: Name: Address:	I.2. Certificate reference number: I.3. Veterinary Authority:
	I.4. Consignee: Name: Address:	
	I.5. Country of origin: ISO Code*:	I.6. Zone or compartment of origin**:
	I.7. Country of destination: ISO Code*:	I.8. Zone or compartment of destination**:
	I.9. Place of origin: Name: Address:	
	I.10. Place of shipment:	I.11. Date of departure:
	I.12. Means of transport: Aeroplane <input type="checkbox"/> Ship <input type="checkbox"/> Railway wagon <input type="checkbox"/> Road vehicle <input type="checkbox"/> Other <input type="checkbox"/> Identification:	I.13. Expected border post: I.14. CITES permit No(s)**:
	I.15. Description of commodity:	I.16. Commodity code (HS code): I.17. Total quantity:
	I.18. Temperature of the product: Ambient <input type="checkbox"/> Chilled <input type="checkbox"/> Frozen <input type="checkbox"/>	I.19. Total number of packages:
	I.20. Identification of container/seal number:	I.21. Type of packaging:
I.22. Commodities intended for use as: Human consumption <input type="checkbox"/> Animal feed <input type="checkbox"/> Further processing <input type="checkbox"/> Technical use <input type="checkbox"/> Other <input type="checkbox"/>		
I.23.		
I.24. Identification of commodities: Species (Scientific name): Nature of commodity*: Treatment type: Approval of number of establishments: Number of packages: Net weight: Lot ID/date code:		

* Optional.

** If referenced in Part II.

COUNTRIES:

Part II: Zoosanitary information	II.a. Certificate reference number:
	The undersigned Official Veterinarian certifies that the oocytes, embryos and semen described above satisfy the following requirements:
Official Veterinarian: Name and address (in capital letters): Date: Stamp:	
Official position: Signature:	

Article 5.10.4.

Model veterinary certificate for international trade in products of animal origin

COUNTRIES:

Part I: Details of dispatched consignment	I.1. Consignor: Name: Address:	I.2. Certificate reference number: I.3. Veterinary Authority:
	I.4. Consignee: Name: Address:	
	I.5. Country of origin: ISO Code*:	I.6. Zone or compartment of origin**:
	I.7. Country of destination: ISO Code*:	I.8. Zone or compartment of destination**:
	I.9. Place of origin: Name: Address:	
	I.10. Place of shipment:	I.11. Date of departure:
	I.12. Means of transport: Aeroplane <input type="checkbox"/> Ship <input type="checkbox"/> Railway wagon <input type="checkbox"/> Road vehicle <input type="checkbox"/> Other <input type="checkbox"/> Identification:	I.13. Expected border post: I.14. CITES permit No(s)**:
	I.15. Description of commodity:	I.16. Commodity code (HS code): I.17. Total quantity:
	I.18. Temperature of the product: Ambient <input type="checkbox"/> Chilled <input type="checkbox"/> Frozen <input type="checkbox"/>	I.19. Total number of packages:
	I.20. Identification of container/seal number:	I.21. Type of packaging:
I.22. Commodities intended for use as: Human consumption <input type="checkbox"/> Animal feed <input type="checkbox"/> Further processing <input type="checkbox"/> Technical use <input type="checkbox"/> Other <input type="checkbox"/>		
I.23.		
I.24. Identification of commodities: Species (Scientific name): Nature of the commodity: Approval number of establishments: Number of packages: Net weight: Lot ID/date code:	Treatment type:	

* Optional.

** If referenced in Part II.

COUNTRIES:

Part II: Zoosanitary information	II.a. Certificate reference number:
	The undersigned Official Veterinarian certifies that the products of animal origin described above satisfy the following requirements:
Official Veterinarian: Name and address (in capital letters): Date: Stamp:	
Official position: Signature:	

Article 5.10.5.

Model veterinary certificate for international trade in bees and brood combs

COUNTRIES:

Part I: Details of dispatched consignment	I.1. Consignor: Name: Address:	I.2. Certificate reference number: I.3. Veterinary Authority:
	I.4. Consignee: Name: Address:	
	I.5. Country of origin: ISO Code*:	I.6. Zone or compartment of origin**:
	I.7. Country of destination: ISO Code*:	I.8. Zone or compartment of destination**:
	I.9. Place of origin: Name: Address:	
	I.10. Place of shipment:	I.11. Date of departure:
	I.12. Means of transport: Aeroplane <input type="checkbox"/> Ship <input type="checkbox"/> Railway wagon <input type="checkbox"/> Road vehicle <input type="checkbox"/> Other <input type="checkbox"/> Identification:	I.13. Expected border post: I.14. CITES permit No(s)**:
	I.15. Description of commodity:	I.16. Commodity code (HS code): I.17. Total quantity:
	I.18.	I.19. Total number of packages:
	I.20. Identification of container/seal number:	I.21.
I.22. Commodities intended for use as: Breeding/rearing <input type="checkbox"/> Other <input type="checkbox"/>		
I.23.		
I.24. Identification of commodities: Category: Quantity:	Breed*/Variety*: Identification details:	

* Optional.

** If referenced in Part II.

COUNTRIES:

Part II: Zoosanitary information	II.a. Certificate reference number:
	The undersigned Official Veterinarian certifies that the bees and brood combs described above satisfy the following requirements:
Official Veterinarian: Name and address (in capital letters): Date: Stamp:	
Official position: Signature:	

NB: FIRST ADOPTED IN 1968; MOST RECENT UPDATE ADOPTED IN 2011.

CHAPTER 5.11.

MODEL VETERINARY CERTIFICATE FOR INTERNATIONAL MOVEMENT OF DOGS, CATS AND FERRETS ORIGINATING FROM COUNTRIES CONSIDERED INFECTED WITH RABIES

I. OWNER

Name and address:.....
.....
.....
.....

II. DESCRIPTION

Species of animal:.....

Age or date of birth:

Sex:.....

Breed:

Colour:

Coat type and marking/Distinguishing marks:.....
.....
.....
.....

Identification number, location on the animal and date of marking (see note 1)

III. ADDITIONAL INFORMATION

Country of origin:

Countries visited
over the past six months
as declared by the owner
(give dates)

IV. VACCINATION (Rabies)

I the undersigned declare herewith that I have vaccinated the animal described in Part II, or I have seen evidence that the animal has been vaccinated against rabies as shown below.

Date of vaccination (dd/mm/yy)	Name of vaccine (see note 2)	1. Manufacturing laboratory 2. Batch number 3. Expiry date
		1. 2. 3.

PERIOD OF VALIDITY OF VACCINATION FOR INTERNATIONAL MOVEMENT (see note 3)		Name (in capital letters) and signature of the Certifying Veterinarian (see note 6)
from (dd/mm/yy)	to (dd/mm/yy)	

V. SEROLOGICAL TESTING (Rabies)

I the undersigned declare herewith that a blood sample has been taken from the animal described in Part II with the following result from the official diagnostic laboratory which carried out the antibody titration test (see note 4).

Date of sampling (dd/mm/yy)	Name and address of the official diagnostic laboratory	Result of the antibody titration test (in International Units [IU]/ml)

PERIOD OF VALIDITY OF SEROLOGICAL TESTING FOR INTERNATIONAL MOVEMENT (see note 4)		Name (in capital letters) and signature of the Certifying Veterinarian (see note 6)
from (dd/mm/yy)	to (dd/mm/yy)	

VI. CLINICAL EXAMINATION (Rabies)

I the undersigned declare herewith that I have examined the animal described in Part II on the date indicated below, or that I have seen evidence that the animal was examined on that date, and that the animal was found to be free from clinical signs of rabies (see note 5).

Date (dd/mm/yy)	Name (in capital letters) and signature of the Certifying Veterinarian (see note 6)

NOTE

- 1) The identification should be by a permanent marking. The identification number stated in the certificate should be identical to that on the animal. When electronic identification is used, the type of microchip and the name of the manufacturer should be specified.
- 2) Only vaccines produced in compliance with the recommendations of the *Terrestrial Manual* should be used.
- 3) Vaccination or re-vaccination should be carried out in accordance with the recommendations of the manufacturer.
- 4) When serological testing is required, the animal should have been subjected not less than 3 months and not more than 12 months prior to its introduction into the importing country, to an antibody titration test carried out by an official diagnostic laboratory approved by the Competent Authority of the exporting country, as prescribed in the *Terrestrial Manual* with a positive result of at least 0.5 IU.
- 5) The clinical examination referred to in Part VI of the certificate must be carried out as per the requirements in Chapter 8.15.

The Competent Authority of the importing country may require the placing of the animals which do not comply with any of the above-mentioned conditions in a quarantine station located on its territory; the conditions of stay in quarantine are laid down by the legislation of the importing country.

- 6) The certification should be undertaken in accordance with Chapters 5.1. and 5.2.
- 7) If so required, the certificate should be written in the language of the importing country. In such circumstances, it should also be written in a language understood by the certifying veterinarian.

NB: FIRST ADOPTED IN 1968; MOST RECENT UPDATE ADOPTED IN 2012.

CHAPTER 5.12.

MODEL PASSPORT FOR INTERNATIONAL MOVEMENT OF COMPETITION HORSES

INTRODUCTION

The object is to establish criteria which will assist in the unrestricted movement of competition horses between countries or zones of countries, while still protecting the health status of the respective countries or zones. To achieve this aim, it is intended that the passport of any competition horse shall serve as a unique identification document including harmonised information in the form of records of vaccinations and results of laboratory tests.

In addition to the passport, a separate veterinary certificate may be required by the importing country.

CONTENTS OF THE PASSPORT

The passport should contain:

1. Details of ownership

Information regarding the name and address of the owner of the horse should be indicated in accordance with Appendix A, and be authenticated by the National Federation issuing the passport.

2. Identification of the horse

The horse should be identified by the competent authority in accordance with Appendices B and C.

3. Movement records

The identification of the horse should be checked at each time it is required by rules and regulations and recorded in accordance with Appendix D.

4. Vaccination record

All vaccinations should be recorded in accordance with Appendix E (equine influenza only) and Appendix F (all other vaccinations).

5. Laboratory health tests

The result of every test undertaken for a transmissible disease will be recorded in accordance with Appendix G.

BASIC HEALTH REQUIREMENTS

Appendix H is a document which outlines the basic health requirements which apply to the international movement of competition horses.

For the movement of competition horses between countries or zones of countries with a different health status, Veterinary Services may require additional veterinary certification.

The reverse side of Appendix H lists diseases which may be considered for inclusion in the veterinary certificate.

Appendix A

Propriétaires successifs	Details of ownership	Detalles del propietario
1.La nationalité du cheval est celle de son propriétaire.	1.The nationality of the horse is that of its owner.	1.La nacionalidad del caballo es la nacionalidad de su propietario.
2.Lors de tout changement de propriétaire, le passeport doit être immédiatement retourné, en mentionnant le nom et l'adresse du nouveau propriétaire, à la Fédération équestre nationale, qui le remettra au nouveau propriétaire après enregistrement.	2. On change of ownership the passport must immediately be lodged with the National Equestrian Federation, giving the name and address of the new owner, for re-registration and forwarding to the new owner.	2.En caso de cambio de propietario, el pasaporte debe ser entregado inmediatamente, indicando el nombre y la dirección del nuevo propietario, a la Federación Ecuestre Nacional, que lo remitirá al nuevo propietario después de haberlo registrado.
3.S'il y a plus d'un seul propriétaire, ou si le cheval appartient à une société, on indiquera dans le passeport le nom de la personne responsable du cheval et sa nationalité. Si les propriétaires sont de nationalités différentes, ils doivent préciser la nationalité du cheval.	3. If there is more than one owner or the horse is owned by a company, then the name of the individual responsible for the horse shall be entered in the passport together with his nationality. If the owners are of different nationalities, they have to determine the nationality of the horse.	3.Si el caballo tiene más de un propietario, o si pertenece a una sociedad, el nombre y la nacionalidad de la persona responsable del caballo deben inscribirse en el pasaporte. Si los propietarios son de diferente nacionalidad, deben precisar la nacionalidad del caballo.
4. Lorsqu'il y a location du cheval, dûment enregistrée par une Fédération équestre nationale avec accord de la Fédération équestre internationale, celle-ci doit être mentionnée sur cette page par cette Fédération nationale.	4.When the Federation Equestre Internationale approves the leasing of a horse by a National Equestrian Federation, the details of these transactions must be recorded on this page by the National Equestrian Federation concerned.	4.Cuando la Federación Ecuestre Internacional aprueba el alquiler de un caballo por una Federación Ecuestre Nacional, la Federación Ecuestre Nacional debe registrar los detalles de la transacción en esta página.

Date d'enregistrement par la Fédération équestre nationale	Nom du propriétaire	Adresse du propriétaire	Nationalité du propriétaire	Signature du propriétaire	Cachet de la Fédération équestre nationale et signature officielle
Date of registration by the National Equestrian Federation	Name of owner	Address of owner	Nationality of owner	Signature of owner	National Equestrian Federation stamp and signature of the secretary
Fecha de registro por la Federación Ecuestre Nacional	Nombre del propietario	Dirección del propietario	Nacionalidad del propietario	Firma del propietario	Sello de la Federación Ecuestre Nacional y firma oficial

Appendix B

(1) N° d'identification :

Identification No.:

Nº de identificación:

(2) Nom :

Name:

Nombre:

(3) Sexe :

Sex:

Sexo:

(4) Robe :

Colour:

Color:

(5) Race :

Breed:

Raza:

(6) par :

by:

por:

(7) et :

out of:

y:

(8) par :

by:

por:

(9) Date de naissance :

Date of foaling:

Nº de identificación:

(10) Lieu d'élevage :

Place where bred:

Lugar de cría

(11) Naisseur(s) :

Breeder(s):

Criador(es):

(12) Certificat d'origine validé le :

par :

Origin certificate validated on:

by:

Certificado de origen visado el:

por:

-Nom de l'autorité compétente :

Name of the competent authority:

Nombre de la autoridad competente:

-Adresse :

Address:

Dirección:

-N° de téléphone : - N° de télécopie :

Telephone No.: - Telecopy No.:

N° de teléfono: - N° de fax:

-Signature :

(nom en lettres capitales et qualité du signataire)

-Signature:

(Name in capital letters and capacity of signatory)

Firma:

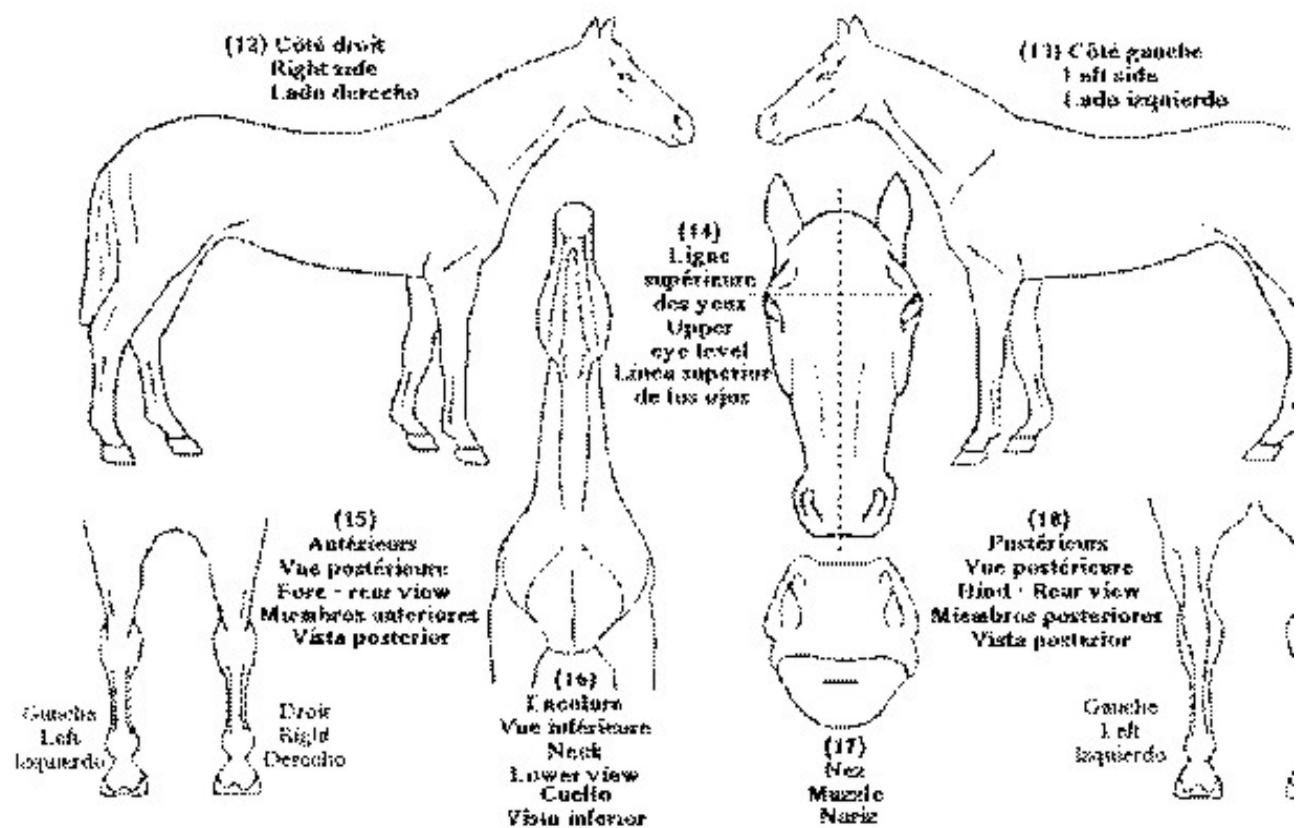
(Nombre en letras mayúsculas y calidad del firmante)

-Cachet

Stamp

Sello

Appendix C



(2) Nom :

Name:

Nombre:

(5) Race :

Breed:

Raza:

(3) Sexe :

Sex:

Sexo:

(4) Robe :

Colour:

Color:

(19) Signalement relevé sous la mère par :

Description taken with dam by:

Descripción registrada con la madre por:

Tête :

Head:

Cabeza:

Ant. G. :

Foreleg L.:

Ant. I.:

Ant. D. :

Foreleg R.:

Ant. D.:

Post. G. :

Hindleg L.:

Post. I.:

Post. D. :

Hindleg R.:

Post. D.:

Corps :

Body:

Cuerpo:

(21) Signature et cachet du vétérinaire agréé

(ou de l'autorité compétente)

Signature and stamp of qualified veterinary surgeon

(or competent authority)

Marques :

Markings:

Marcas:

Firma y sello del veterinario autorizado

(o de la autoridad competente)

(en lettres capitales)

(in capital letters)

(en letras mayúsculas)

Fait le (date) :

Made on (date):

A (fecha):

Date :

Date:

Fecha:

Appendix D

Contrôles d'identité du cheval décrit dans ce passeport	Identification of the horse described in this passport	Controles de identidad del caballo descrito en este pasaporte
L'identité du cheval doit être contrôlée chaque fois que les lois et règlements l'exigent : signer cette page signifie que le signalement du cheval présenté est conforme à celui de la page du signalement.	The identity of the horse must be checked each time it is required by the rules and regulations and certified that it conforms with the description given on the diagram page of this passport.	Se controlará la identidad del caballo cada vez que lo exijan las leyes y reglamentos, y se certificará, firmando esta página, que el caballo presentado corresponde al caballo descrito en este pasaporte.
Date	Ville et pays	Motif du contrôle (concours, certificat sanitaire, etc.)
Date	Town and country	Purpose of control (event, veterinary certificate, etc.)
Fecha	Ciudad y país	Motivo del control (concurso, certificado sanitario, etc)

Appendix E

GRIPPE ÉQUINE SEULEMENT
Enregistrement des vaccinations

Toute vaccination subie par le cheval doit être portée dans le cadre ci-dessous de façon lisible et précise avec le nom et la signature du vétérinaire.

EQUINE INFLUENZA ONLY
Vaccination record

Details of every vaccination which the horse undergoes must be entered clearly and in detail, and certified with the name and signature of the veterinarian.

GRIPE EQUINA SOLAMENTE
Registro de vacunas

Todas las vacunas administradas al caballo, así como el nombre y la firma del veterinario, deben figurar de manera clara y detallada en el cuadro siguiente.

Date	Lieu	Pays	Vaccin/Vaccine/Vacuna		Nom en lettres capitales et signature du vétérinaire
Date	Place	Country	Nom Name Nombre	Numéro de lot Batch number Número de lote	Name (in capital letters) and signature of the veterinarian Nombre (en letras mayúsculas) y firma del veterinario
Fecha	Lugar	País			

Appendix F**MALADIES AUTRES
QUE LA GRIPPE ÉQUINE
Enregistrement des vaccinations**

Toute vaccination subie par le cheval doit être portée dans le cadre ci-dessous de façon lisible et précise avec le nom et la signature du vétérinaire.

**DISEASES OTHER THAN
EQUINE INFLUENZA
Vaccination record**

Details of every vaccination which the horse undergoes must be entered clearly and in detail, and certified with the name and signature of the veterinarian.

**ENFERMEDADES DISTINTAS
DE LA GRIPE EQUINA
Registro de vacunas**

Todas las vacunas administradas al caballo, así como el nombre y la firma del veterinario, deben figurar de manera clara y detallada en el cuadro siguiente.

Date Date Fecha	Lieu Place Lugar	Pays Country País	Vaccin/Vaccine/Vacuna			Nom en lettres capitales et signature du vétérinaire Name (in capital letters) and signature of the veterinarian Nombre (en letras mayúsculas) y firma del veterinario
			Nom Name Nombre	Numéro de lot Batch number Número de lote	Maladie(s) Disease(s) Enfermedad(es)	

Appendix G

Contrôles sanitaires effectués par des laboratoires

Le résultat de tout contrôle effectué par un vétérinaire pour une maladie transmissible ou par un laboratoire agréé par le Service vétérinaire gouvernemental du pays doit être noté clairement et en détail par le vétérinaire qui représente l'autorité demandant le contrôle.

Laboratory health test

The result of every test undertaken for a transmissible disease by a veterinarian or a laboratory authorised by the Government Veterinary Service of the country must be entered clearly and in detail by the veterinarian acting on behalf of the authority requesting the test.

Controles sanitarios efectuados por laboratorios

El veterinario que representa a la autoridad que solicita el control sanitario debe inscribir en el cuadro siguiente, de manera clara y detallada, el resultado de cada control relativo a una enfermedad transmisible efectuado por un veterinario o por un Servicio Veterinario gubernamental.

Date	Maladies transmissibles concernées	Nature de l'examen	Résultat de l'examen	Laboratoire officiel ayant analysé le prélèvement	Nom en lettres capitales et signature du vétérinaire
Date	Transmissible diseases tested for	Type of test	Result of test	Official laboratory to which sample transmitted	Name (in capital letters) and signature of Veterinarian
Fecha	Enfermedades transmisibles examinadas	Tipo de examen	Resultado del examen	Laboratorio oficial que ha analizado la muestra	Nombre (en letras mayúsculas) y firma del veterinario

Appendix H

EXIGENCES SANITAIRES DE BASE - BASIC HEALTH REQUIREMENTS - REQUISITOS SANITARIOS BÁSICOS

Je soussigné certifie⁽¹⁾ que le cheval décrit dans le passeport n° délivré par satisfait aux conditions suivantes :

I, the undersigned, certify⁽¹⁾ that the horse described in the Passport No. issued by meets the following requirements:

El que suscribe certifica⁽¹⁾ que el caballo descrito en el pasaporte n° extendido por cumple con los siguientes requisitos:

- (a) il a été examiné ce jour, ne présente aucun signe clinique de maladie et est apte au transport ;
- (a)it has been examined today, shows no clinical sign of disease and is fit for transport;
- (a) ha sido examinado hoy, no presenta ningún signo clínico de enfermedad y se encuentra en condiciones de ser transportado;
- (b) il n'est pas destiné à l'abattage dans le cadre d'un programme national d'éradication d'une maladie transmissible ;
- (b) it is not intended for slaughter under a national programme of transmissible disease eradication;
- (b)no ha sido destinado al sacrificio sanitario en el marco de un programa nacional de erradicación de una enfermedad transmisible;
- (c) il ne provient pas d'une écurie mise en interdit pour des raisons zoosanitaires et n'a pas été en contact avec des équidés d'une écurie de ce type ;
- (c)it does not come from a holding which was subject to prohibition for animal health reasons nor had contact with equidae from a holding which was subject to such prohibition;
- (c)no procede de una cuadra sujeta a interdiccción por razones zoosanitarias ni ha estado en contacto con équidos procedentes de una cuadra sujeta a interdiccción;
- (d)à ma connaissance, après avoir dûment enquêté, il n'a pas été en contact avec des équidés atteints d'une maladie transmissible au cours des 15 jours précédent l'embarquement.
- (d)to the best of my knowledge and after due inquiry, it has not been in contact with equidae suffering from transmissible disease during 15 days prior to embarkation.
- (d)según me consta, tras haber efectuado las indagaciones pertinentes, no ha estado en contacto con équidos afectados de enfermedades transmisibles durante los 15 días anteriores a su embarque.

LE PRÉSENT CERTIFICAT EST VALABLE 10 JOURS À COMPTER DE LA DATE DE SA SIGNATURE.

THIS CERTIFICATE IS VALID FOR 10 DAYS FROM THE DATE OF SIGNATURE.

EL PRESENTE CERTIFICADO ES VÁLIDO 10 DÍAS A PARTIR DE LA FECHA DE SU FIRMA.

Date	Lieu	Pour des raisons épidémiologiques particulières, un certificat sanitaire séparé accompagne le présent passeport.	Nom en lettres capitales et signature du vétérinaire officiel
Date	Place	For special epizootic reasons a separate veterinary certificate accompanies this passport.	Name (in capital letters) and signature of official veterinarian
Fecha	Lugar	Por razones epidemiológicas particulares se adjunta al presente pasaporte un certificado sanitario.	Nombre en letras mayúsculas y firma del veterinario oficial

		Oui/non (barrer la mention inutile) Yes/No (Delete One) Si/no (tachar lo que no procede)	
		Oui/non (barrer la mention inutile) Yes/No (Delete One) Si/no (tachar lo que no procede)	

(1) Ce document doit être signé dans les 48 heures précédant le déplacement international du cheval.

(1) The document should be signed within the 48 hours prior to international movement of the horse.

(1) Este documento debe ser firmado 48 horas antes del desplazamiento internacional del caballo.

**LIST OF DISEASES WHICH SHOULD BE CONSIDERED FOR INCLUSION IN THE VETERINARY CERTIFICATE
WHICH ACCOMPANIES THE PASSPORT**

- 1) African horse sickness
 - 2) Dourine
 - 3) Glanders
 - 4) Equine encephalomyelitis (all types)
 - 5) Equine infectious anaemia
 - 6) Rabies
 - 7) Anthrax
-

NB: FIRST ADOPTED IN 1998; MOST RECENT UPDATE ADOPTED IN 2008.

1 *For the movement of competition horses between countries or zones of countries with a different health status, Veterinary Services may require additional veterinary certification.*

CHAPTER 5.13.

MODEL VETERINARY CERTIFICATE FOR INTERNATIONAL TRADE IN LABORATORY ANIMALS

Article 5.13.1.

Introduction and scope

Transportation of laboratory animals between institutes is a specialised and important activity supporting scientific research. The use, and transportation, of laboratory animals is essential to some types of medical and veterinary research.

The majority of laboratory animals used and transported are rats, mice, and fish. Other species, including guinea pigs, ferrets, gerbils, hamsters, rabbits, cats, dogs, pigs, amphibians, and a few species of non-human primates are used in relatively small numbers.

This chapter applies to all *animals* except bees.

Article 5.13.2.

Notes for guidance on the use of the veterinary certificate

1. General

Please complete the certificate on paper in capitals. To confirm an option, mark the box with a cross (X). Ensure that no portion of certificate is left blank in a manner that would allow it to be amended. Non-applicable fields may be crossed out.

2. Part I. Details of consignment for export

Country:	Name of the country issuing the certificate.
Box I.1.	Name and full address of the natural or legal person dispatching the consignment. It is recommended to provide contact information, such as telephone and fax numbers or e-mail address.
Box I.2.	The certificate reference number used by the Veterinary Authority of the country issuing the certificate.
Box I.3.	Name of the Veterinary Authority.
Box I.4.	Name and full address of the natural or legal person to whom the consignment is destined.
Box I.5.	Name of the country from which the consignment is being exported. "ISO code" refers to the international standard two-letter code (ISO 3166-1 Alpha-2 Code) for a country produced by the International Organization for Standardization.
Box I.6.	Name of the zone or compartment of origin, if given in part III of the certificate (in accordance with Chapter 4.4. of the Terrestrial Code).
Box I.7.	Name of the country of destination. "ISO code" refers to the international standard two-letter code (ISO 3166-1 Alpha-2 Code) for a country produced by the International Organization for Standardization.
Box I.8.	Name of the zone or compartment of destination, if given in part III of the certificate (in accordance with Chapter 4.4. of the Terrestrial Code).

Box I.9.	Name and full address of the places from which the animals are being exported; and official approval or registration number when required.
Box I.10.	Name of the air, land or sea facility from which the consignment is being shipped.
Box I.11.	Date of departure and, if known, expected time of departure.
Box I.12.	Identify the means of transport if known at the time of issuance of the certificate. The flight number, airline and airport designation (for air transport). The name and address of the carrier (for road transport). The name and contact details of the emergency contact person.
Box I.13.	Name of border post to which the consignment is directed. It is also recommended to provide the border post's United Nations Code for Trade and Transport Locations - see http://live.unece.org/cefact/locode/service/location.html .
Box I.14.	If the species is listed in the Convention on International Trade in Endangered Species of Wild Fauna and Flora (CITES), provide permit numbers.
Box I.15.	Description of animals. World Customs Organization HS Code, if known, see: www.wcoomd.org .
Box I.16.	Total number of animals.
Box I.17.	Temperature around the shipping container should generally be maintained in the range 10-28°C during shipment. For animals with different requirements, the specific temperature range should be listed here.
Box I.18.	The total number of units (e.g. boxes, cages or stalls) in which the animals in the consignment are being transported.
Box I.19.	Identification of the containers and seal numbers, if provided.
Box I.20.	Details of the nature of the animals. Provide: species (scientific name); identification system; identification number or other relevant details; quantity and, if required, strain or stock designation, sex, and age or weight. When available, international designation conventions should be used, see for example: http://www.informatics.jax.org/mgihome/nomen/strains.shtml http://www.informatics.jax.org/mgihome/nomen/gene.shtml . For animals with an official international animal passport, the passport number should also be provided.

3. Part II. Classification of pathogen free status

Box II.	<p>Conventional animals are those for which the presence or absence of specific microorganisms and parasites is unknown due to the absence of testing, treatment or vaccination. This category includes wild-caught animals and domestic animals maintained under uncontrolled microbiological conditions. Specific Pathogen Free (SPF) animals are free of one or more parasites or infectious microorganisms. SPF animals can be further subdivided into two categories.</p> <p>Conditioned SPF animals have undergone testing, treatment and/or vaccination to ensure the absence of one or more parasites or microbial agents. The agents are most commonly of human or agricultural significance or are species-specific infectious agents that are capable of producing significant clinical disease or research effects. Conditioned SPF animals are often not maintained in specialised housing to prevent introduction of other infectious agents and are usually shipped in unfiltered containers. Larger species such as nonhuman primates, dogs, and cats are often maintained as conditioned SPF animals.</p> <p>Barrier raised SPF animals have been raised in the absence of one or more parasites or microbial agents in specialised facilities to exclude these agents as well as agents of agricultural and human significance. Their pathogen free status has been established either by testing each individual animal or by sampling representative animals from the colony. Filtered SPF shipping containers are required for transport of these animals as are special procedures and equipment for packing, unpacking, and handling them. This subcategory also includes animals that are either axenic (microbe free) or possess only a few well defined species of microorganisms. They must be produced and maintained in a sterile environment (usually isolators) without contact with human, animal, or environmental commensal infectious microorganisms.</p>
---------	--

4. Part III. Zoosanitary information

Box III.	Complete this part in accordance with the requirements agreed between the Veterinary Authorities of the importing and exporting countries in accordance with the recommendations in the Terrestrial Code. Attestation of fitness for transportation subject to any conditions or special requirements stated in the certificate.
Box IIIa.	Certificate reference number: see box I.2.
Official veterinarian	Name, address, official position, date of signature and official stamp of the Veterinary Services for the country of export.

Article 5.13.3.

Model veterinary certificate for international trade in laboratory animals**COUNTRIES:**

Part I: Details of dispatched consignment	I.1. Consignor: Name: Address:	I.2. Certificate reference number: I.3. Veterinary Authority:
	I.4. Consignee: Name: Address:	
	I.5. Country of origin: ISO Code*:	I.6. Zone or compartment of origin**:
	I.7. Country of destination: ISO Code*:	I.8. Zone or compartment of destination**:
	I.9. Place of origin: Name: Address:	
	I.10. Place of shipment:	I.11. Date of departure:
	I.12. Primary means of transport: Aeroplane <input type="checkbox"/> Relevant details <input type="checkbox"/> Road vehicle <input type="checkbox"/> Vessel <input type="checkbox"/>	I.13. Expected border post:
		I.14. CITES permit No(s)**:
	I.15. Description of animals: *HS Code if known:	I.16. Total number of animals:
	I.17. Temperature:	I.18. Total number of units:
	I.19. Identification of container/seal number:	
	I.20. Details of the nature of the animals and quantity of each: Species (Scientific name): Identification number/details: Strain/Stock (use international designation if known)*: Age or weight: Sex:	
	Identification system: Passport numbers if issued*:	

* Optional.

** If referenced in Part III.

COUNTRIES:

Part II: Zoosanitary information	<table border="1" style="width: 100%;"> <tr> <td style="width: 10%;">II.a. Certificate reference number:</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td colspan="2">II. Pathogen Free Status</td> </tr> <tr> <td colspan="2">Conventional:</td> </tr> <tr> <td colspan="2">Conditioned SPF:</td> </tr> <tr> <td colspan="2">Barrier raised SPF:</td> </tr> <tr> <td colspan="2">Other - specify:</td> </tr> <tr> <td colspan="2">III. Fitness for transportation</td> </tr> <tr> <td colspan="2">The undersigned Official Veterinarian certifies that the consignment described above is fit for transport, subject to any conditions specified below, and that the animals satisfy the following zoosanitary requirements:</td> </tr> <tr> <td colspan="2"> <p>Special conditions for transport; Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No <input type="checkbox"/></p> <p>If there are special conditions for transport, provide complete information of these conditions.</p> </td> </tr> <tr> <td colspan="2"> <p>Official Veterinarian:</p> <p>Name and address (in capital letters):</p> <p>Date:</p> <p>Stamp:</p> </td> </tr> <tr> <td colspan="2"> <p>Official position:</p> <p>Signature:</p> </td> </tr> </table>	II.a. Certificate reference number:		II. Pathogen Free Status		Conventional:		Conditioned SPF:		Barrier raised SPF:		Other - specify:		III. Fitness for transportation		The undersigned Official Veterinarian certifies that the consignment described above is fit for transport, subject to any conditions specified below, and that the animals satisfy the following zoosanitary requirements:		<p>Special conditions for transport; Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No <input type="checkbox"/></p> <p>If there are special conditions for transport, provide complete information of these conditions.</p> 		<p>Official Veterinarian:</p> <p>Name and address (in capital letters):</p> <p>Date:</p> <p>Stamp:</p>		<p>Official position:</p> <p>Signature:</p>	
II.a. Certificate reference number:																							
II. Pathogen Free Status																							
Conventional:																							
Conditioned SPF:																							
Barrier raised SPF:																							
Other - specify:																							
III. Fitness for transportation																							
The undersigned Official Veterinarian certifies that the consignment described above is fit for transport, subject to any conditions specified below, and that the animals satisfy the following zoosanitary requirements:																							
<p>Special conditions for transport; Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No <input type="checkbox"/></p> <p>If there are special conditions for transport, provide complete information of these conditions.</p> 																							
<p>Official Veterinarian:</p> <p>Name and address (in capital letters):</p> <p>Date:</p> <p>Stamp:</p>																							
<p>Official position:</p> <p>Signature:</p>																							

NB: FIRST ADOPTED IN 2012.

SECTION 6.

VETERINARY PUBLIC HEALTH

CHAPTER 6.1.

INTRODUCTION TO RECOMMENDATIONS FOR VETERINARY PUBLIC HEALTH

Article 6.1.1.

Veterinary public health is a component of public health that focuses on the application of veterinary science and that includes all actions directly or indirectly linked with *animals*, their products and by-products, so long as they contribute to the protection and improvement of the physical, mental and social well-being of humans.

Veterinary science has a rich history of contributions to public health, especially with regard to the provision of safe and adequate food, the prevention, control and eradication of zoonoses, the improvement of *animal welfare* and contributing to biomedical research.

Veterinary Services play a key role in preventing, mitigating and controlling *risks* to public health at the origin or source of *infection*. In particular, *Veterinary Services* contribute to public health in several areas such as food security, food safety (with respect to foodborne diseases as well as residues and pollutants), control of zoonoses and responses to natural disasters and bioterrorism.

Furthermore, a number of anthropogenic factors influence the occurrence of *emerging diseases*, some of which are zoonotic. These factors include among others: population growth and changing food consumption patterns and their consequences such as increasing food demand and intensification of production systems; increased movements and trade of *animals* and their products and derived products; the use and misuse of *antimicrobial agents* generating resistance; the disruption of ecosystems; climate change.

In this context, *Veterinary Services* are integrated into the 'One Health' approach to the assessment, prevention, management and communication of health risks and preservation of the integrity of ecosystems for the benefit of human health, the health of domestic *animals* and *wildlife*, and biodiversity.

Veterinary training and education should take into account the role of *Veterinary Services* in public health at national, regional and global level in the development of veterinary public health capabilities.

NB: FIRST ADOPTED IN 2018.

CHAPTER 6.2.

THE ROLE OF THE VETERINARY SERVICES IN FOOD SAFETY SYSTEMS

Article 6.2.1.

Introduction

Veterinarians are trained in both animal health (including foodborne zoonoses) and food hygiene, which makes them uniquely equipped to play a central role in ensuring food safety, especially the safety of food of animal origin.

Close cooperation and effective communication between all participants in a food safety system, including *veterinarians*, other relevant professionals and stakeholders, is critical for the effective operation of the system. Indeed, the globalisation of the food supply demands a high level of engagement and collaboration between *Competent Authorities* responsible for animal health, food safety and public health, in line with the One Health approach. This provides a wider role and greater responsibilities for *Veterinary Services*.

Food safety activities performed by *Veterinary Services* should be integrated to the greatest extent possible with the activities of all other responsible agencies throughout the food chain.

Article 6.2.2.

Purpose and scope

The purpose of this chapter is to provide guidance to Member Countries on the role and responsibilities of *Veterinary Services* in food safety systems.

This chapter should be read in conjunction with Chapter 4.2., Chapter 4.3., and relevant chapters of Sections 6 and 7.

This chapter should also be read in conjunction with the Codex Alimentarius Principles and Guidelines for National Food Control Systems (CAC/GL 82-2013), General Principles of Food Hygiene (CAC/RCP 1-1969), Code of Hygienic Practice for Meat (CAC/RCP 58-2005), Code of Practice on Good Animal Feeding (CAC/RCP 54-2004), Guidelines for the Design and Implementation of National Regulatory Food Safety Assurance Programmes Associated with the Use of Veterinary Drugs in Food Producing Animals (CAC/GL 71-2009), and other relevant Codex texts.

Article 6.2.3.

Characteristics of a food safety system

1. Food chain approach

Food safety is best assured by an integrated, multidisciplinary approach that considers the entire food chain. A food safety system should take into account the complexity of food production and the globalisation of the food supply, and should be risk-based. It should consider *hazards* and potential associated *risks* at each stage of the food chain, i.e. primary production, transport, processing, storage and distribution, and integrate *risk management* responses to such *risks* at the most appropriate points along the food chain.

The prevention, detection, and control of foodborne *hazards* throughout the food chain is generally more effective in reducing or eliminating the *risk* of unwanted health effects than relying on controls of the final product. The application of traceability systems and sharing food chain information enhance the effectiveness of a food safety system. Everyone involved in the food chain, including food business operators, *Veterinary Services* and consumers, has a responsibility to ensure that food is safe.

2. Risk-based food safety systems

Risk-based food safety systems include measures based on good practices (such as good agricultural practice, good hygienic practice), hazard analysis and critical control points (HACCP) principles and *risk analysis*. The design and application of a risk-based food safety system depends on the availability of adequate scientific information and effective utilisation of the technical resources of food business operators and *Competent Authorities*.

Monitoring food safety outcomes and reviewing control measures are essential to ensure the effective performance of a risk-based food safety system. For example, providing information on the occurrence of *infections* on the farm prior to dispatch of animals for *slaughter* may allow more targeted, risk-based inspection at the *slaughterhouse/abattoir*.

3. Responsibilities of food business operators for food safety

Food business operators, including *feed* producers, farmers, processors, wholesalers, distributors, importers, exporters and retailers, have primary responsibility for ensuring the safety of their products and should be able to demonstrate that they comply with relevant food safety regulatory requirements. Food business operators have a responsibility to inform the *Competent Authority* in their country of any non-compliance associated with their product and take action to manage the *risk* e.g. the withdrawal of the product.

4. Responsibilities of the relevant Competent Authorities

Competent Authorities are responsible for developing policies, legislation and regulations relevant to food safety. They should also take steps to communicate these within their country and with trading partners.

Competent Authorities should ensure that roles and responsibilities for food safety systems, including responses to foodborne disease *outbreaks*, are addressed in a coordinated manner.

The relevant *Competent Authorities* should verify that the control systems used by food business operators are appropriate, validated and effective, and operated in such a way that the regulatory requirements are met. This can be achieved through activities such as inspection and audit. In the event of noncompliance, appropriate corrective actions and sanctions should be applied.

If the *Competent Authority* delegates some control responsibilities to a third party, it should regularly assess that third party's competency.

Article 6.2.4.

Roles and responsibilities of Veterinary Services in a food safety system

1. Roles and responsibilities of Veterinary Services

Veterinary Authorities or other *Competent Authorities* should provide an appropriate institutional environment to allow *Veterinary Services* to implement the necessary policies and standards, and ensure adequate resources for them to carry out their tasks in a sustainable manner. *Veterinary Services* should have a clear chain of command and respective roles and responsibilities should be clearly defined and well documented.

Veterinary Services should be fully involved, in accordance with their mandate and organisational structure at the national level, in the design and implementation of a risk-based food safety system. In the implementation of food safety systems for food of animal origin, *Veterinary Services* should retain responsibility for verification and audit and facilitate a flexible approach to operational activities.

Veterinary Authorities or other *Competent Authorities* should retain overall responsibility for the delivery and performance of any activities delegated to third party providers.

Where relevant, *Veterinary Services* should have an active role in other food safety-related activities, such as investigations of foodborne disease *outbreaks*, food defense, disaster management, and identifying emerging *risks*. In addition, *Veterinary Services* should have an active role in the development and management of coordinated *surveillance* and control programmes for foodborne pathogens of animal origin important for public health.

In order for *Veterinary Services* to make the best possible contribution to ensuring food safety, the education and training of *veterinarians* and *veterinary paraprofessionals* should include appropriate training in food safety systems and ongoing professional development.

2. Activities of Veterinary Services throughout the food chain

Depending on the responsibilities of the *Competent Authority*, the responsibilities of the *Veterinary Services* may be limited to a part of the food chain, while in other cases the *Veterinary Services* may be responsible for the whole food chain.

a) Primary production

Through their presence on farms and collaboration with farmers, *Veterinary Services* play a key role in ensuring that *animals* are healthy and kept under good sanitary and hygienic conditions. *Veterinary Services* also play a key role in *biosecurity* and early detection, *surveillance* and treatment of animal diseases, including conditions of public health significance.

Veterinary Services provide direction to farmers on practices that prevent or minimise physical and chemical hazards (for example, mycotoxins, environmental contaminants and pesticide residues) in primary production, including *feed*.

Veterinary Services play a central role in ensuring the responsible and prudent use of *veterinary medicinal products*, including *antimicrobial agents* in accordance with Chapter 6.10. in animal husbandry. This helps to minimise the likelihood of noncompliant levels of veterinary drug residues in food of animal origin and the development of antimicrobial resistance.

Veterinary Services also play an important role in ensuring traceability throughout the food chain by verifying *animal identification* in accordance with Chapters 4.2. and 4.3.

b) Slaughter, processing and distribution

Activities at the *slaughterhouse/abattoir* should be designed and implemented according to an integrated, risk-based approach in accordance with Chapter 6.3. *Veterinary Services* have an essential role in ensuring that these activities, including *meat* inspection, minimise foodborne *risks* to public health. This may be provided by supervision and verification of process control and direct involvement in operational activities such as ante-and post-mortem inspection. *Slaughterhouse/abattoir* inspection of live animals and their carcasses plays a key role both in the *surveillance* network for animal diseases and zoonoses, and in ensuring the safety and suitability of *meat* and animal by-products for their intended uses. Control or reduction of biological hazards of public health and animal health importance by ante- and post-mortem *meat* inspection is a core responsibility of *Veterinary Services*.

Veterinary Services may be responsible for overseeing the control measures during processing and distribution of food of animal origin. They also play an important role in raising the awareness of food producers, processors and distributors regarding measures required to assure food safety.

c) Assurance schemes and certification of food of animal origin for international trade

Veterinary Services have an important role in overseeing assurance schemes and an essential role in certifying that food of animal origin complies with animal health and food safety standards.

Other responsible agencies may also be involved in providing assurances and certification of food of animal origin (for example, pasteurisation of *milk products*) for *international trade*.

3. Foodborne disease outbreaks

Veterinary Services play a key role in the investigation of, and response to, foodborne disease *outbreaks* which may be attributable to or involve animal products, including the implementation of control measures. This work should be carried out in close collaboration with public health professionals, analysts, epidemiologists, food producers, processors and traders and any others involved.

Because of the global nature of the food trade, *Veterinary Services* should work with other national agencies in reporting to international emergency foodborne disease networks, such as the International Network of Food Safety Authorities (INFOSAN), and in utilising such information for preparedness.

CHAPTER 6.3.

CONTROL OF BIOLOGICAL HAZARDS OF ANIMAL HEALTH AND PUBLIC HEALTH IMPORTANCE THROUGH ANTE- AND POST-MORTEM MEAT INSPECTION

Article 6.3.1.

Introduction

Foodborne disease and zoonoses are important public health problems and causes of decreased economic productivity in developed and developing countries. Similarly, transmission of *hazards* of animal health importance via the *meat* production chain and associated by-products can result in significant economic loss in livestock. Inspection of *animals at slaughter* can provide a valuable contribution to *surveillance* for certain diseases of animal and public health importance. Control and/or reduction of biological *hazards* of animal and public health importance by ante- and post-mortem *meat* inspection are a core responsibility of *Veterinary Services*.

Article 6.3.2.

Purpose

These recommendations provide a basis for future development of WOAH standards for animal production food safety.

Article 6.3.3.

Hygienic practice throughout the meat production chain

The Codex Alimentarius Code of Hygienic Practice for Meat (CHPM) constitutes the primary international standard for *meat* hygiene and incorporates a *risk-based* approach to application of hygiene practices and sanitation throughout the *meat* production chain. Ante-mortem inspection is described as a primary component of *meat* hygiene before *slaughter*, and post-mortem inspection is described as a primary component of process control in post-slaughter *meat* hygiene. The CHPM specifically recognises the dual objectives that *slaughterhouse/abattoir* inspection activities deliver in terms of animal and public health.

The CHPM does not provide inspection measures for specific *hazards*, which remain the responsibility of *Competent Authorities*. The animal and public health *risks* associated with livestock populations vary across regions and animal husbandry systems, and ante- and post-mortem inspection needs to be tailored to the individual country situation and its animal and public health objectives.

The CHPM provides a platform for development of *meat* hygiene systems that are based on *risk assessment*. There are few *risk assessment* models and little relevant scientific information available on public health *hazards* derived specifically from *animals* and their products, making difficult the development of *risk-based* standards for foodborne diseases and zoonoses. While this scientific information is being accumulated, ante- and post-mortem inspection systems will remain dependent on traditional approaches.

Article 6.3.4.

Veterinary Services and meat inspection programmes

Veterinary Services are primarily responsible for the development of ante- and post-mortem *meat* inspection programmes. Wherever practicable, inspection procedures should be *risk-based* and management systems should reflect international norms and cover the significant *hazards* to both human and animal health in the livestock being

slaughtered, as determined by the *Veterinary Services*. In respect of ante- and post-mortem inspection as a component of *meat* hygiene, responsibilities of *Veterinary Services* include:

- 1) *risk assessment* and *risk management*;
- 2) establishment of policies and standards;
- 3) design and management of inspection programmes;
- 4) assurance and certification of appropriate delivery of inspection and compliance activities;
- 5) dissemination of information throughout the *meat* production chain.

Article 6.3.5.

Risk assessment and risk management

Veterinary Services should utilise *risk assessment* to the greatest extent practicable in the development of *sanitary measures*. *Veterinary Services* should give priority to addressing microbiological contamination, while not neglecting gross abnormalities detected at ante- and post-mortem inspection, as this has been found to be the most important source of *hazards*.

Microbiological, serological or other testing at single-animal and *herd* or *flock* level as part of ante- and post-mortem inspection should be used to support *surveillance*, as well as *risk assessment* of prioritised foodborne *hazards*. The information gathered should be linked to human disease data to allow an assessment of the effectiveness of various management options, as well as a general evaluation of food sources of foodborne disease.

Application of a generic framework should provide a systematic and consistent process for managing all *biosecurity risks*, while accommodating the different *risk assessment* methodologies used in animal and public health.

Article 6.3.6.

Establishment of policies and standards

The *Competent Authorities* should provide an appropriate institutional environment to allow *Veterinary Services* to develop the necessary policies and standards.

As well as meeting public health objectives, policies and standards relating to ante- and post-mortem inspection should aim to detect and remove *hazards* of animal health significance from the *meat* production chain. This may be achieved by the removal of live *animals* at ante-mortem inspection or by the removal of specific tissues at post-mortem inspection.

Veterinary Services should integrate their activities to the maximum extent practicable so as to prevent duplication of effort and unnecessary costs, e.g. within the process of international certification.

Article 6.3.7.

Design and management of inspection programmes

In meeting animal and public health objectives prescribed in national legislations or required by *importing countries*, *Veterinary Services* contribute through the direct performance of some veterinary tasks or through the auditing of animal and public health activities conducted by other agencies or the private sector. To this end, *Veterinary Services* provide assurances domestically and to trading partners that safety and suitability standards have been met.

Veterinary Services should allow flexibility in *meat* inspection service delivery through an officially recognised competent body operating under its supervision and control. In recognition of the contribution of industry to food safety, quality assurance systems may be extended in the case of ante- and post-mortem inspection to systems that integrate industry and *Veterinary Services* activities. Nevertheless, *Veterinary Services* should take into account the factors identified in Chapter 3.2. on the fundamental principles of quality of *Veterinary Services*. For example, if personnel from the private sector are used to carry out ante- and post-mortem inspection activities under the overall supervision and responsibility of the *Veterinary Services*, the *Veterinary Services* should specify the competency requirements for all such persons and verify their performance.

Article 6.3.8.

Assurance and certification

Assurance and certification of appropriate delivery of inspection and compliance activities is a vital function of Veterinary Services. International health certificates providing official assurances for trading of *meat* must engender full confidence to the country of importation.

Article 6.3.9.

Dissemination of information

Organisation and dissemination of information throughout the *meat* production chain involves multidisciplinary inputs. To ensure the effective implementation of ante- and post-mortem inspection procedures, Veterinary Services should have in place systems for the monitoring of these procedures and the exchange of information gained. Further, there should be an ongoing programme for monitoring of *hazards* at appropriate points throughout the *meat* production chain so as to help evaluate the efficacy of controls. *Animal identification* and *animal traceability* systems should be integrated in order to be able to trace slaughtered *animals* back to their place of origin, and products derived from them forward through the *meat* production chain.

NB: FIRST ADOPTED IN 2022; MOST RECENT UPDATE ADOPTED IN 2024.

CHAPTER 6 . 4 .

THE CONTROL OF HAZARDS OF ANIMAL HEALTH AND PUBLIC HEALTH IMPORTANCE IN ANIMAL FEED

Article 6.4.1.

Introduction

Animal *feed* is a critical component of the food chain that has a direct impact on animal health and *welfare* and also on food safety and public health.

Historically, WOAH primarily addressed animal *feed* as an important pathway for the entry and spread of contagious epidemic diseases, such as foot and mouth disease, swine vesicular disease and avian influenza. In recent years, the role of *feed* as a vector for pathogenic agents, including zoonotic organisms, was a focus of standards development in regards to bovine spongiform encephalopathy. Animal *feed* and *feed ingredients* are widely traded internationally and trade disruptions have the potential to impact economies in both developed and developing countries. Since 2002 WOAH has expanded its zoonotic disease mandate to encompass animal production food safety, working in collaboration with the Codex Alimentarius Commission (CAC) and other international organisations. In 2006 the International Committee resolved that WOAH should develop guidance on foodborne zoonoses and animal feeding, complementing relevant CAC texts.

Article 6.4.2.

Objective and scope

The objective of this chapter is to provide guidance on animal feeding in relation to animal health and to complement the guidance provided by the Codex Code of Practice on Good Animal Feeding (CAC/RCP 54-2004) which deals primarily with food safety, and related other Codex texts covering animal feeding, e.g. Code of Practice for Source Directed Measures to Reduce Contamination of Food with Chemicals (CAC/RCP 49-2001).

This chapter aims at ensuring the control of animal and public health hazards through adherence to recommended practices during the production (growing, procurement, handling, storage, processing and distribution) and use of both commercial and on-farm produced animal *feed* and *feed ingredients* for terrestrial *animals*.

This chapter applies to the production and use of all products destined for animal *feed* and *feed ingredients* at all levels whether produced commercially or on farm. It also includes grazing or free-range feeding, forage crop production and water for drinking. Swill feeding is a particular aspect of on-farm practice that is specifically addressed because of its recognised role in disease transmission.

This chapter deals with *feed* for terrestrial *animals* (except bees).

Article 6.4.3.

Definitions

For the purposes of this chapter the following definitions apply:

Contamination means the unwanted presence of a material, infectious agent or product in a *feed* or *feed ingredient* that is potentially harmful to animal or public health or restricted under current regulations.

Feed means any material (single or multiple), whether processed, semi-processed or raw, which is intended to be fed directly to terrestrial *animals* (except bees).

Feed additive means any intentionally added ingredient not normally consumed as *feed* by itself, whether or not it has nutritional value or other effect on the *animal*, which affects the characteristics of *feed* or of the animal products. Microorganisms, enzymes, pH regulators, trace elements, vitamins and other products fall within the scope of this definition depending on the purpose of use and method of administration. This excludes veterinary drugs.

Feed ingredient means a component part or constituent of any combination or mixture making up a *feed*, whether or not it has a nutritional value in the *animal's* diet, including feed additives. Ingredients are of plant (including aquatic plants) or terrestrial or aquatic animal origin, or other organic or inorganic substances.

Article 6.4.4.

General principles

1. Roles and responsibilities

The *Competent Authority* has the legal power to set and enforce regulatory animal feeding requirements, and has final responsibility for verifying that these requirements are met. The *Competent Authority* may establish regulatory requirements for relevant parties to provide it with information and assistance. Refer to Chapters 3.2. and 3.3.

Those involved in the production and use of animal *feed* and *feed ingredients* have the primary responsibility to ensure that these products meet regulatory requirements. Records and, as appropriate, contingency plans should be in place to enable tracing and recall of non-compliant products. All personnel involved in the manufacture, storage and handling of *feed* and *feed ingredients* should be adequately trained and aware of their role and responsibility in preventing the introduction or spread of hazards. Manufacturing equipment, storage and transport facilities should be adequate and maintained in good working order and in a sanitary condition.

Those providing specialist services to producers and to the *feed* industry (e.g. private *veterinarians*, nutritionists and laboratories) may be required to meet specific regulatory requirements pertaining to the services they provide (e.g. disease reporting, quality standards, transparency).

2. Regulatory safety standards

All *feed* and *feed ingredients* should meet regulatory safety standards. Scientific evidence, including the sensitivity of analytical methods and on the characterisation of risks, should be taken into account in defining limits and tolerances for hazards.

3. Risk analysis (risk assessment, risk management and risk communication)

Internationally accepted principles and practices on *risk analysis* (Section 2 of the *Terrestrial Code* and relevant Codex texts) should be used in developing and applying the regulatory framework.

Application of a generic framework should provide a systematic and consistent process for managing all *biosecurity* risks, while recognising the different *risk assessment* methodologies used in animal and public health.

4. Good practices

Where national guidelines exist, good agricultural practices and good manufacturing practices (including good hygienic practices) should be followed. Countries without such guidelines are encouraged to develop them or adopt suitable international standards or recommendations.

Where appropriate, Hazard Analysis and Critical Control Point (HACCP) principles should be followed to control hazards that may occur in the manufacture, distribution and feeding of *feed* and feed additives and *feed ingredients*.

5. Geographic and environmental considerations

Epidemiological links between potential sources of hazards for animal health or food safety should be considered when assessing water sources, land or facilities for suitability for the production of animal *feed* and *feed ingredients*. Animal health considerations include factors such as disease status, location of quarantined premises and existence of *zones/compartments* of specified health status. Food safety considerations include factors such as industrial operations that generate pollutants and waste treatment plants.

6. Zoning and compartmentalisation

Feed is an important component of *biosecurity* and needs to be considered when defining a *compartment* or *zone* in accordance with Chapter 4.4.

7. Sampling and analysis

Sampling and analysis should be based on scientifically recognised principles and procedures.

8. Labelling

Labelling should be informative, unambiguous, legible and conspicuously placed on the package if sold in package form and on the waybill and other sales documents if sold in bulk, un-packaged form, and should comply with regulatory requirements and Section 4.2.10 Labelling of Codex Code of Practice on Good Animal Feeding (CAC/RCP 54-2004), including listing of ingredients and instructions on the handling, storing and use. All claims made on a label should be able to be substantiated.

9. Design and management of inspection programmes

In meeting animal and public health objectives prescribed in national legislation or required by *importing countries*, *Competent Authorities* contribute through the inspection or through the auditing of animal and public health activities conducted by other agencies or the private sector.

Feed and *feed ingredients* business operators and other relevant parts of industry should practice self-regulation to secure compliance with required standards for procurement, handling, storage, processing, distribution and use. Operators have full responsibility for implementing systems for quality control. The *Competent Authority* should verify that process control systems and safety standards achieve all regulatory requirements.

10. Assurance and certification

Feed business operators are responsible for demonstrating the safety of the establishments under their control. *Competent Authorities* are responsible for providing assurances domestically and to trading partners that regulatory safety standards have been met. For *international trade* in animal product based *feed*, *Veterinary Services* are required to provide *international veterinary certificates*.

11. Hazards associated with animal feed

a) Biological hazards

Biological hazards that may occur in *feed* and *feed ingredients* include pathogenic agents such as bacteria, viruses, prions, fungi, parasites and poisonous plants.

b) Chemical hazards

Chemical hazards that may occur in *feed* and *feed ingredients* include naturally occurring chemicals (such as mycotoxins and gossypol), industrial and environmental contaminants (such as dioxins and PCBs), residues of veterinary drugs and pesticides and also radionuclides.

c) Physical hazards

Physical hazards that may occur in *feed* and *feed ingredients* include foreign objects (such as pieces of glass, metal, plastic or wood).

12. Contamination

Procedures to minimise the risk of contamination during the production, processing, storage, distribution (including transport) and use of *feed* and *feed ingredients* should be included in current regulations and standards. Scientific evidence, including the sensitivity of analytical methods and on the characterisation of risks, should be drawn upon in developing this framework.

Procedures, such as flushing, sequencing and physical clean-out, should be used to reduce the likelihood of contamination between batches of *feed* or *feed ingredients*.

13. Antimicrobial resistance

Concerning the use of antimicrobials in animal *feed* refer to Chapters 6.8. to 6.11.

14. Management of information

The *Competent Authority* should establish clear requirements for the provision of information by the private sector as this relates to regulatory requirements.

Records should be maintained in a readily accessible form regarding the production, distribution and use of *feed* and *feed ingredients*. These records are required to facilitate the prompt trace-back of *feed* and *feed ingredients* to the immediate previous source, and trace-forward to the next subsequent recipients, to address identified animal health or public health concerns (see Section 4.3. of CAC/RCP 54-2004).

Animal identification and *animal traceability* are tools for addressing animal health (including zoonoses), and food safety risks arising from animal *feed* (see Chapters 4.2. and 4.3.).

NB: FIRST ADOPTED IN 2009; MOST RECENT UPDATE ADOPTED IN 2011.

CHAPTER 6.5.

BIOSECURITY PROCEDURES IN POULTRY PRODUCTION

Article 6.5.1.

Introduction

Infectious agents of *poultry* are a threat to *poultry* health and, at times, human health and have significant social and economic implications. In *poultry* production, especially under intensive conditions, prevention is the most viable and economically feasible approach to the control of infectious agents.

Biosecurity procedures should be implemented with the objective of preventing the introduction and dissemination of infectious agents in the *poultry* production chain. *Biosecurity* will be enhanced with the adoption and implementation of the principles of Good Agricultural Practices and the Hazard Analysis Critical Control Point (HACCP) system.

Article 6.5.2.

Purpose and scope

This chapter deals with *biosecurity* procedures in intensive *poultry* production. It should be read in conjunction with the Codex Alimentarius Code of Hygienic Practice for Meat (CAC/RCP 58-2005), Code of Hygienic Practice for Eggs and Egg Products (CAC/RCP 15-1976) and Guidelines for the control of *Campylobacter* and *Salmonella* in chicken meat (CAC/GL 78-2011).

This chapter identifies several biosecurity measures. The choice of measures to be implemented will vary in accordance with national conditions, including *poultry infection* status, the risk of introduction and dissemination of infectious agents and the cost effectiveness of control measures.

Recommendations on specific infectious agents may be found in relevant disease chapters in the *Terrestrial Code*.

Article 6.5.3.

Definitions

For the purposes of this chapter the following definitions apply:

Breeders means *poultry* destined for the production of fertile eggs for incubation for the purpose of producing *day-old birds*.

Live bird markets means markets where live birds from various sources and species are sold for *slaughter*, further rearing or production.

Article 6.5.4.

Recommendations on the location and construction of poultry establishment

1. All establishments (poultry farms and hatcheries)

- a) A suitably isolated geographical location is recommended. Factors to consider include the location of other *poultry* and livestock *establishments*, *wild* bird concentrations and the distance from roads used to transport *poultry*.

- b) *Poultry establishments* should be located and constructed to provide adequate drainage for the site. Run-off or untreated site waste water should not discharge into waterfowl habitats.
 - c) *Poultry houses* and hatcheries should be designed and constructed (preferably of smooth impervious materials) so that cleaning and *disinfection* can be carried out effectively. Ideally, the area immediately surrounding the *poultry houses* and hatcheries should be paved with concrete or other impervious material to facilitate cleaning and *disinfection*.
 - d) The *establishment* should be surrounded by a security fence to prevent the entry of unwanted animals and people.
 - e) A sign indicating restricted entry should be posted at the entrance to the *establishment*.
2. Additional measures for poultry farms
- a) *Establishments* should be designed to house a single species and a single production type. The design should also consider the “all-in all-out” single age group principle. If this is not feasible, the *establishment* should be designed so that each *flock* can be managed as a separate *epidemiological unit*.
 - b) *Poultry houses*, and buildings used to store *feed*, eggs or other material, should be constructed and maintained to prevent the entry of *wild birds*, rodents and arthropods.
 - c) Where feasible, the floors of *poultry houses* should be constructed using concrete or other impervious materials and designed so that cleaning and *disinfection* can be carried out effectively.
 - d) Where feasible, *feed* should be delivered into the farm from outside the security fence.
3. Additional measures for hatcheries
- a) The design of the hatchery should take account of work flow and air circulation needs, with “one way flow” movement of eggs and *day-old birds* and one way air flow in the same direction.
 - b) The hatchery buildings should include physical separation of areas used for the following:
 - i) personnel changing, showering and sanitary facilities;
 - ii) receipt, storage and transfer of eggs;
 - iii) incubation;
 - iv) hatching;
 - v) sorting, sexing and other handling of *day-old birds*;
 - vi) storage of egg boxes and boxes for *day-old birds*, egg flats, chick box liners, chemicals and other items;
 - vii) equipment washing;
 - viii) waste disposal;
 - ix) dining facilities for personnel;
 - x) office space.

Article 6.5.5.

Recommendations applicable to the operation of poultry establishments

1. All establishments (poultry farms and hatcheries)

- a) All *establishments* should have a written *biosecurity plan*. Personnel in the *establishments* should have access to basic training in *biosecurity* relevant to *poultry* production and understand the implications to animal health, human health and food safety.
- b) There should be good communication between personnel involved in the *poultry* production chain to ensure that steps are taken to minimise the introduction and dissemination of infectious agents.
- c) Traceability at all levels of the *poultry* production chain should be possible.
- d) Records should be maintained on an individual *flock* basis and include data on bird health, production, medications, *vaccination*, mortality and *surveillance*. In hatcheries, records should include data on fertility,

hatchability, *vaccination* and treatments. Records should be maintained on cleaning and *disinfection* of farm and hatchery buildings and equipment. Records should be readily available for inspection on site.

- e) Monitoring of *poultry* health on the *establishment* should be under the supervision of a *veterinarian*.
 - f) To avoid the development of antimicrobial resistance, *antimicrobial agents* should be used in accordance with relevant directions of the *Veterinary Services* and manufacturer's instructions and in accordance with Chapters 6.8., 6.9., 6.10. and 6.11.
 - g) *Establishments* should be free from unwanted vegetation and debris that could attract or harbour pests.
 - h) Procedures for the prevention of entry of *wild* birds into *poultry* houses and buildings, and the control of vermin such as rodents and arthropods should be implemented.
 - i) Access to the *establishment* should be controlled to ensure only authorised persons and *vehicles* enter the site.
 - j) All personnel and visitors entering an *establishment* should follow a *biosecurity* procedure. The preferred procedure is for visitors and personnel entering the *establishment* to shower and change into clean clothes and footwear provided by the *establishment*. Where this is not practical, clean outer garments (coveralls or overalls, head covering and footwear) should be provided. Entry of visitors and *vehicles* should be registered by the *establishment*.
 - k) Personnel and visitors should not have had recent contact with other *poultry*, *poultry* waste, or *poultry* processing plant(s). This time period should be based on the level of risk of transmission of infectious agents. This will depend on the *poultry* production purpose, *biosecurity* procedures and *infection* status.
 - l) Any *vehicle* entering an *establishment* should be cleaned and disinfected in accordance with a *biosecurity plan*. Delivery *vehicles* should be cleaned, and disinfected before *loading* each consignment of eggs or *poultry*.
2. Additional measures for all poultry farms
- a) Whenever possible, the "all-in all-out" single age group principle should be used. If this is not feasible and several *flocks* are maintained on one *establishment*, each *flock* should be managed as a separate *epidemiological unit*.
 - b) All personnel and visitors entering a *poultry* house should wash their hands with soap and water or sanitize them using a disinfectant. Personnel and visitors should also change footwear, use a boot spray or use a properly maintained disinfectant footbath. The disinfectant solution in the footbath should be changed on a regular basis to ensure its efficacy, in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.
 - c) Any equipment should be cleaned and sanitized before being taken into a *poultry* house.
 - d) Animals, other than *poultry* of the appropriate (resident) species and age, should not be permitted access to *poultry* houses. No animals should have access to other buildings, such as those used to store *feed*, eggs or other material.
 - e) The drinking water supply to *poultry* houses should be potable in accordance with the World Health Organization or to the relevant national standard, and microbiological quality should be monitored if there is any reason to suspect contamination. The water delivery system should be cleaned and disinfected between *flocks* when the *poultry* house is empty.
 - f) Birds used to stock a *poultry* house should preferably be obtained from breeder *flocks* and hatcheries that are free from vertically transmitted infectious agents.
 - g) Heat treated *feed* with or without the addition of other bactericidal or bacteriostatic treatments, such as addition of organic acids, are recommended. Where heat treatment is not possible, the use of bacteriostatic or bactericidal treatments is recommended.
Feed should be stored in a manner to prevent access by *wild* birds and rodents. Spilled *feed* should be cleaned up immediately to remove attractants for *wild* birds and rodents. The movement of *feed* between *flocks* should be avoided.
 - h) The litter in the *poultry* house should be kept dry and in good condition.
 - i) Dead birds should be removed from *poultry* houses as quickly as possible but at least daily. These should be disposed of in a safe and effective manner.
 - j) Personnel involved in the catching of birds should be adequately trained in bird handling and basic *biosecurity* procedures.
 - k) To minimise stress *poultry* should be transported in well ventilated *containers* and should not be over crowded. Exposure to extreme temperatures should be avoided.
 - l) *Containers* should be cleaned and disinfected between each use, or disposed of in a safe manner.

- m) When a *poultry* house is depopulated, it is recommended that all faeces and litter be removed from the house and disposed of in a safe manner to minimise the risk of dissemination of infectious agents.

If litter is not removed and replaced between *flocks* then the litter should be treated in a manner to minimise the risk of dissemination of infectious agents from one *flock* to the next.

After removal of faeces and litter, cleaning and *disinfection* of the *poultry* house and equipment should be done in accordance with Chapter 4.14.

- n) For *poultry flocks* that are allowed to range outdoors, feeders, *feed* and other items which may attract *wild* birds should be kept indoors. *Poultry* should not be allowed access to sources of contamination, such as household waste, litter storage areas, other animals, stagnant water and water of unknown quality. The nesting area should be inside the *poultry* house.

3. Additional measures for layers

Refer to Section 3 of the Codex Alimentarius Code of Hygienic Practice for Eggs and Egg Products (CAC/RCP 15-1976).

4. Additional measures for breeders

- a) Nest box litter and liners should be kept clean.
- b) *Hatching eggs* should be collected at frequent intervals, at least daily, and placed in new or clean and disinfected packaging materials.
- c) Grossly dirty, cracked, broken, or leaking eggs should be collected separately and should not be used as *hatching eggs*.
- d) *Hatching eggs* should be cleaned and sanitized as soon as possible after collection using an approved sanitising agent, in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.
- e) *Hatching eggs* or their packaging materials should be marked to assist traceability and veterinary investigations.
- f) The *hatching eggs* should be stored in a dedicated room as soon as possible after cleaning and sanitisation. Storage conditions should minimise the potential for microbial contamination and growth and ensure maximum hatchability. The room should be well ventilated, kept clean, and regularly disinfected using disinfectants approved for this purpose.

5. Additional measures for hatcheries

- a) Dead in shell embryos should be removed from hatcheries as soon as they are found and disposed of in a safe and effective manner.
- b) All hatchery waste, garbage and discarded equipment should be contained or at least covered while on site and removed from the hatchery and its environs as soon as possible.
- c) After use, hatchery equipment, tables and surfaces should be promptly and thoroughly cleaned and disinfected with an approved disinfectant.
- d) Egg handlers and sexers and handlers of *day-old birds* should wash their hands with soap and water before commencing work and between working with batches of *hatching eggs* or *day-old birds* from different breeder *flocks*.
- e) *Hatching eggs* and *day-old birds* from different breeder *flocks* should be identifiable during incubation, hatching, sorting and transportation.
- f) *Day-old birds* should be delivered to the farm in new *containers* or in clean, disinfected *containers*.

Article 6.5.6.

Prevention of further dissemination of infectious agents of poultry

When a *flock* is suspected or known to be infected, a *veterinarian* should be consulted immediately and, in addition to the general biosecurity measures described previously, management procedures should be adjusted to effectively

isolate it from other *flocks* on the *establishment* and other epidemiologically related *establishments*. The following measures are recommended:

- 1) Personnel should manage *flocks* to minimise the risk of dissemination of infectious agents to other *flocks* and *establishments*, and to humans. Relevant measures include handling of an infected *flock* separately, last in sequence and the use of dedicated personnel, clothing and equipment.
- 2) When *infection* has been confirmed, epidemiological investigations should be carried out to determine the origin and route of transmission of the infectious agent.
- 3) *Poultry* carcasses, litter, faeces and other potentially contaminated farm waste should be disposed of in a safe manner to minimise the risk of dissemination of infectious agents. The disposal method used will depend on the infectious agent involved.
- 4) Depending on the epidemiology of the disease, the results of a *risk assessment*, and public and animal health policies, destruction or *slaughter* of a *flock* before the end of the normal production period may be used. When infected *flocks* are destroyed or slaughtered, they should be processed in a manner to minimise exposure of humans and other *flocks* to the infectious agent, and in accordance with recommendations of the *Veterinary Service* and relevant chapters in the *Terrestrial Code*. Based on *risk assessment*, non-infected, high risk *flocks* may be destroyed or slaughtered before the end of their normal production period.

Before restocking, the *poultry* house including equipment should be cleaned, disinfected and tested to verify that the cleaning has been effective. Special attention should be paid to *feed* equipment and water systems.

Microbiological monitoring of the efficacy of *disinfection* procedures is recommended when pathogenic agents have been detected in the previous *flock*.

- 5) Depending on the epidemiology of the disease, *risk assessment*, vaccine availability and public and animal health policies, *vaccination* is an option to minimise the dissemination of the infectious agent. When used, vaccines should be administered in accordance with the directions of the *Veterinary Services* and the manufacturer's instructions. Recommendations in the *Terrestrial Manual* should be followed as appropriate.

Article 6.5.7.

Recommendations to prevent the dissemination of infectious agents to and from live bird markets

- 1) Personnel should be educated on the significance of infectious agents and the need to apply *biosecurity* practices to prevent dissemination of these agents. Education should be targeted to personnel at all levels of operations in these markets, such as drivers, owners, handlers and processors. Programmes should be implemented to raise consumer awareness about the risks associated with activities of live bird markets.
- 2) Personnel should wash their hands with soap and water before and after handling birds.
- 3) Birds from diseased *flocks* should not be transported to live bird markets.
- 4) All *containers* and *vehicles* should be cleaned and disinfected every time they leave the market.
- 5) Live birds that leave the market and go to a farm should be kept separately from other birds for a period of time to minimise the potential dissemination of infectious agents of *poultry*.
- 6) Periodically the market should be emptied, cleaned and disinfected. This is of particular importance when an infectious agent of *poultry* deemed significant by the *Veterinary Services* has been identified in the market or the region.
- 7) Where feasible, *surveillance* should be carried out in these markets to detect infectious agents of *poultry*. The *surveillance* programme should be determined by the *Veterinary Services*, and in accordance with recommendations in relevant chapters of the *Terrestrial Code*.
- 8) Efforts should be made to ensure the possibility of tracing all birds entering and leaving the markets.

NB: FIRST ADOPTED IN 1982; MOST RECENT UPDATE ADOPTED IN 2013.

CHAPTER 6.6.

PREVENTION, DETECTION AND CONTROL OF SALMONELLA IN POULTRY

Article 6.6.1.

Introduction

This chapter provides recommendations on the prevention, detection and control of *Salmonella* in *poultry*.

Salmonellosis is one of the most common foodborne bacterial diseases in the world. The great majority of *Salmonella infections* in humans are foodborne with *Salmonella Enteritidis* and *Salmonella Typhimurium* accounting for a major part of the problem. *Salmonella* serotypes and prevalence may vary considerably between localities, districts, regions and countries and therefore, *surveillance* and identification of the prevalent *Salmonella* serotypes in humans and *poultry* should be carried out in order to develop a control programme for the area.

In most food animal species, *Salmonella* can establish a clinically inapparent *infection* of variable duration, which is significant as a potential zoonosis. Such *animals* may be important in relation to the spread of *infection* between *flocks* and as causes of human foodborne *infection*. In the latter case, this can occur when *meat* and eggs, or their products, enter the food chain thus producing contaminated food.

Article 6.6.2.

Purpose and scope

This chapter deals with methods for on farm prevention, detection and control of *Salmonella* in *poultry*, and complements the Codex Alimentarius Code of Hygienic Practice for Meat (CAC/RCP 58-2005), Code of Hygienic Practice for Eggs and Egg Products (CAC/RCP 15-1976) and Guidelines for the control of *Campylobacter* and *Salmonella* in chicken meat (CAC/GL 78-2011). A pathogen reduction strategy at the farm level is seen as the first step in a continuum that will assist in reducing the presence of foodborne pathogens in eggs and *meat*.

Hygiene and *biosecurity* procedures to be implemented in *poultry* farms and hatcheries are described in Chapter 6.5. on Biosecurity Procedures in Poultry Production.

The recommendations presented in this chapter are relevant to the control of all *Salmonella* with special attention to *S. Enteritidis* and *S. Typhimurium*, as these are common *Salmonella* serotypes in many countries. It should be noted that the epidemiology of animal and human salmonellosis in a particular locality, district, region or country is important for effective control of *Salmonella*.

Article 6.6.3.

Definitions

For the purposes of this chapter the following definitions apply:

Breeders means *poultry* destined for the production of fertile eggs for incubation for the purpose of producing *day-old birds*.

Competitive exclusion means the administration of defined or undefined bacterial flora to *poultry* to prevent gut colonisation by enteropathogens, including *Salmonella*.

Culling means the destruction or *slaughter* of a *flock* before the end of its normal period.

Layers means *poultry* during the period of laying eggs for human consumption.

Article 6.6.4.

Surveillance of poultry flocks for *Salmonella*

Where justified by *risk assessment*, *surveillance* should be carried out to identify infected *flocks* in order to take measures that will reduce the prevalence in *poultry* and the risk of transmission of *Salmonella* to humans. Sampling methods, frequency and type of samples required should be determined by the *Veterinary Services* based on a *risk assessment*. Microbiological testing is preferred to serological testing because of its higher sensitivity in broiler *flocks* and higher specificity in breeder and layer *flocks*. In the framework of regulatory programmes for the control of *Salmonella* in *poultry* and salmonellosis in humans, confirmatory testing may be required to exclude false positive or negative results.

1. Available methods for sampling

Drag swabs: sampling is done by dragging swabs throughout the *poultry* house.

Boot swabs: sampling is done by walking throughout the *poultry* house with absorbent material placed over the footwear of the sampler.

Dust samples: sampling is done by collecting dust from exhaust fans, screens and other equipment in the *poultry* house.

Faecal samples: multiple fresh faecal samples collected from different areas in the *poultry* house or caecal samples collected at the *slaughterhouse/abattoir*.

Meconium, chick box liners, dead in shell and culled *day-old birds* at the hatchery.

Hatchery samples: throughout the hatchery, including inside the incubators.

2. Sample size

Refer to the *Terrestrial Manual*.

3. Laboratory methods

Refer to the *Terrestrial Manual*.

4. Time and frequency of testing

Time and frequency of sampling for each *poultry* type are listed below:

a) Breeders and hatcheries

i) Breeder flocks before lay

- Before the end of the first week of life when the status of the breeder *flock* or the hatchery is not known or does not comply with this chapter.
- Within the four weeks before being moved to another house, or before going into production if the birds will remain in the same house for the production period.
- One or more times during the growing period if there is a culling policy in place. The frequency would be determined on commercial considerations.

ii) Breeder flocks in lay

- At least at monthly intervals during the laying period.
- Additional testing should be determined by the *Veterinary Services*.

iii) Hatcheries

- Testing at hatcheries should complement on farm testing.
- The minimal frequency should be determined by the *Veterinary Services*.

b) Poultry for the production of eggs for human consumption

i) Flocks grown to be layers

- Before the end of the first week of life when the status of the breeder *flock* or the hatchery is not known or does not comply with this chapter.
- Within the four weeks before being moved to another house, or before going into production if the birds will remain in the same house for the production period.
- One or more times during the growing period if there is a culling policy in place. The frequency would be determined by commercial considerations.

- ii) Layer flocks
 - At expected peak of lay for each production cycle (the period of time in the laying cycle when the production of the *flock* is highest).
 - One or more times if there is a culling policy in place or if eggs are diverted to processing for the inactivation of the pathogenic agent. The minimal frequency should be determined by the Veterinary Services.
- c) Poultry for the production of meat
 - i) *Flocks* should be sampled at least once.
 - ii) When sampling occurs on farms and when there is a long period (two weeks or more) between thinning and final depopulation, further testing should be considered.
 - iii) When sampling occurs on farms, *flocks* should be sampled as late as possible before the first birds are transported to the *slaughterhouse/abattoir*. In order to allow for the implementation of control measures during processing, this should be done at a time that ensures the results are available before *slaughter*. Whether sampling occurs on the farm, which is more appropriate for consequent control measures, or at the processing plant, there should be an integrated system in place which allows for investigation of the source of positive *flocks*.
- d) Testing of empty poultry houses
 - Bacteriological monitoring of the efficacy of *disinfection* procedures is recommended when *Salmonella* have been detected in the previous *flock*.
 - As appropriate, sampling of equipment and surfaces as well as boot swabs or drag swabs of the empty *poultry* house should be carried out after depopulation, cleaning and *disinfection*.

Results from *surveillance* may lead to the implementation of additional prevention and control measures to reduce the risk of transmission of *Salmonella* to humans:

- 1) In breeders, control measures may be implemented to reduce the transmission of *Salmonella* to the next generation, especially for trans-ovarian transmitted serotypes such as *S. Enteriditis*.
- 2) In layer *flocks*, control measures will reduce and may eliminate contamination of eggs with *Salmonella*.
- 3) In *poultry* for *meat* production, control measures may be implemented at *slaughter* or further down the food chain.

Article 6.6.5.

Prevention and control measures

Salmonella prevention and control may be achieved by adopting Good Agricultural Practices and Hazard Analysis Critical Control Point (HACCP) principles, and general measures detailed in Chapter 6.5., in combination with the following additional measures, where appropriate. No single measure used alone will achieve effective *Salmonella* control.

Additional prevention and control measures include *vaccination*, competitive exclusion, use of organic acids, culling and product diversion to processing.

Antimicrobial agents should not be used to control *infection* with *Salmonella* in *poultry* because the effectiveness of the treatment is limited, may mask the *infection* at sampling, has the potential to produce residues in *meat* and eggs and can contribute to the development of antimicrobial resistance. *Antimicrobial agents* may also reduce normal flora in the gut and increase the likelihood of colonisation with *Salmonella*. In special circumstances *antimicrobial agents* may be used to salvage birds with high genetic value.

- 1) *Day-old birds* used to stock a *poultry* house should be obtained from breeder *flocks* and hatcheries that have been monitored in accordance with this chapter and in which no evidence of *S. Enteritidis* and *S. Typhimurium* has been detected.
- 2) Layer and breeder *flocks* should be stocked from *flocks* that have been monitored in accordance with this chapter and in which no evidence of *S. Enteritidis* and *S. Typhimurium* has been detected.
- 3) *Feed* contamination with *Salmonella* is known to be a source of *infection* for *poultry*. Therefore, it is recommended to monitor the *Salmonella* status of *poultry feed*, and if found positive to take corrective measures. Heat treated *feed* with or without the addition of other bactericidal or bacteriostatic treatments, e.g. organic acids, are recommended. Where heat treatment is not possible, the use of bacteriostatic or bacterical treatments is recommended. *Feed* should be stored in clean closed containers to prevent access by *wild* birds and rodents. Spilled *feed* should be cleaned up immediately to remove attractants for *wild* birds and rodents.

Treated *feed* should be handled and stored in such a way as to avoid recontamination.

- 4) Competitive exclusion may be used in *day-old birds* to reduce colonisation by *Salmonella*.

Competitive exclusion products should be administered in accordance with the instructions provided by the manufacturer and in accordance with the standards and recommendations of the Veterinary Services.

- 5) Vaccines are used against *Salmonella infections* caused by different serotypes in various *poultry* species, including single or combined vaccines. Vaccines produced in accordance with the *Terrestrial Manual* should be used.

If live vaccines are used, it is important that field and vaccine strains be easily differentiated in the laboratory. If serology is used as the *surveillance* method, it may not be possible to distinguish between *vaccination* and *infection* with a field strain.

Vaccination can be used as part of an overall *Salmonella* control programme. It is recommended that *vaccination* not be used as the sole control measure.

When the status of the breeder *flock* or the hatchery from which the *flock* originates is not known or does not comply with this chapter, *vaccination of flocks*, starting with *day-old birds*, against the *Salmonella* serotypes known to be significant should be considered.

Vaccination against the *Salmonella* serotypes known to be significant should be considered when moving *day-old birds* to a previously contaminated shed so as to minimise the risk of the birds contracting *Salmonella infection*.

When used, vaccines should be administered in accordance with the instructions provided by the manufacturer and in accordance with the standards and recommendations of the Veterinary Services.

Vaccination against *S. Enteritidis* can cause cross-reactions in *Salmonella Pullorum/S. Gallinarum* serological tests and needs to be considered when implementing measures for these pathogenic agents.

- 6) Depending on animal health, *risk assessment*, and public health policies, culling is an option to manage infected breeder and layer *flocks*. Infected *flocks* should be destroyed or slaughtered and processed to minimise human exposure to *Salmonella*.

If culling is not applied, eggs for human consumption should be diverted for processing for inactivation of *Salmonella*.

- 7) *S. Enteritidis* is characterised by ovarian transmission. Countries should set targets for eradicating (or significantly reducing) *S. Enteritidis* from egg-producing *flocks* through a guided policy for eradication from the top of the production pyramid, i.e. from grandparent *flocks* through breeder *flocks* to layer *flocks*.

- 8) The responsible *veterinarian* should evaluate the results of *surveillance* testing for *Salmonella* and supervise the implementation of appropriate control measures. These results should be available to the *veterinarian* before marketing if a veterinary certificate for *flock Salmonella* status is required. When required by the *Competent Authority*, the *veterinarian* or other person responsible for notification should notify the *Competent Authority* if the presence of *Salmonella* of the relevant serotype is confirmed.

Article 6.6.6.

Prevention of *Salmonella* spread from infected flocks

If a *flock* is found infected with specific *Salmonella* serotypes of concern, the following actions should be taken in addition to general measures detailed in Chapter 6.5.:

- 1) According to the epidemiological situation, investigations should be carried out to determine the origin of the *infection*.
- 2) Movement of *poultry flocks* at the end of the production cycle should only be allowed for *slaughter* or destruction. Special precautions should be taken in the transport, *slaughter* and processing of the birds, e.g. they could be sent to a separate *slaughterhouse* or processed at the end of a shift before cleaning and *disinfection* of the equipment.
- 3) Litter should not be reused as such. Used *poultry litter*, carcasses and other potentially contaminated farm waste should be transported and disposed of in a safe manner to prevent the direct or indirect exposure of humans, livestock and *wildlife* to *Salmonella*. Particular care needs to be taken when utilising used *poultry litter* to fertilise plants intended for human consumption. If litter is not removed, it should be treated in a manner to inactivate infectious agents, to prevent the spread from one *flock* to the next.
- 4) Particular care should be taken in cleaning and *disinfection* of the *poultry* house and equipment.
- 5) Before restocking the facility, a bacteriological examination should be carried out as detailed in this chapter and the *Terrestrial Manual*.

Article 6.6.7.

Recommendations for introduction of live poultry (other than day-old birds)

Introduced live *poultry* (other than *day-old birds*) should:

- 1) originate from a *flock* that participates in a *Salmonella surveillance* programme in accordance with the recommendations in Article 6.6.4.;
- 2) originate from a *flock* in which no evidence of *S. Enteritidis* and *S. Typhimurium* has been detected prior to movement and have had no contact with birds or other material from *flocks* that do not comply with this chapter;
- 3) originate from a *flock* that complies with the recommendations in Chapter 6.5.

Article 6.6.8.

Recommendations for introduction of day-old birds

Introduced *day-old birds* should:

- 1) show no clinical sign of salmonellosis on the day of shipment;
- 2) originate from a breeder *flock* and a hatchery that participate in a *Salmonella surveillance* programme in accordance with the recommendations in Article 6.6.4.;
- 3) originate from a breeder *flock* and a hatchery in which no evidence of *S. Enteritidis* and *S. Typhimurium* has been detected and have had no contact during setting, incubation or hatching with *hatching eggs* or other material from *establishments* that do not comply with this chapter;
- 4) originate from a breeder *flock* and a hatchery that comply with the recommendations in Chapter 6.5.;
- 5) be transported in new or clean *containers*.

Article 6.6.9.

Recommendations for introduction of hatching eggs

Introduced *hatching eggs* should:

- 1) originate from a breeder *flock* that participates in a *Salmonella surveillance* programme in accordance with the recommendations in Article 6.6.4.;
 - 2) originate from a breeder *flock* in which no evidence of *S. Enteritidis* and *S. Typhimurium* has been detected and have had no contact with *poultry* or other material from *establishments* that do not comply with this chapter;
 - 3) originate from a breeder *flock* that complies with the recommendations in Chapter 6.5.;
 - 4) be transported in new or clean packaging materials.
-

NB: FIRST ADOPTED IN 2009; MOST RECENT UPDATE ADOPTED IN 2015.

CHAPTER 6.7.

INTRODUCTION TO THE RECOMMENDATIONS FOR CONTROLLING ANTIMICROBIAL RESISTANCE

Article 6.7.1.

Objective

The purpose of Chapters 6.8., 6.9., 6.10. and 6.11. is to provide methodologies for Member Countries to appropriately address the emergence or spread of resistant bacteria from the use of *antimicrobial agents* in *animals* and to contain antimicrobial resistance through controlling the use of *antimicrobial agents*.

These chapters should be read in conjunction with the standards, codes of practice and guidelines on antimicrobial resistance developed by the Codex Alimentarius Commission.

Antimicrobial agents are essential drugs for human and animal health and welfare. WOAH recognises the need for access to *antimicrobial agents* in veterinary medicine: *antimicrobial agents* are essential for treating and controlling infectious diseases in *animals*. WOAH therefore considers that ensuring continued access to effective *antimicrobial agents* is important.

WOAH recognises that antimicrobial resistance is a global public and animal health concern that is influenced by the usage of *antimicrobial agents* in humans, *animals* and elsewhere. Those working in the human, animal and plant sectors have a shared responsibility to prevent or minimise pressures for the selection of antimicrobial resistance factors in humans and *animals*. Arising from its mandate for the protection of animal health and food safety, WOAH developed these chapters to provide guidance to Member Countries in regard to risks in all animal sectors.

The application of *risk assessment* measures should be based on relevant international standards on *risk analysis* and supported by sound data and information when available. The methodologies provided in these chapters should be consulted as part of the standard approach to prevent and reduce antimicrobial resistance.

NB: FIRST ADOPTED IN 2009; MOST RECENT UPDATE ADOPTED IN 2014.

CHAPTER 6.8.

HARMONISATION OF NATIONAL ANTIMICROBIAL RESISTANCE SURVEILLANCE AND MONITORING PROGRAMMES

Article 6.8.1.

Objective

This chapter provides criteria for the development of national antimicrobial resistance surveillance and monitoring programmes, and the harmonisation of existing national antimicrobial resistance surveillance and monitoring programmes in food-producing animals and in products of animal origin intended for human consumption.

Article 6.8.2.

Purpose of surveillance and monitoring

Active surveillance and monitoring are core parts of national antimicrobial resistance surveillance programmes. Passive surveillance and monitoring may offer additional information (refer to Chapter 1.4.). WOAH encourages cooperation among all Member Countries conducting antimicrobial resistance surveillance and monitoring.

Surveillance and monitoring of antimicrobial resistance is necessary to:

- 1) assess and determine the trends and sources of antimicrobial resistance in bacteria;
- 2) detect the emergence of new antimicrobial resistance mechanisms;
- 3) provide the data necessary for conducting *risk analyses* as relevant to animal and human health;
- 4) provide a basis for policy recommendations for animal and human health;
- 5) provide information for evaluating antimicrobial prescribing practices and for prudent use recommendations;
- 6) assess and determine effects of actions to combat antimicrobial resistance.

Article 6.8.3.

General aspects of antimicrobial resistance surveillance and monitoring programmes

Surveillance of antimicrobial resistance and monitoring of the prevalence of, and trends in, resistance in bacteria from *animals*, food, environment and humans, constitutes a critical part of animal health and food safety strategies aimed at limiting the spread of antimicrobial resistance and optimising the choice of *antimicrobial agents* used in therapy. *Feed* should also be considered according to national priorities.

Surveillance or monitoring of bacteria from products of animal origin intended for human consumption collected at different steps of the food chain, including processing, packing and retailing, should also be considered.

National antimicrobial resistance monitoring and surveillance programmes should be scientifically based and may include the following components:

- 1) statistically based surveys;
- 2) sampling and testing of food-producing animals on the farm, at live animal markets or at *slaughter*;
- 3) organised sentinel programme, for example targeted sampling of food-producing animals, *herds*, *flocks*, and *vectors* (e.g. birds, rodents);
- 4) analysis of veterinary practice and diagnostic *laboratory* records;
- 5) sampling and testing of products of animal origin intended for human consumption;
- 6) sampling and testing of *feed ingredients* or *feed*.

Article 6.8.4.

Sampling

1. Sampling strategies

- a) Sampling should be conducted on a statistical basis. The sampling strategy should ensure:
 - the sample is representative of the population of interest and meets the objectives of the surveillance;
 - the robustness of the sampling method.
- b) The following criteria are to be considered:
 - sample source such as food-producing animal, food, animal *feed*;
 - animal species;
 - category of *animal* within species such as age group, production type;
 - health status of the *animals* such as healthy, diseased;
 - sample selection method such as targeted, systematic random, non-random;
 - type of sample such as faeces, caeca, carcass, food product;
 - sample size.

2. Sample size

The sample size should be large enough to allow detection or determine prevalence of, or trends in, existing and emerging antimicrobial resistance phenotypes.

The sample should avoid bias and be representative of the animal *population*, process, product or other unit of interest whilst taking into account the expected prevalence of the bacteria in the sample type, the expected prevalence of the resistance phenotype and the desired level of precision and confidence.

The sample size calculation should be based on independent samples. However, if there is any clustering at the *establishment* or animal level, the sample size should be adjusted accordingly. At low levels of expected prevalence, exact methods of sample size calculation should be preferred to approximate methods. Samples from which bacteria were not isolated cannot be used in the calculation of prevalence of the resistance phenotype.

3. Sample sources (Table 1)

Member Countries should examine their livestock production systems on the basis of available information and assess which sources are likely to contribute most to a potential *risk* to animal and human health.

a) Food-producing animals

Categories of food-producing animals considered for sampling should be relevant to the country's production system. Resource allocation should be guided by criteria such as production volume of the food-producing animal species and the prevalence of resistant bacteria.

b) Food

Member Countries should consider including products of animal origin intended for human consumption, produced locally or imported, in surveillance and monitoring programmes, as foodborne transmission is considered to be an important route for the transfer of antimicrobial resistance.

c) Feed

Member Countries should consider including *feed* in surveillance and monitoring programmes as they may become contaminated with antimicrobial resistant bacteria, e.g. *Salmonella*.

d) Environment

Member Countries should consider including the environment in surveillance and monitoring programmes as the environment of animals can be an important route for transfer or persistence of antimicrobial resistance.

4. Type of sample to be collected (Table 1)

Faecal samples should be collected in amounts sufficient for isolation of the resistant bacteria of concern (at least 5 g from bovine and porcine and whole caeca from *poultry*).

Feed samples representative of the batch should be collected in amounts sufficient for isolation of resistant bacteria of concern (at least 25 g) and should be linked to any pathogen *surveillance* programme that may be in place.

Existing food processing microbiological monitoring, *risk-based* management and other food safety programmes may provide useful samples for surveillance and monitoring of resistance in the food chain after *slaughter*.

Table 1. Examples of sampling sources, sample types and output

Source	Type	Output	Additional information required or additional stratification
Herd or flock of origin	Faeces or bulk milk	Prevalence of resistant bacteria originating from animal populations (of different production types). Relationship between resistance and antimicrobial use	Age categories, production types, etc. Antimicrobial use over time
Slaughterhouse/Abattoir	Faeces	Prevalence of resistant bacteria originating from animals at slaughter	
	Caeca or intestines	As above	
	Carcass	Prevalence of resistant bacteria after carcass dressing, representative of the hygiene of the process and the contamination during slaughter	
Processing, packing	Food products	Prevalence of resistant bacteria after processing, representative of the hygiene of the process and the contamination during processing and handling	
Point of sale (Retail)	Food products	Prevalence of resistant bacteria originating from food, exposure data for consumers	
Various origins	Animal feed	Prevalence of resistant bacteria originating from animal feed, exposure data for animals	
Various origins	Environment	Occurrence of resistant bacteria originating from the animal-immediate or the wider environment	

Article 6.8.5.

Bacteria subjected to surveillance and monitoring

The following categories of bacteria may be included in surveillance and monitoring programmes:

1. Animal bacterial pathogens relevant to the countries' priorities

- a) Surveillance and monitoring of antimicrobial resistance in animal bacterial pathogens is important to:
 - detect emerging resistance that may pose a concern for animal and human health;
 - detect changes in susceptibility patterns;
 - provide information for *risk analysis*;
 - provide data for *veterinarians* to inform their treatment decisions;
 - provide information for epidemiological studies and trend analysis.
- b) Information on the occurrence of antimicrobial resistance in animal bacterial pathogens is in general either derived from clinical material sent to veterinary diagnostic *laboratories* or from an active monitoring programme. Although antimicrobial resistance information provided by diagnostic *laboratories* is primarily for treatment purposes, it is also useful for identification of novel resistance patterns and can possibly assist in identifying emerging resistance. However, in order to estimate accurately the prevalence of antimicrobial

resistance in the bacterial pathogen, in a larger population of animals, an active sampling programme should be implemented.

- c) To promote a harmonised global approach to the selection of animal bacterial pathogens for inclusion in national surveillance and monitoring programmes, bacteria should be selected using one or more of the following criteria:
 - impact on animal health and welfare;
 - implication of antimicrobial resistance in the bacterial pathogen on therapeutic options in veterinary practice;
 - impact on food security and on production (economic importance of associated diseases);
 - bacterial diseases responsible for the majority of veterinary antimicrobial usage (stratified by usage of different classes or their importance);
 - existence of validated susceptibility testing methodologies for the bacterial pathogen;
 - existence of quality assurance programmes or other pathogen reduction options that are non-antimicrobial, such as vaccines and Good Agricultural Practices.

The table below, derived using the above criteria, lists suggested animal bacterial pathogens for inclusion in a surveillance or monitoring programme of food-producing animals. This list is not exhaustive and should be adapted according to the situation in the country.

Table 2. Examples of target animal species and animal bacterial pathogens that may be included in resistance surveillance and monitoring programmes

Source	Respiratory pathogens	Enteric pathogens	Udder pathogens	Other pathogens
Cattle	<i>Pasteurella multocida</i>	<i>Escherichia coli</i>	<i>Staphylococcus aureus</i>	
	<i>Mannheimia haemolytica</i>	<i>Salmonella</i> spp.	<i>Streptococcus</i> spp.	
Pigs	<i>Actinobacillus pleuropneumoniae</i>	<i>Escherichia coli</i>		<i>Streptococcus suis</i>
		<i>Salmonella</i> spp.		
Poultry		<i>Salmonella</i> spp.		<i>Escherichia coli</i>

2. Zoonotic bacteria

a) *Salmonella*

Salmonella should be sampled from food-producing animals, animal-derived food products and, if relevant, feed. For the purposes of consistency and harmonisation, animal samples should preferably be taken from healthy animals at the slaughterhouse/abattoir and feed samples should preferably be taken at the feed mill.

Surveillance and monitoring programmes may also include sampling of the environment at places where animals are kept or handled or bacterial isolates originating from other sources obtained from designated laboratories.

Isolation and identification of bacteria and bacterial strains should follow nationally or internationally standardised procedures.

Serovars of public health importance such as *S.Typhimurium* and *S. Enteritidis* should be included in surveillance and monitoring programmes. The inclusion of other relevant serovars will depend on the epidemiological situation in each country.

All *Salmonella* isolates should be characterised by serotype and, where appropriate, by genotype at designated laboratories.

b) *Campylobacter*

Campylobacter should be isolated from food-producing animals or associated food products. Isolation and identification of these bacteria should follow nationally or internationally standardised procedures. *Campylobacter* isolates should be identified to the species level.

c) Other bacteria that are pathogenic for humans

Other bacteria that are pathogenic for humans, such as methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* (MRSA) and *Listeria monocytogenes*, may be included in resistance surveillance and monitoring programmes.

3. Commensal bacteria

E. coli and *enterococci* (*Enterococcus faecium* and *E. faecalis*) may be sampled from *feed*, food-producing animals, their environment and products of animal origin intended for human consumption.

These bacteria are commonly used in surveillance and monitoring programmes as indicators, providing information on the potential reservoir of antimicrobial resistance genes, which may be transferred to pathogenic bacteria. For the purposes of consistency and harmonisation, these bacteria should preferably be isolated from healthy animals, at the *slaughterhouse/abattoir*.

Article 6.8.6.

Storage of bacterial strains

If possible, isolates should be preserved at least until reporting is completed. Preferably, appropriate isolates should be permanently stored. Bacterial strain collections, established by storage of all isolates from certain years, will provide the possibility of conducting retrospective studies.

Article 6.8.7.

Antimicrobial susceptibility testing

Clinically important *antimicrobial agents* or classes used in human and veterinary medicine should be included in antimicrobial resistance surveillance programmes. Member Countries should refer to the WOAH list of antimicrobials of veterinary importance for surveillance and monitoring purposes, recognising that the number of tested *antimicrobial agents* may have to be limited according to financial resources.

Appropriately validated antimicrobial susceptibility testing methods should be used in accordance with Chapter 2.1.1. of the *Terrestrial Manual*, concerning laboratory methodologies for bacterial antimicrobial susceptibility testing. Antimicrobial susceptibility data should be reported not only qualitatively (susceptible or resistant), but also quantitatively (minimum inhibitory concentrations [MICs] or inhibition zone diameters).

Article 6.8.8.

Recording, storage and interpretation of data

- 1) Because of the volume and complexity of the information to be stored and the need to keep these data available for an undetermined period of time, careful consideration should be given to database design.
- 2) The storage of raw (primary, non-interpreted) data is essential to allow the evaluation in response to various kinds of questions, including those arising in the future.
- 3) Consideration should be given to the technical requirements of computer systems when an exchange of data between different systems (comparability or compatibility of automatic recording of laboratory data and transfer of these data between and within resistance surveillance and monitoring programmes) is envisaged. Results should be collected in a suitable national database and recorded quantitatively:
 - a) as distributions of MICs in micrograms per millilitre;
 - b) or inhibition zone diameters in millimetres.
- 4) The information to be recorded should include, where possible, the following aspects:
 - a) sampling programme;
 - b) sampling date;
 - c) animal species and production type;
 - d) type of sample;
 - e) purpose of sampling;
 - f) type of antimicrobial susceptibility testing method used;
 - g) geographical origin (geographical information system data where available) of *herd*, *flock* or animal;

- h) animal factors such as age, condition, health status, identification, sex;
 - i) exposure of animals to *antimicrobial agents*;
 - j) bacterial isolation rate.
- 5) The reporting of laboratory data should include the following information:
- a) identity of *laboratory*,
 - b) isolation date,
 - c) reporting date,
 - d) bacterial species,
- and, where relevant, other typing characteristics, such as:
- e) serotype or serovar,
 - f) phage type,
 - g) antimicrobial susceptibility result or resistance phenotype,
 - h) genotype.
- 6) The number of isolates regarded as resistant should be reported as a proportion of the number of isolates tested, including the defined interpretive criteria used.
- 7) In the clinical setting, breakpoints are used to categorise bacterial strains as susceptible, intermediate or resistant. These clinical breakpoints may be elaborated on a national basis and may vary between Member Countries.
- 8) The bacterial isolation methods, antimicrobial susceptibility testing methods, standards and guidelines used should be recorded.
- 9) For surveillance and monitoring purposes, use of the microbiological breakpoint (also referred to as epidemiological cut-off point), which is based on the distribution of MICs or inhibition zone diameters of the specific bacterial species tested, is preferred. When using microbiological breakpoints, only the bacterial population with acquired resistance that clearly deviates from the distribution of the normal susceptible population will be designated as resistant. Clinical breakpoints, when available, should also be reported.
- 10) Ideally, data should be collected at the individual isolate level. This will allow antimicrobial resistance patterns to be recorded over time, along with, when available, relevant data on usage of *antimicrobial agents* and management practices.

Article 6.8.9.

Reference laboratory and annual reports

- 1) Member Countries should designate a national reference centre that assumes the responsibility to:
- a) coordinate the activities related to the antimicrobial resistance surveillance and monitoring programmes;
 - b) coordinate and collect information from participating laboratories within the country;
 - c) produce an annual report on the antimicrobial resistance situation in the country.
- 2) The national reference centre should have access to the:
- a) raw data;
 - b) complete results of quality assurance and inter-laboratory calibration activities;
 - c) inter-laboratory proficiency testing results;
 - d) information on the structure of the surveillance or monitoring system;
 - e) information on the chosen laboratory methods.
-

NB: FIRST ADOPTED IN 2003; MOST RECENT UPDATE ADOPTED IN 2018.

CHAPTER 6.9.

MONITORING OF THE QUANTITIES AND USAGE PATTERNS OF ANTIMICROBIAL AGENTS USED IN FOOD-PRODUCING ANIMALS

Article 6.9.1.

Purpose

The purpose of the recommendations in this is to describe an approach to the monitoring of the quantities of *antimicrobial agents* used in food-producing animals.

In order to evaluate antimicrobial exposure in food-producing animals, quantitative information should be collected to monitor usage patterns by animal species, *antimicrobial agents* or class of *antimicrobial agents*, route of administration and type of use: veterinary medical (to treat, control or prevent infectious disease) or non veterinary medical (including growth promotion).

Article 6.9.2.

Definitions

For the purposes of the *Terrestrial Code* the following definitions apply:

Veterinary medical use of antimicrobial agents means the administration of an *antimicrobial agent* to an individual or a group of *animals* to treat, control or prevent infectious disease:

- **to treat** means to administer an *antimicrobial agent* to an individual or a group of *animals* showing clinical signs of an infectious disease;
- **to control** means to administer an *antimicrobial agent* to a group of *animals* containing sick *animals* and healthy *animals* (presumed to be infected), to minimise or resolve clinical signs and to prevent further spread of the disease;
- **to prevent** means to administer an *antimicrobial agent* to an individual or a group of *animals* at risk of acquiring a specific *infection* or in a specific situation where infectious disease is likely to occur if the drug is not administered.

Non veterinary medical use of antimicrobial agents means the administration of *antimicrobial agents* to *animals* for any purpose other than to treat, control or prevent infectious disease; it includes growth promotion.

Growth promotion means the administration of *antimicrobial agents* to *animals* only to increase the rate of weight gain or the efficiency of feed utilisation.

Article 6.9.3.

Objectives

The information provided in these recommendations is essential for antimicrobial resistance *risk analyses* and planning purposes and should be read in conjunction with Chapters 6.8. and 6.11. This information is necessary for interpreting antimicrobial resistance surveillance data and can assist in responding to problems of antimicrobial resistance in a precise and targeted way. The continued collection of this basic information will also help to give an indication of trends in the use of *antimicrobial agents* in animals over time and potential associations with antimicrobial resistance in animals. This information may also assist in *risk management* to evaluate the effectiveness of efforts to ensure responsible and prudent use and mitigation strategies (for example, by identifying changes in veterinary prescribing practices) and to indicate where change of antimicrobial usage practices might be appropriate. The publication of these data is important to ensure transparency and to allow all interested parties to assess trends, to perform *risk assessments* and for *risk communication* purposes.

Article 6.9.4.

Development and standardisation of antimicrobial monitoring systems

Systems to monitor antimicrobial usage consist of the following elements:

1. Sources of antimicrobial data

a) Basic sources

Sources of data will vary from country to country. Such sources may include customs, import and export data, manufacturing and sales data.

b) Direct sources

Data from *veterinary medicinal product* registration authorities, wholesalers, retailers, pharmacists, *veterinarians*, feed stores, feed mills and pharmaceutical industry associations can be efficient and practical sources. A possible mechanism for the collection of this information is to make the provision of appropriate information by pharmaceutical manufacturers to the regulatory authority one of the requirements of antimicrobial registration.

c) End-use sources (*veterinarians* and food animal producers)

This may be appropriate when basic or direct sources cannot be used for the routine collection of the information or when more accurate and locally specific information is required (such as off label use).

Periodic collection of this type of information may be sufficient.

Collection, storage and processing of data from end-use sources should be carefully designed, well managed and have the capability to produce accurate and targeted information.

d) Other sources

Non-conventional sources including Internet sales data related to *antimicrobial agents* could be collected where available.

Member Countries may wish to consider, for reasons of cost and administrative efficiency, collecting medical, food-producing animal, agricultural and other antimicrobial use data in a single programme. A consolidated programme would also facilitate comparisons of animal use with human use data for *risk analysis* purposes and help to promote optimal usage of *antimicrobial agents*.

2. Types and reporting formats of antimicrobial usage data

a) Type of antimicrobial use data

The data collected at minimum should be the weight in kilograms of the active ingredient of the antimicrobial(s) used in food-producing animals per year. It is possible to estimate total usage by collecting sales data, prescribing data, manufacturing data, import and export data or any combination of these.

The total number of food-producing animals by species, type of production and their weight in kilograms for food production per year (as relevant to the country of production) is essential basic information.

Information on dosage regimens (dose, dosing interval and duration of the treatment) and route of administration are elements to include when estimating antimicrobial usage in food-producing animals.

b) Reporting formats of antimicrobial use data

The *antimicrobial agents*, classes or sub-classes to be included in data reporting should be based on current known mechanisms of antimicrobial activity and antimicrobial resistance data.

Nomenclature of *antimicrobial agents* should comply with international standards where available.

For active ingredients present in the form of compounds or derivatives, the mass of active entity of the molecule should be recorded. For *antimicrobial agents* expressed in International Units, the factor used to convert these units to mass of active entity should be stated.

The reporting of antimicrobial use data may be further organised by species, by route of administration (specifically in-feed, in-water, injectable, oral, intramammary, intra-uterine and topical) and by type of use (veterinary medical or non veterinary medical).

Regarding data coming from end-use sources, further breakdown of data for analysis of antimicrobial use at the regional, local, *herd* and individual *veterinarian* or veterinary practice levels may be possible.

Article 6.9.5.

Interpretation

According to the WOAH *risk assessment* guidelines (refer to Chapter 6.11.), factors such as the number or percentage of animals treated, treatment regimes, type of use and route of administration are key elements to consider.

When comparing antimicrobial use data over time, changes in the size and composition of animal populations should also be taken into account.

The interpretation and communication of results should take into account factors such as seasonality and disease conditions, animal species and age affected, agricultural systems (e.g. extensive range conditions and feedlots), animal movements, and dosage regimens with *antimicrobial agents*.

NB: FIRST ADOPTED IN 2003; MOST RECENT UPDATE ADOPTED IN 2018.

CHAPTER 6.10.

RESPONSIBLE AND PRUDENT USE OF ANTIMICROBIAL AGENTS IN VETERINARY MEDICINE

Article 6.10.1.

Purpose and scope

This document provides guidance for the responsible and prudent use of *antimicrobial agents* in veterinary medicine for treatment, control and prevention of diseases in food- and non-food-producing *animals*, with the aim of protecting both *animal* and human health as well as minimising and containing antimicrobial resistance risks in the relevant animal environment, as part of a One Health approach.

It defines the respective responsibilities of the *Competent Authorities* and stakeholders such as the veterinary pharmaceutical industry, *veterinarians*, animal feed manufacturers, distributors, and animal breeders, owners and keepers, who are involved in any or all of the following activities: regulatory approval, production, control, importation, exportation, sales, advertising, distribution, prescription and use of *veterinary medicinal products* containing *antimicrobial agents*.

Responsible and prudent use is determined by taking into account the importance of the *antimicrobial agent* to veterinary and human medicine, the risk of development of antimicrobial resistance, the specifications detailed in the relevant regulatory approval and the indications for use, including off-label use, when *antimicrobial agents* are administered to *animals*. It is part of good veterinary practices. All measures to keep *animals* healthy, such as preventing infectious diseases through *vaccination*, *biosecurity*, good agricultural practices and good animal husbandry practices and adequate nutrition contribute to a decreased need of using *antimicrobial agents* in *animals*, thus reducing the risk for development and spread of antimicrobial resistance.

Activities associated with the responsible and prudent use of *antimicrobial agents* should involve all relevant stakeholders.

Coordination of these activities at the national or regional level is recommended and may support the implementation of targeted actions by the stakeholders involved and enable clear and transparent communications.

Article 6.10.2.

Objectives of responsible and prudent use

The objectives of responsible and prudent veterinary medical use of *antimicrobial agents* are to:

- 1) preserve the effectiveness of *antimicrobial agents* used in veterinary and human medicine and their safety in *animals*;
- 2) comply with the ethical obligation and economic need to keep *animals* in good health;
- 3) prevent or reduce transfer of resistant microorganisms or resistance determinants within animal *populations*, between *animals*, humans, and the environment;
- 4) protect human health by ensuring the safety of food of *animal* origin with respect to residues of *antimicrobial agents*.

In order to achieve the objectives of responsible and prudent veterinary medical use of *antimicrobial agents*, a range of measures intended to improve animal health and *animal welfare* while preventing or reducing the selection, emergence and spread of antimicrobial resistant microorganisms and resistance determinants in *animals*, humans and environment should be implemented. These measures include promotion of good animal husbandry practices, hygiene procedures, *biosecurity*, *vaccination* strategies, access to laboratory testing, and alternatives to the use of antimicrobials, which can help to minimise the need for antimicrobial use in *animals*.

Article 6.10.3.

Responsibilities of the Competent Authorities

1. National Action Plan for Antimicrobial Resistance

The *Competent Authorities* should design and oversee the implementation of the relevant part of their National Action Plan considering the findings of the situational analysis of the country, the objectives of the WOAH, WHO, FAO and UNEP Global Action Plan (GAP) for Antimicrobial Resistance and existing guidance for developing National Action Plans for antimicrobial resistance. The *Competent Authorities* in cooperation with animal health, plant health, environment and public health professionals, and other relevant stakeholders should adopt a One Health approach to promote the responsible and prudent use of *antimicrobial agents* as an element of a national strategy to minimise and contain antimicrobial resistance. Furthermore, the *Competent Authorities* should allocate budgetary resources for the design and implementation of the relevant part of their National Action Plan including communication strategies and professional training programmes. The *Competent Authorities* should also conduct regular monitoring and evaluation of the National Action Plan.

National Action Plans should incorporate and inform on best management practices, including disease prevention and control measures, implementation of *biosecurity* and development of animal health programmes to reduce the burden of animal disease thereby reducing the need for antimicrobial use. As part of National Action Plans for antimicrobial resistance, the *Competent Authorities* should ensure that surveillance for antimicrobial use and antimicrobial resistance in the animal health sector are in place and should work closely together with human, plant and environmental sectors on the harmonisation, analysis and integration of *surveillance* across sectors. The *Competent Authorities* should implement a programme in accordance with Chapters 1.4. and 6.8.

National Action Plans should include recommendations to relevant professional organisations to develop evidence-based species or sector-specific antimicrobial use guidelines.

2. Regulatory approval

The *Competent Authority* is responsible for granting relevant regulatory approval which should be done in accordance with the provisions of the *Terrestrial Code*. The *Competent Authority* has a significant role in specifying the terms of this approval and in providing the appropriate information to *veterinarians* and all other relevant stakeholders.

The *Competent Authority* should establish and implement efficient statutory registration procedures that evaluate the quality, safety and efficacy and post-marketing surveillance programmes for *veterinary medicinal products* containing *antimicrobial agents*. According to Article 3.2.2., the *Competent Authority* should be free from any commercial, financial, hierarchical, political or other pressures which might influence its judgement or decisions.

Member Countries lacking the necessary resources to implement an efficient registration procedure for *veterinary medicinal products* containing *antimicrobial agents*, and which are importing them, should undertake the following measures:

- a) evaluate the effectiveness of administrative controls on the import of these *veterinary medicinal products*;
- b) evaluate the validity of the registration procedures of the exporting or manufacturing country as appropriate;
- c) develop the necessary technical co-operation with an experienced *Competent Authority* to check the quality of imported *veterinary medicinal products* as well as the validity of the recommended conditions of use.

The *Competent Authority* of *importing countries* should request the veterinary pharmaceutical industry to provide certificates of quality prepared by the *Competent Authority* of the exporting or manufacturing country as appropriate.

Regulatory approval is granted for veterinary medical use, as defined in Article 6.9.2., on the basis of the data submitted by a pharmaceutical company or other applicant and only if the criteria of quality, safety and efficacy are met.

The *Competent Authority* is encouraged to consult and apply, as appropriate, the guidelines based on the technical requirements for veterinary product registration established by the International Cooperation on Harmonisation of Technical Requirements for Registration of Veterinary Medicinal Products (VICH).

An evaluation of the risks and benefits to both *animals* and humans resulting from the use of *antimicrobial agents* in *animals* should be carried out. The evaluation may focus on each individual *antimicrobial agent*; the findings from one agent should not be generalised to the antimicrobial class to which the particular active ingredient belongs. Guidance on use should be provided for all target species, route of administration, dosage regimen (dose, dosing interval and duration of the administration), and withdrawal period as relevant.

The *Competent Authority* should implement timely regulatory approval processes for new *antimicrobial agents* or other options, including alternatives to the use of antimicrobials, in order to address specific needs for the treatment of animal diseases and should take into account recommendations included in the WOAH List of Antimicrobials of Veterinary Importance.

3. Quality of antimicrobial agents and veterinary medicinal products containing antimicrobial agents

The *Competent Authority* should make sure that the quality of the *veterinary medicinal products* was determined by the applicant in accordance with national and international guidance to ensure that:

- a) the specifications of *antimicrobial agents* used as active ingredients comply with the provisions of registration documentations (such as monographs) approved by the relevant *Competent Authority*;
- b) the quality of *antimicrobial agents* in the marketed dosage forms is maintained until the expiry date, established under the recommended storage conditions;
- c) *antimicrobial agents* are stable and compatible when mixed with *feed* or water;
- d) all *antimicrobial agents* and the *veterinary medicinal products* containing them are manufactured to the appropriate quality and in compliance with the provisions of *good manufacturing practices*.

4. Assessment of efficacy

The *Competent Authority* should conduct an assessment of the efficacy based on data provided in the relevant regulatory approval application submitted by the applicant to enable marketing:

a) Preclinical trials

i) Preclinical trials should:

- establish the spectrum of activity of *antimicrobial agents* against relevant pathogenic agents and non-pathogenic agents (commensals);
- assess the capacity of the *antimicrobial agents* to select for resistance *in vitro* and *in vivo*, taking into consideration intrinsically resistant strains and strains with acquired resistance;
- establish an appropriate dosage regimen and route of administration necessary to ensure the efficacy of the *antimicrobial agents* and limit the selection of antimicrobial resistance. Pharmacokinetic and pharmacodynamic data and models can assist in this appraisal. Such data together with clinical data could be used by independent experts to establish clinical breakpoints per animal species, *antimicrobial agent* and pathogen combination.

ii) The activity of *antimicrobial agents* towards the targeted microorganism should be established by pharmacodynamic investigations. The following characteristics should be taken into account, as appropriate:

- spectrum of activity and mode of action;
- minimum inhibitory concentration (MIC) and minimum bactericidal concentration (MBC) against recent isolates;
- time-kill kinetics;
- time-dependent or concentration-dependent activity, or co-dependency;
- activity and concentration at the site of *infection*.

iii) The dosage regimens allowing maintenance of effective antimicrobial concentrations should be informed by pharmacokinetic and pharmacodynamics investigations and should take into account:

- any potential routes of administration proposed by the applicant;
- absorption, distribution, metabolism and elimination, and concentration at the site of *infection*.

Further dose determination studies may be conducted to examine the microbiological and clinical response to several dose levels or dosing intervals.

Any proposed use of combinations of *antimicrobial agents* should be scientifically supported.

b) Clinical trials

Clinical trials in the target animal species should be performed to confirm the validity of the claimed indications and dosage regimens established during the preclinical phase. The following criteria should be taken into account:

- diversity of the clinical cases encountered when performing multi-centre trials;
- compliance of protocols with good clinical practice;
- eligibility of studied clinical cases, based on appropriate criteria of clinical and bacteriological diagnoses;
- parameters for qualitatively and quantitatively assessing the efficacy of the treatment.

5. Assessment of the potential of antimicrobial agents to select for resistance

Other studies may be requested in support of the assessment of the potential of *antimicrobial agents* to select for resistance. The applicant for regulatory approval should, where possible, supply data derived in target animal species under the intended conditions of use.

For this assessment the following may be considered:

- a) the concentration of active *antimicrobial agents* and, where appropriate, active metabolites in the gut of the *animal* (where the majority of pathogenic and commensal bacteria reside) at the defined dosage level;
- b) the antimicrobial activity of the *antimicrobial agents* and metabolites in the intestinal environment;
- c) the pathway for human exposure to antimicrobial resistant microorganisms, antimicrobial resistance determinants and antimicrobial residues in the relevant animal environment;
- d) the presence of and potential for co-selection, co-resistance and cross-resistance;
- e) the baseline level of resistance, including intrinsic and acquired resistance, in the pathogenic, commensal and food-borne bacteria of human health relevance in both *animals* and humans.

6. Assessment of the impact on the relevant animal environment

The *Competent Authority* should consider the results of an antimicrobial resistance environmental risk assessment in accordance with Chapter 6.11. For both food- and non-food producing *animals* the following risk factors should be taken into consideration as appropriate: reuse of wastewater for irrigation, use of manure, other waste-based fertilisers for soil fertilisation, transfer of antimicrobial resistant microorganisms and determinants in veterinary practice. When a significant antimicrobial resistance risk is determined the need for monitoring and proportionate risk management measures should be discussed.

7. Establishment of acceptable daily intake (ADI), maximum residue limit (MRL) and withdrawal periods in food-producing animals

- a) The establishment of an ADI for each *antimicrobial agent*, and an MRL for each animal-derived food, should be undertaken before a *veterinary medicinal product* containing it is granted regulatory approval.
- b) When setting the ADI and MRL for an *antimicrobial agent*, the safety evaluation should also include the potential microbiological effects on the intestinal microbiota of humans to derive ADI.
- c) For all *veterinary medicinal products* containing *antimicrobial agents* for use in food-producing *animals*, withdrawal periods should be established for each animal species in order to ensure compliance with the MRLs, taking into account:
 - the MRLs established for the *antimicrobial agent* in the target animal edible tissues;
 - the composition of the product and the pharmaceutical form;
 - the dosage regimen;
 - the route of administration.
- d) Methods used for regulatory testing of residues in food should be described and based on the established marker residues.

8. Establishment of a summary of product characteristics or equivalent for each veterinary medicinal product containing antimicrobial agents

The *Competent Authority* should ensure that the Summary of Product Characteristics (SPC) or equivalent, the package insert, and labelling includes the information necessary for the appropriate use of *veterinary medicinal products* containing *antimicrobial agents*. The SPC or equivalent summary should contain the following items as appropriate:

- a) name of the *veterinary medicinal product*;
- b) active ingredient and class;
- c) pharmaceutical form;
- d) quantitative composition;
- e) pharmacological properties;
- f) any potential adverse effects;
- g) target animal species and, as appropriate, age or production category;
- h) therapeutic indications;
- i) target microorganisms;
- j) dosage regimen (i.e. dose, frequency of dosing, and route and duration of administration);
- k) withdrawal periods;

- l) incompatibilities and interactions;
- m) storage conditions and shelf-life;
- n) operator safety;
- o) particular precautions before use;
- p) precautions for the protection of the environment;
- q) use during pregnancy, lactation or lay;
- r) particular precautions for the proper disposal of unused or expired products;
- s) information on conditions of use relevant to minimise the development of resistance;
- t) contraindications;
- u) known signs of overdosage and information about its treatment.

9. Post-marketing antimicrobial resistance surveillance

The *Competent Authority* should assess the information collected through existing pharmacovigilance and surveillance programmes, including reporting of lack of response, and any other relevant scientific data. These information sources should form part of the comprehensive strategy to detect and minimise antimicrobial resistance.

In addition, specific surveillance should be considered to assess the impact of the use of a specific *veterinary medicinal product*, where scientific evidence indicates a specific risk and may be implemented after the granting of the relevant regulatory approval. The *surveillance* programme should evaluate not only resistance in target animal pathogens, but also in foodborne and other relevant zoonotic pathogens, and commensals if relevant and possible. This will also contribute to general epidemiological *surveillance* of antimicrobial resistance.

10. Distribution and administration of antimicrobial agents or veterinary medicinal products containing antimicrobial agents

The *Competent Authority* should ensure that all the *antimicrobial agents* and *veterinary medicinal products* containing *antimicrobial agents* used in animals including through *feed* and water are:

- a) supplied only through licensed or authorised distribution systems;
- b) not illegal, substandard, falsified medicines or unapproved formulations and that these are prevented from entering distribution systems;
- c) prescribed by a *veterinarian* or other suitably trained person authorised to prescribe *veterinary medicinal products* containing *antimicrobial agents* in accordance with the national legislation;
- d) administered to *animals* by a *veterinarian* or under the supervision or by direction of a *veterinarian*, by other suitably trained persons, animal breeders, owners or keepers as appropriate.

The *Competent Authority* should encourage the availability of authorised products on the market and in collaboration with the veterinary pharmaceutical industry follow-up any potential drug shortages.

The *Competent Authority* should develop and implement effective procedures for the safe collection and disposal or destruction of unused or expired *veterinary medicinal products* containing *antimicrobial agents*. Their labels should have appropriate instructions for disposal and destruction.

11. Control of advertising

All advertising of *antimicrobial agents* should be compatible with the principles of responsible and prudent use and should be controlled by codes of advertising standards. The *Competent Authority* should ensure that:

- a) the advertising of these products complies with the regulatory approval granted, in particular regarding the content of the summary of product characteristics or equivalent;
- b) advertising is restricted to a *veterinarian* or other suitably trained person authorised to prescribe *veterinary medicinal products* containing *antimicrobial agents*, or to persons permitted to supply *veterinary medicinal products* in accordance with the national legislation; and
- c) their promotion is done in a manner consistent with specific regulatory recommendations for the product.

12. Establishment of clinical breakpoints

The *Competent Authority* should encourage and support the development of clinical breakpoints for each bacteria-antimicrobial-animal species combination to interpret the results of susceptibility tests. Those clinical breakpoints should be established in accordance with the *Terrestrial Manual*.

13. Training related to the use of antimicrobial agents and antimicrobial resistance

The *Competent Authority* should take a key role in promoting targeted training for responsible and prudent use of antimicrobials and on antimicrobial resistance. The target audiences for the training on the use of *antimicrobial agents* should include all the relevant stakeholders and organisations, such as the veterinary pharmaceutical industry, veterinary and paraprofessional education establishments, research institutes, veterinary professional and paraprofessional organisations and other approved users such as breeders, owners and keepers of food-producing *animals* and manufacturers of medicated animal feed. The training may include:

- a) the ability of *antimicrobial agents* to select for resistant microorganisms in *animals* and the importance of that resistance to public and animal health and the relevant animal environment;
- b) the need to observe responsible and prudent use principles for the use of *antimicrobial agents* in animal husbandry in agreement with the provisions of the regulatory approval, national and international guidelines and recommendations from the WOAH List of Antimicrobial Agents of Veterinary Importance;
- c) information on the appropriate storage conditions before and during use and proper disposal of unused or expired *veterinary medicinal products*;
- d) training in existing and new methodologies for target pathogen identification, susceptibility testing, molecular detection of resistance and risk assessment models, understanding methods and results of antimicrobial susceptibility testing and molecular analysis and their use in risk assessment;
- e) interpretation of relevant risk assessment outputs of antimicrobial resistance derived from the use of *veterinary medicinal products* containing *antimicrobial agents* in *animals* and how to use these outputs to inform the development of *risk management* and *risk communication* strategies;
- f) the collection and reporting of antimicrobial resistance and antimicrobial use data to the *Competent Authority* to complement existing national and international surveillance programmes;
- g) information on disease prevention, management and mitigation strategies that can contribute to reducing the need to use *antimicrobial agents* in *animals*.

14. Monitoring of antimicrobial use

In accordance with Chapter 6.9., the *Competent Authority* should collate data on antimicrobial use in a harmonised manner to improve the understanding of the extent and trends of antimicrobial use and antimicrobial resistance in animal *populations* at national level and identify areas for further research. The data collected on antimicrobial use at country level should:

- a) give an indication of the trends in the use of *antimicrobial agents* in *animals* over time and potential associations with antimicrobial resistance in *animals*;
- b) help in the interpretation of antimicrobial resistance *surveillance* data and assist in responding to problems of antimicrobial resistance in a precise and targeted way;
- c) assist in *risk management* to evaluate the effectiveness of efforts and mitigation strategies;
- d) inform *risk communication* strategies;
- e) foster improved antimicrobial stewardship, ensuring continued availability of safe and effective *antimicrobial agents* for both animal and human health.

The *Competent Authority* should provide the data to the 'Animal Antimicrobial Use Global database of the World Organisation for Animal Health' on a yearly basis.

15. Knowledge gaps and research

The *Competent Authority* should encourage coordination of public- and private-funded research, including in the following areas:

- a) improve the knowledge about the mechanisms of action, pharmacokinetics and pharmacodynamics of *antimicrobial agents* to optimize the dosage regimens for veterinary medical use and their effectiveness;
- b) improve the knowledge about the mechanisms of selection, co-selection, emergence and transmission of resistance determinants and resistant microorganisms in animal *populations*, and between *animals*, humans and the relevant animal environment, including along the food chain;
- c) develop practical models for applying the concept of *risk analysis* to assess the animal and public health concerns linked to the development of antimicrobial resistance in *animals* and animal-derived foods;
- d) further develop protocols to predict, during the regulatory approval process, the impact of the proposed use of the *antimicrobial agents* in *animals* on the rate and extent of antimicrobial resistance development and spread to *animals*, humans, plants and the relevant animal environment, following a One Health approach;
- e) assess the primary drivers leading to use of *antimicrobial agents* in *animals*, and the effectiveness of different interventions to change behaviour and reduce the need to use *antimicrobial agents* in *animals*;

- f) develop safe and effective alternatives to use of *antimicrobial agents*, new *antimicrobial agents*, rapid diagnostics, and vaccines for infectious diseases to reduce the need for antimicrobial use in *animals*;
 - g) improve knowledge on the role of the environment on the persistence of *antimicrobial agents*, and the emergence, transfer and persistence of antimicrobial resistance determinants and resistant microorganisms in the relevant animal environment.
16. Competent Authorities should implement appropriate regulatory measures to control the unauthorised manufacture, compounding, importation, advertisement, trade, distribution, storage and use of unlicensed, adulterated and counterfeit veterinary medicinal products containing antimicrobial agents, including bulk active ingredients.

Article 6.10.4.

Responsibilities of the veterinary pharmaceutical industry with regards to veterinary medicinal products containing antimicrobial agents

1. Regulatory approval

The veterinary pharmaceutical industry has responsibilities to:

- a) provide all the information requested by the national *Competent Authority* as specified in Article 6.10.3.;
- b) guarantee the quality of this information in compliance with the provisions of good manufacturing, laboratory and clinical practices;
- c) implement, and report in a timely manner, a pharmacovigilance programme, and on request, *specific surveillance* for bacterial susceptibility and resistance data. For the latter, the veterinary pharmaceutical industry should isolate and identify bacteria, and collect relevant data and submit them to the *Competent Authority*. These data may enable independent experts to establish clinical breakpoints for use in the laboratory to guide antimicrobial therapy.

2. Marketing and export

For the marketing and export of *veterinary medicinal products* containing *antimicrobial agents*:

- a) only licensed and officially approved *veterinary medicinal products* containing *antimicrobial agents* should be sold and supplied, and then only through authorised distribution systems;
- b) the veterinary pharmaceutical industry should provide certificates of quality prepared by the *Competent Authority* of the exporting or manufacturing countries to the *importing country*;
- c) the veterinary pharmaceutical industry should endeavour to ensure the availability of authorised products and cooperate with the *Competent Authority* to forecast and avoid any drug shortage;
- d) the veterinary pharmaceutical industry should provide the *Competent Authority* with the information necessary to evaluate the amount of *antimicrobial agents* marketed.

3. Advertising

The veterinary pharmaceutical industry should respect principles of responsible and prudent use and should comply with established codes of advertising practices, including to:

- a) distribute information in compliance with the provisions of the granted approval;
- b) not advertise *veterinary medicinal products* containing *antimicrobial agents* directly to the food animal breeder, owner and keeper or to the general public.

4. Training

The veterinary pharmaceutical industry should participate in training programmes as defined in point 13 of Article 6.10.3.

5. Research

The veterinary pharmaceutical industry should contribute to research as defined in point 15 of Article 6.10.3.

Article 6.10.5.

Responsibilities of wholesale and retail distributors

- 1) Distributors should only distribute *veterinary medicinal products* containing *antimicrobial agents* in accordance with the national legislation as prescribed by a *veterinarian* or other suitably trained person authorised to prescribe *veterinary medicinal products* containing *antimicrobial agents*. All products should be appropriately labelled.
- 2) The recommendations on the responsible and prudent use of *veterinary medicinal products* containing *antimicrobial agents* should be reinforced by retail distributors who should keep for an appropriate period detailed sales records of:
 - a) date of sale;
 - b) name and contact information of the prescriber;
 - c) name of user;
 - d) name of product;
 - e) batch number;
 - f) expiration date;
 - g) quantity supplied;
 - h) copy of prescription;
 - i) other information as required by national legislation.
- 3) Distributors should also be involved in training programmes on the responsible and prudent use of *veterinary medicinal products* containing *antimicrobial agents*, as defined in point 13 of Article 6.10.3.

Article 6.10.6.

Responsibilities of veterinarians

The *veterinarian's* responsibility is to promote animal health and *animal welfare*, as well as public health, through antimicrobial stewardship, prevention, detection, diagnosis, control and treatment of animal diseases. The promotion of sound animal husbandry methods, hygiene procedures, *biosecurity* and *vaccination* strategies can help to minimise the need for antimicrobial use in *animals*.

The *veterinarian* should only prescribe *antimicrobial agents* for *animals* under their care. The *veterinarian* should consider safe and effective alternatives to the use of antimicrobials before prescribing *antimicrobial agents*.

Some of the responsibilities described in this article may be applicable to *veterinary paraprofessionals* or other suitably trained persons according to the national legislation.

1. Pre-requisites for using antimicrobial agents

The responsibilities of *veterinarians* are to obtain a detailed history and carry out a proper clinical examination of the *animal(s)*, taking appropriate samples for further testing as necessary. If the provisional or definitive diagnosis is a microbial infection, then the *veterinarian* should:

- a) prescribe, dispense or administer *antimicrobial agents* only when necessary to treat, control or prevent infectious diseases in *animals*;
- b) avoid the use of *antimicrobial agents* to compensate for inadequate animal husbandry practices;
- c) take into consideration the WOAH List of Antimicrobial Agents of Veterinary Importance and follow science-based species or sector-specific antimicrobial use guidelines for responsible and prudent use when available and follow the principles of antimicrobial stewardship;
- d) make an appropriate choice of *antimicrobial agent* based on clinical experience and available diagnostic laboratory information (pathogenic agent isolation, identification and antimicrobial susceptibility testing);
- e) provide a detailed treatment protocol, including precautions and withdrawal period (if applicable), especially when prescribing extra-label or off-label use;
- f) provide adequate supportive therapy, if appropriate.

2. Choosing antimicrobial agents

The choice of an effective treatment is based on:

- a) the clinical experience of the *veterinarians*, their diagnostic insight and therapeutic judgement;

- b) diagnostic laboratory information (pathogenic agent isolation, identification and antimicrobial susceptibility testing);
- c) pharmacodynamic properties of the selected *antimicrobial agent*, including the activity towards the pathogenic agents involved;
- d) the appropriate dosage regimen (i.e. dose, frequency of dosing, and route and duration of administration);
- e) pharmacokinetics and tissue distribution to ensure that the selected therapeutic agent is effective at the site of *infection*;
- f) the epidemiological history relevant to the *animal* or *animals* being treated, particularly in relation to the antimicrobial resistance profiles of the pathogens involved.

Should a first-line antimicrobial treatment fail or should the disease recur, an investigation should be undertaken to reassess the circumstances including reviewing the diagnosis, conducting additional diagnostic testing as needed, and then formulate and implement a new treatment plan, which may or may not include another *antimicrobial agent*.

In particular situations, a *veterinarian* may treat *animals* empirically, before an accurate diagnosis and antimicrobial susceptibility testing results are available, to prevent the development of clinical disease.

Combinations of *antimicrobial agents* may be used to increase effectiveness, but only when scientifically supported.

When prescribing, dispensing or administering a *veterinary medicinal product* containing *antimicrobial agents* intended for veterinary medical use to an individual or a group of *animals* to treat, control or prevent an infectious disease as defined in Chapter 6.9., the *veterinarian* should give specific consideration to their categorisation in the WOAH List of Antimicrobial Agents of Veterinary Importance or national lists. Preference should be given to the least important *antimicrobial agent* as categorised by WHO that is appropriate for use.

3. Appropriate veterinary medical use of the selected product containing antimicrobial agents

The prescription of a *veterinary medicinal product* containing *antimicrobial agents* should indicate the dosage regimen, the withdrawal period where applicable, and when considering group treatments, the total amount of *veterinary medicinal products* containing *antimicrobial agents* to be provided, which will depend on the dosage, duration of treatment, and the number of *animals* to be treated.

The *veterinarian* should ensure that instructions for the administration of the product are clearly explained and understood by breeders, owners, keepers or any other person responsible for administering the product.

The extra-label or off-label use of a *veterinary medicinal product* and of a compounded product containing *antimicrobial agents* may be permitted in certain appropriate circumstances and should be for treatment, control and prevention of diseases, in agreement with the national legislation in force including the withdrawal period, as applicable. It is the *veterinarian's* responsibility to define the conditions of responsible and prudent use in such a case including the dosage regimen, the route of administration and the withdrawal period.

The use of compounded *veterinary medicinal products* containing *antimicrobial agents* and extra-label or off-label use of registered *veterinary medicinal products* containing *antimicrobial agents* should be limited to circumstances where an appropriate registered product is not available and should take into account recommendations provided in the WOAH List of Antimicrobial Agents of Veterinary Importance.

4. Recording of data

Records of *veterinary medicinal products* containing *antimicrobial agents* should be kept in conformity with the national legislation. Records should include the following, as appropriate:

- a) commercial name of the *veterinary medicinal products*;
- b) name of the *antimicrobial agents* in the *veterinary medicinal products*;
- c) quantities used in *animals* or supplied to each *establishment* or animal breeder, owner or keeper;
- d) route of administration;
- e) animal species;
- f) number of *animals* treated;
- g) clinical condition treated;
- h) treatment schedules including *animal* identification and length of the withdrawal period;
- i) antimicrobial susceptibility data, including laboratory records of pathogenic agent isolation, identification and susceptibility testing obtained from isolates;
- j) comments concerning the response of the *animal* or *animals* to treatment;

- k) the investigation of adverse reactions associated with antimicrobial treatment, including lack of effectiveness. Suspected adverse reactions should be reported to the holder of the regulatory approval or appropriate Competent Authority in accordance with national legislation.

Veterinarians should also periodically review farm records on the use of *veterinary medicinal products* containing *antimicrobial agents* to ensure compliance with their directions or prescriptions and use these records to evaluate the effectiveness of treatments.

5. Labelling

All *veterinary medicinal products* supplied by a *veterinarian* should be labelled in accordance with the national legislation.

6. Training and continuing professional development

Veterinary professional and paraprofessional organisations should participate in the training programmes as defined in point 13 of Article 6.10.3. It is recommended that veterinary professional and paraprofessional organisations develop for their members species-specific clinical practice recommendations on the responsible and prudent use of *veterinary medicinal products* containing *antimicrobial agents*.

Article 6.10.7.

Responsibilities of animal feed manufacturers

- 1) The manufacturing of medicated *feed* containing *antimicrobial agents* and its supply to breeders, owners and keepers of food-producing *animals* by animal feed manufacturers should be allowed only on the prescription of a *veterinarian*. Alternatively, such medicated *feed* may be prescribed by other suitably trained persons authorised to prescribe *veterinary medicinal products* containing *antimicrobial agents* in accordance with the national legislation. Animal feed manufacturers preparing medicated *feed* should do so following rules put in place by the Competent Authority in accordance with the national legislation. All medicated *feed* and medicated premixes should be appropriately labelled.
- 2) Keep detailed records for medicated *feed* and premixes for a suitable period of time according to national legislation.
- 3) Use only approved sources of pharmaceutical products: Animal feed manufacturers preparing medicated *feed* should ensure that only approved sources of medications are added to *feed* at a level, and for a species and purpose as permitted by the medicated premix label or a veterinary prescription.
- 4) Ensure appropriate labelling with product identification, direction for use and withdrawal period: animal feed manufacturers preparing medicated *feed* should ensure that medicated animal *feed* are labelled with the appropriate information (e.g., level of medication, approved claim, target species, directions for use, warning, cautions) to ensure effective and safe use by the breeder, owner or keeper.
- 5) Implement appropriate production practices to prevent contamination of other *feed*: animal feed manufacturers preparing medicated *feed* should implement *good manufacturing practices* to avoid unnecessary carry over and cross contamination of unmedicated *feed*.
- 6) Feed manufacturers should participate in training programmes as defined in point 13 of Article 6.10.3.

Article 6.10.8.

Responsibilities of breeders, owners and keepers of food-producing animals

- 1) Breeders, owners and keepers of food-producing *animals* with the assistance and guidance of a *veterinarian*, are responsible for implementing animal health and *animal welfare* programmes, including *biosecurity* and good animal husbandry practices on their farms in order to reduce the need for the use of *antimicrobial agents* in *animals*, and to promote animal health and food safety.
- 2) Breeders, owners and keepers of food-producing *animals* should:
 - a) draw up a health plan with the attending *veterinarian* that outlines preventive and control measures;
 - b) implement on-farm *biosecurity* and take appropriate hygiene precautions;
 - c) isolate sick *animals*, when appropriate, to avoid the transfer of pathogenic agents;
 - d) dispose of dead or dying *animals* promptly under conditions approved by the Competent Authorities;
 - e) use *veterinary medicinal products* containing *antimicrobial agents* only on the prescription and under the supervision of a *veterinarian*, *veterinary paraprofessional* or other suitably trained person in accordance with the national legislation;

- f) use *veterinary medicinal products* containing *antimicrobial agents* in accordance with product label instructions, including storage conditions, and the instructions of the prescribing *veterinarian*; extra-label/off-label use of *veterinary medicinal products* containing *antimicrobial agents* should be in line with the relevant national legislation and the instructions of the prescribing *veterinarian*;
- g) comply with the recommended withdrawal periods to ensure that residue levels in animal-derived food do not present a *risk* for the consumer;
- h) use *veterinary medicinal products* containing *antimicrobial agents* within the expiry date and dispose of unused and expired surplus *veterinary medicinal products* containing *antimicrobial agents* under conditions safe for the relevant animal environment according to the summary of product characteristics (SPC) or equivalent, or relevant national legislation;
- i) ensure that only medicated premixes containing *antimicrobial agents* from authorised sources are added to *feed* at a dose and duration appropriate for the target animal species and purpose of use as permitted by the medicated premix label or a veterinary prescription when preparing medicated *feed* on-farm;
- j) maintain all the laboratory records of bacteriological and susceptibility tests; these data should be made available to the *veterinarian* responsible for treating the *animals*;
- k) keep adequate records of all *veterinary medicinal products* containing *antimicrobial agents* used, including the following:
 - i) name of the product or the active pharmaceutical ingredient and batch number;
 - ii) name and contact details of prescriber and the supplier;
 - iii) date of administration;
 - iv) identification of the *animal* or group of *animals*, and the number of *animals* to which the *antimicrobial agent* was administered;
 - v) disease treated;
 - vi) dose regimen (including dose, dosing interval and duration of treatment);
 - vii) withdrawal periods including the end-date of the withdrawal periods;
- l) inform the responsible *veterinarian* of recurrent disease problems.

3. Training

Food animal breeders, owners and keepers should participate in the training programmes as defined in point 13 of Article 6.10.3.

It is recommended that food animal organisations work in cooperation with the veterinary professional organisations to implement existing guidelines for the responsible and prudent use of *veterinary medicinal products* containing *antimicrobial agents*.

Article 6.10.9.

Responsibilities of breeders, owners and keepers of non-food producing animals

Animal breeders, owners and keepers, with the assistance and guidance of a *veterinarian*, are responsible for the health and welfare of their *animals* and should:

- 1) implement the wellness plans and preventative health plans recommended by their *veterinarian*;
- 2) strictly follow their *veterinarian's* recommendations and ensure that if any, the administration of *veterinary medicinal products* containing *antimicrobial agents* follows the veterinary prescription;
- 3) avoid administering over the counter human and veterinary *antimicrobial agents* to their *animals*;
- 4) not administer remaining or expired human and veterinary *antimicrobial agents* to their *animals*;
- 5) inform their *veterinarian* or *veterinary paraprofessional* of the administration of any additional medicinal products than those prescribed by the *veterinarian* during the consultation;
- 6) inform their *veterinarian* of any observed lack of effectiveness or adverse effect;
- 7) ensure that only *antimicrobial agents* from authorised sources are administered in accordance with national legislation.

NB: FIRST ADOPTED IN 2003; MOST RECENT UPDATE ADOPTED IN 2024.

CHAPTER 6.11.

RISK ANALYSIS FOR ANTIMICROBIAL RESISTANCE ARISING FROM THE USE OF ANTIMICROBIAL AGENTS IN ANIMALS

Article 6.11.1.

Recommendations for analysing the risks to animal and human health from antimicrobial resistant microorganisms of animal origin

1. Introduction

Antimicrobial resistance is a naturally occurring phenomenon influenced by many factors. However, problems related to antimicrobial resistance are inherently related to *antimicrobial agent* use in any environment, including human, animal and other uses.

Antimicrobial resistance associated with the use of *antimicrobial agents* for therapeutic and non-therapeutic purposes has led to the selection and dissemination of antimicrobial resistant microorganisms, with a resulting loss of therapeutic efficacy in animal and human medicine of one or several *antimicrobial agents*.

2. Objective

For the purpose of this chapter, the principal aim of *risk analysis* is to provide Member Countries with a transparent, objective and scientifically defensible method of assessing and managing the human and animal health *risks* associated with the selection and dissemination of resistance arising from the use of *antimicrobial agents in animals*.

Guidance on the issue of foodborne antimicrobial resistance related to the non-human use of *antimicrobial agents* is covered by the Codex Guidelines for risk analysis of food-borne antimicrobial resistance (CAC/GL77-2011).

3. The risk analysis process

The components of *risk analysis* described in this chapter are *hazard identification*, *risk assessment*, *risk management* and *risk communication*.

The chapter includes factors to be considered at various steps of the *risk analysis* process. These factors are not intended to be exhaustive and not all elements may be applicable in all situations.

4. Hazard identification

For the purpose of this chapter, the *hazard* is the resistant microorganism or resistance determinant that emerges as a result of the use of a specific *antimicrobial agent in animals*. This definition reflects the potential for resistant microorganisms to cause adverse health effects, as well as the potential for horizontal transfer of genetic determinants between microorganisms. The conditions under which the *hazard* might produce adverse consequences include any scenarios through which humans or *animals* could become exposed to an antimicrobial resistant pathogenic agent, fall ill and then be treated with an *antimicrobial agent* that is no longer effective.

5. Risk assessment

The assessment of the risk to human and animal health from antimicrobial resistant microorganisms resulting from the use of *antimicrobial agents in animals* should examine:

- a) the likelihood of emergence of resistant microorganisms arising from the use of an *antimicrobial agent*, or more particularly, dissemination of the resistance determinants if transmission is possible between microorganisms;
- b) consideration of all pathways and their importance, by which humans and *animals* could be exposed to these resistant microorganisms or resistance determinants, together with the likelihood of exposure;
- c) the consequences of exposure in terms of *risks* to human and animal health.

The general principles of *risk assessment* apply equally to both *qualitative* and *quantitative risk assessment*. At a minimum, a *qualitative risk assessment* should always be undertaken.

Article 6.11.2.

Analysis of risks to human health

1. Definition of the risk

The infection of humans with microorganisms that have acquired resistance due to antimicrobial usage in *animals*, and resulting in the loss of benefit of antimicrobial therapy used to manage the human infection.

2. Hazard identification

- Microorganisms that have acquired resistance (including multiple resistance) arising from the use of an *antimicrobial agent in animals*.
- Microorganisms having obtained a resistance determinant from other microorganisms which have acquired resistance arising from the use of an *antimicrobial agent in animals*.

The identification of the *hazard* should include consideration of the class or subclass of the *antimicrobial agent*. This definition should be read in conjunction with point 4 of Article 6.11.1.

3. Release assessment

A release assessment describes the biological pathways that may lead to the release of resistant microorganisms or resistance determinants into a particular environment due to the use of a specific *antimicrobial agent in animals*. It also estimates either qualitatively or quantitatively the probability of that complete process occurring. The release assessment describes the probability of the release of each of the potential *hazards* under each specified set of conditions with respect to amounts and timing, and how these might change as a result of various actions, events or measures.

The following factors should be considered in the release assessment:

- animal species, category such as food producing, zoo, entertainment or companion animal, and, where appropriate, production type such as veal calves or dairy cattle, broilers or laying hens, treated with the *antimicrobial agent* in question;
- number of *animals* treated and their age, geographical distribution and, where appropriate, sex;
- prevalence of *infection* or disease for which the *antimicrobial agent* is indicated in the target animal population;
- data on trends in *antimicrobial agent* use and changes in farm production systems;
- data on extra-label or off-label use;
- methods and routes of administration of the *antimicrobial agent*;
- dosage regimen (dose, dosing interval and duration of the treatment);
- pharmacokinetics and relevant pharmacodynamics of the *antimicrobial agent*;
- prevalence of pathogenic agents that are likely to develop resistance in an animal species;
- prevalence of commensal bacteria which are able to transfer resistance to human pathogenic agents;
- mechanisms and pathways of direct or indirect transfer of resistance;
- potential linkage of virulence attributes and resistance;
- cross-resistance or co-resistance with other *antimicrobial agents*;
- data on trends and occurrence of resistant microorganisms obtained through surveillance of *animals*, products of animal origin and animal waste products.

4. Exposure assessment

An exposure assessment describes the biological pathways necessary for exposure of humans to the resistant microorganisms or resistance determinants released from a given antimicrobial use in *animals*, and estimates the probability of the exposures occurring. The probability of exposure to the identified *hazards* is estimated for specified exposure conditions with respect to amounts, timing, frequency, duration of exposure, routes of exposure, species and other characteristics of the human populations exposed.

The following factors should be considered in the exposure assessment:

- human demographics, including population subgroups, and food consumption patterns, including traditions and cultural practices with respect to the preparation and storage of food;
- prevalence of resistant microorganisms in food at the point of consumption;
- microbial load in contaminated food at the point of consumption;
- environmental contamination with resistant microorganisms;

- occurrence in animal *feed* of resistant microorganisms that have the capacity to become established in the *animals*, thus leading to contamination of food of animal origin;
- transfer of resistant microorganisms and their resistance determinants between humans, *animals* and the environment;
- measures taken for microbial decontamination of food;
- survival capacity and dissemination of resistant microorganisms during the food production process (including slaughtering, processing, storage, transportation and retailing);
- disposal practices for waste products and the likelihood for human exposure to resistant microorganisms or resistance determinants through those waste products;
- capacity of resistant microorganisms to become established in humans;
- human-to-human transmission of the microorganisms under consideration;
- capacity of resistant microorganisms to transfer resistance to human commensal microorganisms and zoonotic agents;
- amount and type of *antimicrobial agents* used to treat humans;
- pharmacokinetics, such as metabolism, bioavailability and distribution to the gastrointestinal flora.

5. Consequence assessment

A consequence assessment describes the relationship between specified exposures to resistant microorganisms or resistance determinants and the consequences of those exposures. A causal process should exist by which exposures produce adverse health or environmental consequences, which may in turn lead to socio-economic consequences. The consequence assessment describes the potential consequences of a given exposure and estimates the probability of them occurring.

The following factors should be considered in the consequence assessment:

- microbial dose and subsequent host response interactions;
- variation in susceptibility of exposed populations or subgroups of the population;
- variation and frequency of human health effects resulting from loss of efficacy of *antimicrobial agents* and associated costs;
- potential linkage of virulence attributes and resistance;
- changes in food consumption patterns due to loss of confidence in the safety of food products and any associated secondary *risks*;
- interference with antimicrobial therapy in humans;
- importance of the *antimicrobial agent* in human medicine;
- prevalence of resistance in human bacterial pathogenic agents under consideration.

6. Risk estimation

A *risk estimation* integrates the results from the release assessment, exposure assessment and consequence assessment to produce overall estimates of *risk* associated with the *hazards*. Thus, *risk estimation* takes into account the whole of the *risk pathway* from *hazard identification* to the unwanted consequences.

The following factors should be considered in the *risk estimation*:

- number of people falling ill and the proportion of that number infected with antimicrobial resistant microorganisms;
- adverse effects on vulnerable human sub-population (children, immunocompromised persons, elderly, pregnant, etc.);
- increased severity or duration of infectious disease;
- number of person/days of illness per year;
- deaths (total per year; probability per year or reduced life expectancy for a random member of the population or a member of a specific sub-population) linked to antimicrobial resistant microorganisms when compared with deaths linked to sensitive microorganisms of the same species;
- severity of the disease caused by the target resistant microorganisms;
- availability and cost of alternative antimicrobial therapy;
- potential impact of switching to an alternative *antimicrobial agent* (e.g. alternatives with potential increased toxicity);
- occurrence of antimicrobial resistance in target pathogenic agents observed in humans;
- consequences of the overall *risk impacts* (e.g. illness and hospitalisation).

7. Risk management components

WOAH defines *risk management* as consisting of the steps described below.

- a) *Risk evaluation* - the process of comparing the *risk* estimated in the *risk assessment* with the reduction in *risk* expected from the proposed *risk management* measures.
- b) *Option evaluation*

A range of *risk management* options is available to minimise the emergence and dissemination of antimicrobial resistance and these include both regulatory and non-regulatory options, such as the development of codes of practice for the use of *antimicrobial agents* in animal husbandry. *Risk management* decisions need to consider fully the implications of these different options for human health and animal health and welfare and also take into account economic considerations and any associated environmental issues. Effective control of animal diseases can have the dual benefits of reducing *risks* to human health associated with both the bacterial pathogenic agent under consideration and antimicrobial resistance.

- c) *Implementation*

Risk managers should develop an implementation plan that describes how the decision will be implemented, by whom and when. *Competent Authorities* should ensure an appropriate regulatory framework and infrastructure.

- d) *Monitoring and review*

Risk management options should be continuously monitored and reviewed in order to ensure that the objectives are being achieved.

8. Risk communication

Communication with all interested parties should be promoted at the earliest opportunity and integrated into all phases of a *risk analysis*. This will provide all interested parties, including *risk managers*, with the better understanding of *risk management* approaches. *Risk communication* should be also well documented.

Article 6.11.3.

Analysis of risks to animal health

1. Definition of the risk

The *infection* of *animals* with microorganisms that have acquired resistance due to antimicrobial usage in *animals*, and resulting in the loss of benefit of antimicrobial therapy used to manage the animal *infection*.

2. Hazard identification

- Microorganisms that have acquired resistance (including multiple resistance) arising from the use of an *antimicrobial agent* in *animals*;
- microorganisms having obtained a resistance determinant from another microorganism which has acquired resistance arising from the use of an *antimicrobial agent* in *animals*.

The identification of the *hazard* should include considerations of the class or subclass of the *antimicrobial agent*. This definition should be read in conjunction with point 4 of Article 6.11.1.

3. Release assessment

The following factors should be considered in the release assessment:

- animal species, category such as food producing, zoo, entertainment or companion animal and, where appropriate, production type, such as veal calves or dairy cattle, broilers or laying hens treated with the *antimicrobial agent* in question;
- number of *animals* treated, and their age, geographical distribution and, where appropriate, sex;
- prevalence of *infection* or disease for which the *antimicrobial agent* is indicated in the target animal population;
- data on trends in *antimicrobial agent* use and changes in farm production systems;
- data on extra-label or off-label use;
- dosage regimen (dose, dosing interval and duration of the treatment);
- methods and routes of administration of the *antimicrobial agent*;
- the pharmacokinetics and relevant pharmacodynamics of the *antimicrobial agent*;
- site and type of *infection*;

- development of resistant microorganisms;
- mechanisms and pathways of resistance transfer;
- cross-resistance or co-resistance with other *antimicrobial agents*;
- data on trends and occurrence of resistant microorganisms obtained through surveillance of *animals*, products of animal origin and animal waste products.

4. Exposure assessment

The following factors should be considered in the exposure assessment:

- prevalence and trends of resistant microorganisms in clinically ill and clinically unaffected *animals*;
- occurrence of resistant microorganisms in *feed* and in the animal environment;
- animal-to-animal transmission of the resistant microorganisms and their resistance determinants (animal husbandry practices and movement of *animals*);
- number or percentage of *animals* treated;
- quantity and trends of *antimicrobial agents* used in *animals*;
- survival capacity and dissemination of resistant microorganisms;
- exposure of *wildlife* to resistant microorganisms;
- disposal practices for waste products and the likelihood of animal exposure to resistant microorganisms or resistance determinants through those products;
- capacity of resistant microorganisms to become established in *animals*;
- exposure to resistance determinants from other sources such as water, effluent, waste pollution, etc.;
- pharmacokinetics, such as metabolism, bioavailability, distribution to the gastrointestinal flora;
- transfer of resistant microorganisms and their resistance determinants between humans, *animals* and the environment.

5. Consequence assessment

The following factors should be considered in the consequence assessment:

- microbial dose and subsequent host response interactions;
- variation in disease susceptibility of exposed populations and subgroups of the populations;
- variation and frequency of animal health effects resulting from loss of efficacy of *antimicrobial agents* and associated costs;
- potential linkage of virulence attributes and resistance;
- importance of the *antimicrobial agent* in animal health (see WOAH list of antimicrobial agents of veterinary importance).

6. Risk estimation

The following factors should be considered in the *risk* estimation:

- additional burden of disease due to antimicrobial resistant microorganisms;
- number of therapeutic failures due to antimicrobial resistant microorganisms;
- increased severity and duration of infectious disease;
- impact on *animal welfare*;
- estimation of the economic impact and cost on animal health and production;
- deaths (total per year; probability per year or reduced life expectancy for a random member of the population or a member of a specific sub-population) linked to antimicrobial resistant microorganisms when compared with deaths linked to sensitive microorganisms of the same species;
- availability and cost of alternative antimicrobial therapy;
- potential impact of switching to an alternative *antimicrobial agent*, e.g. alternatives with potential increased toxicity.

7. Risk management components

The relevant provisions in point 7 of Article 6.11.2. apply.

8. Risk communication

The relevant provisions in point 8 of Article 6.11.2. apply.

NB: FIRST ADOPTED IN 2004; MOST RECENT UPDATE ADOPTED IN 2015.

CHAPTER 6.12.

ZOONOSES TRANSMISSIBLE FROM NON-HUMAN PRIMATES

Article 6.12.1.

Introduction

There are about 376 different species of non-human primates belonging to three suborders which are split into 15 families. The tree shrew family (previously considered as belonging to the primates) has not been included in these recommendations.

All non-human primate species are included in Appendix I or Appendix II of the Convention on International Trade in Endangered Species of Wild Fauna and Flora (CITES) and may be transported internationally only if accompanied by the permits or certificates required under CITES.

Most imported non-human primates are destined for research, educational or breeding purposes and their sourcing should be in accordance with Article 7.8.7. Before non-human primates are used for any purpose, all alternatives to their use should be explored.

Public health and safety, *animal welfare* and pathogenic agent introduction to wild populations are the primary issues of concern in the importation and keeping of non-human primates. This is especially true where close contact between humans and animals, their body fluids, faeces and tissues is likely to occur. Minimising the *risk* requires well-trained personnel and the following of stringent personal hygiene standards.

The likelihood of carrying zoonotic pathogenic agents is related to the taxonomic position and the region of origin of the species concerned. It can be considered to increase from prosimians to marmosets and tamarins, then to other New World monkeys, to Old World monkeys and apes. The likelihood of carrying zoonotic agents is also greater in wild-caught non-human primates than in captive-bred animals which have been maintained in a well-defined environment under veterinary supervision. For non-human primates taken from the wild, usually only very limited health-related information can be given by the supplier and by the *Veterinary Authority of the exporting country*.

Most pathogenic agents referred to in this chapter are not included in the WOAH List, and there is, consequently, no requirement to report them on a regular basis within the WOAH animal disease reporting system. However, the requirement to report exceptional epidemiological events remains in effect.

Standards for diagnostic tests for some pathogenic agents are described in the *Terrestrial Manual*.

Article 6.12.2.

General recommendations

Veterinary Authorities of exporting countries should issue *international veterinary certificates* only upon presentation of valid CITES documentation.

Veterinary Authorities should make sure that the animals are individually identified by approved methods that assure traceability and to avoid transmission of disease (see Chapter 4.16.).

For reasons of public health, *animal welfare* and pathogenic agent introduction to wild populations, *Veterinary Authorities of importing countries* should not authorise the import of non-human primates for the purpose of being kept as pets.

In the case of a non-human primate being imported directly from a country within the natural range of the animal's species concerned, and where only limited diagnostic testing is available, *Veterinary Authorities of importing countries* should place more emphasis on quarantine procedures and less on veterinary certification. As a matter of principle, limited health guarantees given by the supplier or the *Veterinary Authority* of the country of origin should not constitute an obstacle to imports, but very strict post import quarantine requirements should be imposed. Particularly, the

quarantine should meet the standards set in Chapter 5.9., and should be of sufficient length to minimise the *risk* of transmission of diseases where tests are not readily available or of limited value.

Veterinary Authorities of importing countries may reduce the quarantine requirements for non-human primates imported from premises with permanent veterinary supervision provided that the animals were born or have been kept for at least two years on these premises, are individually identified and accompanied by proper certification issued by qualified officials, and the official certification is supplemented by a complete documentation of the clinical history of each animal and its group of origin.

In cases where it is necessary to import non-human primates which are known or suspected to be carriers of a zoonotic disease, the import should not be restricted by any of these recommendations, provided that the *Veterinary Authority* of the *importing country* requires the placing of the animals in an establishment located on its territory which has been approved to receive them and which meets the standards set in Chapter 5.9.

Article 6.12.3.

General certification and transportation requirements

Veterinary Authorities of importing countries should require:

for all non-human primates

- 1) the presentation of an *international veterinary certificate* attesting that the animals:
 - a) have been individually identified (the means of identification should be stated in the certificate); and
 - b) have been examined on the day of shipment and found to be healthy, free from clinical signs of contagious disease, and fit for transport;
- 2) the attachment to the *international veterinary certificate* of all relevant records, including all *vaccinations*, tests and treatments performed during the lifetime of each primate before shipment;
- 3) the necessary CITES permit from the relevant *wildlife* authority;
- 4) the transport of the animals by air in accordance with the Live Animals Regulations of the International Air Transport Association or by rail or road under equivalent standards for surface transport.

Article 6.12.4.

Quarantine requirements for non-human primates from an uncontrolled environment

Veterinary Authorities of importing countries should require for shipments which originate from the wild or other sources where they were not subjected to permanent veterinary supervision:

- 1) the presentation of the documentation referred to in Article 6.12.3.;
- 2) the immediate placement of the animals in a *quarantine station* meeting the standards set in Chapter 5.9. for at least 12 weeks; and during this quarantine:
 - a) all animals to be monitored daily for signs of illness and, if necessary, be subjected to a clinical examination;
 - b) all animals dying for any reason to be subjected to complete post-mortem examination at an *approved laboratory* for this purpose;
 - c) any cause of illness or death to be determined before the group to which the animals belong is released from quarantine;

- d) animals to be subjected to the following diagnostic tests and treatments in accordance with Chapter 4.16.:

Disease/agent	Animal groups	Schedule	Methods
Endo- and ectoparasites	All species	At least two tests, one of which should be at the start, the other towards the end of the quarantine.	Testing methods and antiparasitic treatment as appropriate to species of animal and parasitic agent.
Tuberculosis (Mycobacterium tuberculosis complex)	Marmosets and tamarins	Two tests at an interval of 2 to 4 weeks.	Skin test or serology. In-vitro gamma interferon assay or polymerase chain reaction (PCR) assay. The skin test using mammalian tuberculin (old tuberculin) is the most reliable of all. Skin tests in marmosets, tamarins or small prosimians should be performed in the abdominal skin rather than in the eyelid. In some species (e.g. orang utan), skin tests for tuberculosis are notorious for false positive results. Comparative tests using both mammalian and avian PPD, together with cultures, radiography, ELISA, in-vitro gamma interferon assay and PCR of gastric or bronchial lavage, faeces or tissues may eliminate confusion.
	Prosimians, New World monkeys, Old World monkeys, gibbons and great apes	At least three tests at intervals of 2 to 4 weeks.	
Other bacterial pathogenic agents (Salmonella, Shigella and Yersinia and others as appropriate)	All species	Daily test for 3 days after arrival, and at least one or two more tests at intervals of 2 to 4 weeks.	Faecal culture. The fresh faeces or rectal swabs should be cultured immediately or be placed immediately in the appropriate transportation medium.

Veterinary Authorities of importing countries should recognise the public health importance of zoonoses listed in the table above as well as measles (a human disease, sometimes affecting non-human primates), hepatitis A, monkey pox, Marburg disease or Ebola/Reston virus, retroviruses, etc., even though this article does not recommend specific testing or treatment protocols for these agents during the quarantine period. *Veterinary Authorities* should recognise that, if animals are infected, the importation and spread of many such agents will be best controlled by the detection of clinical signs of disease during a 12-week quarantine period.

Certain endemic viruses, such as herpesviruses or retroviruses, may be present in both wild and captive populations of primates. These viruses are often asymptomatic in primate species. If animals are being imported to be introduced to other populations of the same species, it may be advisable to determine if the animals selected for importation have similar viral profiles to the established population.

Article 6.12.5.

Certification and quarantine requirements for marmosets and tamarins from premises under veterinary supervision

Veterinary Authorities of importing countries should require:

for marmosets and tamarins from premises under veterinary supervision

- 1) the presentation of an *international veterinary certificate* attesting that the shipment meets the requirements specified in Article 6.12.3., and that the animals:
 - a) are either born in the premises of origin or have been kept there for at least two years;
 - b) come from premises which are under permanent veterinary supervision, and where a suitable health monitoring programme is followed, including microbiological and parasitological tests as well as necropsies;
 - c) have been kept in buildings and enclosures in which no case of tuberculosis has occurred during the last two years prior to shipment;
- 2) a description of the health monitoring programme implemented by the establishment of origin;
- 3) the placement of the animals in a *quarantine station* meeting the standards set in Chapter 5.9. for at least 30 days; and during this period:
 - a) all animals to be monitored daily for signs of illness and, if necessary, be subjected to a clinical examination;

- b) all animals dying for any reason to be subjected to complete post-mortem examination at a *laboratory* approved for this purpose;
- c) animals to be subjected to the following diagnostic tests and treatments in accordance with Chapter 4.16.:

Disease/agent	Animal groups	Schedule	Methods
Bacterial pathogenic agents (<i>Salmonella</i> , <i>Shigella</i> and <i>Yersinia</i> and others as appropriate)	All species	Daily test for 3 days after arrival.	Faecal culture. (See further comments in the Table of Article 6.12.4.)
Endo- and ectoparasites	All species	At least two tests, one of which should be at the start, the other towards the end of the quarantine.	Testing methods and antiparasitic treatment as appropriate to species of animal and parasitic agent.

Veterinary Authorities of importing countries should not normally require any tests for viral infections or for tuberculosis. However, stringent precautions to ensure human health and safety should be followed as recommended in Article 6.12.7.

Article 6.12.6.

Certification and quarantine requirements for other non-human primates from premises under veterinary supervision

Veterinary Authorities of importing countries should require:

for prosimians, New World monkeys, Old World monkeys, gibbons and great apes from premises under veterinary supervision

- 1) the presentation of an *international veterinary certificate* attesting that the shipment meets the requirements specified in Article 6.12.3., and that the animals:
 - a) are either born in the premises of origin or have been kept there for at least two years;
 - b) come from premises which are under permanent veterinary supervision, and where a suitable health monitoring programme is followed, including microbiological and parasitological tests as well as necropsies;
 - c) have been kept in buildings and enclosures in which no case of tuberculosis has occurred during the last two years prior to shipment;
 - d) come from premises in which no case of tuberculosis or other major zoonoses including rabies has occurred during the last two years prior to shipment in the building where the animals were kept;
 - e) were subjected to a tuberculosis test on two occasions with negative results, at an interval of at least two weeks between each test during the 30 days prior to shipment;
 - f) were subjected to a diagnostic test for pathogenic enteric bacteria including *Salmonella*, *Shigella* and *Yersinia*;
 - g) were subjected to diagnostic tests for, and appropriate treatment against, endo- and ectoparasites;
- 2) the placement of the animals in a *quarantine station* for at least 30 days, and during this period:
 - a) all animals to be monitored daily for signs of illness and, if necessary, subjected to a clinical examination;
 - b) all animals dying for any reason to be subjected to complete post-mortem examination at a laboratory approved for this purpose;
 - c) any cause of illness or death to be determined before the group to which the animals belong is released from quarantine;
 - d) animals to be subjected to the following diagnostic tests and treatments in accordance with Chapter 4.16.:

Disease/agent	Animal groups	Schedule	Methods
Tuberculosis (<i>Mycobacterium tuberculosis</i> complex)	All species	One test.	Skin test or serology. In-vitro gamma interferon assay or polymerase chain reaction (PCR) assay. (See further comments in the Table of Article 6.12.4.)
Other bacterial pathogenic agents (<i>Salmonella</i> , <i>Shigella</i> and <i>Yersinia</i> and others as appropriate)	All species	Daily test for 3 days after arrival, and another test at least one week later.	Faecal culture. (See further comments in the Table of Article 6.12.4.)
Endo- and ectoparasites	All species	At least two tests, one of which should be at the start, the other towards the end of the quarantine.	Testing methods and antiparasitic treatment as appropriate to species of animal and parasitic agent.

Veterinary Authorities of importing countries may not normally require any tests for viral diseases. However, stringent precautions to ensure human health and safety should be followed as recommended in Article 6.12.7.

Article 6.12.7.

Precautionary measures to be followed by staff exposed to non-human primates or to their body fluids, faeces and tissues

The presence in most non-human primates of some zoonotic agents is almost unavoidable, even after release from quarantine. The relevant Authorities should, therefore, encourage the management of institutions whose staff are exposed to non-human primates or their body fluids, faeces or tissues (including when performing necropsies) to comply with the following recommendations:

- 1) to provide staff with training in the proper handling of primates, their body fluids, faeces and tissues, with respect to zoonoses containment and personal safety;
- 2) to inform their staff that certain species should be considered as having lifelong *infections* with some zoonotic agents, e.g. Asian macaques with Herpes B virus;
- 3) to ensure that the staff follows personal hygiene practices, including the use of protective clothing, and the prohibition of eating, drinking and smoking in potentially infective areas;
- 4) to implement a screening programme for personnel health, including monitoring for tuberculosis, pathogenic enteric bacteria and endoparasites and other agents that are deemed necessary;
- 5) to implement an immunisation programme as appropriate, including e.g. tetanus, measles, poliomyelitis, rabies, hepatitis A, and other diseases, such as yellow fever, endemic in the area of origin of the African and American non-human primates;
- 6) to develop guidelines for the prevention and treatment of zoonoses that may be transmitted by bites and scratches, e.g. rabies and herpes viruses;
- 7) to issue to their staff a card which states that they work with non-human primates or with their body fluids, faeces or tissues, and which may be presented to the medical profession in case of illness;
- 8) to dispose of carcasses, body fluids, faeces and tissues in a manner which is not detrimental to public health.

NB: FIRST ADOPTED IN 1998; MOST RECENT UPDATE ADOPTED IN 2022.

CHAPTER 6.13.

PREVENTION AND CONTROL OF SALMONELLA IN COMMERCIAL BOVINE PRODUCTION SYSTEMS

Article 6.13.1.

Introduction

Nontyphoidal salmonellosis is one of the most common foodborne bacterial diseases in the world with *Salmonella* Enteritidis and *S. Typhimurium* (including monophasic variants) being the predominant serotypes identified in humans in most countries. *S. Enteritidis* is primarily associated with *poultry* while *S. Typhimurium* may be present in many mammalian and avian hosts. These serotypes and several others occur at variable *prevalence* in bovines depending on the region. In some countries *S. Dublin* and *S. Newport* may also cause salmonellosis in humans.

Salmonella infection in bovines is mostly subclinical, although clinical disease such as enteritis, septicaemia or abortion may occur. Subclinical *infection*, including a carrier state, can be of variable duration and can play an important role in the spread of *Salmonella* within and between *herds* and pose a public health *risk*.

Herd size and stocking density may influence the likelihood of introduction, dissemination or persistence of *Salmonella*; however, this is also dependent on geographical region, husbandry and other factors such as season and age.

Salmonella serotypes and their *prevalence* in bovines may vary considerably within and between farms, countries and regions. It is important for *Veterinary Authorities* and producers to consider serotypes of *Salmonella*, their occurrence and the disease burden in bovine and human populations when they develop and implement strategies for the prevention and control of *Salmonella* in commercial bovine production systems.

Article 6.13.2.

Definitions

For the purposes of this chapter the following definitions apply:

Commercial bovine production systems means those systems in which the purpose of the operation includes some or all of the following: breeding, rearing and management of bovines for the production of *meat* or *milk*.

Intensive bovine production systems means commercial systems in which bovines are in confinement and are fully dependent on humans to provide for basic animal needs such as food, shelter and water on a daily basis.

Extensive bovine production systems means commercial systems in which bovines have the freedom to roam outdoors, and where the bovines have some autonomy over diet selection (through grazing), water consumption and access to shelter.

Article 6.13.3.

Purpose and scope

This chapter provides recommendations for the prevention and control of *Salmonella* in commercial bovine production systems in order to reduce the burden of disease in bovines and the *risk* of human illness through foodborne contamination as well as human *infections* resulting from direct or indirect contact with infected bovines.

For the purposes of this chapter a bovine means *Bos taurus*, *B. indicus*, *B. javanicus* and *B. grunniens*, water buffaloes (*Bubalus bubalis*) and bison (*Bison bison* and *B. bonasus*).

This chapter applies to bovines kept in commercial bovine production systems.

This chapter should be read in conjunction with the Codex Alimentarius Code of Hygienic Practice for Meat (CAC/RCP 58-2005), Code of Hygienic Practice for Milk and Milk Products (CAC/RCP 57-2004), Code of Practice on Good Animal Feeding (CAC/RCP 54-2004), and the Guidelines for the Control of Nontyphoidal *Salmonella* spp. in Beef and Pork Meat (CAC/GL 87-2016), and the OIE/FAO Guide to Good Farming Practices for Animal Production Food Safety.

Article 6.13.4.

Objectives of prevention and control measures

Prevention and control measures may focus on those serotypes of *Salmonella* of greatest consequence to bovines and public health. These measures will also contribute to the reduction of other serotypes.

Prevention and control measures in commercial bovine production systems may:

- 1) reduce the prevalence and amount of *Salmonella* entering the slaughterhouse/abattoir and therefore decrease the challenge to the slaughter and dressing procedures and the likelihood of bovine meat contamination;
- 2) reduce the likelihood of *Salmonella* contamination in milk;
- 3) reduce *Salmonella* contamination of the environment via bovine faecal waste, which in turn will limit infection of animals (including wildlife);
- 4) reduce the likelihood of infections in humans through contact with infected bovines or contaminated materials or water.

While control in the primary production phase can decrease the number of animals carrying or shedding *Salmonella*, controls after primary production are also important to minimise the contamination and cross-contamination of carcasses and meat products.

Good farming practices and, when appropriate, the principles of hazard analysis and critical control points (HACCP) should be taken into account when designing prevention and control measures.

Articles 6.13.5. to 6.13.16. provide recommendations for the prevention and control of *Salmonella* in commercial bovine production systems. These recommendations may also contribute to the prevention and control of some other infections.

Article 6.13.5.

Biosecurity

Biosecurity is essential to prevent and control *Salmonella*. A biosecurity plan should be developed according to the commercial bovine production system employed. The applicability of the measures, described below, will vary according to the type of commercial bovine production system.

When including *Salmonella* as part of a biosecurity plan the following should be addressed:

- 1) location, design and management of the establishment;
- 2) veterinary supervision of bovine health;
- 3) management of the introduction and mixing of bovines;
- 4) training of personnel in their responsibilities and their role in animal health, human health and food safety;
- 5) prevention of contamination of feed and water, including for irrigation;
- 6) maintenance of records including data on bovine health, production, movements, feeding, water supply, medications, vaccination, mortality, and cleaning and disinfection of farm buildings and equipment;
- 7) availability of test results to the farm operator when *Salmonella* surveillance is conducted;
- 8) removal of unwanted vegetation and debris that could attract or harbour pests around premises for bovines;
- 9) minimising the entry of domestic animals and wild birds into buildings for bovines and feed stores;
- 10) cleaning and disinfection procedures for buildings in which bovines are handled or housed, in accordance with Chapter 4.14.;
- 11) control of pests such as rodents and arthropods and regular assessment of effectiveness;
- 12) control and hygienic procedures for entry and movement of persons and vehicles;
- 13) cleaning and disinfection of equipment and vehicles identified as posing a risk;

- 14) storage and disposal of dead animals, bedding, faeces and other potentially contaminated farm waste in a manner that minimises the likelihood of dissemination of *Salmonella* and prevents the direct or indirect exposure of humans, livestock and *wildlife* to *Salmonella*. Particular care should be taken when bedding and faeces of bovines are applied to land used for horticultural crops intended for human consumption;
- 15) procedures for prevention of dissemination of *Salmonella* when an animal is suspected or known to be infected.

Article 6.13.6.

Location and design of establishments for bovines

When making decisions on the location and design of *establishments* for bovines, it is recommended that reduction of the likelihood of transfer of pathogenic agents, including *Salmonella*, from major sources of contamination be considered. Sources of *Salmonella* may include other livestock *establishments* or areas of application or disposal of contaminated waste or effluent. Other sources and *vectors* of *Salmonella* include *vehicles*, equipment, water-courses, personnel, domestic animals, birds, rodents, flies and *wildlife*.

The design of intensive bovine production systems should consider the following:

- 1) management of faecal waste to minimise contamination of the *establishment*;
- 2) adequate drainage for the site and control of run-off water and untreated waste water;
- 3) use of materials for construction that facilitate effective cleaning and *disinfection*;
- 4) control of entry and movement of *vehicles*, equipment and persons;
- 5) preventing contamination of *feed* and water during storage and distribution;
- 6) handling and movements of bovines to minimise stress and spread of *Salmonella*;
- 7) separation of bovines according to likelihood of *infection* with, or susceptibility to, *Salmonella*;
- 8) restriction of entry of domestic animals, birds, rodents, flies and other relevant *wildlife*.

In extensive bovine production systems, location and design options may be limited; however, applicable *biosecurity* should be considered.

Article 6.13.7.

Management of introductions of bovines into the establishment

To minimise the likelihood of introducing *Salmonella* through introductions of bovines:

- 1) good communication within the bovine industry should be encouraged to raise awareness of the likelihood of introducing *Salmonella* through cattle introductions;
- 2) consideration should be given to minimising the number of sources of replacement bovines;
- 3) new genetic material should be introduced through the use of semen and embryos whenever practicable;
- 4) if possible, bovines should be sourced directly from *herds* of origin because live animal markets or other places where bovines from multiple properties are mixed for resale may increase the likelihood of spread of *Salmonella* and other infectious agents among bovines;
- 5) newly introduced bovines should be kept separate from the rest of the *herd* for a suitable period before mixing with other bovines;
- 6) when appropriate, testing of animals for *Salmonella* prior to introduction or mixing with other bovines should be considered to inform subsequent control measures, for example, when introducing bovines of unknown status.

Article 6.13.8.

Management of bovines on farm

To reduce the likelihood of transferring *Salmonella* among bovines:

- 1) bovines with suspected salmonellosis or otherwise sick should be separated from healthy bovines;
- 2) care of healthy bovines should be carried out prior to care of bovines with suspected salmonellosis;

- 3) priority should be given to the hygienic management of calving areas, for example keeping perinatal bovines separated from sick bovines and maintaining a clean environment;
- 4) bovines should be segregated according to age;
- 5) when possible, the 'all-in-all-out' principle for production cohorts should be used. In particular, the unnecessary mixing of different age groups, especially of calves, should be avoided;
- 6) consideration should be given to the potential for between-herd transmission of *Salmonella* via breeding, rearing and grazing of bovines from multiple sources on a single site, for example shared pasture, heifer rearing or sharing of bulls;
- 7) consideration should be given to the potential for between-herd transmission of *Salmonella* through direct contact between bovines across boundary lines or indirectly, for example through contamination of water courses.

Article 6.13.9.

Feed and feed ingredients

Feed and feed ingredients can be sources of *Salmonella infection* for bovines. For the effective control of *Salmonella*:

- 1) when appropriate, *feed and feed ingredients* should be produced, handled, stored, transported and distributed according to Good Manufacturing Practices, considering Hazard Analysis Critical Control Points (HACCP) principles and recommendations in accordance with Chapter 6.4.;
- 2) *feed and feed ingredients* should be transported, stored and fed in a manner that minimises contamination by faecal waste and, where practicable, minimises access by domestic animals, birds, rodents and *wildlife*.

Article 6.13.10.

Water

Water for drinking should be of an appropriate quality. When there is reason to be concerned about *infection* of bovines with *Salmonella* from contaminated water, measures should be taken to evaluate and minimise the *risk*. For example sediment in water troughs may act as a reservoir for contamination. Where practicable, untreated surface water should be avoided as a water source.

Article 6.13.11.

Additional prevention and control measures

- 1) The immune status of calves is important and therefore care should be taken to ensure that newborn calves consume adequate amounts of high quality colostrum in accordance with Article 7.9.5.[point 3 c)] and Article 7.11.7. [point 9]). Raw *milk* from infected cows should not be fed to calves.
- 2) *Vaccination* may be considered as part of a *Salmonella* control programme. Vaccine production and use should be in accordance with Chapter 1.1.8. of the *Terrestrial Manual*. The protective effect of vaccines is generally serotype-specific and is influenced by factors such as timing of *vaccination* in relation to exposure.
- 3) A number of conditions, for example liver fluke and *infection* with bovine viral diarrhoea virus, may increase the susceptibility of bovines to *Salmonella*; therefore, control of such conditions is recommended.
- 4) Stress may increase the susceptibility of bovines to *Salmonella*. Management of potentially stressful situations, such as mixing of groups of bovines, may reduce the likelihood of clinical disease or shedding of *Salmonella*.
- 5) *Antimicrobial agents* may modify normal flora in the gut and increase the likelihood of colonisation by *Salmonella*. In circumstances when *antimicrobial agents* are considered necessary for the treatment of clinical salmonellosis, they should be used in accordance with Chapter 6.10. Furthermore, *antimicrobial agents* should not be used to control subclinical *infection* with *Salmonella* in bovines because the effectiveness of the treatment is limited, they may increase the *risk* of *Salmonella* colonisation, and their use can contribute to the development of antimicrobial resistance.

Article 6.13.12.

Transportation

Vehicles should be properly cleaned and disinfected after transportation of animals, in accordance with Chapter 4.14.

When transporting animals from multiple *establishments*, the *Salmonella* status of the *establishments* should be considered to avoid cross-contamination of bovines.

In addition, the relevant recommendations in Chapters 7.2., 7.3. and 7.4. apply.

Article 6.13.13.

Lairage

Relevant aspects of *lairage* management include consideration of effective cleaning and *disinfection* between groups, minimising mixing of animals that have not continuously been kept together and managing stress.

In addition, the relevant recommendations in Articles 7.5.1., 7.5.3. and 7.5.4. apply.

Article 6.13.14.

Cleanliness of hides

Cleanliness of hides can be achieved by applying suitable practices during housing (for example additional clean bedding), transport and lairage. Dirty hides increase the *risk* of microbial contamination of carcasses during the *slaughter* process.

Article 6.13.15.

Surveillance for *Salmonella* in commercial bovine production systems

Surveillance data provide information to assist the *Competent Authorities* in their decision making regarding the requirement for, and design of, control programmes and in setting and verifying performance objectives.

Standards for diagnostic tests are described in the *Terrestrial Manual*. In addition, other sampling and testing methodologies such as testing of bulk *milk* or serum samples by ELISA may provide useful information on *herd* or individual animal status. Boot swab samples from communal areas in housing for bovines, slurry samples, or caecal or lymph node samples collected post-mortem can also be useful for microbiological testing. Some serotypes of *Salmonella* such as *S. Dublin* can be difficult to detect using microbiological methods.

If serology is used as the *surveillance* method, it may not be possible to distinguish between vaccinated and infected bovines.

Article 6.13.16.

Prevention and control in low prevalence regions

In regions where *Salmonella infection* of bovines is uncommon, it may be possible to maintain low *prevalence* status or eliminate *infection* from *herds* through a combination of good farming practices, *herd surveillance*, individual testing, movement controls, and removal of persistent carriers.

NB: FIRST ADOPTED IN 2017.

CHAPTER 6.14.

PREVENTION AND CONTROL OF *Salmonella* IN COMMERCIAL PIG PRODUCTION SYSTEMS

Article 6.14.1.

Introduction

Nontyphoidal salmonellosis is one of the most common foodborne bacterial diseases in the world with *Salmonella* Enteritidis and *S. Typhimurium* (including monophasic variants) being the predominant serotypes identified in humans in most countries. *S. Enteritidis* is primarily associated with *poultry* while *S. Typhimurium* may be present in many mammalian and avian hosts. These serotypes and several others occur at variable *prevalence* in pigs depending on the region. In some countries *S. Infantis* and *S. Choleraesuis* may cause salmonellosis in humans.

Salmonella infection in pigs is mostly subclinical, although clinical disease such as enteritis and septicaemia in weaned pigs may occur. Subclinical *infection*, including a carrier state, can be of variable duration and can play an important role in the spread of *Salmonella* within and between *herds* and pose a public health *risk*.

Salmonella serotypes and their *prevalence* in pigs may vary considerably within and between farms, countries and regions. It is important for *Veterinary Authorities* and producers to consider serotypes of *Salmonella*, their occurrence and the disease burden in pig and human populations when they develop and implement strategies for the prevention and control of *Salmonella* in commercial pig production systems.

Article 6.14.2.

Definitions

For the purposes of this chapter the following definition applies:

Commercial pig production systems means those systems in which the purposes of the operation include some or all of the following: breeding, rearing and management of pigs for the production and sale of pigs or pig meat.

Article 6.14.3.

Purpose and scope

This chapter provides recommendations for the prevention and control of *Salmonella* in commercial pig production systems, including outdoor pig production systems, where practicable, in order to reduce the burden of *infection* in pigs and the *risk* of human illness through foodborne contamination as well as human *infections* resulting from direct or indirect contact with infected pigs.

This chapter should be read in conjunction with the Codex Alimentarius Code of Hygienic Practice for Meat (CAC/RCP 58-2005), Code of Good Animal Feeding (CAC/RCP 54-2004), and the Guidelines for the Control of Nontyphoidal *Salmonella* spp. in Beef and Pork Meat (CAC/GL 87-2016), and the OIE/FAO Guide to Good Farming Practices for Animal Production Food Safety.

Article 6.14.4.

Objectives of prevention and control measures

Prevention and control measures may focus on those serotypes of *Salmonella* of greatest consequence to pigs and public health. These measures will also contribute to the reduction of other serotypes.

Prevention and control measures in commercial pig production systems may:

- 1) reduce the prevalence and amount of *Salmonella* entering the slaughterhouse/abattoir and therefore decrease the challenge to the slaughter and dressing procedures and the likelihood of pig meat contamination;
- 2) reduce *Salmonella* contamination of the environment via pig faecal waste, which in turn will limit infection of animals (including wildlife);
- 3) reduce the likelihood of infections in humans through contact with infected pigs or contaminated materials or water.

While control in the primary production phase can decrease the number of animals carrying or shedding *Salmonella*, controls after primary production are also important to minimise the contamination and cross-contamination of carcasses and meat products.

Good farming practices and, when appropriate, the principles of hazard analysis and critical control points (HACCP) should be taken into account when designing prevention and control measures.

Articles 6.14.5. to 6.14.15. provide recommendations for the prevention and control of *Salmonella* in commercial pig production systems. These recommendations may also contribute to the prevention and control of some other infections.

Article 6.14.5.

Biosecurity

Biosecurity is essential to prevent and control *Salmonella*. A biosecurity plan should be developed according to the commercial pig production system employed. The choice of specific measures will vary according to the type of commercial pig production system.

When including *Salmonella* as part of a biosecurity plan the following should be addressed:

- 1) location, design and management of the establishment;
- 2) veterinary supervision of pig health;
- 3) management of the introduction and mixing of pigs;
- 4) training of personnel in their responsibilities and their role in animal health, human health and food safety;
- 5) prevention of contamination of feed and water, including for irrigation;
- 6) maintenance of records including data on pig health, production, movements, feeding, water supply, medications, vaccination, mortality, and cleaning and disinfection of farm buildings and equipment;
- 7) availability of test results to the farm operator when *Salmonella* surveillance is conducted;
- 8) removal of unwanted vegetation and debris that could attract or harbour pests around pig housing;
- 9) minimising the entry of domestic animals and wild birds into pig buildings and feed stores;
- 10) cleaning and disinfection procedures for buildings in which pigs are handled or housed in accordance with Chapter 4.14.;
- 11) control of pests such as rodents and arthropods, and regular assessment of effectiveness;
- 12) control and hygienic procedures for entry and movement of persons and vehicles;
- 13) biosecurity applied to all personnel and visitors entering the establishment. As a minimum, this should include hand washing and changing into clean clothes and footwear provided by the establishment. Similar precautions are recommended when they move between separate epidemiological units on large farms;
- 14) cleaning and disinfection of equipment and vehicles identified as posing a risk;
- 15) storage and disposal of dead animals, bedding, faeces and other potentially contaminated farm waste in a manner that minimises the likelihood of dissemination of *Salmonella* and prevents the direct or indirect exposure of humans, livestock and wildlife to *Salmonella*. Particular care should be taken when pig bedding and faeces are applied to land used for horticultural crops intended for human consumption;
- 16) procedures for prevention of dissemination of *Salmonella* when an animal is suspected or known to be infected.

Article 6.14.6.

Location and design of pig establishments

When making decisions on the location and design of pig *establishments*, reduction of the likelihood of transfer of pathogenic agents, including *Salmonella*, from major sources of contamination should be considered. Sources of *Salmonella* may include other livestock *establishments* or areas of application or disposal of contaminated waste or effluent. Other sources and vectors of *Salmonella* include *vehicles*, equipment, water-courses, personnel, domestic animals, birds, rodents, flies and *wildlife*.

The design of commercial pig production systems should consider the following:

- 1) proximity of other livestock *establishments*, and *wild* bird and rodent populations;
- 2) management of faecal waste to minimise contamination of the *establishment*;
- 3) adequate drainage for the site and control of run-off water and untreated waste water;
- 4) use of smooth impervious materials for construction of pig houses to enable effective cleaning and *disinfection*;
- 5) paving the area immediately surrounding pig houses or indoor *establishments* with concrete or other impervious material. This will facilitate rodent control and minimise recontamination after cleaning and *disinfection*;
- 6) a control of entry and movement of *vehicles*, equipment and persons, for example, locate delivery and collection points away from pig housing or *feed storage*;
- 7) preventing contamination of *feed* and water during storage and distribution;
- 8) pig handling and movements to minimise stress and spread of *Salmonella*;
- 9) restriction of entry of domestic animals, *wild* birds, rodents, flies and other relevant *wildlife*.

Article 6.14.7.

Management of pig introductions into the establishment

Introduction of pigs into a *herd* is a *risk factor*, especially in moderate and high *prevalence* regions. To minimise the likelihood of introducing *Salmonella* by replacement pigs:

- 1) good communication along the pig production chain should be encouraged to raise awareness of the *risk* of introducing *Salmonella* through pig introductions;
- 2) consideration should be given to minimising the number of sources for both replacement breeding stock and rearing pigs, and matching *Salmonella herd* status in terms of *Salmonella* freedom or occurrence of priority serotypes such as *S. Typhimurium*;
- 3) new genetic material should be introduced through the use of semen whenever practicable;
- 4) if possible, pigs should be sourced directly from *herds* of origin because live animal markets or other places where pigs from multiple properties are mixed for resale may increase the likelihood of spread of *Salmonella* and other infectious agents among pigs;
- 5) newly introduced pigs should be kept separate from the rest of the *herd* for a suitable period before mixing with other pigs;
- 6) when appropriate, testing of pigs for *Salmonella* prior to introduction or mixing with other pigs should be considered to inform subsequent control measures, for example, when introducing pigs of unknown status.

Article 6.14.8.

Moving and mixing of pigs

The moving and mixing of pigs increases the likelihood of spread of *Salmonella*. To minimise the spread of *Salmonella*:

- 1) the number of pig movements and mixing of pigs should be minimised;
- 2) if possible, the 'all-in-all-out' system with a single age group of pigs should be used. In particular, the addition to younger groups of pigs held back from older groups should be avoided;
- 3) sick pigs should be segregated from healthy ones.

Article 6.14.9.

Feed and feed composition

1. Feed and feed ingredients

Feed and *feed ingredients* can be sources of *Salmonella* for pigs. This is especially important in herds, countries or regions of low prevalence. To minimise the spread of *Salmonella* through feed:

- a) *feed and feed ingredients* should be produced, handled, stored, transported and distributed in accordance with Chapter 6.4.;
- b) *feed and feed ingredients* should be transported, stored and fed in a manner that minimises contamination by faecal waste and, where practicable, minimises access by domestic animals, birds, rodents and *wildlife*;
- c) when practicable, *feed* should be treated with heat, or with approved bactericidal or bacteriostatic treatments such as organic acids.

2. Feed composition

When *Salmonella* is present in a pig herd, the composition of *feed* may influence the occurrence of *Salmonella* in individual pigs.

For the control of *Salmonella* the following be considered:

- a) liquid *feed* that is fermented or containing *milk products* has a protective effect due to the presence of beneficial bacteria and lowered pH;
- b) coarsely ground *feed* may reduce the occurrence of *Salmonella* by slowing gastric transit (thereby increasing exposure to gastric acid) and reducing dysbacteriosis. Coarsely ground *feed ingredients* may be fed alongside pelleted *feed*;
- c) fine grinding needed to produce heat treated pellets may result in dysbacteriosis which favours the colonisation and multiplication of *Salmonella* in the intestine. Therefore, heat treated pellets are more appropriate for situations in which *Salmonella* is uncommon;
- d) when wheat is the predominant *feed ingredient*, reducing the proportion of this ingredient may reduce the occurrence of *Salmonella* because the rapid fermentation of wheat promotes dysbacteriosis.

Article 6.14.10.

Water

Water for drinking should be of an appropriate quality. To minimise the spread of *Salmonella* through water:

- 1) the water supply should be monitored and controlled to maintain it free from *Salmonella* contamination;
- 2) water holding tanks should be enclosed;
- 3) water supply and delivery systems should not be accessible to birds, rodents or *wildlife*;
- 4) the water delivery system should be regularly cleaned and disinfected. For example in an “all-in-all-out” system this occurs before restocking.

Article 6.14.11.

Additional prevention and control measures

- 1) *Vaccination* may be considered as part of a *Salmonella* control programme. Vaccine production and use should be in accordance with Chapter 1.1.8. of the *Terrestrial Manual*. The protective effect of vaccines is generally serotype-specific and is influenced by factors such as timing of *vaccination* in relation to exposure.
- 2) *Antimicrobial agents* may modify normal flora in the gut and increase the likelihood of colonisation by *Salmonella*. In circumstances when *antimicrobial agents* are considered necessary for the treatment of clinical salmonellosis, they should be used in accordance with Chapter 6.10. Furthermore, *antimicrobial agents* should not be used to control subclinical *infection* with *Salmonella* in pigs because the effectiveness of the treatment is limited, they may increase the *risk* of *Salmonella* colonisation, and their use can contribute to the development of antimicrobial resistance.
- 3) Where approved by the *Competent Authority*, organic acids, probiotics and prebiotics may be added to *feed* or water to reduce shedding of *Salmonella* by pigs. However, efficacy is variable.

Article 6.14.12.

Transportation

Vehicles should be properly cleaned and disinfected after transportation of animals, in accordance with Chapter 4.14.

When transporting animals from multiple *establishments*, the *Salmonella* status of the *establishments* should be considered to avoid cross-contamination of pigs.

In addition, the relevant recommendations in Chapters 7.2., 7.3. and 7.4. apply.

Article 6.14.13.

Lairage

Lairage may be used at various stages in pig production, for example accumulation of weaned pigs before movement to nursery *herds*, holding finisher pigs before transport to *slaughter* and holding pigs at the *slaughterhouse/abattoir* before *slaughter*. Relevant aspects of *lairage* management include consideration of effective cleaning and *disinfection* between groups, minimising mixing of animals that have not continually been kept together and managing stress.

In addition, the relevant recommendations in Articles 7.5.1., 7.5.3. and 7.5.4. apply.

Article 6.14.14.

Surveillance for *Salmonella* in commercial pig production systems

Surveillance data provide information to assist the *Competent Authorities* in their decision making regarding the requirement for, and design of, control programmes and in setting and verifying performance objectives. Harmonised *surveillance* systems to determine the occurrence of *Salmonella* at *herd* level are in place in some countries. Communication between *slaughterhouses/abattoirs*, Veterinary Services and the *herd* manager or *veterinarian* of the results of *Salmonella* *surveillance* systems is an important element of a *Salmonella* control programme.

Standards for diagnostic tests are described in the *Terrestrial Manual*. Serological testing, usually using "meat juice" at *slaughter*, is one method for assessing exposure to *Salmonella* in pig *herds*. Benefits of serological testing include low cost per test, high throughput capability and the potential for automation of tests. Collection of samples at the *slaughterhouse/abattoir* enables centralised sampling of multiple *herds*. While serology is a useful tool for *risk* ranking of *herds*, serological testing does not detect exposure to all serotypes or differentiate between different serotypes within the serogroups included in the antigenic range of the test or the level of *Salmonella* in pigs at *slaughter*. If serology is used as the *surveillance* method, it may not be possible to distinguish between vaccinated and infected pigs.

Serological testing gives no indication of excretion of *Salmonella* in the *herd* and does not reflect how infectious is the tested group.

Microbiological testing, with additional phenotyping or genotyping, identifies serotypes of *Salmonella* present in pig *herds* and can provide epidemiological information on likely sources of *Salmonella* and on the presence of strains with enhanced virulence or resistance to *antimicrobial agents*. Bacteriological sampling of individual pigs has low sensitivity but this can be overcome by sampling at *herd* level or repeated sampling of individual animals. Pooling of samples (such as individual faecal samples or mesenteric lymph nodes) or sampling naturally pooled material (such as sampling of faeces from the floor of pig pens) will decrease the costs. Some serotypes of *Salmonella* such as *S. Choleraesuis* can be difficult to detect using microbiological methods.

Article 6.14.15.

Prevention and control in low prevalence regions

In regions where *Salmonella infection* of pigs is uncommon, it may be possible to maintain low *prevalence* status or eliminate *infection* from *herds* through a combination of good farming practices, *herd surveillance*, individual testing, movement controls, and removal of persistent carriers.

In individual *herds*, for example valuable breeding *herds*, in higher *prevalence* regions, the success of this approach is dependent upon a low likelihood of reintroduction of *infection*.

Article 6.14.16.

Outdoor pig production

For outdoor pigs in commercial production systems, in addition to the prevention and control measures described in Articles 6.14.5. to 6.14.15., it is recommended that:

- 1) field rotation programmes be used to minimise *Salmonella* contamination and accumulation in soil and surface water and therefore ingestion by pigs;
 - 2) systems used to provide *feed*, and where possible water, be designed to minimise attraction of, or access by, *wildlife*;
 - 3) the location of other outdoor pig *herds* and the concentration and behaviour of *wildlife* in the area be considered.
-

NB: FIRST ADOPTED IN 2017; MOST RECENT UPDATE ADOPTED IN 2018.

SECTION 7.

ANIMAL WELFARE

CHAPTER 7.1.

INTRODUCTION TO THE RECOMMENDATIONS FOR ANIMAL WELFARE

Article 7.1.1.

General considerations

Animal welfare means the physical and mental state of an *animal* in relation to the conditions in which it lives and dies.

An *animal* experiences good welfare if the *animal* is healthy, comfortable, well nourished, safe, is not suffering from unpleasant states such as *pain*, fear and *distress*, and is able to express behaviours that are important for its physical and mental state.

Good *animal welfare* requires disease prevention and appropriate veterinary care, shelter, management and nutrition, a stimulating and safe environment, humane handling and humane *slaughter* or *killing*. While *animal welfare* refers to the state of the *animal*, the treatment that an *animal* receives is covered by other terms such as animal care, animal husbandry, and humane treatment.

Article 7.1.2.

Guiding principles for animal welfare

- 1) That there is a critical relationship between animal health and *animal welfare*.
- 2) That the internationally recognised five freedoms (freedom from hunger, thirst and malnutrition; freedom from fear and *distress*; freedom from physical and thermal discomfort; freedom from *pain*, injury and disease; and freedom to express normal patterns of behaviour) provide valuable guidance in *animal welfare*.
- 3) That the internationally recognised three Rs (reduction in numbers of *animals*, refinement of experimental methods and replacement of *animals* with non-animal techniques) provide valuable guidance for the use of *animals* in science.
- 4) That the scientific assessment of *animal welfare* involves diverse elements which need to be considered together, and that selecting and weighing these elements often involves value-based assumptions which should be made as explicit as possible.
- 5) That the use of *animals* in agriculture, education and research, and for companionship, recreation and entertainment, makes a major contribution to the wellbeing of people.
- 6) That the use of *animals* carries with it an ethical responsibility to ensure the welfare of such *animals* to the greatest extent practicable.
- 7) That improvements in farm *animal welfare* can often improve productivity and food safety, and hence lead to economic benefits.
- 8) That equivalent outcomes based on performance criteria, rather than identical systems based on design criteria, be the basis for comparison of *animal welfare* standards and recommendations.

Article 7.1.3.

Scientific basis for recommendations

- 1) Welfare is a broad term which includes the many elements that contribute to an animal's quality of life, including those referred to in the five freedoms listed above.
- 2) The scientific assessment of *animal welfare* has progressed rapidly in recent years and forms the basis of these recommendations.
- 3) Some measures of *animal welfare* involve assessing the degree of impaired functioning associated with injury, disease and malnutrition. Other measures provide information on *animals'* needs and affective states such as hunger, *pain* and fear, often by measuring the strength of *animals'* preferences, motivations and aversions. Others assess the physiological, behavioural and immunological changes or effects that *animals* show in response to various challenges.
- 4) Such measures can lead to criteria and indicators that help to evaluate how different methods of managing *animals* influence their welfare.

Article 7.1.4.

Guiding principles for the use of measures to assess animal welfare

- 1) For the WOAH *animal welfare* standards to be applicable globally, they should emphasise favourable outcomes for the *animals*, although, in some circumstances, it may be necessary to recommend specific conditions of the *animals'* environment and management. Outcomes are generally measured by assessing the extent to which *animals* experience the five freedoms described in Article 7.1.2.
- 2) For each principle listed in Article 7.1.5., the most relevant criteria (or measurables), ideally comprising animal-based measures, should be included in the standard. Any given animal-based measure may be linked to more than one principle.
- 3) Recommendations should, whenever possible, define explicit targets or thresholds that should be met for animal-based measures. Such target values should be based on relevant science and experience of experts.
- 4) In addition to animal-based measures, resource-based measures and management-based measures may be used and should be defined on the basis of science and expert experience showing that a welfare outcome is clearly linked to a resource or to a management procedure.
- 5) Users of the standard should select the most appropriate animal-based measures for their farming system or environment, from among those listed in the standard. Outcomes can be measured by an assessment of individuals or animal groups, or a representative sample of those, using data from *establishments*, transport or *slaughterhouses/abattoirs*. Competent Authorities should collect all data relevant for the users to set target and threshold values.
- 6) Whatever the basis of the measure, if outcomes are unsatisfactory, users should consider what changes to resources or management are necessary to improve outcomes.

Article 7.1.5.

General principles for the welfare of animals in livestock production systems

- 1) Genetic selection should always take into account the health and welfare of *animals*.
- 2) *Animals* chosen for introduction into new environments should be suited to the local climate and able to adapt to local diseases, parasites and nutrition.
- 3) The physical environment, including the substrate (walking surface, resting surface, etc.), should be suited to the species so as to minimise risk of injury and transmission of diseases or parasites to *animals*.
- 4) The physical environment should allow comfortable resting, safe and comfortable movement including normal postural changes, and the opportunity to perform types of natural behaviour that *animals* are motivated to perform.
- 5) Social grouping of *animals* should be managed to allow positive social behaviour and minimise injury, *distress* and chronic fear.
- 6) For housed *animals*, air quality, temperature and humidity should support good animal health and not be aversive. Where extreme conditions occur, *animals* should not be prevented from using their natural methods of thermo-regulation.
- 7) *Animals* should have access to sufficient *feed* and water, suited to the *animals'* age and needs, to maintain normal health and productivity and to prevent prolonged hunger, thirst, malnutrition or dehydration.

- 8) Diseases and parasites should be prevented and controlled as much as possible through good management practices. *Animals* with serious health problems should be isolated and treated promptly or killed humanely if treatment is not feasible or recovery is unlikely.
 - 9) Where painful procedures cannot be avoided, the resulting *pain* should be managed to the extent that available methods allow.
 - 10) The handling of *animals* should foster a positive relationship between humans and *animals* and should not cause injury, panic, lasting fear or avoidable stress.
 - 11) Owners and handlers should have sufficient skill and knowledge to ensure that *animals* are treated in accordance with these principles.
-

NB: FIRST ADOPTED IN 2004; MOST RECENT UPDATE ADOPTED IN 2019.

CHAPTER 7.2.

TRANSPORT OF ANIMALS BY SEA

Preamble: these recommendations apply to the following live domesticated animals: cattle, buffaloes, deer, camelids, sheep, goats, pigs and equines. They may also be applicable to other domesticated animals.

Article 7.2.1.

The amount of time animals spend on a *journey* should be kept to the minimum.

Article 7.2.2.

1. Animal behaviour

Animal handlers should be experienced and competent in handling and moving farm livestock and understand the behaviour patterns of animals and the underlying principles necessary to carry out their tasks.

The behaviour of individual animals or groups of animals will vary depending on their breed, sex, temperament and age and the way in which they have been reared and handled. Despite these differences, the following behaviour patterns, which are always present to some degree in domestic animals, should be taken into consideration in handling and moving the animals.

Most domestic livestock are kept in *herds* and follow a leader by instinct.

Animals which are likely to be hostile to others in a group situation should not be mixed.

The desire of some animals to control their personal space should be taken into account in designing *loading* and *unloading* facilities, *transport vessels* and *containers*.

Domestic animals will try to escape if any person approaches closer than a certain distance. This critical distance, which defines the flight zone, varies among species and individuals of the same species, and depends upon previous contact with humans. Animals reared in close proximity to humans (i.e. tame) have a smaller flight zone, whereas those kept in free range or extensive systems may have flight zones which may vary from one metre to many metres. *Animal handlers* should avoid sudden penetration of the flight zone which may cause a panic reaction which could lead to aggression or attempted escape and compromise the welfare of the animals.

Animal handlers should use the point of balance at the animal's shoulder to move animals, adopting a position behind the point of balance to move an animal forward and in front of the point of balance to move it backward.

Domestic animals have a wide-angle vision but only have a limited forward binocular vision and poor perception of depth. This means that they can detect objects and movements beside and behind them, but can only judge distances directly ahead.

Domestic animals can hear over a greater range of frequencies than humans and are more sensitive to higher frequencies. They tend to be alarmed by constant loud noises and by sudden noises, which may cause them to panic. Sensitivity to such noises should also be taken into account when handling animals.

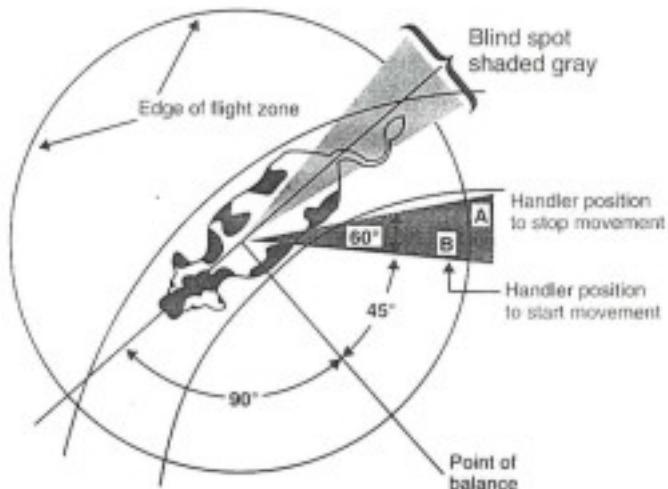
2. Distractions and their removal

Design of new *loading* and *unloading* facilities or modification of existing facilities should aim to minimise the potential for distractions that may cause approaching animals to stop, baulk or turn back. Below are examples of common distractions and methods for eliminating them:

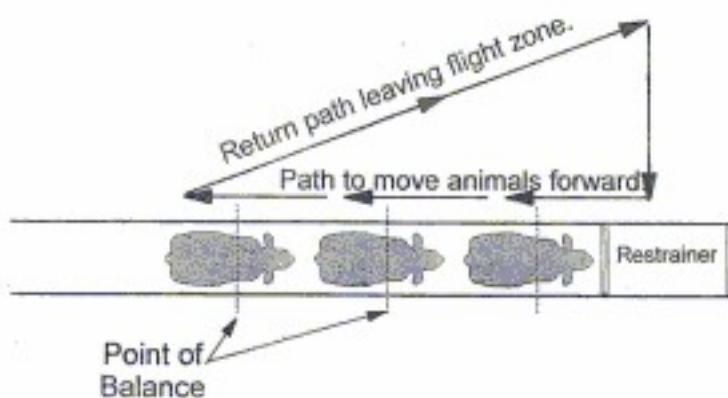
- a) reflections on shiny metal or wet floors – move a lamp or change lighting;
- b) dark entrances – illuminate with indirect lighting which does not shine directly into the eyes of approaching animals;
- c) animals seeing moving people or equipment up ahead – install solid sides on chutes and races or install shields;
- d) dead ends – avoid if possible by curving the passage, or make an illusory passage;
- e) chains or other loose objects hanging in chutes or on fences – remove them;
- f) uneven floors or a sudden drop in floor levels – avoid uneven floor surfaces or install a solid false floor to provide an illusion of a solid and continuous walking surface;

- g) sounds of air hissing from pneumatic equipment – install silencers or use hydraulic equipment or vent high pressure to the external environment using flexible hosing;
- h) clanging and banging of metal objects – install rubber stops on gates and other devices to reduce metal to metal contact;
- i) air currents from fans or air curtains blowing into the face of animals – redirect or reposition equipment.

An example of a flight zone (cattle)



Handler movement pattern to move cattle forward



Article 7.2.3.

Responsibilities

Once the decision to transport the animals by sea has been made, the welfare of the animals during their *journey* is the paramount consideration and is the joint responsibility of all people involved. The individual responsibilities of persons involved will be described in more detail in this article. These recommendations may also be applied to the transport of animals by water within a country.

The management of animals at post-discharge facilities is outside the scope of this chapter.

1. General considerations

- a) Exporters, importers, owners of animals, business or buying/selling agents, shipping companies, masters of vessels and managers of facilities are jointly responsible for the general health of the animals and their fitness for the *journey*, and for their overall welfare during the *journey*, regardless of whether duties are subcontracted to other parties during transport.
- b) Exporters, shipping companies, business or buying/selling agents, and masters of vessels are jointly responsible for planning the *journey* to ensure the care of the animals, including:
 - i) choosing appropriate vessels and ensuring that *animal handlers* are available to care for the animals;
 - ii) developing and keeping up-to-date contingency plans to address emergencies (including adverse weather conditions) and minimise stress during transport;
 - iii) correct *loading* of the ship, provision of appropriate food, water, ventilation and protection from adverse weather, regular inspections during the *journey* and for appropriate responses to problems arising;
 - iv) disposal of carcasses in accordance with international law.
- c) To carry out the above mentioned responsibilities, the parties involved should be competent regarding transport regulations, equipment usage, and the humane handling and care of animals.

2. Specific considerations

- a) The responsibilities of the exporters include:
 - i) the organisation, carrying out and completion of the *journey*, regardless of whether duties are subcontracted to other parties during transport;
 - ii) ensuring that equipment and medication are provided as appropriate for the species and the *journey*;
 - iii) securing the presence of the appropriate number of *animal handlers* competent for the species being transported;
 - iv) ensuring compliance of the animals with any required veterinary certification, and their fitness to travel;
 - v) in case of animals for export, ensuring compliance with any requirements of the *importing* and *exporting countries*.
- b) The responsibilities of the owners of the animals include the selection of animals that are fit to travel based on veterinary recommendations.
- c) The responsibilities of the business or buying/selling agent include:
 - i) selection of animals that are fit to travel based on veterinary recommendations;
 - ii) availability of suitable facilities for the assembly, *loading*, transport, *unloading* and holding of animals at the start and at the end of the *journey*, and for emergencies.
- d) The responsibilities of masters of vessels include the provision of suitable premises for animals on the vessel.
- e) The responsibilities of managers of facilities during *loading* include:
 - i) providing suitable premises for *loading* the animals;
 - ii) providing an appropriate number of *animal handlers* to load the animals with minimum stress and the avoidance of injury;
 - iii) minimising the opportunities for disease transmission while the animals are in the facilities;
 - iv) providing appropriate facilities for emergencies;
 - v) providing facilities, *veterinarians* or *animal handlers* capable of *killing* animals humanely when required.
- f) The responsibilities of managers of facilities during *unloading* include:
 - i) providing suitable facilities for *unloading* the animals onto transport *vehicles* for immediate movement or securely holding the animals in lairage, with shelter, water and *feed*, when required, for transit;
 - ii) providing *animal handlers* to unload the animals with minimum stress and injury;
 - iii) minimising the opportunities for disease transmission while the animals are in the facilities;
 - iv) providing appropriate facilities for emergencies;
 - v) providing facilities, and *veterinarians* or *animal handlers* capable of *killing* animals humanely when required.
- g) The responsibilities of the *animal handlers* include humane handling and care of the animals, especially during *loading* and *unloading*.
- h) The responsibilities of the *Competent Authority* of the *exporting country* include:
 - i) establishing minimum standards for *animal welfare*, including requirements for inspection of animals before and during their travel, and for certification and record keeping;
 - ii) approving facilities, *containers*, *vehicles* and vessels for the holding and transport of animals;

- iii) setting competence standards for *animal handlers* and managers of facilities;
- iv) implementation of the standards, including through accreditation of / interaction with other organisations and *Competent Authorities*;
- v) monitor and evaluate health and welfare of the animals at the point of *loading*.
- i) The responsibilities of the *Competent Authority* of the *importing country* include:
 - i) establishing minimum standards for *animal welfare*, including requirements for inspection of animals after their travel, and for certification and record keeping;
 - ii) approve facilities, *containers*, *vehicles* and *vessels* for the holding and transport of animals;
 - iii) setting competence standards for *animal handlers* and managers of facilities;
 - iv) implementation of the standards, including through accreditation of / interaction with other organisations and *Competent Authorities*;
 - v) ensuring that the *exporting country* is aware of the required standards for the *vessel* transporting the animals;
 - vi) monitor and evaluate health and welfare of the animals at the point of *unloading*;
 - vii) give animal consignments priority to allow import procedures to be completed without unnecessary delay.
- j) The responsibilities of *veterinarians* or in the absence of a *veterinarian*, the *animal handlers* travelling on the *vessel* with the animals include:
 - i) humane handling and treatment of animals during the *journey*, including in emergencies, such as humane *killing* of the animals;
 - ii) possess ability to report and act independently;
 - iii) meet daily with the master of the *vessel* to obtain up-to-date information on animal health and welfare status.
- k) The receiving *Competent Authority* should report back to the sending *Competent Authority* on significant *animal welfare* problems which occurred during the *journey*.

Article 7.2.4.

Competence

- 1) All people responsible for animals during *journeys* should be competent to carry out the relevant responsibilities listed in Article 7.2.3. Competence in areas other than *animal welfare* would need to be addressed separately. Competence may be gained through formal training and/or practical experience.
- 2) The assessment of competence of *animal handlers* should at a minimum address knowledge, and ability to apply that knowledge, in the following areas:
 - a) planning a *journey*, including appropriate *space allowance*, *feed*, water and ventilation requirements;
 - b) responsibilities for the welfare of animals during the *journey*, including *loading* and *unloading*;
 - c) sources of advice and assistance;
 - d) animal behaviour, general signs of disease, and indicators of poor *animal welfare* such as stress, *pain* and fatigue, and their alleviation;
 - e) assessment of fitness to travel; if fitness to travel is in doubt, the animal should be examined by a *veterinarian*;
 - f) relevant authorities and applicable transport regulations, and associated documentation requirements;
 - g) general disease prevention procedures, including cleaning and *disinfection*;
 - h) appropriate methods of animal handling during transport and associated activities such as assembling, *loading* and *unloading*;
 - i) methods of inspecting animals, managing situations frequently encountered during transport such as adverse weather conditions, and dealing with emergencies, including *euthanasia*;
 - j) species-specific aspects and age-specific aspects of animal handling and care, including feeding, watering and inspection; and
 - k) maintaining a *journey log* and other records.
- 3) Assessment of competence for exporters should at a minimum address knowledge, and ability to apply that knowledge, in the following areas:
 - a) planning a *journey*, including appropriate *space allowances*, and *feed*, water and ventilation requirements;
 - b) relevant authorities and applicable transport regulations, and associated documentation requirements;

- c) appropriate methods of animal handling during transport and associated activities such as cleaning and *disinfection*, assembling, *loading* and *unloading*;
- d) species-specific aspects of animal handling and care, including appropriate equipment and medication;
- e) sources of advice and assistance;
- f) appropriate record keeping; and
- g) managing situations frequently encountered during transport, such as adverse weather conditions, and dealing with emergencies.

Article 7.2.5.

Planning the journey

1. General considerations
 - a) Adequate planning is a key factor affecting the welfare of animals during a *journey*.
 - b) Before the *journey* starts, plans should be made in relation to:
 - i) preparation of animals for the *journey*;
 - ii) type of transport vessel required;
 - iii) route, taking into account distance, expected weather and sea conditions;
 - iv) nature and duration of *journey*;
 - v) daily care and management of the animals, including the appropriate number of *animal handlers*, to help ensure the health and welfare of all the animals;
 - vi) avoiding the mixing of animals from different sources in a single pen group;
 - vii) provision of appropriate equipment and medication for the numbers and species carried; and
 - viii) emergency response procedures.
2. Preparation of animals for the journey
 - a) When animals are to be provided with a novel diet or unfamiliar methods of supplying of *feed* or water, they should be preconditioned.
 - b) There should be planning for water and *feed* availability during the *journey*. *Feed* should be of appropriate quality and composition for the species, age, condition of the animals, etc.
 - c) Extreme weather conditions are hazards for animals undergoing transport and require appropriate vessel design to minimise risks. Special precautions should be taken for animals that have not been acclimatised or which are unsuited to either hot or cold conditions. In some extreme conditions of heat or cold, animals should not be transported at all.
 - d) Animals more accustomed to contact with humans and with being handled are likely to be less fearful of being loaded and transported. Animals should be handled and loaded in a manner that reduces their fearfulness and improves their approachability.
 - e) Behaviour-modifying (such as tranquillisers) or other medication should not be used routinely during transport. Such medicines should only be administered when a problem exists in an individual animal, and should be administered by a *veterinarian* or other person who has been instructed in their use by a *veterinarian*. Treated animals should be placed in a dedicated area.
3. Control of disease

As animal transport is often a significant factor in the spread of infectious diseases, *journey* planning should take into account the following:

 - a) When possible and agreed by the *Veterinary Authority* of the *importing country*, animals should be vaccinated against diseases to which they are likely to be exposed at their destination.
 - b) Medications used prophylactically or therapeutically should only be administered by a *veterinarian* or other person who has been instructed in their use by a *veterinarian*.
 - c) Mixing of animals from different sources in a single consignment should be minimized.
4. Vessel and container design and maintenance
 - a) Vessels used for the sea transport of animals should be designed, constructed and fitted as appropriate to the species, size and weight of the animals to be transported. Special attention should be paid to the avoidance of injury to animals through the use of secure smooth fittings free from sharp protrusions and the

provision of non-slippery flooring. The avoidance of injury to *animal handlers* while carrying out their responsibilities should be emphasised.

- b) Vessel/s should be properly illuminated to allow animals to be observed and inspected.
- c) Vessel/s should be designed to permit thorough cleaning and *disinfection*, and the management of faeces and urine.
- d) Vessel/s and their fittings should be maintained in good mechanical and structural conditions.
- e) Vessel/s should have adequate ventilation to meet variations in climate and the thermo-regulatory needs of the animal species being transported. The ventilation system should be effective when the vessel is stationary. An emergency power supply should be available to maintain ventilation in the case of primary machinery breakdown.
- f) The feeding and watering system should be designed to permit adequate access to feed and water appropriate to the species, size and weight of the animals, and to minimise soiling of pens.
- g) Vessel/s should be designed so that the faeces or urine from animals on upper levels do not soil animals on lower levels, or their feed or water.
- h) Loading and stowage of feed and bedding should be carried out in such a way to ensure protection from fire hazards, the elements and sea water.
- i) Where appropriate, suitable bedding, such as straw or sawdust, should be added to vessel floors to assist absorption of urine and faeces, provide better footing for animals and protect animals (especially young animals) from hard or rough flooring surfaces and adverse weather conditions.
- j) The above principles apply also to containers used for the transport of animals.

5. Special provisions for transport in road vehicles on roll-on/roll-off vessels or for containers

- a) Road vehicles and containers should be equipped with a sufficient number of adequately designed, positioned and maintained securing points enabling them to be securely fastened to the vessel.
- b) Road vehicles and containers should be secured to the ship before the start of the sea journey to prevent them being displaced by the motion of the vessel.
- c) Vessel/s should have adequate ventilation to meet variations in climate and the thermo-regulatory needs of the animal species being transported, especially where the animals are transported in a secondary vehicle/container on enclosed decks.
- d) Due to the risk of limited airflow on certain decks of a vessel, a road vehicle or container may require a forced ventilation system of greater capacity than that provided by natural ventilation.

6. Nature and duration of the journey

The maximum duration of a *journey* should be determined taking into account factors that determine the overall welfare of animals, such as:

- a) the ability of the animals to cope with the stress of transport (such as very young, old, lactating or pregnant animals);
- b) the previous transport experience of the animals;
- c) the likely onset of fatigue;
- d) the need for special attention;
- e) the need for feed and water;
- f) the increased susceptibility to injury and disease;
- g) space allowance and vessel design;
- h) weather conditions;
- i) vessel type used, method of propulsion and risks associated with particular sea conditions.

7. Space allowance

- a) The number of animals which should be transported on a vessel and their allocation to different pens on the vessel should be determined before loading.
- b) The amount of space required, including headroom, depends on the species of animal and should allow the necessary thermoregulation. Each animal should be able to assume its natural position for transport (including during loading and unloading) without coming into contact with the roof or upper deck of the vessel. When animals lie down, there should be enough space for every animal to adopt a normal lying posture.
- c) Calculations for the space allowance for each animal should be carried out in reference to a relevant national or international document. The size of pens will affect the number of animals in each.
- d) The same principles apply when animals are transported in containers.

8. Ability to observe animals during the journey

Animals should be positioned to enable each animal to be observed regularly and clearly by an *animal handler* or other responsible person, during the *journey* to ensure their safety and good welfare.

9. Emergency response procedures

There should be an emergency management plan that identifies the important adverse events that may be encountered during the *journey*, the procedures for managing each event and the action to be taken in an emergency. For each important event, the plan should document the actions to be undertaken and the responsibilities of all parties involved, including communications and record keeping.

Article 7.2.6.

Documentation

- 1) Animals should not be loaded until the documentation required to that point is complete.
- 2) The documentation accompanying the consignment should include:
 - a) *journey* travel plan and emergency management plan;
 - b) time, date and place of *loading*;
 - c) the *journey* log – a daily record of inspection and important events which includes records of morbidity and mortality and actions taken, climatic conditions, food and water consumed, medication provided, mechanical defects;
 - d) expected time, date and place of arrival and *unloading*;
 - e) veterinary certification, when required;
 - f) *animal identification* to allow *traceability of animals* to the premises of departure, and, where possible, to the premises of origin;
 - g) details of any animals considered at particular risk of suffering poor welfare during transport (point 3 e) of Article 7.2.7.);
 - h) number of *animal handlers* on board, and their competencies; and
 - i) *stocking density* estimate for each load in the consignment.
- 3) When veterinary certification is required to accompany consignments of animals, it should address:
 - a) when required, details of *disinfection* carried out;
 - b) fitness of the animals to travel;
 - c) *animal identification* (description, number, etc.); and
 - d) health status including any tests, treatments and *vaccinations* carried out.

Article 7.2.7.

Pre-journey period

1. General considerations
 - a) Before each *journey*, *vessels* should be thoroughly cleaned and, if necessary, treated for animal and public health purposes, using chemicals approved by the *Competent Authority*. When cleaning is necessary during a *journey*, this should be carried out with the minimum of stress and risk to the animals.
 - b) In some circumstances, animals may require pre-journey assembly. In these circumstances, the following points should be considered:
 - i) Pre-journey rest is necessary if the welfare of the animals has become poor during the collection period because of the physical environment or the social behaviour of the animals.
 - ii) When animals are to be provided with a novel diet or unfamiliar methods of supplying *feed* or water, they should be preconditioned.
 - c) Where an *animal handler* believes that there is a significant risk of disease among the animals to be loaded or significant doubt as to their fitness to travel, the animals should be examined by a *veterinarian*.
 - d) Pre-journey assembly / holding areas should be designed to:
 - i) securely contain the animals;
 - ii) maintain an environment safe from hazards, including predators and disease;
 - iii) protect animals from exposure to adverse weather conditions;
 - iv) allow for maintenance of social groups; and
 - v) allow for rest, watering and feeding.
2. Selection of compatible groups

Compatible groups should be selected before transport to avoid adverse *animal welfare* consequences. The following recommendations should be applied when assembling groups of animals:

 - a) animals of different species should not be mixed unless they are judged to be compatible;
 - b) animals of the same species can be mixed unless there is a significant likelihood of aggression; aggressive individuals should be segregated (recommendations for specific species are described in detail in Article 7.2.12.). For some species, animals from different groups should not be mixed because poor welfare occurs unless they have established a social structure;
 - c) young or small animals may need to be separated from older or larger animals, with the exception of nursing mothers with young at foot;
 - d) animals with horns or antlers should not be mixed with animals lacking horns or antlers, unless judged to be compatible; and
 - e) animals reared together should be maintained as a group; animals with a strong social bond, such as a dam and offspring, should be transported together.
3. Fitness to travel
 - a) Animals should be inspected by a *veterinarian* or an *animal handler* to assess fitness to travel. If its fitness to travel is in doubt, it is the responsibility of a *veterinarian* to determine its ability to travel. Animals found unfit to travel should not be loaded onto a *vessel*.
 - b) Humane and effective arrangements should be made by the owner or agent for the handling and care of any animal rejected as unfit to travel.
 - c) Animals that are unfit to travel include, but may not be limited to:
 - i) those that are sick, injured, weak, disabled or fatigued;
 - ii) those that are unable to stand unaided or bear weight on each leg;
 - iii) those that are blind in both eyes;
 - iv) those that cannot be moved without causing them additional suffering;
 - v) newborn with an unhealed navel;
 - vi) females travelling without young which have given birth within the previous 48 hours;
 - vii) pregnant animals which would be in the final 10% of their gestation period at the planned time of *unloading*;
 - viii) animals with unhealed wounds from recent surgical procedures such as dehorning.

- d) Risks during transport can be reduced by selecting animals best suited to the conditions of travel and those that are acclimatised to expected weather conditions.
- e) Animals at particular risk of suffering poor welfare during transport and which require special conditions (such as in the design of facilities and *vehicles*, and the length of the *journey*) and additional attention during transport, may include:
 - i) very large or obese individuals;
 - ii) very young or old animals;
 - iii) excitable or aggressive animals;
 - iv) animals subject to motion sickness;
 - v) animals which have had little contact with humans;
 - vi) females in the last third of pregnancy or in heavy lactation.
- f) Hair or wool length should be considered in relation to the weather conditions expected during transport.

Article 7.2.8.

Loading

1. Competent supervision
 - a) *Loading* should be carefully planned as it has the potential to be the cause of poor welfare in transported animals.
 - b) *Loading* should be supervised by the *Competent Authority* and conducted by *animal handler(s)*. *Animal handlers* should ensure that animals are loaded quietly and without unnecessary noise, harassment or force, and that untrained assistants or spectators do not impede the process.
2. Facilities
 - a) The facilities for *loading*, including the collecting area at the wharf, races and loading ramps should be designed and constructed to take into account the needs and abilities of the animals with regard to dimensions, slopes, surfaces, absence of sharp projections, flooring, sides, etc.
 - b) Ventilation during *loading* and the *journey* should provide for fresh air, and the removal of excessive heat, humidity and noxious fumes (such as ammonia and carbon monoxide). Under warm and hot conditions, ventilation should allow for the adequate convective cooling of each animal. In some instances, adequate ventilation can be achieved by increasing the *space allowance* for animals.
 - c) *Loading* facilities should be properly illuminated to allow the animals to be easily inspected by *animal handlers*, and to allow the ease of movement of animals at all times. Facilities should provide uniform light levels directly over approaches to sorting pens, chutes, loading ramps, with brighter light levels inside *vehicles/containers*, in order to minimise baulking. Dim light levels may be advantageous for the catching of some animals. Artificial lighting may be required.

3. Goads and other aids

When moving animals, their species-specific behaviour should be used (see Article 7.2.12.). If goads and other aids are necessary, the following principles should apply:

- a) Animals that have little or no room to move should not be subjected to physical force or goads and other aids which compel movement. Electric goads and prods should only be used in extreme cases and not on a routine basis to move animals. The use and the power output should be restricted to that necessary to assist movement of an animal and only when an animal has a clear path ahead to move. Goads and other aids should not be used repeatedly if the animal fails to respond or move. In such cases it should be investigated whether some physical or other impediment is preventing the animal from moving.
- b) The use of such devices should be limited to battery-powered goads on the hindquarters of pigs and large ruminants, and never on sensitive areas such as the eyes, mouth, ears, anogenital region or belly. Such instruments should not be used on horses, sheep and goats of any age, or on calves or piglets.
- c) Useful and permitted goads include panels, flags, plastic paddles, flappers (a length of cane with a short strap of leather or canvas attached), plastic bags and rattles; they should be used in a manner sufficient to encourage and direct movement of the animals without causing undue stress.
- d) Painful procedures (including whipping, tail twisting, use of nose twitches, pressure on eyes, ears or external genitalia), or the use of goads or other aids which cause *pain* and suffering (including large sticks, sticks with sharp ends, lengths of metal piping, fencing wire or heavy leather belts), should not be used to move animals.

- e) Excessive shouting at animals or making loud noises (e.g. through the cracking of whips) to encourage them to move should not occur as such actions may make the animals agitated, leading to crowding or falling.
- f) The use of well trained dogs to help with the *loading* of some species may be acceptable.
- g) Animals should be grasped or lifted in a manner which avoids *pain* or suffering and physical damage (e.g. bruising, fractures, dislocations). In the case of quadrupeds, manual lifting by a person should only be used in young animals or small species, and in a manner appropriate to the species; grasping or lifting animals only by their wool, hair, feathers, feet, neck, ears, tails, head, horns, limbs causing *pain* or suffering should not be permitted, except in an emergency where *animal welfare* or human safety may otherwise be compromised.
- h) Conscious animals should not be thrown, dragged or dropped.
- i) Performance standards should be established in which numerical scoring is used to evaluate the use of such instruments, and to measure the percentage of animals moved with an electric instrument and the percentage of animals slipping or falling as a result of their usage.

Article 7.2.9.

Travel

1. General considerations

- a) *Animal handler(s)* should check the consignment immediately before departure to ensure that the animals have been loaded in accordance with the load plan. Each consignment should be checked following any incident or situation likely to affect their welfare and in any case within 12 hours of departure.
- b) If necessary and where possible adjustments should be made to the *stocking density* as appropriate during the *journey*.
- c) Each pen of animals should be observed on a daily basis for normal behaviour, health and welfare, and the correct operation of ventilation, watering and feeding systems. There should also be a night patrol. Any necessary corrective action should be undertaken promptly.
- d) Adequate access to suitable *feed* and water should be ensured for all animals in each pen.
- e) Where cleaning or *disinfestation* is necessary during travel, it should be carried out with the minimum of stress to the animals.

2. Sick or injured animals

- a) Sick or injured animals should be segregated.
- b) Sick or injured animals should be appropriately treated or humanely killed, in accordance with a predetermined emergency response plan (Article 7.2.5.). Veterinary advice should be sought if necessary. All drugs and products should be used in accordance with recommendations from a *veterinarian* and in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.
- c) A record of treatments carried out and their outcomes should be kept.
- d) When humane killing is necessary, the *animal handler* must ensure that it is carried out humanely. Recommendations for specific species are described in Chapter 7.6. Veterinary advice regarding the appropriateness of a particular method of *euthanasia* should be sought as necessary.

Article 7.2.10.

Unloading and post-journey handling

1. General considerations
 - a) The required facilities and the principles of animal handling detailed in Article 7.2.8. apply equally to *unloading*, but consideration should be given to the likelihood that the animals will be fatigued.
 - b) *Unloading* should be carefully planned as it has the potential to be the cause of poor welfare in transported animals.
 - c) A livestock vessel should have priority attention when arriving in port and have priority access to a berth with suitable *unloading* facilities. As soon as possible after the vessel's arrival at the port and acceptance of the consignment by the *Competent Authority*, animals should be unloaded into appropriate facilities.
 - d) The accompanying veterinary certificate and other documents should meet the requirements of the *importing country*. The veterinary inspection should be completed as quickly as possible.
 - e) *Unloading* should be supervised by the *Competent Authority* and conducted by *animal handler(s)*. The *animal handlers* should ensure that animals are unloaded as soon as possible after arrival but sufficient time should be allowed for *unloading* to proceed quietly and without unnecessary noise, harassment or force, and that untrained assistants or spectators do not impede the process.
2. Facilities
 - a) The facilities for *unloading* including the collecting area at the wharf, races and unloading ramps should be designed and constructed to take into account of the needs and abilities of the animals with regard to dimensions, slopes, surfaces, absence of sharp projections, flooring, sides, etc.
 - b) All *unloading* facilities should have sufficient lighting to allow the animals to be easily inspected by the *animal handlers*, and to allow ease of movement of animals at all times.
 - c) There should be facilities to provide animals with appropriate care and comfort, adequate space, access to quality *feed* and clean drinking water, and shelter from extreme weather conditions.
3. Sick or injured animals
 - a) An animal that has become sick, injured or disabled during a *journey* should be appropriately treated or humanely killed (see Chapter 7.6.). When necessary, veterinary advice should be sought in the care and treatment of these animals.
 - b) In some cases, where animals are non-ambulatory due to fatigue, injury or sickness, it may be in the best welfare interests of the animal to be treated or humanely killed aboard the vessel.
 - c) If *unloading* is in the best welfare interests of animals that are fatigued, injured or sick, there should be appropriate facilities and equipment for the humane *unloading* of such animals. These animals should be unloaded in a manner that causes the least amount of suffering. After *unloading*, separate pens and other appropriate facilities and treatments should be provided for sick or injured animals.
4. Cleaning and disinfection
 - a) Vessels and containers used to carry the animals should be cleaned before re-use through the physical removal of manure and bedding, by scraping, washing and flushing vessels and containers with water until visibly clean. This should be followed by *disinfection* when there are concerns about disease transmission.
 - b) Manure, litter and bedding should be disposed of in such a way as to prevent the transmission of disease and in compliance with all relevant health and environmental legislation.

Article 7.2.11.

Actions in the event of a refusal to allow the importation of a shipment

- 1) The welfare of the animals should be the first consideration in the event of a refusal to import.
- 2) When animals have been refused import, the *Competent Authority* of the *importing country* should make available suitable isolation facilities to allow the *unloading* of animals from a vessel and their secure holding, without posing a risk to the health of the national herd, pending resolution of the situation. In this situation, the priorities should be:
 - a) The *Competent Authority* of the *importing country* should provide urgently in writing the reasons for the refusal.

- b) In the event of a refusal for animal health reasons, the *Competent Authority* of the *importing country* should provide urgent access to a WOAH-appointed *veterinarian(s)* to assess the health status of the animals with regard to the concerns of the *importing country*, and the necessary facilities and approvals to expedite the required diagnostic testing.
 - c) The *Competent Authority* of the *importing country* should provide access to allow continued assessment of the ongoing health and welfare situation.
 - d) If the matter cannot be promptly resolved, the *Competent Authorities* of the *exporting* and *importing countries* should call on WOAH to mediate.
- 3) In the event that the animals are required to remain on the vessel, the priorities should be:
- a) The *Competent Authority* of the *importing country* should allow provisioning of the vessel with water and feed as necessary.
 - b) The *Competent Authority* of the *importing country* should provide urgently in writing the reasons for the refusal.
 - c) In the event of a refusal for animal health reasons, the *Competent Authority* of the *importing country* should provide urgent access to a WOAH-appointed *veterinarian(s)* to assess the health status of the animals with regard to the concerns of the *importing country*, and the necessary facilities and approvals to expedite the required diagnostic testing.
 - d) The *Competent Authority* of the *importing country* should provide access to allow continued assessment of the ongoing health and other aspects of the welfare of the animals, and the necessary actions to deal with any issues which arise.
 - e) If the matter cannot be urgently resolved, the *Competent Authorities* of the *exporting* and *importing countries* should call on WOAH to mediate.
- 4) WOAH should utilise its informal procedure for dispute mediation to identify a mutually agreed solution which will address the animal health and welfare issues in a timely manner.

Article 7.2.12.

Species-specific issues

Camelids of the new world in this context comprise llamas, alpacas, guanaco and vicuna. They have good eyesight and, like sheep, can negotiate steep slopes, though ramps should be as shallow as possible. They load most easily in a bunch as a single animal will strive to rejoin the others. Whilst they are usually docile, they have an unnerving habit of spitting in self-defence. During transport, they usually lie down. They frequently extend their front legs forward when lying, so gaps below partitions should be high enough so that their legs are not trapped when the animals rise.

Cattle are sociable animals and may become agitated if they are singled out. Social order is usually established at about two years of age. When groups are mixed, social order has to be re-established and aggression may occur until a new order is established. Crowding of cattle may also increase aggression as the animals try to maintain personal space. Social behaviour varies with age, breed and sex; *Bos indicus* and *B. indicus*-cross animals are usually more temperamental than European breeds. Young bulls, when moved in groups, show a degree of playfulness (pushing and shoving) but become more aggressive and territorial with age. Adult bulls have a minimum personal space of six square metres. Cows with young calves can be very protective, and handling calves in the presence of their mothers can be dangerous. Cattle tend to avoid 'dead end' in passages.

Goats should be handled calmly and are more easily led or driven than if they are excited. When goats are moved, their gregarious tendencies should be exploited. Activities which frighten, injure or cause agitation to animals should be avoided. Bullying is particularly serious in goats. Housing strange goats together could result in fatalities, either through physical violence, or subordinate goats being refused access to food and water.

Horses in this context include all solipeds, donkeys, mules, hinnies and zebra. They have good eyesight and a very wide angle of vision. They may have a history of *loading* resulting in good or bad experiences. Good training should result in easier *loading*, but some horses can prove difficult, especially if they are inexperienced or have associated *loading* with poor transport conditions. In these circumstances, two experienced *animal handlers* can load an animal by linking arms or using a strop below its rump. Blindfolding may even be considered. Ramps should be as shallow as possible. Steps are not usually a problem when horses mount a ramp, but they tend to jump a step when descending, so steps should be as low as possible. Horses benefit from being individually stalled, but may be transported in compatible groups. When horses are to travel in groups, their shoes should be removed.

Pigs have poor eyesight, and may move reluctantly in unfamiliar surroundings. They benefit from well-lit loading bays. Since they negotiate ramps with difficulty, these should be as level as possible and provided with secure footholds. Ideally, a hydraulic lift should be used for greater heights. Pigs also negotiate steps with difficulty. A good 'rule-of-thumb' is that no step should be higher than the pig's front knee. Serious aggression may result if unfamiliar animals are mixed. Pigs are highly susceptible to heat stress.

Sheep are sociable animals with good eyesight and tend to 'flock together', especially when they are agitated. They should be handled calmly and their tendency to follow each other should be exploited when they are being moved. Sheep may become agitated if they are singled out for attention and will strive to rejoin the group. Activities which frighten, injure or cause agitation to sheep should be avoided. They can negotiate steep ramps.

NB: FIRST ADOPTED IN 1998; MOST RECENT UPDATE ADOPTED IN 2008.

CHAPTER 7.3.

TRANSPORT OF ANIMALS BY LAND

Preamble: these recommendations apply to the following live domesticated animals: cattle, buffaloes, camels, sheep, goats, pigs, *poultry* and equines. They will also be largely applicable to some other animals, e.g. deer, other camelids and ratites. *Wild animals* and *feral animals* may need different conditions.

Article 7.3.1.

The amount of time animals spend on a *journey* should be kept to the minimum.

Article 7.3.2.

1. Animal behaviour

Animal handlers should be experienced and competent in handling and moving farm livestock and understand the behaviour patterns of animals and the underlying principles necessary to carry out their tasks.

The behaviour of individual animals or groups of animals will vary depending on their breed, sex, temperament and age and the way in which they have been reared and handled. Despite these differences, the following behaviour patterns, which are always present to some degree in domestic animals, should be taken into consideration in handling and moving the animals.

Most domestic livestock are kept in groups and follow a leader by instinct.

Animals which are likely to harm each other in a group situation should not be mixed.

The desire of some animals to control their personal space should be taken into account in designing *loading* and *unloading* facilities, *transport vessels* and *containers*.

Domestic animals will try to escape if any person approaches closer than a certain distance. This critical distance, which defines the flight zone, varies among species and individuals of the same species, and depends upon previous contact with humans. Animals reared in close proximity to humans (i.e. tame) have a smaller flight zone, whereas those kept in free range or extensive systems may have flight zones which may vary from one metre to many metres. *Animal handlers* should avoid sudden penetration of the flight zone which may cause a panic reaction which could lead to aggression or attempted escape and compromise the welfare of the animals.

Animal handlers should use the point of balance at the animal's shoulder to move animals, adopting a position behind the point of balance to move an animal forward and in front of the point of balance to move it backward.

Domestic animals have a wide-angle vision but only have a limited forward binocular vision and poor perception of depth. This means that they can detect objects and movements beside and behind them, but can only judge distances directly ahead.

Although domestic animals have a highly sensitive sense of smell, they may react differently to the smells encountered during travel. Smells which cause negative responses should be taken into consideration when managing animals.

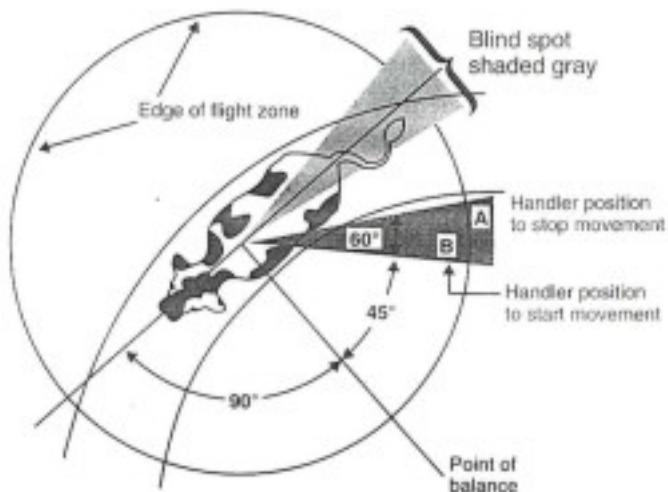
Domestic animals can hear over a greater range of frequencies than humans and are more sensitive to higher frequencies. They tend to be alarmed by constant loud noises and by sudden noises, which may cause them to panic. Sensitivity to such noises should also be taken into account when handling animals.

2. Distractions and their removal

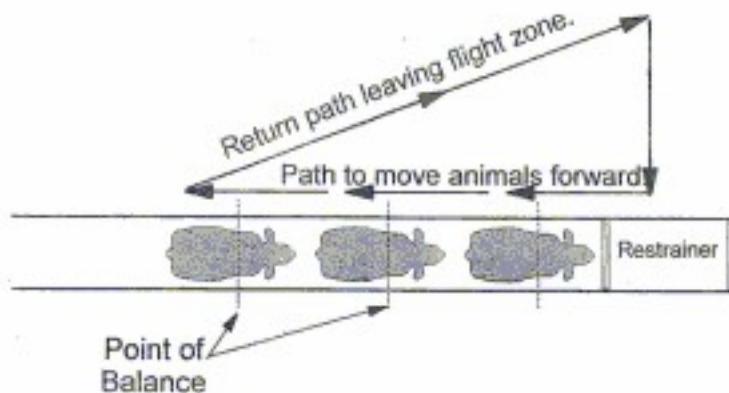
Design of new *loading* and *unloading* facilities or modification of existing facilities should aim to minimise the potential for distractions that may cause approaching animals to stop, baulk or turn back. Below are examples of common distractions and methods for eliminating them:

- a) reflections on shiny metal or wet floors – move a lamp or change lighting;
- b) dark entrances – illuminate with indirect lighting which does not shine directly into the eyes of approaching animals;
- c) animals seeing moving people or equipment up ahead – install solid sides on chutes and races or install shields;
- d) dead ends – avoid if possible by curving the passage, or make an illusory passage;
- e) chains or other loose objects hanging in chutes or on fences – remove them;
- f) uneven floors or a sudden drop in floor levels – avoid uneven floor surfaces or install a solid false floor to provide an illusion of a solid and continuous walking surface;
- g) sounds of air hissing from pneumatic equipment – install silencers or use hydraulic equipment or vent high pressure to the external environment using flexible hosing;
- h) clanging and banging of metal objects – install rubber stops on gates and other devices to reduce metal to metal contact;
- i) air currents from fans or air curtains blowing into the face of animals – redirect or reposition equipment.

An example of a flight zone (cattle)



Handler movement pattern to move cattle forward



Article 7.3.3.

Responsibilities

Once the decision to transport the animals has been made, the welfare of the animals during their *journey* is the paramount consideration and is the joint responsibility of all people involved. The individual responsibilities of persons involved will be described in more detail in this article.

The roles of each of those responsible are defined below:

- 1) The owners and managers of the animals are responsible for:
 - a) the general health, overall welfare and fitness of the animals for the *journey*;
 - b) ensuring compliance with any required veterinary or other certification;
 - c) the presence of an *animal handler* competent for the species being transported during the *journey* with the authority to take prompt action; in case of transport by individual trucks, the truck driver may be the sole *animal handler* during the *journey*;
 - d) the presence of an adequate number of *animal handlers* during *loading* and *unloading*;
 - e) ensuring that equipment and veterinary assistance are provided as appropriate for the species and the *journey*.
- 2) Business agents or buying/selling agents are responsible for:
 - a) selection of animals that are fit to travel;
 - b) availability of suitable facilities at the start and at the end of the *journey* for the assembly; *loading*, transport, *unloading* and holding of animals, including for any stops at *resting points* during the *journey* and for emergencies.
- 3) *Animal handlers* are responsible for the humane handling and care of the animals, especially during *loading* and *unloading*, and for maintaining a *journey log*. To carry out their responsibilities, they should have the authority to take prompt action. In the absence of a separate *animal handler*, the driver is the *animal handler*.
- 4) Transport companies, *vehicle* owners and drivers are responsible for planning the *journey* to ensure the care of the animals; in particular they are responsible for:
 - a) choosing appropriate *vehicles* for the species transported and the *journey*;
 - b) ensuring that properly trained staff are available for *loading/unloading* of animals;
 - c) ensuring adequate competency of the driver in matters of *animal welfare* for the species being transported in case a separate *animal handler* is not assigned to the truck;
 - d) developing and keeping up-to-date contingency plans to address emergencies (including adverse weather conditions) and minimise stress during transport;
 - e) producing a *journey plan* which includes a *loading* plan, *journey duration*, itinerary and location of resting places;

- f) *loading* only those animals which are fit to travel, for their correct *loading* into the *vehicle* and their inspection during the *journey*, and for appropriate responses to problems arising; if its fitness to travel is in doubt, the animal should be examined by a *veterinarian* in accordance with point 3 a) of Article 7.3.7.;
 - g) welfare of the animals during the actual transport.
- 5) Managers of facilities at the start and at the end of the *journey* and at *resting points* are responsible for:
- a) providing suitable premises for *loading*, *unloading* and securely holding the animals, with water and *feed* when required, and with protection from adverse weather conditions until further transport, sale or other use (including rearing or slaughter);
 - b) providing an adequate number of *animal handlers* to load, unload, drive and hold animals in a manner that causes minimum stress and injury; in the absence of a separate *animal handler*, the driver is the *animal handler*;
 - c) minimising the opportunities for disease transmission;
 - d) providing appropriate facilities, with water and *feed* when required;
 - e) providing appropriate facilities for emergencies;
 - f) providing facilities for washing and disinfecting *vehicles* after *unloading*;
 - g) providing facilities and competent staff to allow the humane *killing* of animals when required;
 - h) ensuring proper rest times and minimal delay during stops.
- 6) The responsibilities of *Competent Authorities* include:
- a) establishing minimum standards for *animal welfare*, including requirements for inspection of animals before, during and after their travel, defining 'fitness to travel' and appropriate certification and record keeping;
 - b) setting standards for facilities, *containers* and *vehicles* for the transport of animals;
 - c) setting standards for the competence of *animal handlers*, drivers and managers of facilities in relevant issues in *animal welfare*;
 - d) ensuring appropriate awareness and training of *animal handlers*, drivers and managers of facilities in relevant issues in *animal welfare*;
 - e) implementation of the standards, including through accreditation of / interaction with other organisations;
 - f) monitoring and evaluating the effectiveness of standards of health and other aspects of welfare;
 - g) monitoring and evaluating the use of veterinary medications;
 - h) giving animal consignments priority at frontiers in order to allow them to pass without unnecessary delay.
- 7) All individuals, including *veterinarians*, involved in transporting animals and the associated handling procedures should receive appropriate training and be competent to meet their responsibilities.
- 8) The receiving *Competent Authority* should report back to the sending *Competent Authority* on significant *animal welfare* problems which occurred during the *journey*.

Article 7.3.4.

Competence

- 1) All people responsible for animals during *journeys* should be competent in accordance with their responsibilities listed in Article 7.3.3. Competence may be gained through formal training and/or practical experience.
- 2) The assessment of the competence of *animal handlers* should at a minimum address knowledge, and ability to apply that knowledge, in the following areas:
 - a) planning a *journey*, including appropriate *space allowance*, and *feed*, water and ventilation requirements;
 - b) responsibilities for animals during the *journey*, including *loading* and *unloading*;
 - c) sources of advice and assistance;
 - d) animal behaviour, general signs of disease, and indicators of poor *animal welfare* such as stress, *pain* and fatigue, and their alleviation;
 - e) assessment of fitness to travel; if fitness to travel is in doubt, the animal should be examined by a *veterinarian*;
 - f) relevant authorities and applicable transport regulations, and associated documentation requirements;
 - g) general disease prevention procedures, including cleaning and *disinfection*;
 - h) appropriate methods of animal handling during transport and associated activities such as assembling, *loading* and *unloading*;
 - i) methods of inspecting animals, managing situations frequently encountered during transport such as adverse weather conditions, and dealing with emergencies, including humane *killing*;

- j) species-specific aspects and age-specific aspects of animal handling and care, including feeding, watering and inspection; and
- k) maintaining a *journey* log and other records.

Article 7.3.5.

Planning the journey

1. General considerations
 - a) Adequate planning is a key factor affecting the welfare of animals during a *journey*.
 - b) Before the *journey* starts, plans should be made in relation to:
 - i) preparation of animals for the *journey*;
 - ii) choice of road, rail, roll-on roll-off vessels or *containers*;
 - iii) nature and duration of the *journey*;
 - iv) *vehicle* design and maintenance, including roll-on roll-off vessels;
 - v) required documentation;
 - vi) *space allowance*;
 - vii) rest, water and *feed*;
 - viii) observation of animals en route;
 - ix) control of disease;
 - x) emergency response procedures;
 - xi) forecast weather conditions (e.g. conditions being too hot or too cold to travel during certain periods of the day);
 - xii) transfer time when changing mode of transport, and
 - xiii) waiting time at frontiers and inspection points.
 - c) Regulations concerning drivers (for example, maximum driving periods) should take into account *animal welfare* whenever possible.
2. Preparation of animals for the journey
 - a) When animals are to be provided with a novel diet or method of water provision during transport, an adequate period of adaptation should be planned. For all animals it is essential that the rest stops during long journeys are long enough to fulfil each animal's need for *feed* and water. Species-specific short period of *feed* deprivation prior to *loading* may be desirable.
 - b) Animals more accustomed to contact with humans and with being handled are likely to be less fearful of being loaded and transported. *Animal handlers* should handle and load animals in a manner that reduces their fearfulness and improves their approachability.
 - c) Behaviour-modifying compounds (such as tranquillisers) or other medication should not be used routinely during transport. Such compounds should only be administered when a problem exists in an individual animal, and should be administered by a *veterinarian* or other person who has been instructed in their use by a *veterinarian*.
3. Nature and duration of the journey

The maximum duration of a *journey* should be determined in accordance with factors such as:

 - a) the ability of the animals to cope with the stress of transport (such as very young, old, lactating or pregnant animals);
 - b) the previous transport experience of the animals;
 - c) the likely onset of fatigue;
 - d) the need for special attention;
 - e) the need for *feed* and water;
 - f) the increased susceptibility to injury and disease;
 - g) *space allowance*, *vehicle* design, road conditions and driving quality;
 - h) weather conditions;
 - i) *vehicle* type used, terrain to be traversed, road surfaces and quality, skill and experience of the driver.

4. Vehicle and container design and maintenance

- a) *Vehicles and containers* used for the transport of animals should be designed, constructed and fitted as appropriate for the species, size and weight of the animals to be transported. Special attention should be paid to avoid injury to animals through the use of secure smooth fittings free from sharp protrusions. The avoidance of injury to drivers and *animal handlers* while carrying out their responsibilities should be emphasised.
- b) *Vehicles and containers* should be designed with the structures necessary to provide protection from adverse weather conditions and to minimise the opportunity for animals to escape.
- c) In order to minimise the likelihood of the spread of infectious disease during transport, *vehicles and containers* should be designed to permit thorough cleaning and *disinfection*, and the containment of faeces and urine during a journey.
- d) *Vehicles and containers* should be maintained in good mechanical and structural condition.
- e) *Vehicles and containers* should have adequate ventilation to meet variations in climate and the thermo-regulatory needs of the animal species being transported; the ventilation system (natural or mechanical) should be effective when the *vehicle* is stationary, and the airflow should be adjustable.
- f) *Vehicles* should be designed so that the faeces or urine from animals on upper levels do not soil animals on lower levels, nor their *feed* and water. This condition is not applicable for *poultry*. They are generally transported in plastic crates which are designed to let air flow through in all directions to obtain a better ventilation.
- g) When *vehicles* are carried on board ferries, facilities for adequately securing them should be available.
- h) If feeding or watering while the *vehicle* is moving is required, adequate facilities on the *vehicle* should be available.
- i) When appropriate, suitable bedding should be added to *vehicle* floors to assist absorption of urine and faeces, to minimise slipping by animals, and protect animals (especially young animals) from hard flooring surfaces and adverse weather conditions.

5. Special provisions for transport in vehicles (road and rail) on roll-on/roll-off vessels or for containers

- a) *Vehicles and containers* should be equipped with a sufficient number of adequately designed, positioned and maintained securing points enabling them to be securely fastened to the *vessel*.
- b) *Vehicles and containers* should be secured to the *vessel* before the start of the sea *journey* to prevent them being displaced by the motion of the *vessel*.
- c) Roll-on/roll-off *vessel/s* should have adequate ventilation to meet variations in climate and the thermo-regulatory needs of the animal species being transported, especially where the animals are transported in a secondary *vehicle/container* on enclosed decks.

6. Space allowance

- a) The number of animals which should be transported on a *vehicle* or in a *container* and their allocation to compartments should be determined before *loading*.
- b) The space required on a *vehicle* or in a *container* depends upon whether or not the animals need to lie down (for example, cattle, sheep, pigs, camels and *poultry*), or to stand (horses). Animals which will need to lie down often stand when first loaded or when the *vehicle* is driven with too much lateral movement or sudden braking.
- c) When animals lie down, they should all be able to adopt a normal lying posture, without being on top of one another, and allowing necessary thermoregulation.
- d) When animals are standing, they should have sufficient space to adopt a balanced position as appropriate to the climate and species transported.
- e) The amount of headroom necessary depends on the species of animal. Each animal should be able to assume its natural standing position for transport (including during *loading* and *unloading*) without coming into contact with the roof or upper deck of the *vehicle*, and there should be sufficient headroom to allow adequate airflow over the animals. These conditions will not normally apply to *poultry* except for one day-old chicks. However, under tropical and subtropical conditions (under study) *poultry* benefit from having adequate head room to allow head cooling.
- f) Calculations for the *space allowance* for each animal should be carried out using the figures given in a relevant national or international document. The number and size of pens on the *vehicle* should be varied to where possible accommodate already established groups of animals while avoiding group sizes which are too large.
- g) Other factors which may influence *space allowance* include:
 - i) *vehicle/container* design;

- ii) length of *journey*;
- iii) need to provide *feed* and water on the *vehicle*;
- iv) quality of roads;
- v) expected weather conditions;
- vi) category and sex of the animals.

7. Rest, water and feed

- a) Suitable water and *feed* should be available as appropriate and needed for the species, age, and condition of the animals, as well as the duration of the *journey*, climatic conditions, etc.
- b) Animals should be allowed to rest at *resting points* at appropriate intervals during the *journey*. The type of transport, the age and species of the animals being transported, and climatic conditions should determine the frequency of rest stops and whether the animals should be unloaded. Water and *feed* should be available during rest stops.

8. Ability to observe animals during the journey

- a) Animals should be positioned to enable each animal to be observed regularly during the *journey* to ensure their safety and good welfare. The condition will not normally apply to *poultry*. However, efforts should be made to observe the general conditions within the crates.
- b) If the animals are in crates or on multi-tiered *vehicles* which do not allow free access for observation, for example where the roof of the tier is too low, animals cannot be inspected adequately, and serious injury or disease could go undetected. In these circumstances, a shorter *journey* duration should be allowed, and the maximum duration will vary in accordance with the rate at which problems arise in the species and under the conditions of transport.

9. Control of disease

As animal transport is often a significant factor in the spread of infectious diseases, *journey* planning should take the following into account:

- a) mixing of animals from different sources in a single consignment should be minimised;
- b) contact at *resting points* between animals from different sources should be avoided;
- c) when possible, animals should be vaccinated against diseases to which they are likely to be exposed at their destination;
- d) medications used prophylactically or therapeutically should be approved by the *Veterinary Authority* of the *exporting country* and the *importing country* and should only be administered by a *veterinarian* or other person who has been instructed in their use by a *veterinarian*.

10. Emergency response procedures

There should be an emergency management plan that identifies the important adverse events that may be encountered during the *journey*, the procedures for managing each event and the action to be taken in an emergency. For each important event, the plan should document the actions to be undertaken and the responsibilities of all parties involved, including communications and record keeping.

11. Other considerations

- a) Extreme weather conditions are hazardous for animals undergoing transport and require appropriate *vehicle* design to minimise risks. Special precautions should be taken for animals that have not been acclimatised or which are unsuited to either hot or cold conditions. In some extreme conditions of heat or cold, animals should not be transported at all.
- b) In some circumstances, transportation during the night may reduce thermal stress or the adverse effects of other external stimuli.

Article 7.3.6.

Documentation

- 1) Animals should not be loaded until the documentation required to that point is complete.
- 2) The documentation accompanying the consignment should include:
 - a) *journey* travel plan and emergency management plan;
 - b) date, time and place of *loading* and *unloading*;

- c) veterinary certification, when required;
 - d) *animal welfare* competencies of the driver (under study);
 - e) *animal identification* to allow *animal traceability* to the premises of departure and, where possible, to the premises of origin;
 - f) details of any animals considered at particular risk of suffering poor welfare during transport (point 3 e) of Article 7.3.7.);
 - g) documentation of the period of rest, and access to *feed* and water, prior to the *journey*;
 - h) *stocking density* estimate for each load in the consignment;
 - i) the *journey log* - daily record of inspection and important events, including records of morbidity and mortality and actions taken, climatic conditions, rest stops, travel time and distance, *feed* and water offered and estimates of consumption, medication provided, and mechanical defects.
- 3) When veterinary certification is required to accompany consignments of animals, it should address:
- a) fitness of animals to travel;
 - b) *animal identification* (description, number, etc.);
 - c) health status including any tests, treatments and *vaccinations* carried out;
 - d) when required, details of *disinfection* carried out.

At the time of certification, the *veterinarian* should notify the *animal handler* or the driver of any factors affecting the fitness of animals to travel for a particular *journey*.

Article 7.3.7.

Pre-journey period

1. General considerations

- a) Pre-journey rest is necessary if the welfare of animals has become poor during the collection period because of the physical environment or the social behaviour of the animals. The need for rest should be judged by a *veterinarian* or other competent person.
- b) Pre-journey assembly/holding areas should be designed to:
 - i) securely hold the animals;
 - ii) maintain a safe environment from hazards, including predators and disease;
 - iii) protect animals from exposure to severe weather conditions;
 - iv) allow for maintenance of social groups;
 - v) allow for rest, and appropriate water and *feed*.
- c) Consideration should be given to the previous transport experience, training and conditioning of the animals, if known, as these may reduce fear and stress in animals.
- d) *Feed* and water should be provided pre-journey if the *journey* duration is greater than the normal inter-feeding and drinking interval for the animal. Recommendations for specific species are described in detail in Article 7.3.12.
- e) When animals are to be provided with a novel diet or method of *feed* or water provision during the *journey*, an adequate period of adaptation should be allowed.
- f) Before each *journey*, *vehicles* and *containers* should be thoroughly cleaned and, if necessary, treated for animal health and public health purposes, using methods approved by the *Competent Authority*. When cleaning is necessary during a *journey*, this should be carried out with the minimum of stress and risks to the animals.
- g) Where an *animal handler* believes that there is a significant risk of disease among the animals to be loaded or significant doubt as to their fitness to travel, the animals should be examined by a *veterinarian*.

2. Selection of compatible groups

Compatible groups should be selected before transport to avoid adverse *animal welfare* consequences. The following recommendations should be applied when assembling groups of animals:

- a) Animals reared together should be maintained as a group; animals with a strong social bond, such as a dam and offspring, should be transported together.
- b) Animals of the same species can be mixed unless there is a significant likelihood of aggression; aggressive individuals should be segregated (recommendations for specific species are described in detail in

Article 7.3.12.). For some species, animals from different groups should not be mixed because poor welfare occurs unless they have established a social structure.

- c) Young or small animals should be separated from older or larger animals, with the exception of nursing mothers with young at foot.
- d) Animals with horns or antlers should not be mixed with animals lacking horns or antlers unless judged to be compatible.
- e) Animals of different species should not be mixed unless they are judged to be compatible.

3. Fitness to travel

- a) Each animal should be inspected by a *veterinarian* or an *animal handler* to assess fitness to travel. If its fitness to travel is in doubt, the animal should be examined by a *veterinarian*. Animals found unfit to travel should not be loaded onto a *vehicle*, except for transport to receive veterinary attention.
- b) Humane and effective arrangements should be made by the owner and the agent for the handling and care of any animal rejected as unfit to travel.
- c) Animals that are unfit to travel include, but may not be limited to:
 - i) those that are sick, injured, weak, disabled or fatigued;
 - ii) those that are unable to stand unaided and bear weight on each leg;
 - iii) those that are blind in both eyes;
 - iv) those that cannot be moved without causing them additional suffering;
 - v) newborn with an unhealed navel;
 - vi) pregnant animals which would be in the final 10% of their gestation period at the planned time of *unloading*;
 - vii) females travelling without young which have given birth within the previous 48 hours;
 - viii) those whose body condition would result in poor welfare because of the expected climatic conditions.
- d) Risks during transport can be reduced by selecting animals best suited to the conditions of travel and those that are acclimatised to expected weather conditions.
- e) Animals at particular risk of suffering poor welfare during transport and which require special conditions (such as in the design of facilities and *vehicles*, and the length of the *journey*) and additional attention during transport, may include:
 - i) large or obese individuals;
 - ii) very young or old animals;
 - iii) excitable or aggressive animals;
 - iv) animals which have had little contact with humans;
 - v) animals subject to motion sickness;
 - vi) females in late pregnancy or heavy lactation, dam and offspring;
 - vii) animals with a history of exposure to stressors or pathogenic agents prior to transport;
 - viii) animals with unhealed wounds from recent surgical procedures such as dehorning.

4. Specific-species requirements

Transport procedures should be able to take account of variations in the behaviour of the species. Flight zones, social interactions and other behaviour vary significantly among species and even within species. Facilities and handling procedures that are successful with one species are often ineffective or dangerous with another.

Recommendations for specific species are described in detail in Article 7.3.12.

Article 7.3.8.

Loading

1. Competent supervision

- a) *Loading* should be carefully planned as it has the potential to be the cause of poor welfare in transported animals.
- b) *Loading* should be supervised and/or conducted by *animal handlers*. The animals are to be loaded quietly and without unnecessary noise, harassment or force. Untrained assistants or spectators should not impede the process.
- c) When *containers* are loaded onto a *vehicle*, this should be carried out in such a way to avoid poor *animal welfare*.

2. Facilities

- a) The facilities for *loading* including the collecting area, races and loading ramps should be designed and constructed to take into account the needs and abilities of the animals with regard to dimensions, slopes, surfaces, absence of sharp projections, flooring, etc.
- b) *Loading* facilities should be properly illuminated to allow the animals to be observed by *animal handler(s)*, and to allow the ease of movement of the animals at all times. Facilities should provide uniform light levels directly over approaches to sorting pens, chutes, loading ramps, with brighter light levels inside *vehicles/containers*, in order to minimise baulking. Dim light levels may be advantageous for the catching of *poultry* and some other animals. Artificial lighting may be required. Loading ramps and other facilities should have a non-slippery flooring.
- c) Ventilation during *loading* and the *journey* should provide for fresh air, the removal of excessive heat, humidity and noxious fumes (such as ammonia and carbon monoxide), and the prevention of accumulations of ammonia and carbon dioxide. Under warm and hot conditions, ventilation should allow for the adequate convective cooling of each animal. In some instances, adequate ventilation can be achieved by increasing the *space allowance* for animals.

3. Goads and other aids

When moving animals, their species-specific behaviour should be used (see Article 7.3.12.). If goads and other aids are necessary, the following principles should apply:

- a) Animals that have little or no room to move should not be subjected to physical force or goads and other aids which compel movement. Electric goads and prods should only be used in extreme cases and not on a routine basis to move animals. The use and the power output should be restricted to that necessary to assist movement of an animal and only when an animal has a clear path ahead to move. Goads and other aids should not be used repeatedly if the animal fails to respond or move. In such cases it should be investigated whether some physical or other impediment is preventing the animal from moving.
- b) The use of such devices should be limited to battery-powered goads on the hindquarters of pigs and large ruminants, and never on sensitive areas such as the eyes, mouth, ears, anogenital region or belly. Such instruments should not be used on horses, sheep and goats of any age, or on calves or piglets.
- c) Useful and permitted goads include panels, flags, plastic paddles, flappers (a length of cane with a short strap of leather or canvas attached), plastic bags and rattles; they should be used in a manner sufficient to encourage and direct movement of the animals without causing undue stress.
- d) Painful procedures (including whipping, tail twisting, use of nose twitches, pressure on eyes, ears or external genitalia), or the use of goads or other aids which cause *pain* and suffering (including large sticks, sticks with sharp ends, lengths of metal piping, fencing wire or heavy leather belts), should not be used to move animals.
- e) Excessive shouting at animals or making loud noises (e.g. through the cracking of whips) to encourage them to move should not occur, as such actions may make the animals agitated, leading to crowding or falling.
- f) The use of well trained dogs to help with the *loading* of some species may be acceptable.
- g) Animals should be grasped or lifted in a manner which avoids *pain* or suffering and physical damage (e.g. bruising, fractures, dislocations). In the case of quadrupeds, manual lifting by a person should only be used in young animals or small species, and in a manner appropriate to the species; grasping or lifting animals only by their wool, hair, feathers, feet, neck, ears, tails, head, horns, limbs causing *pain* or suffering should not be permitted, except in an emergency where *animal welfare* or human safety may otherwise be compromised.
- h) Conscious animals should not be thrown, dragged or dropped.

- i) Performance standards should be established in which numerical scoring is used to evaluate the use of such instruments, and to measure the percentage of animals moved with an electric instrument and the percentage of animals slipping or falling as a result of their usage.

Article 7.3.9.

Travel

1. General considerations
 - a) Drivers and *animal handlers* should check the load immediately before departure to ensure that the animals have been properly loaded. Each load should be checked again early in the trip and adjustments made as appropriate. Periodic checks should be made throughout the trip, especially at rest or refuelling stops or during meal breaks when the *vehicle* is stationary.
 - b) Drivers should utilise smooth, defensive driving techniques, without sudden turns or stops, to minimise uncontrolled movements of the animals.
2. Methods of restraining or containing animals
 - a) Methods of restraining animals should be appropriate to the species and age of animals involved and the training of the individual animal.
 - b) Recommendations for specific species are described in detail in Article 7.3.12.
3. Regulating the environment within vehicles or containers
 - a) Animals should be protected against harm from hot or cold conditions during travel. Effective ventilation procedures for maintaining the environment within *vehicles* or *containers* will vary in accordance with whether conditions are cold, hot and dry or hot and humid, but in all conditions a build-up of noxious gases should be prevented.
 - b) The environment within *vehicles* or *containers* in hot and warm weather can be regulated by the flow of air produced by the movement of the *vehicle*. In warm and hot weather, the duration of *journey* stops should be minimised and *vehicles* should be parked under shade, with adequate and appropriate ventilation.
 - c) To minimise slipping and soiling, and maintain a healthy environment, urine and faeces should be removed from floors when necessary and disposed of in such a way as to prevent the transmission of disease and in compliance with all relevant health and environmental legislation.
4. Sick, injured or dead animals
 - a) A driver or an *animal handler* finding sick, injured or dead animals should act in accordance with a predetermined emergency response plan.
 - b) Sick or injured animals should be segregated.
 - c) Ferries (roll-on roll-off) should have procedures to treat sick or injured animals during the *journey*.
 - d) In order to reduce the likelihood that animal transport will increase the spread of infectious disease, contact between transported animals, or the waste products of the transported animals, and other farm animals should be minimised.
 - e) During the *journey*, when disposal of a dead animal becomes necessary, this should be carried out in such a way as to prevent the transmission of disease and in compliance with all relevant health and environmental legislation.
 - f) When *killing* is necessary, it should be carried out as quickly as possible and assistance should be sought from a *veterinarian* or other person(s) competent in humane *killing* procedures. Recommendations for specific species are described in Chapter 7.6.
5. Water and feed requirements
 - a) If *journey* duration is such that feeding or watering is required or if the species requires *feed* or water throughout, access to suitable *feed* and water for all the animals (appropriate for their species and age) carried in the *vehicle* should be provided. There should be adequate space for all animals to move to the *feed* and water sources and due account taken of likely competition for *feed*.
 - b) Recommendations for specific species are described in detail in Article 7.3.12.

6. Rest periods and conditions

- a) Animals that are being transported should be rested at appropriate intervals during the *journey* and offered *feed* and water, either on the *vehicle* or, if necessary, unloaded into suitable facilities.
- b) Suitable facilities should be used en route, when resting requires the *unloading* of the animals. These facilities should meet the needs of the particular animal species and should allow access of all animals to *feed* and water.

7. In-transit observations

- a) Animals being transported by road should be observed soon after a *journey* is commenced and whenever the driver has a rest stop. After meal breaks and refuelling stops, the animals should be observed immediately prior to departure.
- b) Animals being transported by rail should be observed at each scheduled stop. The responsible rail transporter should monitor the progress of trains carrying animals and take all appropriate action to minimise delays.
- c) During stops, it should be ensured that the animals continue to be properly confined, have appropriate *feed* and water, and their physical condition is satisfactory.

Article 7.3.10.

Unloading and post-journey handling

1. General considerations

- a) The required facilities and the principles of animal handling detailed in Article 7.3.8. apply equally to *unloading*, but consideration should be given to the likelihood that the animals will be fatigued.
- b) *Unloading* should be supervised and/or conducted by an *animal handler* with knowledge and experience of the behavioural and physical characteristics of the species being unloaded. Animals should be unloaded from the *vehicle* into appropriate facilities as soon as possible after arrival at the destination but sufficient time should be allowed for *unloading* to proceed quietly and without unnecessary noise, harassment or force.
- c) Facilities should provide all animals with appropriate care and comfort, adequate space and ventilation, access to *feed* (if appropriate) and water, and shelter from extreme weather conditions.
- d) For details regarding the *unloading* of animals at a *slaughterhouse/abattoir*, see Chapter 7.5.

2. Sick or injured animals

- a) An animal that has become sick, injured or disabled during a *journey* should be appropriately treated or humanely killed (see Chapter 7.6.). If necessary, veterinary advice should be sought in the care and treatment of these animals. In some cases, where animals are non-ambulatory due to fatigue, injury or sickness, it may be in the best welfare interests of the animal to be treated or killed aboard the *vehicle*. Assistance should be sought from a *veterinarian* or other person(s) competent in humane *killing* procedures.
- b) At the destination, the *animal handler* or the driver during transit should ensure that responsibility for the welfare of sick, injured or disabled animals is transferred to a *veterinarian* or other suitable person.
- c) If treatment or humane *killing* is not possible aboard the *vehicle*, there should be appropriate facilities and equipment for the humane *unloading* of animals that are non-ambulatory due to fatigue, injury or sickness. These animals should be unloaded in a manner that causes the least amount of suffering. After *unloading*, separate pens and other appropriate facilities should be available for sick or injured animals.
- d) *Feed*, if appropriate, and water should be available for each sick or injured animal.

3. Addressing disease risks

The following should be taken into account in addressing the greater risk of disease due to animal transport and the possible need for segregation of transported animals at the destination:

- a) increased contact among animals, including those from different sources and with different disease histories;
- b) increased shedding of pathogenic agents and increased susceptibility to infection related to stress and impaired defences against disease, including immunosuppression;
- c) exposure of animals to pathogenic agents which may contaminate *vehicles*, *resting points*, *markets*, etc.

4. Cleaning and disinfection

- a) Vehicles, crates, containers, etc. used to carry the animals should be cleaned before re-use through the physical removal of manure and bedding by scraping, washing and flushing with water and detergent. This should be followed by *disinfection* when there are concerns about disease transmission.
- b) Manure, litter, bedding and the bodies of any animals which die during the *journey* should be disposed of in such a way as to prevent the transmission of disease and in compliance with all relevant health and environmental legislation.
- c) Establishments like livestock markets, slaughterhouses/abattoirs, resting sites, railway stations, etc. where animals are unloaded should be provided with appropriate areas for the cleaning and *disinfection* of vehicles.

Article 7.3.11.

Actions in the event of a refusal to allow the completion of the journey

- 1) The welfare of the animals should be the first consideration in the event of a refusal to allow the completion of the *journey*.
- 2) When the animals have been refused import, the *Competent Authority* of the *importing country* should make available suitable isolation facilities to allow the *unloading* of animals from a *vehicle* and their secure holding, without posing a risk to the health of national *herd* or *flock*, pending resolution of the situation. In this situation, the priorities should be:
 - a) the *Competent Authority* of the *importing country* should provide urgently in writing the reasons for the refusal;
 - b) in the event of a refusal for animal health reasons, the *Competent Authority* of the *importing country* should provide urgent access to a *veterinarian*, where possible a WOAH *veterinarian(s)* appointed by the Director General, to assess the health status of the animals with regard to the concerns of the *importing country*, and the necessary facilities and approvals to expedite the required diagnostic testing;
 - c) the *Competent Authority* of the *importing country* should provide access to allow continued assessment of the health and other aspects of the welfare of the animals;
 - d) if the matter cannot be promptly resolved, the *Competent Authorities* of the *exporting* and *importing countries* should call on WOAH to mediate.
- 3) In the event that a *Competent Authority* requires the animals to remain on the *vehicle*, the priorities should be:
 - a) to allow provisioning of the *vehicle* with water and *feed* as necessary;
 - b) to provide urgently in writing the reasons for the refusal;
 - c) to provide urgent access to an independent *veterinarian(s)* to assess the health status of the animals, and the necessary facilities and approvals to expedite the required diagnostic testing in the event of a refusal for animal health reasons;
 - d) to provide access to allow continued assessment of the health and other aspects of the welfare of the animals, and the necessary actions to deal with any animal issues which arise.
- 4) WOAH should utilise its informal procedure for dispute mediation to identify a mutually agreed solution which will address animal health and any other welfare issues in a timely manner.

Article 7.3.12.

Species-specific issues

Camelids of the new world in this context comprise llamas, alpacas, guanaco and vicuna. They have good eyesight and, like sheep, can negotiate steep slopes, though ramps should be as shallow as possible. They load most easily in a bunch as a single animal will strive to rejoin the others. Whilst they are usually docile, they have an unnerving habit of spitting in self-defence. During transport, they usually lie down. They frequently extend their front legs forward when lying, so gaps below partitions should be high enough so that their legs are not trapped when the animals rise.

Cattle are sociable animals and may become agitated if they are singled out. Social order is usually established at about two years of age. When groups are mixed, social order has to be re-established and aggression may occur until

a new order is established. Crowding of cattle may also increase aggression as the animals try to maintain personal space. Social behaviour varies with age, breed and sex; *Bos indicus* and *B. indicus*-cross animals are usually more temperamental than European breeds. Young bulls, when moved in groups, show a degree of playfulness (pushing and shoving) but become more aggressive and territorial with age. Adult bulls have a minimum personal space of six square metres. Cows with young calves can be very protective, and handling calves in the presence of their mothers can be dangerous. Cattle tend to avoid "dead end" in passages.

Goats should be handled calmly and are more easily led or driven than if they are excited. When goats are moved, their gregarious tendencies should be exploited. Activities which frighten, injure or cause agitation to animals should be avoided. Bullying is particularly serious in goats and can reflect demands for personal space. Housing strange goats together could result in fatalities, either through physical violence, or subordinate goats being refused access to food and water.

Horses in this context include donkeys, mules and hinnies. They have good eyesight and a very wide angle of vision. They may have a history of *loading* resulting in good or bad experiences. Good training should result in easier *loading*, but some horses can prove difficult, especially if they are inexperienced or have associated *loading* with poor transport conditions. In these circumstances, two experienced *animal handlers* can load an animal by linking arms or using a strap below its rump. Blindfolding may even be considered. Ramps should be as shallow as possible. Steps are not usually a problem when horses mount a ramp, but they tend to jump a step when descending, so steps should be as low as possible. Horses benefit from being individually stalled, but may be transported in compatible groups. When horses are to travel in groups, their shoes should be removed. Horses are prone to respiratory disease if they are restricted by period by tethers that prevent the lowering and lifting of their heads.

Pigs have poor eyesight, and may move reluctantly in unfamiliar surroundings. They benefit from well-lit loading bays. Since they negotiate ramps with difficulty, these should be as level as possible and provided with secure footholds. Ideally, a hydraulic lift should be used for greater heights. Pigs also negotiate steps with difficulty. A good 'rule-of-thumb' is that no step should be higher than the pig's front knee. Serious aggression may result if unfamiliar animals are mixed. Pigs are highly susceptible to heat stress. Pigs are susceptible to motion sickness when in transit. *Feed* deprivation prior to loading may be beneficial to prevent motion sickness.

Sheep are sociable animals with good eyesight, a relatively subtle and undemonstrative behaviour and a tendency to 'flock together', especially when they are agitated. They should be handled calmly and their tendency to follow each other should be exploited when they are being moved. Crowding of sheep may lead to damaging aggressive and submissive behaviours as animals try to maintain personal space. Sheep may become agitated if they are singled out for attention, or kept alone, and will strive to rejoin the group. Activities which frighten, injure or cause agitation to sheep should be avoided. They can negotiate steep ramps.

NB: FIRST ADOPTED IN 1998; MOST RECENT UPDATE ADOPTED IN 2011.

CHAPTER 7.4.

TRANSPORT OF ANIMALS BY AIR

Preamble: these recommendations apply to the following live domesticated animals: cattle, buffaloes, camels, sheep, goats, pigs, *poultry* and equines. They will also be largely applicable to some other animals, e.g. deer, other camelids and ratites. *Wild animals* and *feral animals* may need different conditions.

Article 7.4.1.

Livestock containers

1. Design

a) General principles of design

The *container* should:

- conform to the size of the standard pallet of the aircraft that will be used to transport animals;
- not be constructed of material that could be harmful to the health or welfare of animals;
- allow observation of the animals and be marked on opposite sides with the International Air Transport Association (IATA) symbols which indicate animals and the upright position;
- allow emergency access to animals;
- allow the animal to stand in its normal position without touching the roof of the *container* or, in the case of open *containers*, the restraining nets, and provide at least 10 cm (4 in.) clearance above the animal's head when standing in its normal position; in the case of horses, provide sufficient space above the horses head (21 cm, 8 in. recommended) to allow for the movement required to maintain the horses balance;
- conform to the size of the standard pallet of the aircraft that will be used to transport animals;
- not be constructed of material that could be harmful to the health or welfare of animals;
- allow observation of the animals and be marked on opposite sides with the International Air Transport Association (IATA) symbols which indicate animals and the upright position;
- allow emergency access to animals;
- allow the animal to stand in its normal position without touching the roof of the *container* or, in the case of open *containers*, the restraining nets, and provide at least 10 cm (4 in.) clearance above the animal's head when standing in its normal position; in the case of horses, provide sufficient space above the

- horses head (21 cm, 8 in. recommended) to allow for the movement required to maintain the horses balance;
- protect the animals from adverse weather;
- ensure animals stand on a suitable floor to prevent slipping or injury;
- have adequate strength to ensure the safety of the animals and to prevent the animals from escaping;
- ensure doors can be opened and closed easily, but be secured so that they cannot be opened accidentally;
- be free of any nails, bolts and other protrusions or sharp edges that could cause injuries;
- be designed to minimise the risk of any opening or space entrapping any portion of the animals body;
- if reusable, crates should be constructed of impermeable material that is easily cleaned and disinfected;
- ensure faeces and urine cannot escape from the crate; this requires a minimum upturn of 20 cm but it should not block any ventilation openings;
- if designated for stacking be stable, not block any ventilation space and prevent urine and faeces from leaking into the *containers* below when stacked;
- allow for a facility for provision of water and possibly food during transportation of longer than six hours duration.

b) Ventilation

The *container* design should:

- provide adequate ventilation taking into consideration the species *stocking densities*, maximum temperature and humidity of the points of departure, destination, and any interim technical stops;
- allow the normal resting or sleeping position to be assumed for certain species and juvenile animals;
- ensure there is no dead air space in the *container*;
- provide ventilation openings on the walls equal to at least 16% of the wall area; this may be reduced if the *container* has an open top;
- in the case of two-tiered *containers*, ventilation in the sides should be for cattle equivalent to not less than 20% of the floor area of each deck, and for pigs and sheep up to 40% of the floor area of each deck;
- have ventilation openings on all four sides of the crate except that two walls may have reduced ventilation space and the other walls have increased space where required by the positioning of the crates during transportation and/or the ventilation pattern of the aircraft;
- ensure that any internal supports or dividers do not block the cross ventilation;
- not have a solid wall above the height of the animal's head in normal resting position;
- in those species where the mouth is normally held near the floor, have at least 25 cm (10 in.) of ventilation space at the level of the animal's head; this opening should be divided in two with a maximum height for any opening of 13 cm; in all *containers*, there should be a sufficiently large ventilation opening at a height of 25 cm to 30 cm (10 to 11 in.) above floor level on all four sides to allow for circulation;
- have some physical means of ensuring the ventilation space is not blocked, such as the use of cleats (wedges) or allowing space between the outside of the *container* and the pallet.

2. Species requirements

In general, fractious animals or animals in late pregnancy should not be transported by air (see Article 7.4.2.).

a) Horses

Should be transported in *containers* and be separated from each other if they are more than 145 cm (57 in.) in height.

Crates used to transport horses should:

- be strong enough to prevent unruly horses from breaking or escaping from the *container* under any circumstances;
- in the case of multi-horse *containers*, have partitions of sufficient strength and size to separate the horses and to support each horse's weight;
- adjust to allow mare and foal to travel together;
- provide the same percentage of open space for ventilation as required in point 1 above, divided between the two side walls; however, if the access doors are constructed in such a manner that they may be left open during the flight, the door space may be included in the ventilation space;
- be constructed to minimise noise;
- allow access to the head during the flight;
- have the front end notched and padded to accept the neck of the animal;
- have a secure point for attaching restraining devices;
- have a front and rear barrier that will restrict the movement of the horse and will ensure that liquids are deflected into the *container*;
- ensure horses cannot bite other animals;
- be constructed to resist kicking;
- have no fittings or projections in the area likely to be kicked, metal plates should be covered with a protective material;
- ramps shall be non-skid in nature, have foot battens, and be of a maximum slope of 25 degrees when the *container* is on a standard 50 cm (20 in.) dolly;
- not have a step up or down of more than 25 cm (10 in.).

b) Swine

- Crate design and shipment planning should recognize that swine are extremely susceptible to high heat and humidity and that they normally carry their head near the floor.
- In the use of multi-tiered crates, special attention should be paid to ensure air can move through the crate, in accordance with the aircraft's ventilation pattern and capacity to remove heat.
- Crate construction should take into consideration the tendency for mature swine to chew.
- Litter should be dust-free, shavings or other non-toxic materials may be used but not sawdust.
- *Containers* for immature swine should only be constructed when flight is imminent, since rapid growth can result in undersized *containers* if the flight is delayed.
- In order to reduce fighting, swine shipped in group pens should be housed together as a group prior to shipment and not be mixed with other swine before *loading* on the aircraft.
- Mature boars and incompatible females should be shipped in individual crates.
- Individual crates should be 20 cm (8 in.) longer than the body, 15 cm (6 in.) higher than the loin of the pig and of sufficient width, to allow the pigs to lie on their side.

c) Cattle

Crates used to transport cattle should:

- if multi-tiered or roofed, have at least 30% of the roof and four walls as open space;
- have at least one ventilation opening 20–25 cm (8-10 in.) above the floor which is of such width that it will not cause injuries to the feet.

Adult bulls should be transported separately unless they have been accustomed to each other. Cattle with and without horns should be separated from each other.

d) Poultry

The most current *container* requirement published by IATA should be adhered to.

Crates/*containers* containing *poultry* should be handled and carried carefully with no unnecessary tilting.

The majority of birds transported by air will be newly hatched chicks. These animals are very vulnerable to sudden changes in temperature.

e) Other species

- Animals that normally exhibit a herding instinct, including buffalo and deer, can be shipped in group containers providing the mental and physical characteristics of the species are taken into consideration.
- All crates used to move such animals should have a roof or other method of preventing the animals from escaping.
- Animals in which the horns or antler cannot be removed, should be transported individually.
- Deer should not be transported in velvet nor in rut.

Article 7.4.2.

Recommendations for pregnant animals

Heavily pregnant animals should not be carried except under exceptional circumstances. Pregnant animals should not be accepted when the last service or exposure to a male prior to departure has exceeded the following time given here for guidance only:

Females	Maximum number of days since the last service
Horses	300
Cows	250
Deer (axis, fallow and sika)	170
Deer (red deer and reindeer)	185
Ewes	115
Nannies (goats)	115
Sows (pigs)	90

Where service dates or date of last exposure to a male are not available, the animals should be examined by a *veterinarian* to ensure that pregnancy is not so advanced that animals are likely to give birth during transport or suffer unnecessarily.

Any animal showing udder engorgement and slackening of the pelvic ligament should be refused.

Article 7.4.3.

Stocking density

The current *stocking densities* agreed by IATA should continue to be accepted. However, the graphs giving the space requirements should be extended to take into account animals larger and smaller than those dealt with currently.

1. General considerations

When calculating stocking rates, the following should be taken into account:

- a) it is essential that accurate weights of animals are obtained in view of the limitations imposed by the load capabilities of the aircraft and the space required per animal;
- b) in narrow bodied aircraft, there is a loss of floor area in the upper tier of two-tier penning due to the contours of the aircraft;
- c) space available should be calculated on the inside measurements of the crates or penning system used, not on the floor space of the aircraft;
- d) multi-tiered crates, high outdoor temperatures at departure, arrival or stopover points, or extreme length of the trip will require an increase in the amount of space per animal; a 10% decrease in *stocking density* is

recommended for trips in excess of 24 hours;

- e) special attention should be paid to the transport of sheep in heavy wool which require an increase in space allotted per animal and to pigs which have limited ability to dissipate heat;
- f) animals confined in groups, especially in pens, should be stocked at a high enough density to prevent injuries at take-off, during turbulence and at landing, but not to the extent that individual animals cannot lie down and rise without risk of injury or crushing;
- g) in multi-tiered shipments, it should be recognized that the ventilation and cooling capacity of the aircraft is the limiting factor, especially in narrow bodied aircraft. Ventilation capacity varies on each individual aircraft and between aircraft of the same model.

2. Recommendations for stocking densities

The following table gives *stocking density* recommendations for different domestic species. The values are expressed in kilograms and metres.

Species	Weight	Density	Space/ animal	No. of animals per	Animals per single tier pallet		
					10 m ²	214x264 cm	214x308 cm
	kg	kg/m ²	m ²				
Calves	50	220	0.23	43	24	28	31
	70	246	0.28	35/6	20	23	25
	80	266	0.30	33	18	21	24
	90	280	0.32	31	17	20	22
Cattle	300	344	0.84	11-12	6	7	8
	500	393	1.27	8	4	5	5
	600	408	1.45	6-7	3-4	4	4-5
	700	400	1.63	6	3	3-4	4
Sheep	25	147	0.17	59	32	37	42
	70	196	0.36	27/8	15	18	20
Pigs	25	172	0.15	67	37	44	48
	100	196	0.51	20	10	12	14

Article 7.4.4.

Preparation for air transport of livestock

1. Health and customs requirements

The legal requirements including animal health, welfare and species conservation, should be ascertained from the country of destination and any in *transit countries* before the animals are assembled or the transportation is arranged.

Contact the *Veterinary Authority* in the country of origin regarding veterinary certification.

Planning of the transportation should take into account weekends, holidays and airport closures.

Verify that any proposed intransit stops or alternates will not jeopardise the importing or in *transit countries* health requirements.

Waiting time at customs (cargo handling and clearance) should be reduced as much as possible to avoid welfare problems.

2. Environment

Animals are affected by extremes of temperature. This is especially true of high temperature when compounded by high humidity. Temperature and humidity should therefore be taken into consideration when planning the shipment.

Times of arrival, departure and stopovers should be planned so that the aircraft lands during the coolest hours.

At outside temperatures of below 25°C at the landing point, the aircraft doors should be opened to ensure adequate ventilation. Confirmation should be received from government authorities that animal health legislation does not prevent opening of aircraft doors.

When outside temperatures at any landing point exceed 25°C, prior arrangements should be made to have an adequate air-conditioning unit available when the plane lands.

3. Facilities and equipment

Specific arrangements should be made to ensure that holding and *loading* facilities including ramps, trucks, and air-conditioning units are available at departure, all in transit and arrival airports. This should include identification of specific staff who are responsible and the method of contacting them, e.g. telephone number and address.

Specific notification should be given to all those responsible for providing facilities or equipment at the destination and in transit stops immediately before departure.

Containers should be loaded so as to ensure access can be made to the animals at all times.

4. Preparation of animals

Vaccination should be done far enough in advance of the departure date to allow for immunity to develop.

Veterinary certification and serological testing should be arranged several weeks in advance of livestock shipment.

Many animals require acclimatisation before they are transported. Animals such as swine and wild herbivores should be separated and held in the groups that will occupy *containers*. Mixing of such animals immediately before or during transport is extremely stressing and should be avoided.

Incompatible animals should be transported singly.

Article 7.4.5.

Disinfection and disinfestation

1. Disinfection

- a) Those parts of the interior of the aircraft destined for the carriage of animals should be thoroughly cleaned of all foreign matters using methods acceptable to aircraft management before being loaded.
- b) These parts should be sprayed with a disinfectant:
 - i) suitable for the diseases which could be carried by the animals;
 - ii) that does not cause problems with the aircraft;
 - iii) that will not leave a residue hazardous to the animals being transported.

If in doubt, the airline should be consulted on the suitability of the disinfectant. A mechanical nebuliser should be used to minimise the amount of disinfectant used.

Suggested disinfectants currently in use are:

- iv) 4% sodium carbonate and 0.1% sodium silicate;
- v) 0.2% citric acid.
- c) All removeable equipment, penning and *containers* including loading ramps should be thoroughly cleaned and disinfected in accordance with the requirements of both the *exporting* and *importing countries*.
- d) After *disinfection*, all equipment to be replaced in the aircraft should be washed with clean water to remove any traces of disinfectant to avoid any damage to the aircraft structures.

2. Disinfestation

Where *disinfestation* is required, the country requesting the action should be consulted for appropriate procedures.

The World Health Organisation (WHO) Recommendations on the Disinsectisation of Aircraft (*WHO Weekly Epidem. Rec.*, No. 7, 1985) are recognised as standard.

Article 7.4.6.

Radiation

Radioactive materials should be separated from live animals by a distance of at least 0.5 metre for journeys not exceeding 24 hours, and by a distance of at least 1.0 metre for journeys longer than 24 hours (reference: Technical instructions on storage and loading-separation of the International Civil Aviation Organisation). Special care should be taken with regard to pregnant animals, semen and embryos/ova.

Article 7.4.7.

Tranquilization

Experience has shown that there is considerable risk in sedating animals transported by air. Tranquilizers reduce the ability of the animals to respond to stress during transportation. In addition, the reaction of various species to tranquilization cannot always be foreseen. For these reasons, routine tranquilization is not recommended. Tranquilizers should only be used when a specific problem exists, and should be administered by a *veterinarian* or by a person who has been instructed in their use. Persons using these drugs should understand the full implications of the effects of the drug in air transport, e.g. certain animals such as horses and elephants should not go down in *containers*. Drugs should only be administered during the flight with the knowledge and consent of the captain.

In all cases, when tranquilizers are used, a note should be attached to the *container* stating the weight of the individual animal, the generic name of the drug used, the dose, the method and time of administration.

Article 7.4.8.

Destruction of carcasses

In the event of any animal death on board, the competent authority of the airport of destination should be notified in advance of landing.

Carcasses should be disposed of under the supervision of and to the satisfaction of the *Veterinary Authority* of the country the aircraft is in.

The method of disposal should be based on the risk of introducing a controlled disease.

For carcasses which represent a high risk of introducing disease, the following is recommended:

- 1) destruction by incineration, rendering or deep burial under the supervision of the *Veterinary Authority*;
- 2) if removed from the airport site, transportation in a closed, leak-proof *container*.

Article 7.4.9.

Emergency killing

Emergency *killing* of animals in aircraft should, in general, only occur when the safety of the aircraft, crew or other animals are involved.

Every aircraft transporting animals should have a method of killing the animals with minimum *pain* and someone trained in that method.

In all cases when horses or other large animals are to be carried, the method of killing should be discussed with the airline during the planning stages. Suitable methods are:

1. Captive bolt stunner, followed by an injection of a lethal chemical
 - a) Operator should be trained to use the captive bolt stunner on the species or type of animal being transported.
 - b) An expert should determine that the type of captive bolt pistol and cartridge power is adequate for all the animals being transported.
 - c) Some airlines and countries may prohibit the carriage of captive bolt pistols.
 - d) The user should recognise that the noise associated with the captive bolt may excite other animals.
 - e) The requirement that the captive bolt pistol is accurately positioned may be difficult to achieve with an excited animal.
2. Injection of a chemical
 - a) Various chemicals may be used to sedate, immobilize or kill animals.
 - b) Central nervous system depressants such as barbiturate *euthanasia* solutions should be injected directly into a vein to be effective. This is not normally practical for anyone but an experienced *veterinarian* or an especially trained and experienced attendant, where the animal is sufficiently fractious to require *euthanasia*.
 - c) Sedatives such as promazine and its derivatives may make the animal more fractious (see Article 7.4.7.).

- d) Immobilizing solutions such as succinylcholine are not humane.
3. Firearms
Airlines do not permit the use of firearms which discharge a free bullet because of the danger to the aircraft.

Article 7.4.10.

Handling of food and waste material

Waste material which contains anything of animal origin including food, litter, manure, or animal *feed* should be handled, collected and disposed of in a manner that ensures it will not be fed to livestock. It should be collected in specified areas, and stored and transported in closed, leak-proof *containers*.

Some *importing countries* legislation may prohibit or restrict the use of hay or straw during the transportation period. Unloading of hay, straw, other animal *feed* and litter may be restricted or prohibited by in *transit countries*.

Article 7.4.11.

Disposal of food and waste material

Recommended methods of disposal are:

- 1) incineration to an ash;
 - 2) heating at an internal temperature of at least of 100°C for 30 minutes, then disposal in a land fill site;
 - 3) controlled burial in a land fill site.
-

NB: FIRST ADOPTED IN 1982; MOST RECENT UPDATE ADOPTED IN 2024.

CHAPTER 7.5.

ANIMAL WELFARE DURING SLAUGHTER

Article 7.5.1.

Introduction

Providing good welfare to animals at *slaughter* is ethically and economically beneficial. The implementation of *animal welfare* measures, in addition to giving value to the product directly for ethical reasons, contributes to the improvement of workers' wellbeing, health and safety. This will also contribute to food safety and product quality, and consequently to the improvement of economic returns.

Article 7.5.2.

Scope

This chapter identifies *hazards* to *animal welfare* during *slaughter* and provides recommendations for arrival and *unloading*, *lairage*, handling, *restraint*, *stunning* and bleeding of animals in *slaughterhouses/abattoirs*. It provides animal-based measures to assess the level of welfare and recommends remedial and corrective actions to be applied, when necessary.

This chapter applies to the *slaughter* in *slaughterhouses/abattoirs* of free-moving animals, such as ruminants, camelids, equids and pigs, and animals in *containers* such as rabbits and most *poultry* species.

This chapter should be read in conjunction with the guiding principles for *animal welfare* provided in Chapter 7.1. and Chapter 7.14. and with relevant provisions of Chapters 6.2. and 6.3.

Article 7.5.3.

Definition

For the purposes of this chapter:

Bleeding means the act of severing major blood vessels that supply the brain, to ensure death.

Article 7.5.4.

Hazards to animal welfare

Hazards to animal welfare during each of the pre-slaughter stages have a cumulative effect on the stress of the animals.

At *slaughterhouses/abattoirs*, animals are exposed to *hazards to animal welfare* including *feed* and water deprivation, mixing of unfamiliar *animals*, handling by humans, exposure to a novel environment (e.g. noise, lighting, flooring and smells), forced movement, limited space allowance, adverse weather conditions and ineffective *stunning* and bleeding. These *hazards* can have negative impacts on the welfare of the animals that can be assessed through animal-based measures. In the absence of feasible animal-based measures, resource-based measures and management-based measures may be used as a proxy. *Hazards to animal welfare* can be minimised by appropriate design of premises and choice of equipment, and through good management, training and competency of personnel.

Article 7.5.5.

Measures

The welfare of animals at *slaughter* should be assessed using animal-based measures. Although consideration should be given to the resources provided as well as the design and management of the system, animal-based measures are preferential. However, key *stunning* parameters should be selected, taking into account animal-based measures.

The routine use of these animal-based measures and the appropriate thresholds should be adapted to the different situations in which animals are managed at a *slaughterhouse/abattoir*. It is recommended that target values or thresholds for animal-based measures be based on current scientific evidence and appropriate national, sectorial or regional standards.

Article 7.5.6.

Management

The *slaughterhouse/abattoir* operator is responsible for the development and implementation of an operating plan that should consider the following:

- training and competency of personnel;
- design of premises and choice of equipment;
- standard operating procedure;
- recording, reporting adverse incidents, and taking corrective actions;
- throughput (number of animals slaughtered per hour);
- maintenance and cleaning procedures of equipment and premises;
- emergency plans.

Article 7.5.7.

Training and competency of personnel

Animal handlers and other personnel have a crucial role to play in ensuring good *animal welfare* conditions from the time of arrival of the animals at the *slaughterhouse/abattoir* through to their death. Training for all personnel should emphasise the importance of *animal welfare* and their responsibility in contributing to the welfare of the animals that come through the *slaughterhouse/abattoir*.

Animal handlers should understand the species-specific behavioural patterns of the animals they are working with and the underlying principles for carrying out the required tasks whilst ensuring good *animal welfare*. They should be experienced and competent in handling and moving the animals with knowledge that allows them to identify signs of *distress*, fear, and *pain* and to take preventive and corrective actions. Personnel carrying out *restraint* (including pre-stun shackling) and of *stunning* and bleeding operations should be familiar with the relevant equipment, and its key working parameters and procedures. Personnel carrying out *stunning*, post-stun shackling or bleeding of animals should be able to identify and take corrective actions in case of:

- 1) ineffective *stunning* of the animal;
- 2) recovery of consciousness;
- 3) signs of life prior to dressing or scalding.

Competencies may be gained through a combination of formal training and practical experience. These competencies should be assessed by the *Competent Authority* or by an independent body recognised by the *Competent Authority*.

Only the personnel actively working in areas where live animals are handled should be present in these areas. The presence of visitors or other personnel should be limited in these areas in order to prevent unnecessary noise, shouting and movement and to reduce the risk of accidents.

Article 7.5.8.

Design of premises and choice of equipment

The design of premises and the choice of equipment used in a *slaughterhouse/abattoir* have important impacts on the welfare of animals. The animals' needs should be considered including:

- thermal comfort;
- ease of movement;
- protection from injury;
- protection from visual, auditory and olfactory overstimulation;
- minimising fear and avoiding *distress* and *pain*;
- ability to perform natural and social behaviours;
- water and *feed*;
- needs arising from illness or injury;
- needs arising from other vulnerabilities (e.g. pregnant, lactating or neonatal animals).

Premises should be designed to eliminate distractions that may cause approaching animals to stop, baulk or turn back.

Flooring should be non-slip to prevent injury and stress due to slipping or falling. There should be adequate quality and quantity of lighting to allow appropriate ante-mortem inspection of animals and to enable the moving of animals utilising low-stress handling techniques.

The design of the *slaughterhouse/abattoir* and choice of equipment should take into consideration the species, categories, quantities, size or weight and age of the animals. *Restraint, stunning* and bleeding equipment is critical for the welfare of an animal at the time of *slaughter*. Appropriate back-up equipment should be available for immediate use in case of failure of the primary *stunning* equipment.

Article 7.5.9.

Throughput

The throughput of the *slaughterhouse/abattoir* is the number of animals slaughtered per hour. It should never exceed the maximum capacity of the design of the facilities or equipment. The *slaughterhouse/abattoir* operators should continuously monitor throughput and adjust it to any operational changes, such as staff numbers and experience or line breakdowns. Throughput may need to be reduced if welfare is negatively impacted.

Personnel allocation should be adequate for the anticipated throughput and be sufficient to implement the *slaughterhouse/abattoir* operating plan as well as ante- and post-mortem inspections.

Article 7.5.10.

Maintenance and cleaning procedures

All equipment should be clean, well maintained and calibrated, in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions in order to ensure positive outcomes for *animal welfare*.

Maintenance and cleaning of handling, *unloading, lairage* and moving facilities and equipment contribute to ensuring that animals are handled smoothly, minimising *pain* and fear.

Maintenance and cleaning of handling, *restraining, stunning* and bleeding equipment are essential to ensure reliable and effective *stunning* and *slaughter*, thereby minimising *pain*, fear and suffering.

Article 7.5.11.

Maintenance and cleaning procedures

Emergency plans should be in place at the *slaughterhouse/abattoir* to protect the welfare of the animals in the event of an emergency. The plans should consider the most likely emergency situations given the species slaughtered and the location of the *slaughterhouse/abattoir*.

Emergency plans should be documented and communicated to all responsible parties and these plans should be tested regularly.

Personnel who have a role to play in implementing the plans should be well trained on the tasks they have to perform.

Article 7.5.12.

Arrival of free-moving animals

On arrival at the *slaughterhouse/abattoir*, animals would already have been exposed to *hazards* that may have negative impacts on their welfare. Any previous *hazards* will have a cumulative effect that may affect the welfare of the animals throughout the *slaughter* process. Therefore, animals should be transported to the *slaughterhouse/abattoir* in a manner that minimises adverse animal health and welfare, and in accordance with Chapters 7.2. and 7.3.

1. Animal welfare concerns

Delay in *unloading* of animals is a major *animal welfare* concern at arrival.

Animals in *vehicles* have smaller space allowances than on farm, undergo water and *feed* deprivation, may have suffered from an injury, and may be exposed to adverse weather conditions and to stress and discomfort from social disturbance, noise, vehicle vibration and motion. In addition, stationary *vehicles* may have insufficient ventilation. Delays in *unloading* animals will prolong or exacerbate the impact of these *hazards*. Under these circumstances, injured or sick animals requiring urgent attention may not be identified or dealt with appropriately and therefore the duration of their suffering will be prolonged.

2. Animal-based and other measures

It can be difficult to assess animal-based measures while animals are in the *vehicle*. Some measures that may be assessed include animals with injuries, lameness or poor body condition or those that are sick or have died. Panting, shivering and huddling may indicate thermal stress. Drooling and licking may indicate prolonged thirst.

Animals dead or emergency killed (see Article 7.5.22.) on arrival should be recorded and monitored as an indicator of *animal welfare* prior to and during transport.

Time from arrival to *unloading* and the environmental temperature and humidity can be used to establish relevant thresholds for corrective action.

3. Recommendations

Animals should be unloaded promptly on arrival. This is facilitated by scheduling the arrival of the animals at the *slaughterhouse/abattoir* to ensure that there are sufficient personnel and adequate space in the *unloading* or *lairage* area.

Consignments of animals whose welfare is at greater risk of being compromised should be unloaded first. When no space is immediately available, creating space should be a priority. Provision should be made to provide shelter, shade or additional ventilation during waiting periods, or animals should be transported to an alternative nearby location where such provisions available.

Animals should not be isolated throughout the *slaughter* process, except under specific conditions, such as for aggressive or sick animals.

Animals should be provided with drinking water as soon as possible after *unloading*.

Animals that have undergone long or arduous journeys, are sick or injured, are lactating or pregnant and neonatal animals should be slaughtered as a priority and without delay.

4. Species-specific recommendations

Some species such as pigs and shorn sheep are especially sensitive to extreme temperatures and therefore special attention should be paid when dealing with delays in *unloading* sensitive animals. This may include careful consideration of transport plans to time arrival and processing, provision of additional means of temperature and humidity control.

Article 7.5.13.

Handling of free-moving animals

This article addresses the handling of animals during *unloading* and *lairage*, and in the killing area.

1. Animal welfare concerns

During *unloading*, animals are exposed to similar *hazards* to those encountered when being loaded (see Chapters 7.2. and 7.3.). Inappropriate equipment in the *vehicle* or the *slaughterhouse/abattoir*, such as a lack of lateral protection when *unloading*, excessively steep ramps, slippery surfaces or an absence of foot battens, may result in animals slipping, falling or being trampled, causing injuries. The absence of ramps, lifts or an *unloading* bay or dock could result in animals being pushed or thrown off the *vehicle*. These *hazards* can also be associated with inappropriate handling and forced physical movement of animals that are unable to move independently as a result of weakness or injuries. Exposure to novel environments (e.g. noise, lighting, flooring, smell) may cause fear and reluctance to move, or turning back. Poorly designed facilities will increase the risk of such fear and injuries.

2. Animal-based and other measures

- a) Animals slipping, falling and piling up;
- b) animals with broken or otherwise injured limbs;
- c) animals turning-back, attempting to escape or reluctant to move;
- d) animal vocalisation indicative of *distress*;
- e) animals that are unable to move by themselves due to reasons other than broken or injured limbs;
- f) animals that collide with facility structures;
- g) use of force by personnel;
- h) use of electrical goads.

Animals are safely handled when these measures are below an acceptable threshold.

3. Recommendations

Ramps or lifts should be provided and used except when the *vehicle* and the *unloading* dock are at the same height. There should be no gap between the *vehicle* and *unloading* dock. Ramps or lifts should be positioned so that the animals can be handled safely. The gradient should not be so steep as to prevent animals from moving, and solid side barriers should be in place.

Design of the facilities should promote the natural movements of animals, and, as far as possible, minimise human interaction.

Preventive equipment such as foot battens, rubber mats and deep-groove flooring can help animals avoid slipping.

The *unloading* area and raceways should be well lit so that animals can see where they are going.

The design of areas and raceways should aim to minimise the potential for distractions that may cause animals to stop, baulk or turn back when being unloaded (e.g. shadows, changes in flooring, moving objects, loud or sudden noises). For details refer to Chapters 7.2. and 7.3.

Animals that are injured, sick or unable to rise require immediate action and, when necessary, emergency *killing* should be performed without moving them and without delay. Refer to Articles 7.5.22. and 7.5.24. Such animals should never be dragged, nor should they be lifted or handled in a way that might cause further *pain* and suffering or exacerbate injuries.

Personnel should be calm and patient, assisting animals to move using a soft voice and slow movements. They should not shout, kick, or use any other means that is likely to cause *distress*, fear or *pain* to the animals. Under no circumstances should *animal handlers* resort to violent acts to move animals (see Article 7.5.23.).

Personnel should not stand between an animal and where they want it to move to as this may cause the animal to baulk. They should keep in mind the flight distance and point of balance of the animal when positioning themselves to encourage movement.

Animals should be moved in small groups as this decreases fear and makes use of their natural tendency to follow other animals.

Mechanical handling aids should be used in a manner to encourage and direct movement of the animals without causing *distress*, fear or *pain*. Preferred mechanical aids include panels, flags, plastic paddles, flappers (a length of cane with a short strap of leather or canvas attached), plastic bags and rattles.

Other handling aids should not be used as a substitute for good facility design and handling. They should not be used repeatedly if an animal fails to respond or move. In such cases it should be determined whether some physical or other impediment is preventing the animal from moving.

Electric goads should not be used on a routine basis to move animals. Electric goads may only be used when other measures have been ineffective, the animal has no injury or other condition that is impeding mobility and there is room for the animal to move forward without obstruction (e.g. obstacles or other animals).

The use of electric goads should be limited to low-voltage goads applied to the hindquarters of adult pigs and large ruminants, and never to sensitive areas such as the eyes, mouth, ears, ano-genital region, udders or belly. Such instruments should not be used on equids, camelids, ratites, sheep and goats, pregnant animals or on calves or piglets. Shocks should not be used repeatedly if the animal fails to respond and should not last longer than one second.

The manual lifting of animals should be avoided; if it is necessary, animals should not be grasped or lifted in a manner which causes *pain* or suffering and physical damage (e.g. bruising, fractures, dislocations). (See Article 7.5.23.)

Animals should not be forced to move at a speed greater than their normal walking pace to minimise injury through slipping or falling. Facilities should be designed, constructed and staffed with competent *animal handlers*, so that less than 1% of the animals fall.

Article 7.5.14.

Lairage of free-moving animals

1. Animal welfare concerns

Animals may be exposed to several *hazards* to *animal welfare* during lairage including:

- a) feed and water deprivation leading to prolonged hunger and thirst;
- b) absence of protection against adverse weather conditions, leading to thermal stress;
- c) sudden or excessive noises, including from personnel, facilities, equipment and gates, leading to fear;
- d) insufficient space to lie down and move freely leading to fatigue and aggressive behaviour;
- e) poor design and maintenance leading to *distress* and injuries;
- f) mixing of unfamiliar animals leading to aggressive behaviour or social stress;
- g) limited access to resources (e.g. drinkers, bedding) leading to aggressive behaviour;
- h) exposure to surfaces leading to injury or lameness (e.g. sharp, abrasive).

2. Animal-based and other measures

- a) Thermal stress (e.g. panting, sweating, shivering, huddling behaviour);
- b) space allowance;
- c) excessive soiling with faeces (e.g. coat cleanliness, dag score for sheep);
- d) injuries (e.g. lameness, open wounds, fractures);
- e) illness (e.g. diarrhoea, coughing);
- f) aggressive behaviours (e.g. mounting, fighting);
- g) animal vocalisation indicative of *distress*;
- h) restlessness (e.g. pacing, walking with continuous ear movements and frequency of snorts - especially in horses);
- i) bruised carcass.

3. Recommendations

Animals should have constant access to drinking water. Water supply points should be designed according to the species and age of the animal, with environmental conditions that allow for effective consumption. The number and location of the water supply points should minimise competition.

Animals should be provided with *feed* in *lairage* if the duration between their last meal and expected time for *slaughter* exceeds a period appropriate for the species and age of animals. In the absence of information on the transport duration, animals that are not expected to be slaughtered within 12 hours of arrival should be fed as appropriate for the age and species.

The *lairage* should provide animals with protection against adverse weather conditions including shade and shelter.

Animals should be protected from excessive and sudden noise (e.g. ventilation fans, alarms, or other indoor or outdoor equipment).

Lairage areas should be free from sharp edges and other *hazards* that may cause injury to animals.

The *lairage* should provide enough space for all animals to lie down at the same time, to move freely and to move away in case of aggressive behaviours.

Lairage areas should have adequate lighting levels to allow inspection of the animals.

Animals from different categories (e.g. sexes, sizes, horned or not, species) should not be mixed except if they are already familiar to each other.

Animals that are injured, sick, pregnant or are neonates should be slaughtered with priority or separated to protect them from other animals. Animals that are very ill or down or have severe injuries should be euthanised without delay (see Article 7.5.25.).

4. Species-specific recommendations

Pigs should be moved in groups up to 15.

Bison and cervids need specific design and construction standards for *unloading* and holding prior to *slaughter*.

Article 7.5.15.

Restraint for stunning or bleeding (free-moving animals)

1. Animal welfare concerns

The purpose of *restraint* is to facilitate the correct application of the *stunning* or bleeding equipment. Incorrect *restraint* may not only lead to ineffective *stunning* or bleeding, but also cause *distress*, fear and *pain*.

Other *hazards* include:

- a) slippery restraining area;
- b) insecure *restraint*;
- c) excessive force of *restraint*;
- d) a restraint box that is not appropriate to the size of the animal;
- e) prolonged *restraint*, which may exacerbate insecure or excessive *restraint*.

Slaughter without *stunning* increases the risk of *pain* and fear due to the need for robust *restraint* of conscious animals for neck cutting, especially if animals are turned on their sides or backs.

2. Animal-based and other measures

- a) Animal slipping or falling;
- b) struggling;
- c) escape attempts;
- d) animal vocalisation indicative of *distress*;
- e) reluctance to enter the restrainer;
- f) use of electric goads.

3. Recommendations

Where individual restraint is used, the restrainer should be narrow enough that the animals cannot move backward, forward or turn around.

The restrainer being used should be appropriate to the size of the animals and the restrainer should not be loaded beyond its design capacity.

In case of *slaughter* without *stunning*, the restrainer should restrain the head and should support the body of the animal.

The restraint should be maintained until the animal is unconscious.

When restrainers that hold an animal with its feet off the floor are used, the animal should be held in a balanced, comfortable, upright position.

When a restrainer is used to rotate an animal from an upright position, the body and head should be securely held and supported to prevent struggling and slipping within the device.

Restrainers should not have sharp edges and should be well maintained to minimise risk of injury.

Non-slip flooring should be used to prevent animals from slipping or falling.

Flooring design and handling methods that cause loss of balance, slipping or falling, i.e. a box with a floor that rises on one side upon entry to the box, should not be used.

Distractions (e.g. movements of equipment or people, loose chains or objects, shadows, shiny surfaces or floors) should be minimised to prevent baulking and improve ease of entry into the restrainer.

No animal should enter the restrainer until equipment and personnel are ready to stun and slaughter that animal.

No animal should be released from the restrainer until the operator has confirmed loss of consciousness.

Animals should not be left in single file races or restrainers during work breaks, and in the event of a breakdown animals should be removed from the restrainer promptly.

The restrainer should be in a clean and non-slip condition.

Animals should not be able to pile on top of each other in the restrainer, nor receive pre-stun shocks from contact with the animal in front, in the case of electrical *stunning*.

Animals subject to specific methods of *stunning* should be individually restrained to ensure precise positioning of the *stunning* equipment. However, this should not apply when restraining is likely to cause additional *distress* or *pain* as well as excessive and unpredictable movements (e.g. animals that cannot move normally due to injuries or sickness, *wild* animals or horses).

4. Species-specific recommendations

Gondolas for gas *stunning* of pigs should not be overloaded and should allow pigs to stand without being on top of each other.

Head *restraint* is recommended for bovines.

Specialised restraining equipment and methods are required for bison and cervids.

Article 7.5.16.

General principles for stunning of free-moving animals and animals in containers

1. Animal welfare concerns

The main *animal welfare* concern associated with *stunning* is 'ineffective *stunning*' which results in *distress*, fear and *pain*, during induction of unconsciousness and possible recovery before death.

The most common methods for *stunning* are mechanical, electrical and exposure to controlled atmosphere. *Animals* should only be stunned using *stunning* methods that have been scientifically validated as effective for *stunning* that species.

Stunning prior to *slaughter* prevents *distress*, fear and *pain* to animals during neck cutting and bleeding

2. Animal-based and other measures

Multiple indicators should be used to determine whether a stun is effective and the animal is unconscious. After *stunning*, the state of consciousness is assessed to identify if animals are successfully rendered unconscious or if they are conscious (e.g. *stunning* was ineffective or they recovered consciousness) and therefore at risk of experiencing *distress*, fear and *pain*. For each animal-based measures of state of consciousness, outcomes either suggesting unconsciousness (e.g. presence of tonic seizures) or suggesting consciousness (e.g. absence of tonic seizures) have been identified for each *stunning* method.

3. Recommendations

Animals should always be stunned as soon as they are restrained.

In the case of ineffective *stunning* or recovery, animals should be re-stunned immediately using a backup method. Ineffective *stunning* or return to consciousness should be systematically recorded and the cause of the failure identified and rectified.

Effectiveness of *stunning* should be monitored using multiple animal-based measures at different stages: immediately after *stunning*, just before and during bleeding until death is confirmed.

Stunning equipment should be used, cleaned, maintained and stored following manufacturer's recommendations.

Regular calibration of the equipment according to the manufacturer's procedure is recommended.

Slaughterhouses/abattoirs should have standard operating procedures that define key operating parameters and follow the manufacturer's recommendations for *stunning* the species and age group concerned.

Article 7.5.17.

Mechanical stunning of free-moving animals

1. Animal welfare concerns

The main *hazards* preventing effective mechanical *stunning* are incorrect shooting position and incorrect direction of the impact. These may cause ineffective *stunning* or short-lasting unconsciousness. Absence of or incorrect restraint can lead to an incorrect shooting position. Poor maintenance of the equipment or inadequate cartridge power or air line pressure can result in less concussive impact to the skull. Inappropriate use of cartridge, narrow bolt diameter or short length of bolt may also affect the effectiveness of *stunning*. In animals with a thicker skull, there is an increased risk of an ineffective stun, especially with non-penetrative percussive *stunning*. Fracture of the skull, which may cause ineffective *stunning*, is more likely to occur in young animals such as calves.

For certain extensively reared domestic and *captive wild* animals, on-site shooting with a free bullet in the brain can be an alternative to prevent stressful handling and transport. Under such circumstances, the main objective is a shot that kills the animal immediately.

2. Animal-based and other measures

Animal-based measures of an effective stun are: immediate collapse; apnoea; tonic-clonic seizure; absence of corneal or palpebral reflex; absence of eye movements.

Animal-based measures of ineffective stun or recovery of consciousness are: absence of collapse or attempts to regain posture; rapid eye movement or nystagmus; vocalisation; spontaneous blinking; righting reflex; presence of corneal or palpebral reflex; rhythmic breathing.

3. Recommendations

Slaughterhouses/abattoirs should have standard operating procedures that define key operating parameters and follow the manufacturer's recommendations for *stunning* the species and age group concerned, such as:

- grain of the cartridge or air pressure (captive bolt);
- calibre and type of gun and ammunition (free bullet);
- length and diameter of the penetrating bolt;
- shape and diameter of the non-penetrating bolt;
- position and direction of the shot.

4. Species-specific recommendations

Non-penetrative captive bolt should not be used in animals with thick skulls (e.g. bison, water buffalo).

Water buffaloes should be stunned with penetrative captive bolt in the occipital position using a heavy-duty contact-fired captive bolt gun directed at the nose or using large-calibre firearms and deformation ammunition (e.g. 0.357 Magnum).

Article 7.5.18.

Electrical stunning in free-moving animals

1. Animal welfare concerns

Electrical *stunning* involves application of an electric current across the brain of sufficient magnitude to induce immediate unconsciousness. The main *hazards* preventing effective electrical *stunning* are: incorrect electrode placement, poor contact, electrical arcing, high contact resistance caused by wool or dirt on the animal surface, dirty or corroded electrode, low voltage/current or high electrical frequency. Excessively wet hides or fleeces may result in ineffective *stunning* due to electrical current taking the path of least resistance and flowing around the outside of the body rather than through the skull. This may paralyse the animal, or cause pre-stun shocks, rather than *stunning* the animal. If electrodes are energised prior to ensuring they have good contact with the animal, this results in *pain* from the shock.

2. Animal-based and other measures

Animal-based measures of an effective stun are: tonic-clonic seizures; loss of posture; apnoea; and absence of corneal or palpebral reflex.

Animal-based measures of ineffective stun or recovery of consciousness are: absence of tonic-clonic seizures; vocalisation; spontaneous blinking; righting reflex; presence of corneal or palpebral reflex; rhythmic breathing.

3. Recommendations

When a head to body electrical stun-kill method is used, the electrical current should be applied to the brain before it reaches the heart otherwise the animal will experience cardiac arrest while still conscious.

Slaughterhouses/abattoirs should have standard operating procedures that define key operating parameters and follow the manufacturer's recommendations for *stunning* the species and age group concerned, such as:

- shape, size and placement of the electrodes;
- contact between electrode and head;
- moisten point of contact;
- minimum exposure time;
- electrical parameters (current intensity [A], waveform type [AC and DC], voltage [V] and frequency [Hz]);
- maximum stun to stick interval;
- visual or auditory warning system to alert the operator to proper or improper function such as a device that monitors and displays duration of exposure, voltage and applied current.

4. Species-specific recommendations

Effective electrical parameters should be determined based on scientific evidence for different types of animals.

For head-only *stunning*, minimum parameters are recommended for the following species:

- 1.15 to 1.28 A for bovines,
- 1.25 A for finished pigs,
- 1.8 A for sows and boars,
- 1 A for small ruminants.

The minimum parameters above are recommended to be used with an electrical frequency of 50Hz. Where higher frequencies are used, the amperage should also be increased.

Article 7.5.19.

Controlled atmosphere stunning in free-moving animals

1. Animal welfare concerns

Controlled atmosphere *stunning* methods involve the exposure to high concentrations of carbon dioxide (hypercapnia), low concentration of oxygen (hypoxia) or a combination of the two (hypercapnic hypoxia). Loss of consciousness is not immediate following exposure of animals to controlled atmosphere *stunning*. The main *hazards* causing increased *distress* during induction of unconsciousness are irritant or aversive gas mixtures (e.g. CO₂ in high concentrations), low gas temperature and humidity, and overloading of the gondola or restraint. The main *hazards* causing ineffective controlled atmosphere *stunning* are incorrect gas concentration and too short gas exposure time.

2. Animal-based and other measures

Animal-based measures of an effective stun are: loss of posture; apnoea; absence of corneal or palpebral reflex; absence of muscle tone.

Animal-based measures of an ineffective stun or recovery of consciousness are: vocalisation; spontaneous blinking; righting reflex; presence of corneal or palpebral reflex; rhythmic breathing.

3. Recommendations

Slaughterhouses/abattoirs should have standard operating procedures that define key operating parameters and follow the manufacturer's recommendations for *stunning* the species and age group concerned, such as:

- gas concentrations and exposure time;
- temperature and humidity;
- stocking density of the gondola or restraint for pigs;
- visual or auditory warning system to alert the operator to proper or improper function such as a device that monitors gas concentration and temperature.

Animal-based measures should be monitored during the induction phase because this can be a point of highest welfare risk for animals. Since animal-based measures are difficult to monitor and adapt during the induction phase, resource-based measures should be used such as monitoring of gas concentration(s) and exposure time. Gas concentrations and exposure time, temperature and humidity should be monitored continuously at the level of the animal inside the chamber.

4. Species-specific recommendations

Pigs:

Gases or gas mixtures that are painful to inhale should not be used, except if such methods allow pigs to be stunned in groups, and present animal welfare benefits compared to methods requiring individual *restraint*.

Article 7.5.20.

Bleeding of free-moving animals

1. Animal welfare concerns

The main *animal welfare* concern at the time of bleeding following *stunning* is the recovery of consciousness due to prolonged stun-to-stick interval or due to incomplete severance of the main blood vessels.

Bleeding without prior *stunning* causes animal suffering because the incision to sever blood vessels results in substantial tissue damage in areas well supplied with nociceptors. The activation of these nociceptors causes the animal to experience *pain*. Loss of consciousness due to bleeding is not immediate and there is a period during which the animals experience fear, *pain* and *distress*. This period will be reduced by applying *stunning* immediately after neck cutting.

Absence of or ineffective *stunning* may result in animals being released from the *restraint*, shackled, and bled and/or further processed while they are still conscious or have the potential to recover consciousness.

2. Animal-based and other measures

The main animal-based measure is the blood flow (rate and duration). For animal-based and other measures of return of consciousness after *stunning*, see Article 7.5.16.

In cases of bleeding without *stunning* the animal-based and other measures that indicate loss of consciousness include all the following: absence of muscle tone; absence of corneal or palpebral reflex; absence of rhythmic breathing. Unconsciousness should be reassessed until death is confirmed. In addition, cessation of bleeding after a continuous and rapid blood flow can be used as an indicator of death.

3. Recommendations

- a) Both carotid arteries or the blood vessels from which they arise should be severed;
- b) continuous and rapid blood flow should be assured after bleeding;
- c) death should be assured before further processing;

d) bleeding knives should be sharpened for each animal as necessary to fulfil recommendations a) and b).

In addition, the following should be considered:

Slaughter with stunning:

- a) the stun-to-stick interval should be short enough to ensure that the animal will not recover consciousness before it dies;
- b) unconsciousness should be confirmed before bleeding;
- c) animals that are stunned with a reversible method should be bled without delay to avoid them regaining consciousness during bleeding.

Slaughter without stunning:

- a) bleeding should be carried out by a single incision; any second intervention should be recorded and analysed to improve procedures;
- b) further processing may only be carried out when the death of the animal has been ascertained.

4. Species-specific recommendations

Bovines are at risk of prolonged bleed out times and regaining consciousness as the bilateral vertebral arteries are not cut during a neck cut. The vertebral arteries will continue to provide blood to the brain. Furthermore, any occlusion of the cut major arteries will slow exsanguination. Therefore, bleeding with a cut of the brachiocephalic trunk should be preferred in bovines.

Article 7.5.21.

Slaughter of pregnant free-moving animals

1. Animal welfare concerns

Fetuses in the uterus are considered not to achieve consciousness. However, if removed from the uterus the fetus may perceive *pain* or other negative effects.

2. Animal-based and other measures

Signs of consciousness in the neonate after removal from the uterus, such as breathing.

3. Recommendations

Under WOAH recommendations (Chapter 7.3. 'Animal transport by land'), pregnant animals that would be in the final 10% of their gestation period at the planned time of *unloading* at the *slaughterhouse/abattoir* should be neither transported nor slaughtered. If such an event occurs, an *animal handler* should ensure that pregnant females are handled separately.

The fetus should be left undisturbed *in utero* for at least 30 minutes after the death of the dam. The uterus could be removed as a whole, clamped and kept intact such that there is no possibility for the fetus to breathe.

In cases where the fetus is removed before 30 minutes has elapsed *euthanasia* should be carried out immediately.

Article 7.5.22.

Emergency killing of free-moving animals

This article addresses animals that show signs of severe *pain* or other types of severe suffering before being unloaded or within the *slaughterhouse/abattoir*. These animals may correspond to animals unfit to travel as listed in Article 7.3.7. Principles described below should be described in the emergency plan and may also apply to animals that are not suitable for *slaughter* for commercial reasons, even if they do not present signs of *distress*, *pain* or suffering.

1. Animal welfare concerns

Some animals can arrive at *slaughterhouses/abattoirs* with injuries or severe illnesses that can cause *distress* and *pain* and suffering.

2. Animal-based and other measures

Animals requiring emergency *killing* are unable to walk independently or present severe injuries such as fractures, large open wounds, or prolapses. They may also present clinical signs of serious illness or being in a state of

extreme weakness. New-born animals or animals that gave birth within the last 48 hours may also belong to this category.

3. Recommendations

Animals should not be moved unless it can be done without causing *distress, pain* or suffering.

Animal handlers should euthanise the animal as soon as possible.

Emergency killing should be systematically recorded and analysed in order to improve procedures and prevent recurrences.

Article 7.5.23.

Methods, procedures or practices that should not be used for free-moving animals

- 1) The following practices for handling animals should not be used under any circumstances:
 - a) crushing, twisting or breaking tails of animals;
 - b) applying pressure using an injurious object or applying an irritant substance to any part of an animal;
 - c) hitting animals with instruments such as large sticks, sticks with sharp ends, piping, stones, fencing wire or leather belts;
 - d) kicking, throwing or dropping animals;
 - e) grasping, lifting or dragging animals only by body parts such as their tail, head, horns, ears, limbs, wool or hair;
 - f) dragging animals by any body part, by any means, including chains, ropes or by hand;
 - g) forcing animals to walk over other animals;
 - h) interfering with any sensitive area (e.g. eyes, mouth, ears, anogenital region, udder or belly).
- 2) The following practices for restraining conscious animals are unacceptable and should not be used under any circumstances:
 - a) mechanical clamping of the legs or feet of the animals as the sole method of *restraint*, including tying limbs together or lifting one or more limbs off the ground;
 - b) breaking legs, cutting leg tendons or blinding animals;
 - c) severing the spinal cord, by using for example a puntilla or dagger;
 - d) applying electrical current that does not span the brain;
 - e) suspending or hoisting them by the feet or legs;
 - f) severing brain stem by piercing through the eye socket or skull bone;
 - g) forcing animals to sit or lay down by one or more handlers jumping on and lying across the animal's back;
 - h) trip floor boxes that are designed to make animals fall.
- 3) Breaking the neck while the animal is still conscious during bleeding is also an unacceptable practice.

Article 7.5.24.

Arrival of animals in containers

On arrival at the *slaughterhouse/abattoir*, animals would already have been exposed to *hazards* that may have negative impacts on their welfare. Any previous *hazards* will have a cumulative effect that may impair the welfare of the animals throughout the *slaughter* process. Therefore, animals should be transported to the *slaughterhouse/abattoir* in a manner that minimises adverse animal health and welfare outcomes, and in accordance with Chapters 7.2. and 7.3.

1. Animal welfare concerns

Animals in *containers* have smaller space allowances than on farm, undergo water and *feed* deprivation, may have suffered from injury and may be exposed to thermal stress due to adverse weather conditions and stress from social disturbance, noise, *vehicle* vibration and motion. In addition, *vehicles* may have insufficient ventilation. Delays in *unloading containers* will prolong or exacerbate the impact of these *hazards*. Under these circumstances, injured or sick animals requiring urgent attention will not be identified and therefore the duration of their suffering will be prolonged.

2. Animal-based and other measures

It can be difficult to assess animal-based measures while animals are in the *containers* and especially when the *containers* are on the *vehicle* or when many *containers* are stacked on top of each other. Some measures that may be assessed include animals with injuries, or those that are sick or have died. Panting, reddening of the ears (heat stress in rabbits), shivering and huddling may indicate thermal stress. In rabbits drooling and licking may indicate prolonged thirst.

Time from arrival to *unloading* and *slaughter*, the environmental temperature and humidity (e.g. ambient, inside the *vehicle*) can be used to establish relevant thresholds for corrective action.

3. Recommendations

Animals should be slaughtered as soon as they arrive at the *slaughterhouse/abattoir*. If not possible, *containers* should be unloaded, or *vehicles* should be placed in *lairage* or in sheltered and adequately ventilated area, promptly on arrival. This is facilitated by scheduling the arrival of the animals at the *slaughterhouse/abattoir* to ensure that there are sufficient personnel and adequate space in the *lairage* area. Time at *lairage* should be kept to a minimum.

Consignments of animals assessed to be at greater risk of compromised *animal welfare* (e.g. from long journeys, prolonged lairage, end-of-lay hens) should be unloaded first or should be considered for prioritised *slaughter*. When no available space is immediately available, creating space should be a priority. Provisions should be made to provide shelter, shade, cooling or heating systems or additional ventilation during waiting periods, or animals should be transported to an alternative nearby location where such provisions are available.

4. Species-specific recommendations

Birds may get trapped or their wings or claws may get caught in the fixtures, mesh or holes in poorly designed, constructed or maintained transport systems. Similarly, rabbits may trap their paws in the fixtures, mesh or holes in poorly designed, constructed or maintained transport systems. Under these situations, operators *unloading* birds or rabbits should ensure gentle release of trapped animals.

Article 7.5.25.

Moving of animals in containers

This article addresses the handling of animals in *containers* during *unloading* and *lairage*, and into the *killing* area.

1. Animal welfare concerns

During *unloading* and moving *containers*, animals can be exposed to *pain*, stress and fear due to tilting, dropping or shaking of the *containers*.

During *unloading* and moving *containers*, animals can be exposed to adverse weather conditions and experience *pain* and *distress*.

2. Animal-based and other measures

- a) Animals with broken limbs or dislocated joints;
- b) animals that collide with facility structures;
- c) animal vocalisation indicative of *distress*;
- d) body parts (i.e. wings, limbs, feet, paws or heads) stuck between *containers*;
- e) animals injured by sharp projections inside *containers*.

3. Recommendations

Containers in which animals are transported should be handled with care, moved slowly, and should not be thrown, dropped or knocked over. Where possible, they should be horizontal while being loaded or unloaded mechanically and stacked to ensure ventilation and prevent animals piling on one another. In any case, *containers* should be moved and stored in an upright position as indicated by specific marks.

Animals delivered in *containers* with perforated or flexible bottoms should be unloaded with particular care to avoid injury by crushing or jamming of body parts.

Animals that are injured, jammed or sick require immediate action and, when necessary, should be taken from the *containers* and euthanised without delay. Refer to Article 7.5.31.

Staff should routinely inspect the *containers* and remove the broken *containers* that should not be re-used.

Article 7.5.26.

Lairage of animals in containers

1. Animal welfare concerns

Animals may be exposed to several *hazards* to *animal welfare* during *lairage* including:

- a) feed and water deprivation leading to prolonged hunger and thirst;
- b) poor ventilation;
- c) absence of protection against adverse weather conditions leading to thermal stress;
- d) sudden or excessive noises, including from personnel, leading to fear;
- e) insufficient space to lie down and move freely leading to fatigue and aggressive behaviour;
- f) not being inspected or accessible for emergency *killing* when necessary.

2. Animal-based and other measures

- a) Thermal stress (e.g. panting, shivering, huddling behaviour, reddening of the ears);
- b) space allowance;
- c) excessive soiling with faeces;
- d) injuries (e.g. splay leg, open wounds, fractures, dislocations);
- e) sick or dead animals.

3. Recommendations

Animals should be slaughtered upon arrival at the *slaughterhouse/abattoir*.

Staff should routinely inspect and monitor *containers* while in the *lairage* to observe animals for signs of *distress*, fear and *pain* and take appropriate corrective action to address any concerns.

The *lairage* should provide animals with protection against adverse weather conditions.

Animals should be protected from sudden and excessive noise (e.g. ventilation fans, alarms, or other indoor or outdoor equipment).

Article 7.5.27.

Unloading animals from containers before stunning

1. Animal welfare concerns

Animals are removed manually or mechanically by tilting the transport *containers*.

When the *containers* with animals are manually or mechanically emptied by tipping, animals fall on to conveyors. Dumping, piling up and shock may occur, especially for the last animals, which are often removed by manual or mechanical shaking of the *containers*.

Other *hazards* include:

- a) narrow openings or doors of the *containers*;
- b) *containers* placed too far away from the place of shackling or *stunning*;
- c) inappropriate handling and removal of animals from *containers*;
- d) incorrect design of manual or mechanical tipping equipment that cause animals to fall from a height;
- e) conveyor belts that are running too fast or too slowly or are not properly aligned resulting in piling or injury.

2. Animal-based and other measures

- a) Falling;
- b) struggling, including wing flapping;
- c) escape attempts;
- d) animal vocalisation indicative of *distress*;
- e) injuries, dislocations, fractures;
- f) piling up of animals.

3. Recommendations

Removal of animals from *containers* in a way that causes *pain*, e.g. by one leg, wings, neck or ears, should be avoided.

Animals should be removed from *containers* by the body or by both legs using both hands and one animal at a time. Animals should not be grabbed and lifted by one leg, the ears, wings or fur and they should not be thrown, swung or dropped.

Animals should not be mistreated in the process of *unloading* and shackling prior to *stunning*.

Modular systems that involve tipping of live animals are not conducive to maintaining good *animal welfare*. These systems, when used, should have an incorporated mechanism to facilitate animals sliding out of the transport system, rather than being dropped or dumped on top of each other.

It should be ensured that every animal is removed from the *containers*.

Article 7.5.28.

Restraint for stunning animals from containers

1. Animal welfare concerns

The purpose of *restraint* is to facilitate the correct application of the *stunning* and bleeding procedures. Incorrect *restraint* or handling cause *distress*, fear and *pain* and may lead to ineffective *stunning* and bleeding.

Other *hazards* include:

- a) Inversion can provoke compression of the heart and lungs or air sacs by the viscera and might compromise breathing and cardiac activity. This will cause *distress*, fear and *pain* in conscious birds and rabbits.
- b) Shackling animals upside down by inserting both legs into shackles. During shackling, the animals are also subjected to compression of their legs and wing flapping by their neighbour(s), leading to *distress*, *pain* and fear.
- c) Inappropriate shackling (e.g. shackles are too narrow or too wide, animals are shackled by one leg, or when one animal is shackled on two different adjacent shackles) leads to *distress*, *pain* and fear. Line speed, without a concomitant increase in workforce, can contribute to poor shackling outcomes.
- d) Drops, curves and inclination of the shackle line or high speed of the shackle line create fear and possible *pain* due to the sudden changes in position as well as increased effects of inversion.

2. Animal-based and other measures

- a) Wing flapping for birds;
- b) escape attempts;
- c) animal vocalisation indicative of *distress*;
- d) injuries;
- e) respiratory distress.

3. Recommendations

Stunning methods that avoid handling, shackling and inversion of conscious animals should always be preferred.

Where this is not possible, animals should be handled and restrained to minimise struggling or attempts to escape.

Shackle lines should be constructed and maintained so they do not jolt animals because this is likely to stimulate wing flapping or struggling. Shackle line speeds should be optimised so that they do not cause the animals to struggle. Shackling duration prior to *stunning* should be kept to a minimum.

To minimise wing flapping or struggling, breast support should be provided to the birds from the shackling point up to the stunner.

Inappropriate shackling can be prevented by the appropriate training of relevant staff, by rotating the staff to avoid boredom and fatigue and by using shackles that are appropriate and adjustable for the species and size of the animals.

4. Species-specific recommendations

Rabbits:

Restraining for head-only electrical stunning is manual and involves holding the rabbit with one hand supporting its belly, and the other hand guiding the head into the *stunning* tongs or electrodes.

Rabbits should not be lifted or carried by the ears, head, hair or, one leg, or by the skin at the back of the neck without supporting the body.

Poultry:

Shackling of heavy birds such as parent flocks, turkeys or birds that are more susceptible to fractures (e.g. end-of-lay hens) should only be operated by specifically trained staff with adequate equipment in a manner to minimise *distress, fear and pain*.

Poultry should not be lifted or carried by the head, neck, wings or one leg.

Article 7.5.29.

Head-only electrical stunning of animals in containers

1. Animal welfare concerns

Electrical *stunning* involves application of an electric current across the brain of sufficient magnitude to induce immediate unconsciousness. The main *hazards* preventing effective electrical *stunning* are: incorrect electrode placement, poor contact, dirty or corroded electrode, electrical arcing, high contact resistance caused by hair and feathers or dirt on the animal surface and inappropriate electrical parameters (low voltage/current or high frequency).

2. Animal-based and other measures

Multiple indicators should be used to determine whether a stun is effective and the animal is unconscious.

Animal-based measures of an effective stun are: tonic-clonic seizures; apnoea; absence of corneal or palpebral reflex.

Animal-based measures of ineffective stun or recovery of consciousness are: vocalisation; spontaneous blinking; righting reflex; presence of corneal or palpebral reflex; rhythmic breathing; spontaneous swallowing and head shaking.

3. Recommendations

Animals should be stunned as soon as they are restrained.

In the case of ineffective *stunning* or recovery, animals should be re-stunned using a backup system or be killed immediately. Ineffective *stunning* or return to consciousness should be systematically recorded and the cause of the failure identified and rectified.

Stunning equipment should be used, cleaned, maintained and stored following the manufacturer's recommendations.

Constant current stunners ensure that the minimum current is provided to the animal independently from individual impedance and should always be preferred to constant voltage stunners.

Regular calibration of the equipment according to the manufacturer's procedure is recommended. Effectiveness of the *stunning* should be monitored regularly.

Slaughterhouses/abattoirs should have standard operating procedures that define key operating parameters and follow the manufacturer's recommendations for *stunning*, such as:

- shape, size and placement of the electrodes;
- contact between electrode and head;
- electrical parameters (current intensity [A], waveform type [AC and DC], voltage [V] and frequency [Hz]);
- visual or auditory warning system to alert the operator to proper or improper function such as a device that monitors and displays voltage and applied current.

4. Species-specific recommendations

Effective electrical parameters should be determined based on scientific data on the welfare outcomes for different types of animals in accordance with point 5 of Article 7.1.4.

For head-only *stunning*, minimum parameters are recommended for the following species:

- 240 mA for hens and broiler chicken,

- 400 mA for turkeys,
- 600 mA for geese and ducks,
- 140 mA for rabbits (100V of a 50 Hz sine wave AC).

Article 7.5.30.

Electrical water-bath stunning for poultry

1. Animal welfare concerns

In electrical water-bath *stunning* poultry are inverted and shackled by the legs from a shackle line. The bird's head has direct contact with the water-bath, and an electric current is passed from the water through the bird to the leg shackle. *Hazards* that may prevent effective electrical *stunning* are: lack of contact between head and water, differences in individual bird resistance, improper system grounding, pre-stun shocks due to wings contacting water before the head, and the use of inappropriate electrical parameters (low voltage/current or high frequency).

Hazards that increase the likelihood of animals experiencing pre-stun shocks are: poor handling at shackling, inappropriate line speed, physical contact between birds, incorrect angle of entry ramp, entry ramp wetted by charged water, incorrect water-bath height, and shallow immersion.

Factors affecting individual bird resistance include the resistance between the shackle and the leg (leg/shackle interface), shackling on top of a severed foot, shackling by one leg, poor shackle position, incorrect shackle size, dry shackles, scale on the shackle surface, and keratinised skin on the legs (e.g. older birds).

Where insufficient electrical *stunning* parameters are used, conscious animals are at risk of being electro-immobilised or paralysed causing *pain* and suffering.

2. Animal-based and other measures

Multiple indicators should be used to determine whether a stun is effective and the animal is unconscious. Animal-based measures of an effective stun are: tonic-clonic seizures; apnoea; and absence of corneal or palpebral reflex.

Animal-based measures of ineffective stun or recovery of consciousness are: vocalisation; spontaneous blinking; righting reflex; presence of corneal or palpebral reflex; rhythmic breathing; spontaneous swallowing; and head shaking.

3. Recommendations

The height of the water-bath stunner should be adjusted so that the birds' heads are completely immersed in the water. Avoid distractions such as people walking under the birds because this can cause birds to pull up.

Personnel should watch for short or stunted birds as these birds will not be able to make contact with the water and will not be stunned. These birds should be stunned in the slaughter line (e.g. penetrative captive bolt) or removed and euthanised.

The rail of the shackle line should run smoothly. Sudden movement such as jolts, drops or sharp curves in the line may cause birds to flap and avoid the stunner.

To minimise any disturbance to birds during shackling, where shackles are wet to improve conductivity, they should be wetted only prior to birds' legs being placed in them.

Pre-stun shocks should be avoided and can be reduced by having a smooth shackle line and entry to the water-bath and by adjusting the water level of the bath to minimise overflow.

In the case of ineffective *stunning* or recovery, animals should be re-stunned using a backup system or be killed immediately. Ineffective *stunning* or return to consciousness should be systematically recorded and the cause of the failure identified and rectified.

Stunning equipment should be used, cleaned, maintained and stored following the manufacturer's recommendations.

Constant current stunners should be preferred to constant voltage stunners because the former ensure that the minimum current is provided to the animals independently from their impedance.

Regular calibration of the equipment according to the manufacturer's procedure is recommended. Effectiveness of the *stunning* should be monitored regularly.

Slaughterhouses/abattoirs should have standard operating procedures that define key operating parameters or follow the manufacturer's recommendations for *stunning*, such as:

- water level;
- number of birds in the water-bath;

- contact between water and head, as well as between the legs and the leg shackle;
- electrical parameters (current intensity [A], waveform type [AC and DC], voltage [V] and frequency [Hz]);
- visual or auditory warning system to alert the operator to proper or improper function, such as a device that monitors and displays voltage and applied current.

Ensure an optimum combination of voltage and frequency during electrical water-bath *stunning* practices, to maximise the effectiveness of *stunning*.

Hazards to animal welfare such as inversion of conscious birds, pre-stun shocks, and variability in electrical current delivered to each bird are inherent risks of electrical water-bath *stunning*. Thus, alternative *stunning* systems which avoid these associated *hazards* should be preferred.

4. Species-specific recommendations

Effective electrical parameters should be based on scientific evidence for different species of birds.

Effective electrical parameters should be based on scientific data with field evidence on the welfare outcomes for different types and conditions of animals in accordance with point 5 of Article 7.1.4.

For water-bath *stunning* depending on the frequency, minimum parameters are recommended for the following species:

- For frequency below 200 Hz:
 - 100 mA for chicken,
 - 250 mA for turkeys,
 - 130 mA for ducks and geese,
 - 45 mA for quails.
- For frequency from 200 to 400 Hz:
 - 150 mA for chicken,
 - 400 mA for turkeys.
- For frequency from 400-600 Hz:
 - 200 mA for chicken,
 - 400 mA for turkeys.

Birds should receive the current for at least 4 seconds.

Ducks, geese and quails should not be stunned at frequencies higher than 200 Hz [under study].

Chicken and turkeys should not be stunned at frequencies higher than 600 Hz [under study].

Article 7.5.31.

Mechanical stunning of animals arriving in containers

The mechanical methods described here are penetrative and non-penetrative captive bolt systems. Effective mechanical *stunning* requires a severe and immediate damage to the brain caused by the application of mechanical force. For that reason, cervical dislocation and decapitation cannot be considered as *stunning* methods.

1. Animal welfare concerns

Mechanical methods require precision and often physical strength to restrain and stun the animals. Common causes of the misapplication of these methods are a lack of proper skill and operator fatigue.

Penetrative and non-penetrative captive bolt:

An incorrect shooting position or incorrect captive bolt parameters (not hitting the skull with sufficient force) will mis-stun the animal, leaving it conscious and leading to serious wounds and consequently *distress*, fear and *pain*.

Improper captive bolt parameters may be linked to: the use of an inappropriate gun (bolt diameter); inappropriate cartridges; or an overheated or badly maintained gun.

2. Animal-based and other measures

Penetrative and non-penetrative captive bolt:

Severe convulsions (wing flapping and leg kicking i.e. uncontrolled muscular movements) occur immediately after the mechanical *stunning* intervention. This is due to the loss of control of the brain over the spinal cord. Since mechanical *stunning* is applied to individual animals, its efficacy can be assessed immediately after the stun.

Animal-based measures of an effective stun are: the absence of corneal or palpebral reflex; apnoea; loss of posture; presence of tonic-clonic seizure.

Animal-based measures of ineffective stun or recovery of consciousness are: vocalisation; spontaneous blinking; righting reflex; presence of corneal reflex or palpebral reflex; rhythmic breathing.

3. Recommendations

Penetrative and non-penetrative captive bolt should only be used as backup or for small- throughput slaughtering as in small *slaughterhouses/abattoirs* or on-farm slaughter or for emergency *killing*.

Penetrative and non-penetrative captive bolt:

The captive bolt gun should be used, cleaned, maintained and stored following the manufacturer's recommendations.

The power of the cartridge, compressed air line pressure or spring should be appropriate for the species and size of birds. Cartridges should be kept dry and the gun regularly inspected and maintained.

Effectiveness of the *stunning* should be monitored.

Because it requires precision, this method should only be applied with proper restraint of the head of the animal. In addition, in the case of birds, they should be restrained in a bleeding cone to contain wing flapping.

The captive bolt should be pointing perpendicularly on the parietal bones of birds.

Placement is different for birds with and without combs:

Without comb:

The placement of the device should be directly on the midline of the skull and at the highest/widest point of the head with the captive bolt aimed directly down towards the brain.

With comb:

The placement of the device should be directly behind the comb and on the midline of the skull with the captive bolt aimed directly down towards the brain of the bird.

Rabbits:

The device should be placed in the centre of the forehead, with the barrel in front of the ears and behind the eyes. The device should be discharged twice in rapid succession at the pressure recommended for the age and size of the rabbit.

There should be a sufficient number of bolt guns such that they are allowed to cool between operations.

4. Species-specific recommendations

Turkeys, ducks, geese and chickens also may be properly stunned by non-penetrative captive bolt.

Article 7.5.32.

Controlled atmosphere stunning for animals in containers

Animals may be exposed to controlled atmosphere *stunning* methods either directly in crates or after being unloaded on a conveyor belt. Animals are not subject to restraint. Controlled atmosphere *stunning* includes exposure to carbon dioxide, inert gases, mixtures of carbon dioxide with inert gases or low atmosphere pressure (LAPS).

1. Animal welfare concerns

A common concern of all controlled atmosphere *stunning* methods is the risk of insufficient exposure of animals to the modified atmosphere, which can result in animals recovering consciousness before or during bleeding and causing respiratory distress, fear and *pain*. The insufficient exposure to the modified atmosphere may be due to either too short exposure time, a too low concentration of gas, too high stocking density or a combination of these variables.

These variables are critical because animals being stunned in large groups need special attention to ensure unconsciousness prior to neck cutting. For this reason, the duration of unconsciousness induced needs to be

longer than required by other *stunning* methods to ensure that animals do not recover consciousness prior to being killed.

Furthermore, *hazards* causing increased *distress* during induction of unconsciousness are irritant or aversive gas mixtures, low gas temperature and humidity. In the case of exposure to carbon dioxide, there is a risk that animals are exposed to too high a concentration of this gas, leading to *pain* and *distress*. Exposure of conscious animals to more than 40% carbon dioxide (CO₂) will cause painful stimulation of the nasal mucosa and aversive reactions.

Low atmospheric pressure systems (LAPS) should not be confused with decompression: LAPS utilise a slow removal of air where animals exhibit minimal to no aversive behaviours. Decompression is a fast process that is associated with *pain* and respiratory distress.

2. Animal-based and other measures

It may be difficult to monitor the effectiveness of controlled atmosphere *stunning* because of limited access to observe animals during the *stunning* process. All chamber-type systems should have either windows or video cameras so that problems with induction can be observed. If problems are observed, there is a need to take immediate corrective measures that could alleviate the suffering of the animals concerned.

Therefore, it is essential that the unconsciousness of animals is confirmed at the end of the exposure to the controlled atmosphere.

Unconsciousness can be confirmed by apnoea, absence of corneal or palpebral reflex, dilated pupils and relaxed carcass.

Since animal-based measures are difficult to monitor, resource-based measures should also be used such as monitoring of gas concentration(s), exposure time, gas displacement rate, and rate of air removal (for LAPS).

3. Recommendations

Conscious animals should not be exposed to carbon dioxide concentrations exceeding 40%. Any compressed gas should also be vaporised prior to administration and humidified at room temperature to prevent the risk of animals experiencing thermal shock.

The duration of exposure and the gas concentration should be designed and implemented in such a way that all animals are rendered unconscious until death.

Gas concentrations and exposure time, temperature and humidity should be monitored continuously at the level of the animal inside the chamber.

Stunning systems should have visual and auditory warning system to alert the operator to improper function, such as inappropriate gas concentration or decompression rate.

In the case of low atmosphere pressure *stunning* the rate of air removal should be monitored continuously. The decompression rate should not be greater than or equivalent to a reduction in pressure from standard sea level atmospheric pressure (760 Torr) to 250 Torr in not less than 50 s. During the second phase, a minimum atmospheric pressure of 160 Torr should be reached within the following 210 s.

In the case of ineffective *stunning* or recovery, animals should be re-stunned immediately using a backup system. Ineffective *stunning* or return to consciousness should be systematically recorded and the cause of the failure identified and rectified.

4. Species-specific recommendations

The use of Low Atmosphere Pressure *stunning* should be restricted to broilers and newly hatched chicks and therefore should not be used for other animals until further information is available.

Article 7.5.33.

Bleeding of animals arriving in containers

1. Animal welfare concerns

The most common *animal welfare* concern at the time of bleeding is recovery of consciousness due to ineffective *stunning* practices or an ineffective bleeding. There are many factors that determine the efficacy of a *stunning*

procedure such as type of animal, animal weight, voltage, frequency, impedance and duration of *stunning* or gas (mixture) concentration and exposure.

Improper *stunning* practice leads to the risk of animals experiencing *distress*, fear and *pain*, during *slaughter* if they regain consciousness. There is an additional risk of injury to bones, wings and joints due to struggling if animals regain consciousness.

Bleeding without prior *stunning* causes animal suffering because the incision to sever blood vessels results in substantial tissue damage in areas well supplied with nociceptors. The activation of these nociceptors causes the animal to experience *pain*. Loss of consciousness due to bleeding is not immediate and there is a period during which the animals experience *distress*, fear and *pain*.

In case of bleeding without *stunning*, more cases of injury, bruising, haemorrhage and broken body parts are expected to occur due to wing flapping and violent muscular contractions.

Bleeding duration also plays an integral part in processing, where animals that have not undergone a sufficient bleeding period, may still be alive upon reaching the scalding tank. Live and conscious birds, if not removed prior to scalding, will then be subjected to additional *pain* from the heat inside the scalding tank and death by drowning.

2. Animal-based and other measures

The main animal-based measure is the blood flow (rate and duration). For animal-based and other measures of return of consciousness after *stunning* (see Article 7.5.29. to Article 7.5.32.).

One of the most common parameters in determining bleeding efficiency is the percentage of blood loss, where the amount of blood loss is estimated from the difference between pre-slaughter weight and post-slaughter weight.

For birds, the presence of 'red-skin' carcasses may be the result of ineffective *killing* with live birds entering the scalding tank.

3. Recommendations

The *slaughterhouse/abattoir* operators should ensure that:

- both carotid arteries are severed;
- qualified personnel take random samples of animals after the end of *stunning* and before bleeding to ensure animals are not showing signs of consciousness;
- immediately after bleeding, qualified personnel check that the jugular veins, carotid arteries and trachea were cut thoroughly, guaranteeing an efficient bleeding process.

Decapitation should be applied as bleeding method only to unconscious animals.

4. Species-specific recommendations

- For chicken, the slaughter line speed should allow a minimum bleeding period of 90 seconds so that there is minimum blood loss of 60% before reaching the scalding tank or other potentially painful operation;
- qualified personnel should check that at the bleeding line, especially before scalding, birds are completely dead. Birds that are still alive need to be euthanised immediately and removed from shackle.

Article 7.5.34.

Emergency killing of animals arriving in containers

This article addresses animals that show signs of severe *distress* or *pain* before being unloaded or within the *slaughterhouse/abattoir*. These animals may correspond to animals unfit to travel as listed in Article 7.3.7. Principles described may also apply to animals that are not suitable for *slaughter* for commercial reasons, even if they do not present signs of *pain* or suffering.

1. Animal welfare concerns

Some animals can arrive at *slaughterhouses/abattoirs* with injuries or severe illnesses that can cause undue *distress*, *pain* suffering.

2. Animal-based and other measures

Animals requiring emergency *killing* are those with severe injuries such as fractures, bone dislocations, and large open wounds.

They may also present clinical signs of serious illness or be in a state of extreme weakness.

3. Recommendations

Animal handlers should euthanise the animals as soon as they are identified at arrival, during lairage or at the time of shackling.

Emergency killing should be systematically recorded and analysed to improve procedures and prevent recurrences.

Article 7.5.35.

Methods, procedures or practices that should not be used for animals arriving in containers

- 1) The following practices for handling animals should not be used under any circumstances:
 - a) applying pressure using an injurious object or applying an irritant substance to any part of the body of an animal;
 - b) hitting animals including with instruments such as sticks, notably sticks with sharp ends, piping, stones, fencing wire or leather belts;
 - c) kicking, throwing or dropping animals;
 - d) stepping on or crushing animals;
 - e) grasping, lifting or dragging animals only by body parts such as their tail, head, ears, limbs, hair or feathers.
- 2) The following practices for restraining animals should not be used:
 - a) mechanical clamping of the legs or feet of the animals as the sole method of *restraint*;
 - b) breaking legs, cutting leg tendons or blinding animals;
 - c) applying electrical current that does not span the brain;
 - d) severing the brain stem by piercing through the eye socket or skull bone;
 - e) crushing the neck.

In birds, electro-immobilisation for neck-cutting or preventing wing flapping during bleeding, or the method of brain piercing through the skull without prior *stunning* should not be used under any circumstances.

NB: FIRST ADOPTED IN 2005; MOST RECENT UPDATE ADOPTED IN 2024.

CHAPTER 7.6.

KILLING OF ANIMALS FOR DISEASE CONTROL PURPOSES

Article 7.6.1.

General principles

These recommendations are based on the premise that a decision to kill the animals has been made, and address the need to ensure the welfare of the animals until they are dead.

- 1) All personnel involved in the humane *killing* of animals should have the relevant skills and competencies. Competence may be gained through formal training and/or practical experience.
- 2) As necessary, operational procedures should be adapted to the specific circumstances operating on the premises and should address, apart from *animal welfare*, aesthetics of the method of *euthanasia*, cost of the method, operator safety, *biosecurity* and environmental aspects.
- 3) Following the decision to kill the animals, *killing* should be carried out as quickly as possible, and normal husbandry should be maintained until the animals are killed.
- 4) The handling and movement of animals should be minimised and when done, it should be carried out in accordance with the recommendations described below.
- 5) Animal *restraint* should be sufficient to facilitate effective *killing*, and in accordance with *animal welfare* and operator safety requirements; when *restraint* is required, *killing* should follow with minimal delay.
- 6) When animals are killed for disease control purposes, methods used should result in immediate death or immediate loss of consciousness lasting until death; when loss of consciousness is not immediate, induction of unconsciousness should be non-aversive or the least aversive possible and should not cause avoidable anxiety, *pain*, *distress* or suffering in animals.
- 7) For *animal welfare* considerations, young animals should be killed before older animals; for *biosecurity* considerations, infected animals should be killed first, followed by in-contact animals, and then the remaining animals.
- 8) There should be continuous monitoring of the procedures by the *Competent Authorities* to ensure they are consistently effective with regard to *animal welfare*, operator safety and *biosecurity*.
- 9) When the operational procedures are concluded, there should be a written report describing the practices adopted and their effect on *animal welfare*, operator safety and *biosecurity*.
- 10) These general principles should also apply when animals need to be killed for other purposes such as after natural disasters or for culling animal populations.

Article 7.6.2.

Organisational structure

Disease control contingency plans should be in place at a national level and should contain details of management structure, disease control strategies and operational procedures; *animal welfare* considerations should be addressed within these disease control contingency plans. The plans should also include a strategy to ensure that an adequate number of personnel competent in the humane *killing* of animals is available. Local level plans should be based on national plans and be informed by local knowledge.

Disease control contingency plans should address the *animal welfare* issues that may result from animal movement controls.

The operational activities should be led by an *official Veterinarian* who has the authority to appoint the personnel in the specialist teams and ensure that they adhere to the required *animal welfare* and *biosecurity* standards. When appointing the personnel, he/she should ensure that the personnel involved have the required competencies.

The *Official Veterinarian* should be responsible for all activities across one or more affected premises and should be supported by coordinators for planning (including communications), operations and logistics to facilitate efficient operations.

The *Official Veterinarian* should provide overall guidance to personnel and logistic support for operations on all affected premises to ensure consistency in adherence to the WOAH *animal welfare* and animal health recommendations.

A specialist team, led by a team leader answerable to the *official Veterinarian*, should be deployed to work on each affected premises. The team should consist of personnel with the competencies to conduct all required operations; in some situations, personnel may be required to fulfil more than one function. Each team should contain a *veterinarian* or have access to veterinary advice at all times.

In considering the *animal welfare* issues associated with *killing* animals, the key personnel, their responsibilities and competencies required are described in Article 7.6.3.

Article 7.6.3.

Responsibilities and competencies of the specialist team

1. Team leader

a) Responsibilities

- i) plan overall operations on affected premises;
- ii) determine and address requirements for *animal welfare*, operator safety and *biosecurity*;
- iii) organise, brief and manage team of people to facilitate humane *killing* of the relevant animals on the premises in accordance with national regulations and these recommendations;
- iv) determine logistics required;
- v) monitor operations to ensure *animal welfare*, operator safety and *biosecurity* requirements are met;
- vi) report upwards on progress and problems;
- vii) provide a written report at the conclusion of the *killing*, describing the practices adopted and their effect on the *animal welfare*, operator safety and *biosecurity* outcomes.

b) Competencies

- i) appreciation of normal animal husbandry practices;
- ii) appreciation of *animal welfare* and the underpinning behavioural, anatomical and physiological processes involved in the *killing* process;
- iii) skills to manage all activities on premises and deliver outcomes on time;
- iv) awareness of psychological effects on farmer, team members and general public;
- v) effective communication skills;
- vi) appreciation of the environmental impacts caused by their operation.

2. Veterinarian

a) Responsibilities

- i) determine and supervise the implementation of the most appropriate *killing* method to ensure that animals are killed without avoidable *pain* and *distress*;
- ii) determine and implement the additional requirements for *animal welfare*, including the order of *killing*;
- iii) ensure that confirmation of the death of the animals is carried out by competent persons at appropriate times after the *killing* procedure;
- iv) minimise the risk of disease spread within and from the premises through the supervision of *biosecurity* procedures;
- v) continuously monitor *animal welfare* and *biosecurity* procedures;
- vi) in cooperation with the leader, prepare a written report at the conclusion of the *killing*, describing the practices adopted and their effect on *animal welfare*.

b) Competencies

- i) ability to assess *animal welfare*, especially the effectiveness of *stunning* and *killing* and to correct any deficiencies;
- ii) ability to assess *biosecurity* risks.

3. Animal handlers

a) Responsibilities

- i) review on-site facilities in terms of their appropriateness;
- ii) design and construct temporary animal handling facilities, when required;
- iii) move and restrain animals;
- iv) continuously monitor *animal welfare* and *biosecurity* procedures.

b) Competencies

- i) animal handling in emergency situations and in close confinement is required;
- ii) an appreciation of *biosecurity* and containment principles.

4. Animal killing personnel

a) Responsibilities

Humane *killing* of the animals through effective *stunning* and *killing* should be ensured.

b) Competencies

- i) when required by regulations, licensed to use necessary equipment;
- ii) competent to use and maintain relevant equipment;
- iii) competent to use techniques for the species involved;
- iv) competent to assess effective *stunning* and *killing*.

5. Carcass disposal personnel

a) Responsibilities

An efficient carcass disposal (to ensure *killing* operations are not hindered) should be ensured.

b) Competencies

The personnel should be competent to use and maintain available equipment and apply techniques for the species involved.

6. Farmer/owner/manager

a) Responsibilities

- i) assist when requested.

b) Competencies

- i) specific knowledge of his/her animals and their environment.

Article 7.6.4.

Considerations in planning the humane killing of animals

Many activities will need to be conducted on affected premises, including the humane *killing* of animals. The team leader should develop a plan for humanely *killing* animals on the premises which should include consideration of:

- 1) minimising handling and movement of animals;
- 2) *killing* the animals on the affected premises; however, there may be circumstances where the animals may need to be moved to another location for *killing*; when the *killing* is conducted at a *slaughterhouse/abattoir*, the recommendations in Chapter 7.5. should be followed;
- 3) the species, number, age and size of animals to be killed, and the order of *killing* them;
- 4) methods of *killing* the animals, and their cost;
- 5) housing, husbandry, location of the animals as well as accessibility of the farm;
- 6) the availability and effectiveness of equipment needed for *killing* of the animals, as well as the time necessary to kill the required number of animals using such methods;
- 7) the facilities available on the premises that will assist with the *killing* including any additional facilities that may need to be brought on and then removed from the premises;
- 8) *biosecurity* and environmental issues;
- 9) the health and safety of personnel conducting the *killing*;
- 10) any legal issues that may be involved, for example where restricted veterinary drugs or poisons may be used, or where the process may impact on the environment;

- 11) the presence of other nearby premises holding animals;
- 12) possibilities for removal, disposal and destruction of carcasses.

The plan should minimise the negative welfare impacts of the *killing* by taking into account the different phases of the procedures to be applied for *killing* (choice of the *killing* sites, *killing* methods, etc.) and the measures restricting the movements of the animals.

Competences and skills of the personnel handling and *killing* animals.

In designing a *killing* plan, it is essential that the method chosen be consistently reliable to ensure that all animals are humanely and quickly killed.

Article 7.6.5.

Table summarising killing methods described in Articles 7.6.6.-7.6.18.

The methods are described in the order of mechanical, electrical and gaseous, not in an order of desirability from an *animal welfare* viewpoint.

Species	Age range	Procedure	Restraint necessary	Animal welfare concerns with inappropriate application	Article reference
Cattle	all	free bullet	no	non-lethal wounding	Article 7.6.6.
	all except neonates	penetrating captive bolt - followed by pithing or bleeding	yes	ineffective stunning, non-lethal wounding, regaining of consciousness before death	Article 7.6.7.
	adults only	non-penetrating captive bolt, followed by bleeding	yes	ineffective stunning, regaining of consciousness before death	Article 7.6.8.
	calves only	electrical, two-stage application	yes	pain associated with cardiac arrest after ineffective stunning	Article 7.6.10.
	calves only	electrical, single application (method 1)	yes	ineffective stunning	Article 7.6.11.
	all	injection with barbiturates and other drugs	yes	non-lethal dose, pain associated with injection site	Article 7.6.15.
Sheep and goats	all	free bullet	no	non-lethal wounding	Article 7.6.6.
	all except neonates	penetrating captive bolt, followed by pithing or bleeding	yes	ineffective stunning, non-lethal wounding, regaining of consciousness before death	Article 7.6.7.
	all except neonates	non-penetrating captive bolt, followed by bleeding	yes	ineffective stunning, regaining of consciousness before death	Article 7.6.8.
	neonates	non-penetrating captive bolt	yes	non-lethal wounding	Article 7.6.8.
	all	electrical, two-stage application	yes	pain associated with cardiac arrest after ineffective stunning	Article 7.6.10.
	all	electrical, single application (method 1)	yes	ineffective stunning	Article 7.6.11.

Species	Age range	Procedure	Restraint necessary	Animal welfare concerns with inappropriate application	Article reference
Sheep and goats (contd)	neonates only	CO ₂ / air mixture	yes	slow induction of unconsciousness, aversiveness of induction	Article 7.6.12.
	neonates only	nitrogen or inert gas mixed with CO ₂	yes	slow induction of unconsciousness, aversiveness of induction	Article 7.6.13.
	neonates only	nitrogen or inert gases	yes	slow induction of unconsciousness	Article 7.6.14.
	all	injection of barbiturates and other drugs	yes	non-lethal dose, pain associated with injection site	Article 7.6.15.
Pigs	all	free bullet	no	non-lethal wounding	Article 7.6.6.
	all except neonates	penetrating captive bolt, followed by pithing or bleeding	yes	ineffective stunning, non-lethal wounding, regaining of consciousness before death	Article 7.6.7.
	neonates only	non-penetrating captive bolt	yes	non-lethal wounding	Article 7.6.8.
	all	electrical, two-stage application	yes	pain associated with cardiac arrest after ineffective stunning; design of the stunning tongs not appropriate for the small head or body of neonates	Article 7.6.10.
	all	electrical, single application (method 1)	yes	ineffective stunning	Article 7.6.11.
	neonates only	CO ₂ / air mixture	yes	slow induction of unconsciousness, aversiveness of induction	Article 7.6.12.
	neonates only	nitrogen or inert gas mixed with CO ₂	yes	slow induction of unconsciousness, aversiveness of induction	Article 7.6.13.
	neonates only	nitrogen or inert gases	yes	slow induction of unconsciousness	Article 7.6.14.
	all	injection with barbiturates and other	yes	non-lethal dose, pain associated with injection site	Article 7.6.15.
Poultry	adults only	penetrating and non-penetrating captive bolt	yes	ineffective stunning, non-lethal wounding, regaining of consciousness before death	Article 7.6.8.
	day-olds and eggs only	maceration	no	non-lethal wounding, non-immediacy	Article 7.6.9.
	adults only	electrical, single application (method 2)	yes	ineffective stunning	Article 7.6.11.
	adults only	electrical, single application, followed by killing (method 3)	yes	ineffective stunning; regaining of consciousness before death	Article 7.6.11.

Species	Age range	Procedure	Restraint necessary	Animal welfare concerns with inappropriate application	Article reference
Poultry (contd)	all	CO ₂ / air mixture Method 1 Method 2	yes no	slow induction of unconsciousness, aversiveness of induction	Article 7.6.12.
	all	nitrogen or inert gas mixed with CO ₂	yes	slow induction of unconsciousness, aversiveness of induction	Article 7.6.13.
	all	nitrogen or inert gases	yes	slow induction of unconsciousness	Article 7.6.14.
	all	injection of barbiturates and other drugs	yes	non-lethal dose, pain associated with injection site	Article 7.6.15.
	all	cervical dislocation	no		Point 1 of Article 7.6.17.
	all	decapitation	no		Point 2 of Article 7.6.17.
	adults only	addition of anaesthetics to feed or water, followed by an appropriate killing method	no	ineffective or slow induction of unconsciousness	Article 7.6.16.
Equids	all	free bullet	no	non-lethal wounding	Article 7.6.6.
	all, except neonates	penetrating captive bolt followed by pithing or bleeding	yes	ineffective stunning, non-lethal wounding, regaining of consciousness before death	Article 7.6.7
	all	injection of barbiturates and other drugs	yes	non-lethal dose, pain associated with injection site	Article 7.6.15.

Article 7.6.6.

Free bullet

1. Introduction

- a) A free bullet is a projectile fired from a shotgun, rifle, handgun or purpose-made humane killer.
- b) The most commonly used firearms for close range use are:
 - i) humane killers (specially manufactured/adapted single-shot weapons);
 - ii) shotguns (12, 16, 20, 28 bore and .410);
 - iii) rifles (.22 rimfire);
 - iv) handguns (various calibres from .32 to .45).
- c) The most commonly used firearms for long range use are rifles (.22, .243, .270 and .308).
- d) A free bullet used from long range should be aimed to penetrate the skull or soft tissue at the top of the neck of the animals (high neck shot) and to cause irreversible concussion and death and should only be used by properly trained and competent marksmen.

2. Requirements for effective use

- a) The marksman should take account of human safety in the area in which he/she is operating. Appropriate vision and hearing protective devices should be worn by all personnel involved.
- b) The marksman should ensure that the animal is not moving and in the correct position to enable accurate targeting and the range should be as short as possible (5–50 cm for a shotgun) but the barrel should not be in contact with the head of the animals.

- c) The correct cartridge, calibre and type of bullet for the different species age and size should be used. Ideally, the ammunition should expand upon impact and dissipate its energy within the cranium.
 - d) Shot animals should be checked to ensure the absence of brain stem reflexes.
3. Advantages
- a) Used properly, a free bullet provides a quick and effective method for *killing*.
 - b) It requires minimal or no *restraint* and can be used to kill from a distance by properly trained and competent marksmen.
 - c) It is suitable for *killing* agitated animals in open spaces.
4. Disadvantages
- a) The method is potentially dangerous to humans and other animals in the area.
 - b) It has the potential for non-lethal wounding.
 - c) Destruction of brain tissue may preclude diagnosis of some diseases.
 - d) Leakage of bodily fluids may present a *biosecurity* risk.
 - e) Legal requirements may preclude or restrict use.
 - f) There is a limited availability of competent personnel.

5. Conclusion

The method is suitable for cattle, sheep, goats, pigs and equids, including large animals in open spaces.

Article 7.6.7.

Penetrating captive bolt

1. Introduction

A penetrating captive bolt is fired from a gun powered by either compressed air or a blank cartridge. There is no free projectile.

The captive bolt should be aimed on the skull in a position to penetrate the cortex and mid-brain of the animal. The impact of the bolt on the skull produces unconsciousness. Physical damage to the brain caused by penetration of the bolt may result in death; however, pithing or bleeding should be performed as soon as possible after the shot to ensure the death of the animal. Shooting *poultry* species with the captive bolts results in immediate destruction of the skull and brain, causing death. For a detailed description on the use of this method, see Chapter 7.5.

2. Requirements for effective use

- a) For cartridge powered and compressed air guns, the bolt velocity and the length of the bolt should be appropriate to the species and type of animal, in accordance with the recommendations of the manufacturer.
- b) Captive bolt guns should be frequently cleaned and maintained in good working condition.
- c) More than one gun may be necessary to avoid overheating, and a back-up gun should be available in the event of an ineffective shot.
- d) Animals should be restrained; at a minimum, they should be penned for cartridge powered guns and in a race for compressed air guns.
- e) The operator should ensure that the head of the animal is accessible.
- f) The operator should fire the captive bolt at right angles to the skull in the optimal position.
- g) To ensure the death of the animal, pithing or bleeding should be performed as soon as possible after *stunning*.
- h) Animals should be monitored continuously after *stunning* until death to ensure the absence of brain stem reflexes.

3. Advantages

- a) Mobility of cartridge powered equipment reduces the need to move animals.
- b) The method induces an immediate onset of a sustained period of unconsciousness.

4. Disadvantages

- a) Poor gun maintenance and misfiring, and inaccurate gun positioning and orientation may result in poor *animal welfare*.
- b) Post stun convulsions may make pithing difficult and hazardous.
- c) The method is difficult to apply in agitated animals.
- d) Repeated use of a cartridge powered gun may result in over-heating.
- e) Leakage of bodily fluids may present a *biosecurity* risk.
- f) Destruction of brain tissue may preclude diagnosis of some diseases.

5. Conclusions

The method is suitable for *poultry*, cattle, sheep, goats, pigs and equids (except neonates), when followed by pithing or bleeding.

Article 7.6.8.

Non-penetrating captive bolt

1. Introduction

A non-penetrating captive bolt is fired from a gun powered by either compressed air or a blank cartridge. There is no free projectile.

The gun should be placed on the front of the skull to deliver a percussive blow which produces unconsciousness in cattle (adults only), sheep, goats and pigs, and death in *poultry* and neonate sheep, goats and pigs. Bleeding should be performed as soon as possible after the blow to ensure the death of the animal.

2. Requirements for effective use

- a) For cartridge powered and compressed air guns, the bolt velocity should be appropriate to the species and type of animal, in accordance with the recommendations of the manufacturer.
- b) Captive bolt guns should be frequently cleaned and maintained in good working condition.
- c) More than one gun may be necessary to avoid overheating, and a back-up gun should be available in the event of an ineffective shot.
- d) Animals should be restrained; at a minimum mammals should be penned for cartridge powered guns and in a race for compressed air guns; birds should be restrained in cones, shackles, crushes or by hand.
- e) The operator should ensure that the head of the animal is accessible.
- f) The operator should fire the captive bolt at a right angle to the skull in the optimal position.
- g) To ensure death in non-neonate mammals, bleeding should be performed as soon as possible after *stunning*.
- h) Animals should be monitored continuously after *stunning* until death to ensure the absence of brain stem reflexes.

3. Advantages

- a) The method induces an immediate onset of unconsciousness, and death in birds and neonates.
- b) Mobility of equipment reduces the need to move animals.

4. Disadvantages

- a) As consciousness can be regained quickly in non-neonate mammals, they should be bled as soon as possible after *stunning*.
- b) Laying hens in cages have to be removed from their cages and most birds have to be restrained.
- c) Poor gun maintenance and misfiring, and inaccurate gun positioning and orientation may result in poor *animal welfare*.

- d) Post stun convulsions may make bleeding difficult and hazardous.
- e) Difficult to apply in agitated animals; such animals may be sedated in advance of the *killing* procedure.
- f) Repeated use of a cartridge powered gun may result in over-heating.
- g) Bleeding may present a *biosecurity* risk.

5. Conclusions

The method is suitable for *killing poultry*, and neonate sheep, goats and pigs up to a maximum weight of 10 kg.

Article 7.6.9.

Maceration

1. Introduction

Maceration, utilising a mechanical apparatus with rotating blades or projections, causes immediate fragmentation and death in day-old *poultry* and embryonated eggs.

2. Requirements

- a) Maceration requires specialised equipment which should be kept in excellent working order.
- b) The rate of introducing the birds should not allow the equipment to jam, birds to rebound from the blades or the birds to suffocate before they are macerated.

3. Advantages

- a) Procedure results in immediate death.
- b) Large numbers can be killed quickly.

4. Disadvantages

- a) Specialised equipment is required.
- b) Macerated tissues may present *biosecurity* or human health risks.
- c) The cleaning of the equipment can be a source of contamination.

5. Conclusion

The method is suitable for *killing* day-old *poultry* and embryonated eggs.

Article 7.6.10.

Electrical – two-stage application

1. Introduction

A two-stage application of electric current comprises firstly an application of current to the head by scissor-type tongs, immediately followed by an application of the tongs across the chest in a position that spans the heart.

The application of sufficient electric current to the head will induce “tonic/clonic” epilepsy and unconsciousness. Once the animal is unconscious, the second stage will induce ventricular fibrillation (cardiac arrest) resulting in death. The second stage (the application of low frequency current across the chest) should only be applied to unconscious animals to prevent unacceptable levels of *pain*.

2. Requirements for effective use

- a) The stunner control device should generate a low frequency (AC sine wave 50 Hz) current with a minimum voltage and current as set out in the following table:

Animal	Minimum voltage (V)	Minimum current (A)
Cattle	220	1.5
Sheep	220	1.0
Pigs over 6 weeks of age	220	1.3
Pigs less than 6 weeks of age	125	0.5

- b) Appropriate protective clothing (including rubber gloves and boots) should be worn.
- c) Animals should be restrained, at a minimum free-standing in a pen, close to an electrical supply.
- d) Two team members are required, the first to apply the electrodes and the second to manipulate the position of the animal to allow the second application to be made.
- e) A *stunning* current should be applied via scissor-type *stunning* tongs in a position that spans the brain for a minimum of 3 seconds; immediately following the application to the head, the electrodes should be transferred to a position that spans the heart and the electrodes applied for a minimum of 3 seconds.
- f) Electrodes should be cleaned regularly and after use, to enable optimum electrical contact to be maintained.
- g) Animals should be monitored continuously after *stunning* until death to ensure the absence of brain stem reflexes.
- h) Electrodes should be applied firmly for the intended duration of time and pressure not released until the stun is complete.

3. Advantages

- a) The application of the second stage minimises post-stun convulsions and therefore the method is particularly effective with pigs.
- b) Non-invasive technique minimises *biosecurity* risk.

4. Disadvantages

- a) The method requires a reliable supply of electricity.
- b) The electrodes should be applied and maintained in the correct positions to produce an effective stun and kill.
- c) Most stunner control devices utilise low voltage impedance sensing as an electronic switch prior to the application of high voltages; in unshorn sheep, contact impedance may be too high to switch on the required high voltage (especially during stage two).
- d) The procedure may be physically demanding, leading to operator fatigue and poor electrode placement.

5. Conclusion

The method is suitable for calves, sheep and goats, and especially for pigs (over one week of age).

Article 7.6.11.

Electrical – single application

1. Method 1

Method 1 comprises the single application of sufficient electrical current to the head and back, to simultaneously stun the animal and fibrillate the heart. Provided sufficient current is applied in a position that spans both the brain and heart, the animal will not recover consciousness.

a) Requirements for effective use

- i) The stunner control device should generate a low frequency (30–60 Hz) current with a minimum voltage of 250 volts true RMS under load.
- ii) Appropriate protective clothing (including rubber gloves and boots) should be worn.
- iii) Animals should be individually and mechanically restrained close to an electrical supply as the maintenance of physical contact between the *stunning* electrodes and the animal is necessary for effective use.
- iv) The rear electrode should be applied to the back, above or behind the heart, and then the front electrode in a position that is forward of the eyes, with current applied for a minimum of 3 seconds.
- v) Electrodes should be cleaned regularly between animals and after use, to enable optimum electrical contact to be maintained.
- vi) Water or saline may be necessary to improve electrical contact with sheep.
- vii) An effective stun and kill should be verified by the absence of brain stem reflexes.

b) Advantages

- i) Method 1 stuns and kills simultaneously.
- ii) It minimises post-stun convulsions and therefore is particularly effective with pigs.
- iii) A single team member only is required for the application.
- iv) Non-invasive technique minimises *biosecurity* risk.

c) Disadvantages

- i) Method 1 requires individual mechanical animal *restraint*.
- ii) The electrodes should be applied and maintained in the correct positions to produce an effective stun and kill.
- iii) Method 1 requires a reliable supply of electricity.

d) Conclusion

Method 1 is suitable for calves, sheep, goats, and pigs (over one week of age).

2. Method 2

Method 2 stuns and kills by drawing inverted and shackled *poultry* through an electrified waterbath stunner. Electrical contact is made between the “live” water and earthed shackle and, when sufficient current is applied, *poultry* will be simultaneously stunned and killed.

a) Requirements for effective use

- i) A mobile waterbath stunner and a short loop of processing line are required.
- ii) A low frequency (50–60 Hz) current applied for a minimum of 3 seconds is necessary to stun and kill the birds.
- iii) *Poultry* need to be manually removed from their cage, house or yard, inverted and shackled onto a line which conveys them through a waterbath stunner with their heads fully immersed.
- iv) The required minimum currents to stun and kill dry birds are:
 - Quails – 100 mA/bird
 - Chickens – 160 mA/bird
 - Ducks & geese – 200 mA/bird
 - Turkeys – 250 mA/bird.A higher current is required for wet birds.

- v) An effective stun and kill should be verified by the absence of brain stem reflexes.

b) Advantages

- i) Method 2 stuns and kills simultaneously.

- ii) It is capable of processing large numbers of birds reliably and effectively.
 - iii) This non-invasive technique minimises *biosecurity* risk.
- c) Disadvantages
- i) Method 2 requires a reliable supply of electricity.
 - ii) Handling, inversion and shackling of birds are required.
- d) Conclusion

Method 2 is suitable for large numbers of *poultry*.

3. Method 3

Method 3 comprises the single application of sufficient electrical current to the head of *poultry* in a position that spans the brain, causing unconsciousness; this is followed by a *killing* method (see Article 7.6.17.).

- a) Requirements for effective use
- i) The stunner control device should generate sufficient current (more than 600 mA/duck and more than 300 mA/bird) to stun.
 - ii) Appropriate protective clothing (including rubber gloves and boots) should be worn.
 - iii) Birds should be restrained, at a minimum manually, close to an electrical supply.
 - iv) Electrodes should be cleaned regularly and after use, to enable optimum electrical contact to be maintained.
 - v) Birds should be monitored continuously after *stunning* until death to ensure the absence of brain stem reflexes.
- b) Advantages
- Non-invasive technique (when combined with cervical dislocation) minimises *biosecurity* risk.
- c) Disadvantages
- i) Method 3 requires a reliable supply of electricity and is not suitable for large-scale operations.
 - ii) The electrodes should be applied and maintained in the correct position to produce an effective stun.
 - iii) Birds should be individually restrained.
 - iv) It should be followed by a *killing* method.
- d) Conclusion

Method 3 is suitable for small numbers of *poultry*.

Article 7.6.12.

CO₂ / air mixture

1. Introduction

Controlled atmosphere killing is performed by exposing animals to a predetermined gas mixture, either by placing them in a gas-filled *container* or apparatus (Method 1) or by placing transport modules or crates containing birds in a gas tight *container* and introducing a gas mixture (Method 2) or by the gas being introduced into a poultry house (Method 3). Method 3 should be used whenever possible, as it eliminates welfare issues resulting from the need to manually remove live birds. Although Method 2 requires handling and crating of the birds, it benefits bird welfare overall in comparison with Method 1 as it reduces the risk of death by smothering or suffocation.

Inhalation of carbon dioxide (CO₂) induces respiratory and metabolic acidosis and hence reduces the pH of cerebrospinal fluid (CSF) and neurones thereby causing unconsciousness and, after prolonged exposure, death. Exposure to carbon dioxide does not induce immediate loss of consciousness, therefore the aversive nature of gas mixtures containing high concentrations of CO₂ and the respiratory *distress* occurring during the induction phase are important considerations for *animal welfare*.

2. Method 1

The animals are placed in a gas-filled *container* or apparatus.

a) Requirements for effective use in a *container* or apparatus

- i) *Containers* or apparatus should allow the required gas concentration to be maintained and accurately measured.
- ii) When animals are exposed to the gas individually or in small groups in a *container* or apparatus, the equipment used should be designed, constructed, and maintained in such a way as to avoid injury to the animals and allow them to be observed.
- iii) Animals can also be introduced to low concentrations (as low concentrations are not aversive) and the concentration could be increased afterwards and the animals then held in the higher concentration until death is confirmed.
- iv) Team members should ensure that there is sufficient time allowed for each batch of animals to die before subsequent ones are introduced into the *container* or apparatus.
- v) *Containers* or apparatus should not be overcrowded and measures are needed to avoid animals suffocating by climbing on top of each other.

b) Advantages

- i) CO₂ is readily available.
- ii) Application methods are simple.
- iii) The volume of gas required can be readily calculated.
- iv) As the units are operated outdoor, the gas is dispersed quickly at the end of each cycle by opening the door, improving operator's health and safety.
- v) The system uses skilled catching teams and equipment in daily use by the industry.
- vi) Metal *containers* can be readily cleansed and disinfected.

c) Disadvantages

- i) The need for properly designed *container* or apparatus.
- ii) The aversive nature of high CO₂ concentrations.
- iii) No immediate loss of consciousness.
- iv) The risk of suffocation due to overcrowding.
- v) Difficulty in verifying death while the animals are in the *container* or apparatus.

d) Conclusion

Method 1 is suitable for use in *poultry*, and neonatal sheep, goats and pigs.

3. Method 2

In this method, the crates or modules holding the birds are loaded into a chamber into which gas is introduced. As illustrated in the example below, a containerised gassing unit (CGU) typically comprises a gas-tight chamber designed to accommodate *poultry* transport crates or a single module. The chamber is fitted with gas lines and diffusers, with silencers that are connected via a system of manifolds and gas regulators to gas cylinders. There is a hole at the top to permit displaced air to escape when the *container* is filling with gas.

The procedures for the operation of CGU include (a) position the *container* on level, solid, open ground; (b) connect the gas cylinder to the *container* (c) load birds into the *container* (d) shut and secure the door, (e) deliver the gas until a concentration of 45% by volume of carbon dioxide has been achieved at the top of the *container*, (f) allow time for the birds to become unconscious and die (g) open the door and allow gas to be dispersed in the air (h)

remove the module (i) check each drawer for survivors (j) humanely kill any survivors; and (k) dispose of carcasses appropriately.

- a) Requirements for effective use of containerised gassing units (CGU)
 - i) The birds should be caught gently and placed in crates or modules of appropriate size and at appropriate *stocking densities* to allow all birds to sit down.
 - ii) The crates or module full of birds should be placed inside the *container* and the door shut only when the operator is ready to administer the gas.
 - iii) Ensure the *container* door is locked and administer the gas until a minimum concentration of 45% carbon dioxide is achieved at the top of the crates.
 - iv) An appropriate gas meter should be used to ensure the appropriate concentration of carbon dioxide is achieved and maintained until it can be confirmed that the birds have been killed.
 - v) Sufficient exposure time should be allowed for birds to die before the door is opened. In the absence of a viewing window that allows direct observation of birds during killing, cessation of vocalisation and convulsive wing flapping sounds, which can be listened to by standing near the *container*, can be used to determine that the birds are unconscious and that death is imminent. Remove the crates or modules from the *container* and leave them in the open air.
 - vi) Each crate or module should be examined and birds checked to ensure they are dead. Dilated pupils and absence of breathing indicate death.
 - vii) Any survivors should be humanely killed.
 - viii) Ducks and geese are resilient to the effects of carbon dioxide and therefore require a minimum of 80% CO₂ and a longer period of exposure to die.
- b) Advantages
 - i) The gas is introduced quickly and quietly resulting in less turbulence and disturbance to the birds.
 - ii) Gradual increase in the concentration of CO₂ minimises the aversive nature of this method for inducing unconsciousness.
 - iii) The use of transport crates or modules to move birds minimises handling. Birds should be handled by trained, experienced catching teams at the time of depopulation of the poultry house.
 - iv) The modules are loaded mechanically into the CGU and a lethal mixture of gas is rapidly introduced into the chamber immediately after sealing.
 - v) CO₂ is readily available.
 - vi) Birds are exposed to gas more uniformly and they do not smother each other when compared with Method 1.
 - vii) The volume of gas required can be readily calculated.
 - viii) As the units are operated outdoors, the gas is dispersed quickly at the end of each cycle by opening the door, improving operator's health and safety.
 - ix) The system uses skilled catching teams and equipment in daily use by the industry.
 - x) Metal *containers* can be readily cleansed and disinfected.
- c) Disadvantages
 - i) Requires trained operators, trained catchers, transport modules and fork lift. However, this equipment and suitable areas with hard surfaces are usually available.
 - ii) The main limiting factors are speed of catching birds.
 - iii) In the absence of a viewing window, visual confirmation of death while the birds are still in the *container* is difficult. However, cessation of vocalisation and convulsive wing flapping sounds can be used to determine onset of death.
- d) Conclusion
 - i) Method 2 is suitable for use in a wide range of *poultry* systems, providing there is access to *vehicles* to carry the *containers* and equipment.
 - ii) Birds should be introduced into the *container* or apparatus, which is then sealed and filled as quickly as possible with the required gas concentrations, i.e. more than 40% CO₂. Birds are held in this atmosphere until death is confirmed.
 - iii) Method 2 is suitable for use in *poultry*, and neonatal sheep, goats and pigs. However, CO₂ is likely to cause a period of *distress* in the animals before they lose consciousness.

4. Method 3

The gas is introduced into a poultry house.

a) Requirements for effective use in a poultry house

- i) Prior to introduction of the CO₂, the poultry house should be appropriately sealed to allow control over the gas concentration. The interval between sealing and gas administration should be kept to the minimum so as to avoid overheating.

Forced ventilation systems, where fitted, should only be switched off immediately prior to gas administration.

The main water supply to the poultry house may have to be turned off and water drained to avoid freezing and bursting of water pipes.

Feeders and water troughs should be lifted to avoid obstruction of the gas entry and prevent injury to birds.

- ii) Gas delivery pipes or lancets should be positioned appropriately such that birds are not hit directly by very cold gas delivered at high pressures. It may be necessary to exclude birds from the area in front of the delivery pipes, for a distance of about 20 meters, by partitioning the house with nets, wire mesh or similarly perforated materials.
- iii) The house should be gradually filled with CO₂ so that all birds are exposed to a concentration of >40% until they are dead; a vaporiser may be required to prevent freezing.
- iv) Devices should be used to accurately measure the gas concentration at the maximum height accommodation of birds.

b) Advantages

- i) Applying gas to birds *in situ* eliminates the need to manually remove live birds.
- ii) CO₂ is readily available.
- iii) Gradual raising of CO₂ concentration minimises the aversiveness of the induction of unconsciousness.

c) Disadvantages

- i) It is difficult to determine volume of gas required to achieve adequate concentrations of CO₂ in some poultry houses.
- ii) It is difficult to verify death while the birds are in the poultry house.

The extremely low temperature of liquid CO₂ entering the house and formation of solid CO₂ (dry ice) may cause concern for bird welfare.

d) Conclusion

Method 3 is suitable for use in *poultry* in closed-environment sheds. This method could be developed for killing pigs. However, CO₂ is likely to cause a period of *distress* in the birds before they lose consciousness.

Article 7.6.13.

Nitrogen or inert gas mixed with CO₂

1. Introduction

CO₂ may be mixed in various proportions with nitrogen or an inert gas (e.g. argon), and the inhalation of such mixtures leads to hypercapnic-hypoxia and death when the oxygen concentration by volume is $\leq 2\%$, or $\leq 5\%$ for chickens. Various mixtures of CO₂ and nitrogen or an inert gas can be administered to kill birds using Methods 1 and 2 described under Article 7.6.12. Whole house gassing with mixtures of CO₂ and nitrogen, or an inert gas, has not been tested owing to the complex issues presented by mixing gases in large quantities. Such mixtures however do not induce immediate loss of consciousness, therefore the aversiveness of various gas mixtures containing high concentrations of CO₂ and the respiratory distress occurring during the induction phase, are important *animal welfare* considerations.

Pigs and *poultry* appear not to find low concentrations of CO₂ strongly aversive, and a mixture of nitrogen or argon with $\leq 30\%$ CO₂ by volume and $\leq 2\%$ O₂ by volume can be used for *killing poultry*, neonatal sheep, goats and pigs.

2. Method 1

The animals are placed in a gas-filled *container* or apparatus.

a) Requirements for effective use

- i) *Containers* or apparatus should allow the required gas concentrations to be maintained, and the O₂ and CO₂ concentrations accurately measured during the *killing* procedure.
- ii) When animals are exposed to the gases individually or in small groups in a *container* or apparatus, the equipment used should be designed, constructed, and maintained in such a way as to avoid injury to the animals and allow them to be observed.
- iii) Animals should be introduced into the *container* or apparatus after it has been filled with the required gas concentrations (with $\leq 2\%$ O₂), and held in this atmosphere until death is confirmed.
- iv) Team members should ensure that there is sufficient time allowed for each batch of animals to die before subsequent ones are introduced into the *container* or apparatus.
- v) *Containers* or apparatus should not be overcrowded and measures are needed to avoid animals suffocating by climbing on top of each other.

b) Advantages

Low concentrations of CO₂ cause little aversiveness and, in combination with nitrogen or an inert gas, produces a fast induction of unconsciousness.

c) Disadvantages

- i) A properly designed *container* or apparatus is needed.
- ii) It is difficult to verify death while the animals are in the *container* or apparatus.
- iii) There is no immediate loss of consciousness.
- iv) Exposure times required to kill are considerable.

d) Conclusion

The method is suitable for *poultry*, and for neonatal sheep, goats and pigs.

3. Method 2

In this method, the crates or modules holding the birds are loaded into a *container* and gas is introduced into the *container*. As shown in the example below, each containerised gassing unit (CGU) typically comprises a gas-tight chamber designed to accommodate *poultry* transport crates or a module. The *container* or chamber is fitted with gas lines and diffusers, with silencers, which in turn are connected via a system of manifolds and gas regulators to gas cylinders. There is a hole at the top of the unit to permit displaced air to escape when filling the *container* with gas.

Procedures involved in the operation of CGU includes (a) position the *container* on a level, solid, open ground; (b) connect gas cylinder to the *container* (c) load a module of birds into the *container*, (d) shut and secure the door, (e) deliver the gas to the point where less than 2% by volume of oxygen is found at the top of the *container*, (f) allow time for the birds to become unconscious and die, (g) open the door and allow the gas to be dispersed in air, (h) remove the module, (i) check each drawer for survivors; (j) humanely kill survivors, if any; and (k) dispose carcasses appropriately.

a) Requirements for effective use of containerised gassing units (CGU)

- i) The birds should be caught gently and placed in crates or modules of appropriate size and at appropriate *stocking densities* to allow all birds to sit down.
- ii) The crates or module of birds should be placed inside the *container* and the door shut only when the operator is ready to administer the gas mixture.
- iii) Ensure the *container* door is locked and administer the gas mixture until <2% residual oxygen is achieved at the top of the crates.
- iv) An appropriate gas meter should be used to ensure a concentration of oxygen <2% is achieved and maintained until it can be confirmed that the birds have been killed.
- v) Sufficient exposure time should be allowed for birds to die before the door is opened. In the absence of a viewing window, which allows direct observation of birds during killing, cessation of vocalisation and wing flapping sounds can be observed by standing close to the *container* and used to determine the onset of death in birds. Remove the crates or modules from the *container* and leave them in the open air.
- vi) Each crate or module should be examined and birds checked to ensure they are dead. Dilated pupils and absence of breathing movements indicate death.
- vii) Any survivors should be humanely killed.
- viii) Ducks and geese do not appear to be resilient to the effects of a mixture of 20% carbon dioxide and 80% nitrogen or argon.

- b) Advantages
 - i) The gas mixture is introduced quickly and quietly resulting in less turbulence and disturbance to the birds.
 - ii) The use of transport crates or modules to move birds minimises handling. Birds should be handled by trained, experienced catching teams at the time of depopulation of the poultry house.
 - iii) The modules are loaded mechanically into the CGU and a lethal mixture of gas is rapidly introduced into the chamber immediately after sealing.
 - iv) Mixtures containing up to 20% carbon dioxide in argon are readily available as welding gas cylinders.
 - v) Birds are exposed to gas in a more uniform manner and they do not smother each other when compared with Method 1.
 - vi) Two CGU can be operated in tandem and throughputs of up to 4,000 chickens per hour are possible.
 - vii) The volume of gas required can be readily calculated.
 - viii) As the units are operated outdoor the gas is dispersed quickly at the end of each cycle by opening the door, improving operators' health and safety.
 - ix) The system uses skilled catching teams and equipment in daily use by the industry.
 - x) Metal *containers* can be readily cleansed and disinfected.
- c) Disadvantages
 - i) Requires trained operators, trained catchers, transport modules and a fork lift. However, such equipment and suitable outdoor areas with a hard surface are usually available.
 - ii) The main limiting factors are speed of catching birds and availability of gas mixtures.
 - iii) In the absence of a viewing window, visual confirmation of death while the birds are still in the *container* is difficult. However, cessation of vocalisation and convulsive wing flapping can be used to determine the onset of death.
 - iv) CGU could be used to kill *poultry* on small to medium farms, e.g. up to 25 thousand birds on a single farm.
- d) Conclusions
 - i) Method 2 is suitable for use in *poultry* and in neonatal sheep, goats and pigs.
 - ii) Method 2 is suitable for use in *poultry* in a wide range of *poultry* systems providing that these have access to *vehicles* to carry *containers* and equipment.
 - iii) Animals should be introduced into the *container* or apparatus, which is then sealed and filled as quickly as possible with the gas mixture. A residual oxygen concentration of less than 2% should be achieved and maintained and birds should be held in this atmosphere until death is confirmed.

Article 7.6.14.

Nitrogen or inert gases

1. Introduction

This method involves the introduction of animals into a *container* or apparatus containing nitrogen or an inert gas such as argon. The controlled atmosphere produced leads to unconsciousness and death from hypoxia.

Research has shown that hypoxia is not aversive to pigs and *poultry*, and it does not induce any signs of respiratory distress prior to loss of consciousness.

2. Requirements for effective use

- a) *Containers* or apparatus should allow the required gas concentrations to be maintained, and the O₂ concentration accurately measured.
- b) When animals are exposed to the gases individually or in small groups in a *container* or apparatus, the equipment used should be designed, constructed, and maintained in such a way as to avoid injury to the animals and allow them to be observed.
- c) Animals should be introduced into the *container* or apparatus after it has been filled with the required gas concentrations (with <2% O₂), and held in this atmosphere until death is confirmed.
- d) Team members should ensure that there is sufficient time allowed for each batch of animals to die before subsequent ones are introduced into the *container* or apparatus.

- e) *Containers* or apparatus should not be overcrowded, and measures are needed to avoid animals suffocating by climbing on top of each other.

3. Advantages

Animals are unable to detect nitrogen or inert gases, and the induction of hypoxia by this method is not aversive to animals.

4. Disadvantages

- a) A properly designed *container* or apparatus is needed.
- b) It is difficult to verify death while the animals are in the *container* or apparatus.
- c) There is no immediate loss of consciousness.
- d) Exposure times required to kill are considerable.

5. Conclusion

The method is suitable for *poultry* and neonatal sheep, goats and pigs.

Article 7.6.15.

Lethal injection

1. Introduction

A lethal injection using high doses of anaesthetic and sedative drugs causes CNS depression, unconsciousness and death. In practice, barbiturates in combination with other drugs are commonly used.

2. Requirements for effective use

- a) Doses and routes of administration that cause rapid loss of consciousness followed by death should be used.
- b) Prior sedation may be necessary for some animals.
- c) Intravenous administration is preferred, but intraperitoneal or intramuscular administration may be appropriate, especially if the agent is non-irritating.
- d) Animals should be restrained to allow effective administration.
- e) Animals should be monitored to ensure the absence of brain stem reflexes.
- f) Personnel performing this method should be trained and knowledgeable in anaesthetic techniques.

3. Advantages

- a) The method can be used in all species.
- b) Death can be induced smoothly.

4. Disadvantages

- a) *Restraint* or sedation may be necessary prior to injection.
- b) Some combinations of drug type and route of administration may be painful, and should only be used in unconscious animals.
- c) Legal requirements and skill and training required may restrict use to veterinarians.
- d) Contaminated carcasses may present a risk to other animals or domestic animals.

5. Conclusion

The method is suitable for *killing* small numbers of cattle, sheep, goats, pigs, equids and *poultry*.

Article 7.6.16.

Addition of anaesthetics to feed or water

1. Introduction

An anaesthetic agent which can be mixed with *poultry feed* or water may be used to kill *poultry* in houses. *Poultry* which are only anaesthetised need to be killed by another method such as cervical dislocation.

2. Requirements for effective use

- a) Sufficient quantities of anaesthetic need to be ingested rapidly for effective response.
- b) Intake of sufficient quantities is facilitated if the birds are fasted or water is withheld.
- c) Should be followed by *killing* (see Article 7.6.17.) if birds are anaesthetised only.

3. Advantages

- a) Handling is not required until birds are anaesthetised.
- b) There may be *biosecurity* advantages in the case of large numbers of diseased birds.

4. Disadvantages

- a) Non-target animals may accidentally access the medicated *feed* or water when provided in an open environment.
- b) Dose taken is unable to be regulated and variable results may be obtained.
- c) Animals may reject adulterated *feed* or water due to illness or adverse flavour.
- d) The method may need to be followed by *killing*.
- e) Care is essential in the preparation and provision of treated *feed* or water, and in the disposal of uneaten treated *feed/water* and contaminated carcasses.

5. Conclusion

The method is suitable for *killing* large numbers of *poultry* in houses. However, a back-up method should be available to kill birds that are anaesthetized but not killed.

Article 7.6.17.

Cervical dislocation and decapitation

1. Cervical dislocation (manual and mechanical)

a) Introduction

Unconscious *poultry* may be killed by either manual or mechanical cervical dislocation (stretching the neck). This method results in death from cerebral anoxia due to cessation of breathing and/or blood supply to the brain.

When the number of birds to be killed is small, and other methods of *killing* are not available, conscious birds of less than 3 kilograms may be killed using cervical dislocation in such a way that the blood vessels of the neck are severed and death is instantaneous.

b) Requirements for effective use

- i) *Killing* should be performed either by manually or mechanically stretching the neck to sever the spinal cord with consequent major damage to the spinal cord.
- ii) Consistent results require strength and skill so team members should be rested regularly to ensure consistently reliable results.

- iii) Birds should be monitored continuously until death to ensure the absence of brain stem reflexes.
 - c) Advantages
 - i) It is a non-invasive *killing* method.
 - ii) It can be performed manually on small birds.
 - d) Disadvantages
 - i) Operator fatigue.
 - ii) The method is more difficult in larger birds.
 - iii) Requires trained personnel to perform humanely.
 - iv) Human health and safety concerns due to handling of the birds.
 - v) Additional stress to the animals from handling.
2. Decapitation
- a) Introduction
Decapitation results in death by cerebral ischaemia using a guillotine or knife.
 - b) Requirements for effective use
The required equipment should be kept in good working order.
 - c) Advantages
The technique is effective and does not require monitoring.
 - d) Disadvantages
 - i) The working area is contaminated with body fluids, which increases *biosecurity* risks.
 - ii) *Pain* if consciousness is not lost immediately.

Article 7.6.18.

Pithing and bleeding

1. Pithing
- a) Introduction
Pithing is a method of *killing* animals which have been stunned by a penetrating captive bolt, without immediate death. Pithing results in the physical destruction of the brain and upper regions of the spinal cord, through the insertion of a rod or cane through the bolt hole.
 - b) Requirements for effective use
 - i) Pithing cane or rod is required.
 - ii) An access to the head of the animal and to the brain through the skull is required.
 - iii) Animals should be monitored continuously until death to ensure the absence of brain stem reflexes.
 - c) Advantages
The technique is effective in producing immediate death.
 - d) Disadvantages
 - i) A delayed or ineffective pithing due to convulsions may occur.
 - ii) The working area is contaminated with body fluids, which increases *biosecurity* risks.
2. Bleeding
- a) Introduction
Bleeding is a method of *killing* animals through the severance of the major blood vessels in the neck or chest that results in a rapid fall in blood pressure, leading to cerebral ischaemia and death.
 - b) Requirements for effective use
 - i) A sharp knife is required.
 - ii) An access to the neck or chest of the animal is required.
 - iii) Animals should be monitored continuously until death to ensure the absence of brain stem reflexes.
 - c) Advantages
The technique is effective in producing death after an effective *stunning* method which does not permit pithing.

d) Disadvantages

- i) A delayed or ineffective bleeding due to convulsions may occur.
 - ii) The working area is contaminated with body fluids, which increases *biosecurity* risks.
-

NB: FIRST ADOPTED IN 2005; MOST RECENT UPDATE ADOPTED IN 2016.

CHAPTER 7.7.

DOG POPULATION MANAGEMENT

Article 7.7.1.

Introduction

Dog Population Management (DPM) refers to the holistic approach that aims to improve the welfare of dogs, reduce problems they may present and create harmonious co-existence with people and their environment. Dogs are present in every human society around the world and are valued for the range of roles they fulfil. However, they can present public health and safety, and animal health and *animal welfare* issues, especially when free to roam.

DPM supports effective and sustainable rabies control programmes and the control of other zoonoses. Recognising that mass culling of dogs is ineffective and may be counterproductive, reducing dog population size is not an effective means of reducing rabies *prevalence*. However, DPM can contribute to rabies control by reducing population turnover, therefore supporting maintenance of herd immunity within a vaccinated dog population. The components of population turnover most relevant for rabies control are the reduction in the birth of puppies that would be at risk of remaining unvaccinated and the improvement of welfare and life expectancy of vaccinated dogs.

Reproduction control as part of DPM also reduces breeding behaviours which may increase the *risk* of rabies transmission due to increased contact rates between dogs.

Promotion of *responsible dog ownership* as part of DPM strengthens owner motivation, knowledge and therefore behaviour in caring for their dogs, including timely rabies *vaccination* of *owned dogs* to maintain immunity.

It is important to manage dog populations without compromising *animal welfare*, in accordance with Chapter 7.1.

Article 7.7.2.

Definitions

For the purpose of this chapter the following definitions apply:

Dog Population Management programme means a combination of measures that enhance the care of dogs and influence dog population dynamics to sustainably improve dog health and welfare, public health and safety, and the environment, while taking into consideration related economic benefits and costs.

Rabies means dog-mediated rabies.

Article 7.7.3.

Scope

The scope of this chapter is to provide recommendations for the management of dog (*Canis lupus familiaris*) populations to improve human health and safety, animal health and *animal welfare* and to minimise their potential negative socio-economic and environmental impacts. The recommendations will also assist Members in the implementation of dog-mediated zoonotic disease control programmes, in particular *infection* with rabies virus, in accordance with Chapter 8.15.

Article 7.7.4.

Guiding principles

Building upon the guiding principles described in Chapter 7.1., the following apply:

- DPM has direct benefits to public health and safety, and to animal health and welfare.
- Dogs are a domesticated species and therefore dependent on human communities, thus there is an ethical responsibility to ensure their health and welfare even in the absence of ownership.
- Recognising the diversity of stakeholders in the management of dog populations, it is crucial to clarify roles and responsibilities.
- Dog ecology is linked with human activities. Therefore, effective management of dog populations should be accompanied by changes in human behaviour, including promotion of *responsible dog ownership*.
- Acknowledging that the *owned dog* population is a common source of *free-roaming dogs*, DPM programmes should consider all dogs.
- Understanding local dog population dynamics and community attitudes is a key element in determining whether and how DPM programmes might contribute to rabies control and which tools would be most successful.
- Considering that sources and drivers of *free-roaming dogs* and management goals differ across communities, DPM should be individually tailored to local and national contexts.
- DPM programmes should be designed to be sustainable, aligned with legislative requirements, evaluated and adaptable.

Article 7.7.5.

Dog Population Management programme objectives

DPM programmes may include the following objectives:

- promote and establish *responsible dog ownership*, in accordance with Article 7.7.17.;
- improve health and welfare of dog populations;
- reduce the number of *free-roaming dogs*;
- stabilise the dog population by reducing turnover;
- reduce *risk*s to public health and safety including dog bites, traffic accidents, and zoonotic diseases such as rabies, leishmaniosis and echinococcosis;
- contribute towards eradicating dog-mediated human rabies;
- reduce nuisance caused by *free-roaming dogs*;
- prevent harm to livestock and other animals;
- prevent illegal trade and trafficking of dogs.

Article 7.7.6.

Roles and responsibilities

As a cross-sectoral subject, DPM requires a high level of engagement and collaboration among *Competent Authorities* responsible for animal health and welfare, food safety, public health and environment, in line with the One Health approach.

DPM activities performed by *Veterinary Services* or relevant *Competent Authorities* should be integrated, to the greatest extent possible, with the activities of all other responsible agencies.

Articles 7.7.7 and 7.7.8 describe the roles and responsibilities of different organisations in the development of DPM programmes, at the local and national levels.

Article 7.7.7.

Competent Authority for Dog Population Management

The development of DPM occurs at the local level through specific DPM programmes, whose success requires a supportive and enabling environment created by the *Competent Authority* at the national level. As DPM is relevant to several governmental agencies and various stakeholders, a multi-sectorial group should establish governance and coordinate actions across relevant stakeholders, governmental agencies and programmes, including those focusing on zoonotic diseases where dogs play a role, such as rabies.

1. Governance

DPM is the responsibility of a *Competent Authority*, which may be the *Veterinary Authority*. A national action plan provides the details of actions which support the implementation of DPM programmes and coordinate with other action plans, such as those focused on dog-related zoonoses. These plans are led by this *Competent Authority* and developed in collaboration with the multi-sectorial group.

2. Legislation

Implementation of DPM programmes requires the support of a suitable regulatory framework (see Article 7.7.9.). Further secondary regulations provide customisations to suit local requirements.

3. Enforcement

The *Competent Authority* can support enforcement of legislation through guidelines on enforcement procedures/practices, training and funding of enforcement agencies, and defining penalties.

4. Funding

To establish sustainable DPM with long-lasting impacts, the *Competent Authority* and multi-sectorial group should establish a policy and legislative basis for sufficient funding of national action plans and DPM programmes. The One Health concept strengthens the argument for increasing the priority of DPM across the animal health, environmental and public health sectors.

5. Training and support

To support DPM programmes, the relevant *Competent Authority* should lead on the training of professionals, including *veterinarians*, and ensure they have access to appropriate *veterinary medicinal products* for the implementation of DPM measures. The *Competent Authority* should support DPM through national level communication and education initiatives.

Article 7.7.8.

Other organisations and actors involved in Dog Population Management

The following may have a role in the development of DPM programmes:

1. Veterinary Authority

The *Veterinary Authority* plays a lead role in preventing zoonotic diseases and ensuring *animal welfare* and should be involved in DPM, coordinating its activities with other relevant *Competent Authorities*.

2. Veterinary Services

Veterinary Services should play an active role and coordinate their activities with relevant *Competent Authorities* or, and may be responsible for the organisation, implementation and supervision of DPM programmes.

3. Other governmental agencies

The responsibilities of other governmental agencies will depend on the *risk* being managed and the objective or nature of the DPM measures implemented.

a) Public health

Governmental agencies responsible for public health usually play a leadership role and may have legislative authority in dealing with zoonotic diseases and regarding other human health *risks* (e.g. *free-roaming dogs* on roads; dog bites).

b) Environmental protection

Environmental protection agencies may take responsibility for problems associated with *free-roaming dogs* when they present a *hazard* to the environment (e.g. control of dogs in national parks; prevention of predation on *wildlife* or transmission of diseases to *wildlife*) or where a lack of environmental controls encourage dogs to roam.

c) Education

Governmental agencies responsible for education may play a key role in promoting *responsible dog ownership* and dog bite prevention programmes in schools.

d) Local authorities

In many countries, local authorities are responsible for the implementation of DPM programmes and the enforcement of legislation relating to dog ownership (e.g. *registration*, identification, *vaccination*, leash laws, animal abandonment). This should be done with the support and enabling environment created by the *Competent Authority*.

4. Civil Society

The responsibilities of civil society stakeholders will depend on their involvement with the DPM measures implemented.

a) Dog owners

When a person takes on the ownership of a dog, there should be an immediate acceptance of responsibility for that dog, and for any offspring it may produce, for the duration of its life or until a subsequent owner is found. The owner's responsibilities should include providing for the health and welfare of the dog and mitigating negative impacts on public health and the environment, in accordance with Article 7.7.17.

b) Dog breeders and sellers

Dog breeders and sellers have the same responsibilities as dog owners and in addition should comply with the recommendations, in accordance with Article 7.7.15.

5. Advisory group

The development of DPM programmes and a national action plan should also benefit from the support of advisory groups, which should include *veterinarians*, experts in dog ecology, dog behaviour and zoonotic diseases, and representatives of relevant stakeholders (local authorities, public health services or authorities, environmental control services or authorities, non-governmental organisations and the public).

Article 7.7.9.

Regulatory framework

Legislation that addresses DPM is a key element for the sustainability and efficiency of DPM programmes. It ensures that DPM programmes are carried out with respect to *animal welfare* guiding principles (see Chapter 7.1.).

Regulations related to the following areas may support successful DPM programmes; these may be found in a DPM regulatory framework or other regulatory frameworks:

- owners' obligations regarding the principles of *responsible dog ownership*, including *animal welfare*;
- *animal welfare* obligations of authorities;
- *registration* and identification of dogs in an *animal identification system*;
- *registration*, or authorisation and licensing of dog breeders and sellers;
- *registration*, or authorisation and licensing of dog shelters, rehoming centres and holding facilities;
- licensing of *veterinarians*;
- licensing preparation, use and sale of *veterinary medicinal products*;
- preventive measures against rabies and other zoonotic diseases;
- dog movements and trade at international and national levels;
- waste management.

This regulatory framework must be designed with both incentive measures for compliance and penalties for non-compliance and should be adapted to the national context.

Article 7.7.10.

Evidence-based DPM programme development

Development of DPM programmes should include an initial assessment and ongoing adaptation based on continued monitoring and evaluation using objective methods. This evidence-based approach improves programme effectiveness and informs responses to changes in the wider context that influence dog population dynamics.

Recognising the different needs of communities and the multi-sectorial roles in DPM, it should be conducted with the involvement of advisory groups and relevant authorities.

Competent Authorities, in collaboration with the multi-sectoral group, should support evidence-based DPM programmes by:

- identifying qualified personnel and developing training and tools to help with implementing data collection (assessment and *monitoring*) and use (planning and evaluation);
- ensuring the budget of DPM programmes includes not only the costs for the initial assessment but also for *monitoring* and evaluation activities;
- establishing standardised indicators with feasible and repeatable methods of measurement that can be used across locations and over time, to support subsequent evaluations and compare performance between different DPM programmes. It should be expected that DPM programmes will also use and benefit from their own context-specific indicators and methods of measurement;
- encouraging the use of *monitoring* data for evaluation, learning and subsequent amendments of DPM programmes.

Article 7.7.11.

DPM programme assessment and planning

The initial DPM programme development stages of assessment and planning should provide the evidence required for planning and include:

- 1) Review of the current regulatory framework and evaluation of the efficiency and effectiveness of DPM control measures used historically and currently.
- 2) Identification of the priority issues related to dogs from the perspective of all relevant stakeholders. The resolution of these issues will form the objectives of DPM programmes. Establishing baselines and *monitoring* methods for indicators reflecting each objective allows for later evaluation of efficiency and effectiveness. Identifying which dogs are associated with the priority issues may include *owned dogs*.
- 3) Exploration of dog population dynamics in the whole dog population (not limited to the current *free-roaming dog* population) to identify the sources of *free-roaming dogs*:
 - *owned dogs* that roam freely;
 - dogs that have been lost or abandoned, including puppies resulting from uncontrolled breeding of *owned dogs*;
 - unowned dogs that roam freely and reproduce.
- 4) Identification of people's knowledge, attitudes and practices regarding dog care and responsibility for *owned dogs* and unowned dogs. Citizens' attitudes towards potential control measures should also be explored. This information can be used to ensure the acceptability of the DPM programme to local communities and its effectiveness at changing human behaviours.
- 5) Estimation of dog population size and demography. Dog population size estimates can help with planning DPM programmes. Accuracy of estimates is typically improved with more time-consuming methods and greater local engagement. Where resources are limited, a rough estimate may be sufficient at the outset. This estimate may be refined by *monitoring* population coverage achieved by the implementation of measures and comparing this to the number of dogs receiving these measures (e.g. rabies *vaccination* and sterilisation in 'Catch, Neuter, Vaccinate and Return') (see Article 7.7.19.).

For evaluation of DPM programme effectiveness, *monitoring* changes in population trends (e.g. changes in the density of *free-roaming dogs* along routes designed to traverse areas of high *free-roaming dog* density, proportion of lactating females and presence of puppies) may be sufficient, rather than investing in repeated estimates of population size. Methods to estimate population size may also measure demographic factors such as age, sex,

sterilisation and reproductive status (lactation and pregnancy in females) to allow for refinement of estimates to sub-populations of relevance.

Available methods for population size estimates include the following:

- a) *Owned dogs*: dog *registration* databases, household questionnaires (to estimate proportion of dog-owning households and mean number of dogs per dog-owning household), post-vaccination campaign coverage and animal ownership surveys as part of human census.
- b) *Free-roaming owned dogs*: household questionnaires including questions or visible inspection of whether *owned dogs* are confined or allowed to roam unsupervised.
- c) All *free-roaming dogs*, including both owned roaming and unowned:
 - Direct observation of *free-roaming dogs* during surveys along routes designed to be representative of the area of interest and unbiased with regard to *free-roaming dog* density can provide the mean number of *free-roaming dogs* per km of street surveyed. This can be extrapolated by the estimated total street length within the area of interest to estimate the total number of *free-roaming dogs* on the street at the time of survey; some *free-roaming dogs* will not have been visible during the survey and so this is an underestimate of the total free roaming dog population.
 - Mark-resight is a method that aims to estimate population size, considering that not all animals are visible to direct observation on a survey. This is achieved by first marking dogs with temporary marks such as paint, or photographs for individual recognition. The survey can opportunistically make use of marks applied as part of control measures to indicate a dog's treatment status, such as collars or paint applied to identify a dog as vaccinated and ear notches or tags applied under anaesthetic to identify a dog as sterilised during neutering in 'Catch, Neuter, Vaccinate and Return' measures (see Article 7.7.19.). In subsequent surveys, the proportions of marked and unmarked dogs are noted. Mark-resight methods rely on assumptions that may not hold true in dog populations, such as equal resighting probability for marked and unmarked dogs, lack of immigration/emigration and no or measurable mark loss.

Mark-resight is a relatively resource intensive method when compared with direct observation which may limit the extent of the area that can feasibly be surveyed.

Mark-resight and direct observation may be done concurrently in a sample of areas to estimate the proportion of *free-roaming dogs* visible during direct observation. This proportion can be used to correct the data regarding those dogs missed during direct observation over a larger geographical area.

Article 7.7.12.

DPM programme monitoring and evaluation

Later stages of DPM programme development should include monitoring and evaluation. *Monitoring* aims to check the progress of DPM programme measures against targets and support performance management. It should allow for regular adjustments of implementation of measures and collection of data on indicators of objectives. It should also include *monitoring* of costs associated with measures and costs or savings relating to objectives, to support cost-benefit analysis.

Evaluation is a periodic assessment of progress using data collected through *monitoring*, usually carried out at milestones to assess whether the DPM programme is achieving the desired objectives and to adapt the DPM programme to improve effectiveness and efficiency. Where methods of *monitoring* are equivalent – clearly defined, repeatable and consistent –, evaluation can compare effectiveness and efficiency across DPM programmes.

Indicators are the measurable results of objectives. Indicators of DPM objectives may include:

- *Owned dog* population size, demographics and whether there is *responsible dog ownership* (can include their vaccination status, sterilisation, *registration*, identification, level and method of confinement and how they were acquired).
- *Free-roaming dog* population density, demography (age, sex, sterilisation, lactating females and puppies) and welfare (e.g. body condition score, presence of a skin problem) recorded by direct observation of *free-roaming dogs*.
- *Prevalence* of zoonotic diseases in both the animal and human populations, for example rabies or echinococcosis.
- Knowledge, attitudes and practices of communities relating to the *free-roaming dog* population, and dog owner knowledge, attitudes and practices regarding *responsible dog ownership*.
- Dog population movements from owned to unowned dogs or from confined to *free-roaming dogs* (based on investigations and monitoring).

- Adoption or reuniting facility performance including intake, adoption rates, welfare state of dogs in their care, mortality and *euthanasia* rates.
- Dog bites reported to health centres or number of rabies post-exposure prophylaxis courses provided to exposed individuals, or the cost incurred by the public health authorities for provision of post-exposure prophylaxis.
- Number and nature of complaints about dogs to local government authorities.
- Compensation costs relating to dog-related damage to people, livestock or property.

Article 7.7.13.

Recommendations for DPM measures

A combination of the following measures should be used for a successful DPM programme:

- *registration* and identification of dogs;
- regulation of commercial dog breeding and sale;
- control of national and international (export and import) dog movements;
- promoting *responsible dog ownership*;
- reproductive control;
- 'Catch, Neuter, Vaccinate and Return';
- reuniting and adoption;
- access to veterinary care;
- environmental controls;
- education on safe dog-human interaction.

These recommendations for DPM measures are described in detail in Articles 7.7.14. to 7.7.24. and should be implemented in accordance with the national context and local circumstances.

Article 7.7.14.

Registration and identification of dogs

Outcomes of *registration* and identification of dogs include the following:

- support for the enforcement of legislation through proof of ownership;
- improvement of the success rate in reuniting lost dogs with their owners;
- enabling traceability in commercial breeding and sale;
- encouragement of responsible ownership behaviours;
- support for an animal health programme, e.g. mandatory rabies *vaccination* and traceability.

These outcomes require widespread adoption of *registration* and identification.

Competent Authorities should ensure that an *animal identification system* is established for dog *registration* to allow reuniting of identified dogs with registered owners across the territory. *Competent Authorities* should ensure there is an enforcement system in place with the capacity to deliver appropriate methods of identification to all dogs (such as microchipping or Quick Response tags [QR tags]), read identification when a dog is found (using scanners or other devices) and access the *registration* database to retrieve owner details. Such databases may be developed and operated on a public-private partnership basis.

Owners need to be informed and, under conditions to be defined by *Competent Authorities*, able to access identification services and the *registration* system both initially to enter each dog and to update information when required.

Article 7.7.15.

Regulation of commercial dog breeding and sale

Outcomes of regulating commercial breeding and sale as a DPM measure include:

- protection of dog health and welfare;
- avoidance of abandonment;
- transparency in dog breeding and sales.

Competent Authorities should require mandatory *registration* of all breeders and sellers. For commercial breeders and sellers, where the number of litters produced per year exceeds a threshold set by regulations, a further requirement for licensing may be imposed, including the requirement for inspection before trade can begin.

Advertisements for dog sales should be required to carry the *registration* or licence number of the breeder and seller.

To ensure dog traceability, the breeder should be established through identification and *registration* as the first owner.

The seller should ensure that *registration* details of the dog are updated with those of the first buyer following transfer of ownership.

Regulations of breeding practices should include limits on number of litters, minimum breeding age (to protect the health and welfare of the dam), good health of both parents and avoidance of selective breeding that leads to inherited diseases and extreme conformations. Regulations for both breeders and sellers should also outline specific requirements for accommodation, veterinary care, husbandry, puppy socialisation and habituation to their environment, minimum puppy age before leaving the dam and training of staff. Sales of dogs should be limited to adult buyers, and unregulated sales should be banned.

Article 7.7.16.

Control of national and international (export or import) dog movements

International movements of dogs (import and export) should comply with trade measures, import or export procedures and veterinary certification in accordance with Chapters 5.11., 7.2., 7.3., 7.4. and 8.15.

Movement of dogs within a country should be under the responsibility of the owner, with the following outcomes:

- reducing the *risk* of contagious diseases spread;
- protecting public health and safety;
- protecting *wildlife* and livestock;
- protecting dog *welfare*.

Article 7.7.17.

Promoting responsible dog ownership

- 1) Owning a dog is a choice and should result in a mutually beneficial relationship. The benefits of dog ownership come with responsibilities. Promoting *responsible dog ownership* through education and enforcement of national and local regulations is a core component of a DPM programme to achieve the following outcomes:
 - improving the health and welfare of dogs;
 - supporting the human-animal bond;
 - minimising the *risk* that dogs pose to household members and the community;
 - reducing the number of dogs allowed to roam.
- 2) Education on *responsible dog ownership* (for the currently *owned dog* and any offspring it produces for its lifetime or until the responsibility is passed to the next owner) should address the following:
 - provide appropriate care to ensure the welfare of the dog and any offspring according to the dog's five welfare needs (suitable environment, suitable diet, housed with or apart from other animals, ability to exhibit normal behaviour and protection from *pain*, suffering, injury and disease) in order to meet the internationally recognised 'five freedoms' (see point 2 of Article 7.1.2.);

- encourage appropriate behaviours, reducing unwanted behaviours (including dog bites) and supporting the dog's ability to cope with its environment through attention to socialisation and reward-based training and recognition of dog behavioural signs;
 - ensure the *registration* and identification of dogs (see Article 7.7.14.);
 - ensure access to preventive and therapeutic veterinary care (see Article 7.7.21.);
 - prevent negative impacts of dogs on the community, via pollution (e.g. faeces and noise), *risks* to human health through bites or traffic accidents and *risks* to other dogs, *wildlife*, livestock and other companion animal species;
 - control dog reproduction (see Article 7.7.18.);
 - arrange for dogs to be cared for when the owner is unable to do so.
- 3) Achieving sustained and widespread responsible ownership requires an understanding of barriers and motivations for responsible behaviour and taking action to address these. This is likely to require a combination of legislation, public awareness and enforcement, behaviour change campaigns, formal education in schools and encouragement through the building of social expectations. It may also be necessary to improve availability and accessibility of resources supporting responsible ownership, such as veterinary care, identification and *registration* services and measures for control of zoonotic diseases.

Article 7.7.18.

Reproductive control

- 1) Outcomes of controlling reproduction in dogs include the following:
 - preventing the birth of unwanted puppies;
 - helping address the imbalance between reproduction and demand for dogs;
 - reducing the size of the *free-roaming dog* population.
- 2) Efficient use of reproduction control does not require a limit on overall population size. To ensure best use of resources, focus should be on controlling reproduction of females most likely to be the source of unwanted and *free-roaming dogs*.
- 3) Methods of controlling reproduction will require direct veterinary input to individual animals. Involvement of both private and public veterinary sectors may be required to meet demand for services. Subsidisation of sterilisation programmes by government or other organisations may be considered to encourage uptake. The control of reproduction in *owned dogs* is essentially the responsibility of owners and should be incorporated in promotion of responsible ownership (see Article 7.7.17.).
- 4) Methods for controlling reproduction in dogs include:
 - surgical sterilisation;
 - non-surgical fertility control, i.e. the prevention of reproduction without the use of surgery, including chemical and immunological approaches;
 - confinement or separation of female dogs during oestrus from unsterilised males.
- 5) Surgery has the primary advantage of being permanent. Surgical sterilisation must be carried out by a *veterinarian* and must include good animal handling, good surgical technique, a good standard of asepsis, appropriate anaesthesia and proactive, multi-modal *pain* management maintained throughout and adjusted to the individual animal as needed. This requires *monitoring* during surgery and post-operatively for the whole recovery period. It requires suitably trained *veterinarians* and *veterinary paraprofessionals* and access to appropriate drugs and equipment. *Competent Authorities* are responsible for ensuring access to training and authorised drugs that are not counterfeit, to ensure surgical sterilisation can be performed safely.
- 6) Castration of male dogs is preferred over vasectomy because, unlike castration, vasectomy does not reduce sex hormone levels and therefore has no mechanism to reduce specific behaviours such as roaming, territory marking and fighting due to hormonal aggression. Females may be surgically sterilised by ovariohysterectomy or ovariectomy. Tubal ligation and hysterectomy are not recommended because the female will be under ovarian hormonal influence and will continue to show sexual behaviour, increasing susceptibility to diseases such as transmissible venereal tumours and pyometra where uterine tissue remains. However, effects of sterilisation on non-hormone related behaviours cannot be generalised; hence, just as with any surgical procedure, the *veterinarian* should use their professional judgement when recommending gonadectomy for individual patients.
- 7) Any chemicals or drugs used in controlling reproduction should be shown to have appropriate safety, quality and efficacy for the function required and be used in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations and *Competent Authority's* regulations. In the case of non-surgical sterilants and contraceptives in the research phase, trials will need to be completed before use.

Article 7.7.19.

'Catch, Neuter, Vaccinate and Return'

'Catch, Neuter, Vaccinate and Return' provides an approach to controlling the reproduction of unowned dogs as a source of *free-roaming dogs*. This is not a stand-alone solution to DPM and must be used in combination with other measures addressing other sources of *free-roaming dogs*. It can be considered a method of managing the current *free-roaming dog* population *in situ* on the streets and hence an alternative to removal for reuniting and adoption (see Article 7.7.20.).

In collaboration with the local community, identified unowned dogs are caught, provided with health care (including rabies vaccination), evaluated for adoption and, if adoption is not feasible, sterilised, and released to their local community at or near the place of capture. This method is more likely to be accepted in the situation where the presence of *free-roaming dogs* is widespread and well tolerated by the local community.

This method is not applicable in all situations and may be illegal in countries or regions where legislation prohibits the abandonment of dogs and authorities perceive the release of sterilised dogs as a form of abandonment. Problems caused by dogs, such as noise, faecal pollution, bite injuries and traffic accidents, would not be alleviated as dogs are returned to the local community and their movements are not restricted. Where owners have limited access to affordable reproduction control for their dogs, consideration should be given to the risk that 'Catch, Neuter, Vaccinate and Return' could encourage owners to access free sterilisation by allowing their *owned dogs* to roam. To avoid this risk, promoting *responsible dog ownership* (Article 7.7.17.) and ensuring access to reproduction control for *owned dogs* (Article 7.7.18.) should be implemented alongside 'Catch, Neuter, Vaccinate and Return'. In the situation where many *free-roaming dogs* are owned, a DPM programme that focuses on sterilisation and responsible ownership may be more appropriate.

It is recommended that, before adopting this approach, a cost-benefit analysis is conducted. Factors such as the monetary costs, impact on culture of ownership and public safety should be assessed as well as the benefits for disease control and *animal welfare*, and any societal benefits.

If this measure is implemented, the *Competent Authority* should ensure the following are addressed:

- engaging local communities to understand, support, design and be an active part of 'Catch, Neuter, Vaccinate and Return' activities and *monitoring* of released dogs, in particular in the case of dogs cared for by the community;
- use of humane methods for catching, transporting and holding dogs;
- correct surgical technique with a good standard of asepsis, anaesthesia and analgesia, followed by post-operative care (see Article 7.7.18.);
- disease control may include *vaccination* (e.g. rabies) and treatments and testing for diseases (e.g. leishmaniosis) followed, as appropriate, by treatment or *euthanasia* of the dog;
- 'Catch, Neuter, Vaccinate and Return' is not suitable for all dogs and should be applied on an individual basis. Health assessment and behavioural observation may be used to assess whether dogs are suitable for release; if they are not suitable for release or adoption, *euthanasia* should be considered;
- permanent marking (e.g. tattoo or microchip) to indicate that the animal has been sterilised; individual identification also allows for tracking of *vaccination* status and treatment history. A visible form of identification (e.g. collar, tag or ear notch) may also be used to prevent unnecessary recapture. As with surgical sterilisation, the same principles of asepsis, anaesthesia and multi-modal *pain management* are relevant to the application of tags and notches because these are also surgical procedures. *Monitoring* of released dogs should include issues of mark loss, *infection* and *infestation*;
- the dog should be returned to a place that is as near as possible to the place of capture;
- the behaviour and welfare of dogs after release should be monitored and action taken if required.

Article 7.7.20.

Reuniting and adoption

Free-roaming dogs can be removed to housing facilities for reuniting with their owners, or adopted. This addresses only the current free-roaming population and not the source of these dogs, hence must be used in combination with other measures to prevent replacement of removed dogs. These facilities can also offer the option for owners to relinquish dogs they can no longer care for, as an alternative to abandonment. Evidence collected about dogs and dog owner practices during DPM programme development must confirm that reuniting and adoption are probable and achievable before developing reuniting and adoption facilities. Without sufficient adoptive homes or systems for reuniting, facilities quickly fill to capacity, creating an ineffective and expensive measure. The *Competent Authority* should establish and

enforce regulations for facilities providing reuniting and rehoming services to ensure capture, transport and holding of dogs are done humanely.

Dogs that are removed from a community may be reunited with the owner or adopted. There should be provision for holding the dogs for a reasonable period to allow for reuniting with the owner and, as appropriate, for rabies observation. Reuniting and adoption provide an opportunity to promote responsible ownership and good animal health care (including rabies *vaccination* and sterilisation). The suitability of dogs should be assessed and matched with available owners. The effectiveness of adoption may be limited by the number of adoptive homes.

Efforts should be made to transport animals for the shortest distance and least amount of time possible. Relocation for adoption should first be considered locally, then expanded to the nearest available locations. This minimises the stress associated with transportation of dogs and reduces the risk of spreading zoonotic or other pathogens to new areas. If transport is needed, it should be done in accordance with Chapter 7.1.

Dogs that are removed from a community may be too numerous or may be unsuitable for adoption. If acceptable to the local community, 'Catch, Neuter, Vaccinate and Return' may provide an alternative approach. If *euthanasia* of these unwanted animals is the only option, the procedure should be conducted in accordance with Article 7.7.27.

Article 7.7.21.

Access to veterinary care

Access to veterinary care positively impacts animal health, *animal welfare* and public health through provision of preventive and therapeutic veterinary care to dogs in a community. Increased interactions with *Veterinary Services* provide additional opportunities to educate dog owners on *responsible dog ownership* (see Article 7.7.17.). From a DPM perspective, the prevention and control of disease, treatment of illness and injury, and *euthanasia* to end suffering where treatment is not feasible potentially reduce abandonment of sick or injured dogs.

Veterinary care should be part of DPM programmes and contribute to disease control by creating healthier populations of dogs with reduced population turnover. Herd immunity for rabies control is supported by DPM through improvement in the survival of vaccinated dogs and reducing birth of unvaccinated puppies through surgical sterilisation. Guidance on implementing dog rabies *vaccination* campaigns is provided in Chapter 8.15.

Preventive veterinary care is central to zoonotic disease control and *surveillance*. DPM programmes should encompass or align with all disease control measures relevant to dogs. This includes rabies *vaccination*, deworming (in particular for *Echinococcus granulosus*) and prevention and control of other pathogens.

Veterinary Services should identify 'at risk' populations of dogs that do not have reliable access to basic veterinary care. *Competent Authorities* should facilitate access to veterinary care. Potential solutions may include subsidising costs and organising outreach veterinary services.

Article 7.7.22.

Environmental controls

Actions can be taken to exclude dogs from uncontrolled sources of food (e.g. protecting rubbish dumps and *slaughterhouses/abattoirs* and installing animal-proof rubbish containers). Environmental control should be linked to other DPM measures, to avoid *animal welfare* problems and reduce public health risks from a sudden reduction in food sources.

Article 7.7.23.

Education on safe dog-human interaction

The most effective means of reducing the occurrence of dog bites are education on safe interaction with dogs and owner responsibility for training and managing dogs as part of *responsible dog ownership*. Young children are the group at highest *risk* for dog bites. Public education programmes focussed on appropriate dog-directed behaviour have been demonstrated to be effective in reducing the occurrence of dog bites and these programmes should be encouraged. *Competent Authorities* should seek advice from dog behaviour experts in developing dog safety education programmes.

Education programmes in appropriate bite treatment, including post-exposure prophylaxis where rabies is a risk, are encouraged for all ages.

Article 7.7.24.

Specific considerations for Dog Population Management activities

The following activities may be required as part of the implementation of the DPM measures described in Article 7.7.13.:

- Dog capture and handling;
- Dog housing;
- *Euthanasia*.

Article 7.7.25.

Dog capture and handling

Humane capture and handling aim to prevent animal suffering and *distress*. They can also bring other benefits, including reduced injuries to handlers, easier handling of dogs in future and modelling positive handling to owners and the public.

Competent Authorities should develop appropriate legislation and training to promote humane handling and enforce regulations against cruel methods, such as the use of tongs and uncovered wire loops. *Animal welfare* and operator safety outcomes are improved when the personnel conducting capture and handling have a complete understanding of, and proficiency in, the capture and handling method to be used.

Competent Authorities and *Veterinary Services* should ensure their staff and volunteers expected to handle dogs have received rabies pre-exposure vaccination where appropriate and are provided with clear protocols for treating injuries, including dog bites.

The least aversive method of capture and handling should be used to minimise harm and discomfort to the dog, while also considering safety of the handler. Further, handlers should strive to make the handling experience as positive as possible from the perspective of the dog; this includes looking for ways to reward the dog during handling.

Handlers should use minimum *restraint* to provide the dog with opportunities to exert choice and control, so that they cope better with the handling.

Article 7.7.26.

Dog housing

Competent Authorities should develop minimum standards for the housing (physical facilities) and care of dogs by providing a suitable environment, a suitable diet, a house which keeps them with or apart from other animals, allows them to exhibit normal behaviour and provide protection from *pain*, suffering, injury and disease in order to meet the internationally recognised 'five freedoms'. Enforcement of these standards is supported by licensing and inspection of facilities. The following minimum standards should be considered:

1. Facilities

- sustainable finances to cover ongoing running costs;
- site selection: access to drainage, waste disposal, water and electricity is essential and environmental factors such as noise and pollution should be considered;
- kennel size, design and occupancy, taking into account exercise, expected length of stay and sufficient area for dogs to separate the functions of eating or drinking, resting, urinating and defecating, as well as maintaining acceptable environmental temperatures;
- disease control measures including isolation and *quarantine station*;
- maximum capacity of the facility.

2. Management

- provision of adequate fresh water and nutritious food;
- regular hygiene and cleaning, including fallowing;
- routine inspection, handling and exercise of the dogs;
- *monitoring* of physical and behavioural health and provision of required veterinary treatments under veterinary supervision, including routine and preventive veterinary care and *euthanasia*;
- policies and procedures to respect the maximum capacity for the facility and action when this is reached, assessment of dog health and behaviour, animal care, intake, treatment, adoption, sterilisation and *euthanasia*;
- provision of sufficient numbers of appropriately skilled staff and training of staff in safe, appropriate and positive handling of dogs;
- record keeping, animal identification and reporting to the *Competent Authority*;
- provision of opportunities for conspecific socialisation, human socialisation, enrichment and locomotory activity as appropriate to the individual.

3. Assessment

Dog housing performance may be assessed using the following measurables:

- body condition score, skin condition, disease *incidence*, injuries and mortality, reaction to humans and conspecifics;
- expression of species-specific behaviours reflecting a positive emotional state;
- housing must provide adequate space appropriate to the age, size, weight and breed of the dog, and allow the dog to engage in normal body movements, including the ability to sit, stand up, turn about freely, or lie recumbent in a natural position, stretch, move their head, hold the tail erect while standing, and comfortably eat, drink, urinate and defecate;
- hygiene, cleaning, drainage and housing materials should prevent an excessive accumulation of faeces and food waste, to prevent soiling of dogs in the enclosure, and reduce disease *hazards*, insects, pests and odours;
- ventilation should allow dogs to maintain normal body temperature comfortably and provide good air quality;
- protection from harmful extremes of temperature, air movement, moisture, light and other climatic elements to ensure proper health and well-being of the dog.

Article 7.7.27.

Euthanasia

Euthanasia of dogs, used alone, is not effective for DPM. If used, it should be done in accordance with Article 7.6.1., and should be implemented in combination with other measures as part of a DPM programme to achieve effective long-term management. Reducing dog population size is not an effective means of reducing the number of rabies cases.

As a process, *euthanasia* involves pre-*euthanasia* and handling procedures, *euthanasia* methods and agents, confirmation of death, and disposal of dead animals. When *euthanasia* is practised, the general principles in the *Terrestrial Code* should be applied, with the emphasis on using practical methods which achieve the most rapid, painless and *distress-free-death* possible while ensuring operator safety. *Euthanasia* should be conducted under the supervision of a *veterinarian*. To ensure *animal welfare* and operator safety, the personnel conducting *euthanasia* should have a complete understanding of, and proficiency in, the *euthanasia* method to be used.

1. Restraint

When a dog needs to be restrained for any procedure, including *euthanasia*, this should always be done with full regard for operator safety and *animal welfare*. Animal handling should also minimise *distress* experienced by the dog prior to loss of consciousness. Some *euthanasia* methods should be used with prior sedation or anaesthesia. Regardless of the *euthanasia* method used, it is advisable to perform pre-*euthanasia* sedation or anaesthesia to minimise anxiety or facilitate safe *restraint*.

2. Euthanasia methods

The following are recommended methods of canine *euthanasia*:

- intravenous barbiturates;
- intraperitoneal barbiturates in small dogs or puppies, to be used only if the intravenous route is not feasible;
- intravenous anaesthetic overdose;
- inhaled anaesthetic overdose in small dogs (not neonates).

If anaesthetised:

- administration of barbiturates by alternative routes (intracardiac, intrarenal, intrahepatic, intraosseous).

If sedated:

- intravenous *euthanasia*-specific formulation of embutramide, chloroquine and lidocaine;
- intravenous *euthanasia*-specific formulation of embutramide, mebezonium and tetracaine.

Methods, procedures and practices that are unacceptable as primary methods of *euthanasia* on *animal welfare* grounds include air embolism, asphyxiation, burning, chloral hydrate, chloroform, cyanide, decompression, drowning, exsanguination, formalin, household products and solvents, pesticides and herbicides, hypothermia, insulin, neuromuscular blocking agents (magnesium sulphate, potassium chloride, nicotine and all curariform agents), manually applied blunt force trauma to the head, rapid freezing, thoracic compression, strychnine, nitrous oxide, ether, kill-trapping, CO from engine fumes, (CO₂) if the required concentration and flow rates are not regulated and monitored, free-bullet without proper anatomical placement at close range by highly trained personnel, penetrating captive bolt followed by pithing, electrocution and *stunning* without a secondary kill method and any other method that could compromise the welfare of the animal.

3. Confirmation of death

For all methods of *euthanasia* used, death should be confirmed before animals are disposed of or left unattended.

A combination of criteria is most reliable in confirming death, including lack of pulse, breathing and corneal reflex, and response to firm toe pinch; inability to hear respiratory sounds and heartbeat by use of a stethoscope; greying of the mucous membranes; and rigor mortis. None of these signs alone, except rigor mortis, confirms death. If an animal is not dead, another method of *euthanasia* should be performed.

4. Disposal of dead animals

Dead animals should be disposed of in a manner that complies with legislation. Attention should be paid to the *risk* of residues occurring in the dead animal. Incineration is generally the safest means of disposing of dead animals (see Chapter 4.13.).

NB: FIRST ADOPTED IN 2009; MOST RECENT UPDATE ADOPTED IN 2024.

CHAPTER 7.8.

USE OF ANIMALS IN RESEARCH AND EDUCATION

Preamble: the purpose of this chapter is to provide advice and assistance for Member Countries to follow when formulating regulatory requirements, or other form of oversight, for the use of live animals in research and education. Wherever the term 'research' is used, it includes basic and applied research, testing and the production of biological materials; 'education' includes teaching and training. A system of animal use oversight should be implemented in each country. The system will, in practice, vary from country to country and in accordance with cultural, economic, religious and social factors. However, WOAH recommends that Member Countries address all the essential elements identified in this chapter in formulating a regulatory framework that is appropriate to their local conditions. This framework may be delivered through a combination of national, regional and institutional jurisdictions and both public sector and private sector responsibilities should be clearly defined.

WOAH recognises the vital role played by the use of live animals in research and education. The WOAH Guiding Principles for Animal Welfare state that such a use makes a major contribution to the wellbeing of people and animals and emphasise the importance of the Three Rs (see Article 7.8.3.). Most scientists and members of the public agree that the animals should only be used when necessary; ethically justified (thereby avoiding unnecessary duplication of animal-based research); and when no other alternative methods, not using live animals, are available; that the minimum number of animals should be used to achieve the scientific or educational goals; and that such use of animals should cause as little *pain* and/or *distress* as possible. In addition, animal suffering is often recognised separately from *pain* and *distress* and should be considered alongside any lasting harm which is expected to be caused to animals.

WOAH emphasises the need for humane treatment of animals and that good quality science depends upon good *animal welfare*. It is the responsibility of all involved in the use of animals to ensure that they give due regard to these recommendations. In keeping with the overall approach to *animal welfare* detailed in the Guiding Principles, WOAH stresses the importance of standards based on outcomes for the animal.

WOAH recognises the significant role of *veterinarians* in animal-based research. Given their unique training and skills, they are essential members of a team including scientists and animal care technicians. This team approach is based on the concept that everyone involved in the use of animals has an ethical responsibility for the animals' welfare. The approach also ensures that animal use leads to high quality scientific and educational outcomes and optimum welfare for the animals used.

WOAH recognises that the use of live animals in research and education is a legitimate activity and, as a consequence, domestic and international transport of animals is essential to maintaining progress in advancing human and animal health. Such a transport should be conducted in a legal manner, ensuring the safety of the animal and applying humane principles.

WOAH recommends that records on animal use should be maintained at an institutional level, as appropriate to the institution and project proposals and species used. Key events and interventions should be recorded to aid decision making and promote good science and welfare. A summary of these records may be gathered on a national basis and be published to provide a degree of public transparency, without compromising personnel or animal safety, or releasing proprietary information.

Article 7.8.1.

Definitions

For the purposes of this chapter the following definitions apply:

Biocontainment means the system and procedures designed to prevent the accidental release of biological material including allergens.

Bioexclusion means the prevention of the unintentional transfer of adventitious organisms with subsequent *infection* of animals, resulting in adverse effects on their health or suitability for research.

Biosecurity means a continuous process of *risk assessment* and *risk management* designed to minimise or eliminate microbiological *infection* with adventitious organisms that can cause clinical disease in the infected animals or humans, or make animals unsuitable for biomedical research.

Cloned animal means a genetic copy of another living or dead animal produced by somatic cell nuclear transfer or other reproductive technology.

Endangered species means a population of organisms which is at risk of becoming extinct because it is either few in numbers, or threatened by changing environmental or predation parameters.

Environmental enrichment means increasing the complexity (e.g. with toys, cage furniture, foraging opportunities, social housing, etc.) in a captive animal's environment to foster the expression of non-injurious species-typical behaviours and reduce the expression of maladaptive behaviours, as provide cognitive stimulation.

Ethical review means consideration of the validity and justification for using animals including: an assessment and weighing of the potential harms for animals and likely benefits of the use and how these balance (see harm-benefit analysis below); and consideration of experimental design; implementation of the Three Rs; animal husbandry and care and other related issues such as personnel training. Ethical judgements are influenced by prevailing societal attitudes.

Harm-benefit analysis means the process of weighing the likely adverse effects (harms) to the animals against the benefits likely to accrue as a result of the proposed project.

Humane endpoint means the point in time at which an experimental animal's *pain* and/or *distress* is avoided, terminated, minimised or reduced, by taking actions such as giving treatment to relieve *pain* and/or *distress*, terminating a painful procedure, removing the animal from the study, or humanely killing the animal.

Laboratory animal means an animal that is intended for use in research. In most cases, such animals are purpose-bred to have a defined physiological, metabolic, genetic or pathogen free status.

Operant conditioning means the association that an animal makes between a particular response (such as pressing a bar) and a particular reinforcement that may be positive (for example, a food reward) or negative (e.g. a mild electric shock). As a result of this association, the occurrence of a specific behaviour of the animal can be modified (e.g. increased or decreased in frequency or intensity).

Project proposal (sometimes called protocol) means a written description of a study or experiment, programme of work, or other activities that includes the goals of the work, characterises the use of the animals, and includes ethical considerations.

Suffering means an unpleasant, undesired state of being that is the outcome of the impact on an animal of a variety of noxious stimuli and/or the absence of important positive stimuli. It is the opposite of good welfare.

Article 7.8.2.

Scope

This chapter applies to animals as defined in the *Terrestrial Code* (excluding bees) bred, supplied and/or used in research (including testing) and higher education. Animals to be used for production of biologicals and/or humanely killed for harvesting their cells, tissues and organs for scientific purposes are also covered. Member Countries should consider both the species and the developmental stage of the animal in implementing these standards.

Article 7.8.3.

The Three Rs

The internationally accepted tenet, the 'Three Rs', comprises the following alternatives:

- 1) replacement refers to the use of methods utilizing cells, tissues or organs of animals (relative replacement), as well as those that do not require the use of animals to achieve the scientific aims (absolute replacement);
- 2) reduction refers to the use of methods that enable researchers to obtain comparable levels of information from fewer animals or to obtain more information from the same number of animals;
- 3) refinement refers to the use of methods that prevent, alleviate or minimise *pain*, suffering, *distress* or lasting harm and/or enhance welfare for the animals used. Refinement includes the appropriate selection of relevant species with a lesser degree of structural and functional complexity in their nervous systems and a lesser apparent capacity

for experiences that derive from this complexity. Opportunities for refinement should be considered and implemented throughout the lifetime of the animal and include, for example, housing and transportation as well as procedures and euthanasia.

Article 7.8.4.

The oversight framework

The role of a *Competent Authority* is to implement a system (governmental or other) for verification of compliance by institutions. This usually involves a system of authorisation (such as licensing or registering of institutions, scientists, and/or projects) and compliance which may be assessed at the institutional, regional and/or national level.

The oversight framework encompasses both ethical review of animal use and considerations related to animal care and welfare. This may be accomplished by a single body or distributed across different groups. Different systems of oversight may involve *animal welfare officers*, regional, national or local committees or bodies. An institution may utilise a local committee (often referred to as Animal Care and Use Committee, Animal Ethics Committee, Animal Welfare Body or Animal Care Committee) to deliver some or all of this oversight framework. It is important that the local committee reports to senior management within the institution to ensure it has appropriate authority, resources and support. Such a committee should undertake periodic review of its own policies, procedures and performance.

Ethical review of animal use may be undertaken by regional, national or local ethical review bodies or committees. Consideration should be given to ensuring the impartiality and independence of those serving on the committees.

In providing this oversight and ensuring the implementation of the Three Rs, the following expertise should be included as a minimum:

- 1) one scientist with experience in animal research, whose role is to ensure that protocols are designed and implemented in accordance with sound science;
- 2) one *veterinarian*, with the necessary expertise to work with research animals, whose specific role is to provide advice on the care, use and welfare of such animals;
- 3) one public member, where appropriate, to represent general community interests who is independent of the science and care of the animals and is not involved in the use of animals in research.

Additional expertise may be sought from the animal care staff, as these professional and technical staff are centrally involved in ensuring the welfare of animals used. Other participants, especially in relation to ethical review, may include statisticians, information scientists and ethicists and biosafety specialists, as appropriate to the studies conducted. It may be appropriate, in teaching institutions, to involve student representation.

Oversight responsibilities include three key elements:

1. Project proposal review

The purpose of the project proposal is to enable assessment of the quality of, and justification for, the study, work or activity.

Project proposals, or significant amendments to these, should be reviewed and approved prior to commencement of the work. The proposal should identify the person with primarily responsibility for the project and should include a description of the following elements, where relevant:

- a) the scientific or educational aims, including consideration of the relevance of the experiment to human or animal health or welfare, the environment, or the advancement of biological knowledge;
- b) an informative, non-technical (lay) summary may enhance understanding of the project and facilitate the ethical review of the proposal by allowing full and equitable participation of members of the oversight body or committees who may be dealing with matters outside their specific field. Subject to safeguarding confidential information, such summaries may be made publicly available;
- c) the experimental design, including justification for choice of species, source and number of animals, including any proposed reuse;
- d) the experimental procedures;
- e) methods of handling and restraint and consideration of refinements such as animal training and operant conditioning;

- f) the methods to avoid or minimise *pain*, discomfort, *distress*, suffering or lasting impairment of physical or physiological function, including the use of anaesthesia and/or analgesia and other means to limit discomfort such as warmth, soft bedding and assisted feeding;
- g) application of humane endpoints and the final disposition of animals, including methods of euthanasia;
- h) consideration of the general health, husbandry and care of the species proposed to be used, including environmental enrichment and any special housing requirements;
- i) ethical considerations such as the application of the Three Rs and a harm/benefit analysis; the benefits should be maximised and the harms, in terms of *pain* and *distress*, should be minimized;
- j) an indication of any special health and safety risks;
- k) resources/infrastructure necessary to support the proposed work, e.g. facilities, equipment, staff trained and found competent to perform the procedures described in the proposed project; and
- l) the duration of approval of a project should normally be defined and progress achieved should be reviewed in considering renewal of a project approval.

The oversight body has a critical responsibility in determining the acceptability of project proposals, taking account of the *animal welfare* implications, the advancement of knowledge and scientific merit, as well as the societal benefits, in a *risk-based* assessment of each project using live animals.

Following approval of a project proposal, consideration should be given to implementing an independent (of those managing the projects) oversight method to ensure that animal activities conform with those described in the approved project proposal. This process is often referred to as post approval monitoring. Such monitoring may be achieved through animal observations made during the conduct of routine husbandry and experimental procedures; observations made by the veterinary staff during their rounds; or by inspections by the oversight body, which may be the local committee, *animal welfare* officer, compliance/quality assurance officer or government inspector.

2. Facility inspection

There should be regular inspections of the facilities, at least annually. These inspections should include the following elements:

- a) the animals and their records, including cage labels and other methods of animal identification;
- b) husbandry practices;
- c) maintenance, cleanliness and security of the facility;
- d) type and condition of caging and other equipment;
- e) environmental conditions of the animals at the cage and room level;
- f) procedure areas such as surgery, necropsy and animal research laboratories;
- g) support areas such as washing equipment, animal feed, bedding and drug storage locations;
- h) occupational health and safety concerns.

Principles of *risk management* should be followed when determining the frequency and nature of inspections.

3. Ethical evaluation

The ethical evaluation reflects the policies and practices of the institution in complying with regulations and relevant guidance. It should include consideration of the functioning of the local committee; training and competency of staff; veterinary care; husbandry and operational conditions, including emergency plans; sourcing and final disposition of animals; and occupational health and safety. The programme should be reviewed regularly. A requirement for the components of such a programme should be included in relevant regulations to empower the *Competent Authority* to take appropriate actions to ensure compliance.

Article 7.8.5.

Assurance of training and competency

An essential component of the animal care and use programme is the assurance that the personnel working with the animals are appropriately trained and competent to work with the species used and the procedures to be performed, including ethical considerations. A system (institutional, regional or national) to assure competency should be in place, which includes supervision during the training period until competence has been demonstrated. Continuing professional and paraprofessional educational opportunities should be made available to relevant staff. Senior management, given their overarching responsibility for the animal care and use programme, should be knowledgeable about issues related to the competence of staff.

1. Scientific staff

Researchers using animals have a direct ethical and legal responsibility for all matters relating to the welfare of the animals in their care. Due to the specialised nature of animal research, focused training should be undertaken to supplement educational and experiential backgrounds of scientists (including visiting scientists) before initiating a study. Focused training may include such topics as the national and/or local regulatory framework and institutional policies. The laboratory animal *veterinarian* is often a resource for this and other training. Scientific staff should have demonstrated competency in procedures related to their research, e.g. surgery, anaesthesia, sampling and administration, etc.

2. Veterinarians

It is important that *veterinarians* working in an animal research environment have veterinary medical knowledge and experience in the species used. Furthermore, they should be educated and experienced in the normal behaviour, behavioural needs, stress responses and adaptability of the species, as well as research methodologies. Relevant approvals issued by the *veterinary statutory body* and appropriate national or regional schemes (where these exist) should be adopted as the reference for veterinary training.

3. Animal care staff

Animal care staff should receive training that is consistent with the scope of their work responsibilities and have demonstrated competency in the performance of these tasks.

4. Students

Students should learn scientific and ethical principles using non-animal methods (videos, computer models, etc.) when such methods can effectively reduce or replace the use of live animals and still meet learning objectives. Wherever it is necessary for students to participate in classroom or research activities involving live animals, they should receive appropriate supervision in the use of animals until such time that they have demonstrated competency in the related procedure(s).

5. Members of the local oversight committee or others involved with oversight

Continuing education about the use of animals in research and education, including associated ethics, regulatory requirements and their institutional responsibility, should be provided.

Occupational health and safety training for research animal-related risks should be provided as part of the assurance of training and competency for personnel. This might include consideration of human infectious diseases which may infect research animals and thus compromise research results, as well as possible zoonoses. Personnel should understand that there are two categories of hazards, those that are intrinsic to working in an animal facility and those associated with the research. Specific training may be required for particular species, for specific procedures, and for the use of appropriate protective measures for personnel who may be exposed to animal allergens. Research materials, such as chemicals of unknown toxicity, biological agents and radiation sources, may present special hazards.

Article 7.8.6.

Provision of veterinary care

Adequate veterinary care includes responsibility for promoting an animal's health and welfare before, during and after research procedures and providing advice and guidance based on best practice. Veterinary care includes attention to the physical and behavioural status of the animal. The *veterinarian* should have authority and responsibility for making judgements concerning *animal welfare*. Veterinary advice and care should be available at all times. In exceptional circumstances, where species unfamiliar to the *veterinarian* are involved, a suitably qualified non-veterinary expert may provide advice.

1. Clinical responsibilities

Preventive medicine programmes that include *vaccinations*, ectoparasite and endoparasite treatments and other disease control measures should be initiated in accordance with currently acceptable veterinary medical practices appropriate to the particular animal species and source. Disease surveillance is a major responsibility of the *veterinarian* and should include routine monitoring of colony animals for the presence of parasitic, bacterial and viral agents that may cause overt or sub clinical diseases. The *veterinarian* should have the authority to use appropriate treatment or control measures, including euthanasia if indicated, and access to appropriate resources, following diagnosis of an animal disease or injury. Where possible, the *veterinarian* should discuss the situation with the scientist to determine a course of action consistent with experimental goals. Controlled drugs prescribed by the veterinary staff should be managed in accordance with applicable regulations.

2. Post-mortem examinations

In the case of unexpected diseases or deaths, the *veterinarian* should provide advice based on post-mortem examination results. As part of health monitoring, a planned programme of post-mortem examinations may be considered.

3. Veterinary medical records

Veterinary medical records, including post-mortem records, are considered to be a key element of a programme of adequate veterinary care for animals used in research and education. Application of performance standards within the veterinary medical record programme allows the *veterinarian* to effectively employ professional judgment, ensuring that the animal receives the highest level of care available.

4. Advice on zoonotic risks and notifiable diseases

The use of some species of animals poses a significant risk of the transmission of zoonotic disease, e.g. some nonhuman primates. The *veterinarian* should be consulted to identify sources of animals that minimise these risks and to advise on measures that may be taken in the animal facility to minimize the risk of transmission, e.g. personal protective equipment, appropriate *disinfection* procedures, air pressure differentials in animal holding rooms, etc. Animals brought into the institution may carry diseases that require notification to government officials. It is important that the *veterinarian* be aware of, and comply with, these requirements.

5. Advice on surgery and postoperative care

A programme of adequate veterinary care includes input into the review and approval process of preoperative, surgical and postoperative procedures by an appropriately qualified *veterinarian*. A *veterinarian's* inherent responsibility includes providing advice concerning preoperative procedures, aseptic surgical techniques, the competence of staff to perform surgery and the provision of postoperative care. Veterinary oversight should include the detection and resolution of emerging patterns of surgical and post procedural complications.

6. Advice on analgesia, anaesthesia and euthanasia

Adequate veterinary care includes providing advice on the proper use of anaesthetics, analgesics, and methods of *euthanasia*.

7. Advice on humane endpoints

Humane endpoints should be established prior to commencement of a study in consultation with the *veterinarian* who also plays an important role in ensuring that approved humane endpoints are followed during the course of the study. It is essential that the *veterinarian* has the authority to ensure *euthanasia* or other measures are carried out as required to relieve *pain* and *distress* unless the project proposal approval specifically does not permit such an intervention on the basis of the scientific purpose and the ethical evaluation.

Ideal humane endpoints are those that can be used to end a study before the onset of *pain* and/or *distress*, without jeopardising the study's objectives. In consultation with the *veterinarian*, humane endpoints should be described in the project proposal and, thus, established prior to commencement of the study. They should form part of the ethical review. Endpoint criteria should be easy to assess over the course of the study. Except in rare cases, death (other than *euthanasia*) as a planned endpoint is considered ethically unacceptable.

Article 7.8.7.

Source of animals

Animals to be used for research should be of high quality to ensure the validity of the data.

1. Animal procurement

Animals should be acquired legally. It is preferable that animals are purchased from recognised sources producing or securing high quality animals. The use of wild caught nonhuman primates is strongly discouraged.

Purpose bred animals should be used whenever these are available and animals that are not bred for the intended use should be avoided unless there is compelling scientific justification or are the only available and suitable source. In the case of farm animals, non-traditional breeds and species, and animals captured in the wild, non-purpose bred animals are often used to achieve specific study goals.

2. Documentation

Relevant documentation related to the source of the animals, such as health and other veterinary certification, breeding records, genetic status and animal identification, should accompany the animals.

3. Animal health status

The health status of animals can have a significant impact on scientific outcomes. There also may be occupational health and safety concerns related to animal health status. Animals should have appropriate health profiles for their intended use. The health status of animals should be known before initiating research.

4. Genetically defined animals

A known genetic profile of the animals used in a study can reduce variability in the experimental data resulting from genetic drift and increase the reproducibility of the results. Genetically defined animals are used to answer specific research questions and are the product of sophisticated and controlled breeding schemes which should be validated by periodic genetic monitoring. Detailed and accurate documentation of the colony breeding records should be maintained.

5. Genetically altered (also genetically modified or genetically engineered) or cloned animals

A genetically altered animal is one that has had undergone genetic modification of its nuclear or mitochondrial genomes through a deliberate human intervention, or the progeny of such an animal(s), where they have inherited the modification. If genetically altered or cloned animals are used, such use should be conducted in accordance with relevant regulatory guidance. With such animals, as well as harmful mutant lines arising from spontaneous mutations and induced mutagenesis, consideration should be given to addressing and monitoring special husbandry and welfare needs associated with abnormal phenotypes. Records should be kept of biocontainment requirements, genetic and phenotypic information, and individual identification, and be communicated by the animal provider to the recipient. Archiving and sharing of genetically altered lines is recommended to facilitate the sourcing of these customised animals.

6. Animals captured in the wild

If *wild animals* are to be used, the capture technique should be humane and give due regard to human and animal health, welfare and safety. Field studies have the potential to cause disturbance to the habitat thus adversely affecting both target and non-target species. The potential for such disturbance should be assessed and minimised. The effects of a series of stressors, such as trapping, handling, transportation, sedation, anaesthesia, marking and sampling, can be cumulative, and may produce severe, possibly fatal, consequences. An assessment of the potential sources of stress and management plans to eliminate or minimise *distress* should form part of the project proposal.

7. Endangered species

Endangered species should only be used in exceptional circumstances where there is strong scientific justification that the desired outcomes cannot be achieved using any other species.

8. Transport, importation and exportation

Animals should be transported under conditions that are appropriate to their physiological and behavioural needs and pathogen free status, with care to ensure appropriate physical containment of the animals as well as exclusion of contaminants. The amount of time animals spend on a *journey* should be kept to a minimum. It is important to ensure that there is a well-constructed *journey* plan, with key staff identified who have responsibility for the animals and that relevant documentation accompanies animals during transport to avoid unnecessary delays during the *journey* from the sender to the receiving institution.

9. Risks to biosecurity

In order to minimise the risk of contamination of animals with unwanted infectious microorganisms or parasites that may compromise the health of animals or make them unsuitable for use in research, the microbiological status of the animals should be determined and regularly assessed. Appropriate biocontainment and bioexclusion measures should be practised to maintain their health status and, if appropriate, measures taken to prevent their exposure to certain human or environmental commensals.

Article 7.8.8.

Physical facility and environmental conditions

A well-planned, well-designed, well-constructed, and properly maintained facility should include animal holding rooms as well as areas for support services such as for procedures, surgery and necropsy, cage washing and appropriate storage. An animal facility should be designed and constructed in accordance with all applicable building standards. The design and size of an animal facility depend on the scope of institutional research activities, the animals to be housed, the physical relationship to the rest of the institution, and the geographic location. For indoor housing, non-porous, non-toxic and durable materials should be used which can be easily cleaned and sanitised. Animals should normally be housed in facilities designed for that purpose. Security measures, e.g. locks, fences, cameras, etc., should be in place to protect the animals and prevent their escape. For many species (e.g. rodents), environmental conditions should be controllable to minimise physiological changes which may be potentially confounding scientific variables and of welfare concern.

Important environmental parameters to consider include ventilation, temperature and humidity, lighting and noise:

1. Ventilation

The volume and physical characteristics of the air supplied to a room and its diffusion pattern influence the ventilation of an animal's primary enclosure and are thus important determinants of its microenvironment. Factors to consider when determining the air exchange rate include range of possible heat loads; the species, size, and number of animals involved; the type of bedding or frequency of cage changing; the room dimensions; and the efficiency of air distribution from the secondary to the primary enclosure. Control of air pressure differentials is an important tool for biocontainment and bioexclusion.

2. Temperature and humidity

Environmental temperature is a physical factor which has a profound effect on the welfare of animals. Typically, animal room temperature should be monitored and controlled. The range of daily fluctuations should be appropriately limited to avoid repeated demands on the animals' metabolic and behavioural processes to compensate for large changes in the thermal environment as well as to promote reproducible and valid scientific data. Relative humidity may also be controlled where appropriate for the species.

3. Lighting

Light can affect the physiology, morphology and behaviour of various animals. In general, lighting should be diffused throughout an animal holding area and provide appropriate illumination for the welfare of the animals while facilitating good husbandry practices, adequate inspection of animals and safe working conditions for personnel. It may also be necessary to control the light/dark cycle.

4. Noise

Separation of human and animal areas minimises disturbance to animal occupants of the facility. Noisy animals, such as dogs, pigs, goats and nonhuman primates, should be housed in a manner which ensures they do not adversely affect the welfare of quieter animals, such as rodents, rabbits and cats. Consideration should be given to insulating holding rooms and procedure rooms to mitigate the effects of noise sources. Many species are sensitive to high frequency sounds and thus the location of potential sources of ultrasound should be considered.

Article 7.8.9.

Husbandry

Good husbandry practices enhance the health and welfare of the animals used and contributes to the scientific validity of animal research. Animal care and accommodation should, as a minimum, demonstrably conform to relevant published animal care, accommodation and husbandry guidelines and regulations.

The housing environment and husbandry practices should take into consideration the normal behaviour of the species, including their social behaviour and age of the animal, and should minimise stress to the animal. During the conduct of husbandry procedures, personnel should be keenly aware of their potential impact on the animals' welfare.

1. Transportation

See Article 7.8.10.

2. Acclimatisation

Newly received animals should be given a period for physiological and behavioural stabilisation before their use. The length of time for stabilisation will depend on the type and duration of transportation, the age and species involved, place of origin, and the intended use of the animals. Facilities should be available to isolate animals showing signs of ill health.

3. Cages and pens

Cages and pens should be made out of material that can be readily cleaned and decontaminated. Their design should be such that the animals are unlikely to injure themselves. Space allocations should be reviewed and modified as necessary to address individual housing situations and animal needs (for example, for prenatal and postnatal care, obese animals, and group or individual housing). Both the quantity and quality of space provided is important. Whenever it is appropriate, social animals should be housed in pairs or groups, rather than individually, provided that such housing is not contraindicated by the protocol in question and does not pose an undue risk to the animals.

4. Enrichment

Animals should be housed with a goal of maximising species appropriate behaviours and avoiding or minimising stress induced behaviours. One way to achieve this is to enrich the structural and social environment of the animals and to provide opportunities for physical and cognitive activity. Such provision should not compromise the health and safety of the animals or people, nor interfere with the scientific goals.

5. Feeding

Provision should be made for each animal to have access to *feed* to satisfy its physiological needs. Precautions should be taken in packing, transporting, storing and preparing *feed* to avoid chemical, physical and microbiological contamination, deterioration or destruction. Utensils used for feeding should be regularly cleaned and, if necessary, sterilised.

6. Water

Uncontaminated potable drinking water should normally be available at all times. Watering devices, such as drinking tubes and automatic watering systems, should be checked daily to ensure their proper maintenance, cleanliness, and operation.

7. Bedding

Animals should have appropriate bedding provided, with additional nesting material if appropriate to the species. Animal bedding is a controllable environmental factor that can influence experimental data and *animal welfare*. Bedding should be dry, absorbent, non-dusty, non-toxic and free from infectious agents, vermin or chemical contamination. Soiled bedding should be removed and replaced with fresh material as often as is necessary to keep the animals clean and dry.

8. Hygiene

The successful operation of a facility depends very much on good hygiene. Special care should be taken to avoid spreading *infection* between animals through fomites, including through personnel traffic between animal rooms. Adequate routines and facilities for the cleaning, washing, decontamination and, when necessary, sterilisation of cages, cage accessories and other equipment should be established. A very high standard of cleanliness and organisation should also be maintained throughout the facility.

9. Identification

Animal identification is an important component of record keeping. Animals may be identified individually or by group. Where it is desirable to individually identify animals, this should be done by a reliable and the least painful method.

10. Handling

Staff dealing with animals should have a caring and respectful attitude towards the animals and be competent in handling and restraint. Familiarising animals to handling during routine husbandry and procedures reduces stress both to animals and personnel. For some species, for example dogs and non-human primates, a training programme to encourage cooperation during procedures can be beneficial to the animals, the animal care staff and the scientific programme. For certain species, social contact with humans should be a priority. However, in some cases handling should be avoided. This may be particularly the case with *wild animals*. Consideration should be given to setting up habituation and training programmes suitable for the animals, the procedures and length of projects.

Article 7.8.10.

Transportation

Transportation is a typically stressful experience for animals. Therefore, every precaution should be taken to avoid unnecessary stress caused by inadequate ventilation, exposure to extreme temperatures, lack of feed and water, long delays, etc. General recommendations are made in Chapters 7.3. and 7.4. There may be a justifiable reason to transport animals whose welfare is compromised as a consequence of scientific procedures which the animals are under-going or for which there are intended. In such cases, every precaution should be taken to avoid further stress. In addition, animals should be transported under conditions and in *containers* that are appropriate to their physiological and behavioural needs and pathogen free status, with care to ensure appropriate physical containment and safety of the animals. A contingency plan which addresses any possible delays should be in place and the name of an emergency contact person should be prominently displayed on the *container*.

- 1) The source of animals and therefore the mode and conditions of transport should be considered in the project proposal review described in point 1 c) of Article 7.8.4.
 - a) The consigner and consignee should coordinate the means, route and duration of transport with emphasis on the potential impact on the health and welfare of the animal(s).
 - b) The potential for delays in transportation should be anticipated and avoided.
- 2) The documentation required for international transport should be based on the WOAH Model Veterinary Certificate for International Trade in Laboratory Animals (See Chapter 5.13.):
 - a) There should be assurance that complete, relevant and legible documentation accompanies animals during transport to avoid unnecessary delays during the *journey* from the sender to the receiving institution.
 - b) Electronic certificates should be implemented, wherever possible.
- 3) There should be a well-defined *journey* plan, commencing from the point when animals are placed in their *containers* until they are removed from the *containers* at their final destination:
 - a) The *journey* plan should be designed so that the time in transit is the shortest possible and most comfortable for the animal. Where *journeys* of some distance are involved, this is often best achieved through air transport, preferably by direct routes.
 - b) Key staff should be identified who have responsibility for the animals and have the authority for making decisions in unforeseen circumstances. Such staff should be contactable at all times.
 - c) The *journey* plan should be under the general oversight of a *veterinarian* or other competent person, knowledgeable and experienced in the biology and needs of the particular species. The following should specifically be addressed:
 - i) Some animals, such as genetically altered animals, may have special requirements.
 - ii) Issues of biosecurity and bioexclusion, e.g. through *container* design and handling.
- 4) In accordance with Chapters 7.3. and 7.4. and IATA regulations, an appropriate environment, such as *container* design and construction, temperature, food and water, should be provided to the animal throughout the planned *journey*. Adequate supplies of food, water and bedding should be provided to accommodate a delay of at least 24 hours.
- 5) Personnel handling animals throughout the planned *journey* should be trained in the basic needs of animals and in good handling practices for the species to facilitate the *loading* and *unloading* of animals.
- 6) Delivery
 - a) Consignments of animals should be accepted into the facility without avoidable delay and, after inspection, should be removed from their *container* under conditions compatible with their pathogen free status.
 - b) They should then be transferred to clean cages or pens and be supplied with feed and water as appropriate.
 - c) Social animals transported in established pairs or groups should be maintained in these on arrival.

NB: FIRST ADOPTED IN 2010; MOST RECENT UPDATE ADOPTED IN 2023.

CHAPTER 7.9.

ANIMAL WELFARE AND BEEF CATTLE PRODUCTION SYSTEMS

Article 7.9.1.

Definition

Beef cattle production systems are defined as all commercial cattle production systems where the purpose of the operation includes some or all of the breeding, rearing and finishing of cattle intended for beef consumption.

Article 7.9.2.

Scope

This chapter addresses the welfare aspects of beef cattle production systems, from birth through to finishing. This scope does not include veal production.

Article 7.9.3.

Commercial beef cattle production systems

Commercial beef cattle production systems include:

1. Intensive

These are systems where cattle are in confinement and are fully dependent on humans to provide for basic animal needs such as food, shelter and water on a daily basis.

2. Extensive

These are systems where cattle have the freedom to roam outdoors, and where the cattle have some autonomy over diet selection (through grazing), water consumption and access to shelter.

3. Semi intensive

These are systems where cattle are exposed to any combination of both intensive and extensive husbandry methods, either simultaneously, or varied in accordance with changes in climatic conditions or physiological state of the cattle.

Article 7.9.4.

Criteria or measurables for the welfare of beef cattle

The following outcome-based measurables, specifically animal-based measurables, can be useful indicators of *animal welfare*. The use of these indicators and the appropriate thresholds should be adapted to the different situations where beef cattle are managed. Consideration should also be given to the design of the system.

1. Behaviour

Certain behaviours could indicate an *animal welfare* problem. These include decreased *feed* intake, increased respiratory rate or panting (assessed by panting score), and the demonstration of stereotypic, aggressive, depressive or other abnormal behaviours.

2. Morbidity rates

Morbidity rates, including disease, lameness, post-procedural complication and injury rates, above recognised thresholds may be direct or indirect indicators of the *animal welfare* status of the whole *herd*. Understanding the aetiology of the disease or syndrome is important for detecting potential *animal welfare* problems. Scoring systems, such as lameness scoring, can provide additional information.

Post-mortem examination is useful to establish causes of death in cattle. Both clinical and post-mortem pathology could be utilised as an indicator of disease, injuries and other problems that may compromise *animal welfare*.

3. Mortality rates

Mortality rates, like morbidity rates, may be direct or indirect indicators of the *animal welfare* status. Depending on the production system, estimates of mortality rates can be obtained by analysing causes of death and the rate and temporo-spatial pattern of mortality. Mortality rates should be recorded regularly, i.e. daily, monthly, annually or with reference to key husbandry activities within the production cycle.

4. Changes in weight and body condition

In growing animals, weight gain may be an indicator of animal health and *animal welfare*. Poor body condition and significant weight loss may be an indicator of compromised welfare.

5. Reproductive efficiency

Reproductive efficiency can be an indicator of animal health and *animal welfare* status. Poor reproductive performance can indicate *animal welfare* problems. Examples may include:

- anoestrus or extended post-partum interval,
- low conception rates,
- high abortion rates,
- high rates of dystocia.

6. Physical appearance

Physical appearance may be an indicator of animal health and *animal welfare*, as well as the conditions of management. Attributes of physical appearance that may indicate compromised welfare include:

- presence of ectoparasites,
- abnormal coat colour or texture or excessive soiling with faeces, mud or dirt,
- dehydration,
- emaciation.

7. Handling responses

Improper handling can result in fear and *distress* in cattle. Indicators could include:

- chute or race exit speed,
- chute or race behaviour score,
- percentage of animals slipping or falling,
- percentage of animals moved with an electric goad,
- percentage of animals striking fences or gates,
- percentage of animals injured during handling, such as broken horns, broken legs, and lacerations,
- percentage of animals vocalizing during restraint.

8. Complications due to routine procedure management

Surgical and non-surgical procedures are commonly performed in beef cattle for improving animal performance, facilitating management, and improving human safety and *animal welfare*. However, if these procedures are not performed properly, *animal welfare* can be compromised. Indicators of such problems could include:

- post procedure *infection* and swelling,
- myiasis,
- mortality.

Article 7.9.5.

Recommendations

Each recommendation includes a list of relevant outcome-based measurables derived from Article 7.9.4. This does not exclude other measures being used where appropriate.

1. Biosecurity and animal health

a) Biosecurity and disease prevention

Biosecurity means a set of measures designed to maintain a *herd* at a particular health status and to prevent the entry or spread of pathogenic agents.

Biosecurity plans should be designed and implemented, commensurate with the desired *herd* health status and current disease risk and, for WOAH *listed diseases* in accordance with relevant recommendations found in the *Terrestrial Code*.

These *biosecurity plans* should address the control of the major sources and pathways for spread of pathogenic agents:

- i) cattle,
- ii) other animals,
- iii) people,
- iv) equipment,
- v) vehicles,
- vi) air,
- vii) water supply,
- viii) *feed*.

Outcome-based measurables: morbidity rate, mortality rate, reproductive efficiency, changes in weight and body condition.

b) Animal health management

Animal health management means a system designed to optimise the physical and behavioural health and welfare of the cattle *herd*. It includes the prevention, treatment and control of diseases and conditions affecting the *herd*, including the recording of illnesses, injuries, mortalities and medical treatments where appropriate.

There should be an effective programme for the prevention and treatment of diseases and conditions consistent with the programmes established by a qualified *veterinarian* as appropriate.

Those responsible for the care of cattle should be aware of the signs of ill-health or *distress*, such as reduced *feed* and water intake, changes in weight and body condition, changes in behaviour or abnormal physical appearance.

Cattle at higher risk of disease or *distress* will require more frequent inspection by *animal handlers*. If *animal handlers* are not able to correct the causes of ill-health or *distress* or if they suspect the presence of a listed reportable disease they should seek advice from those having training and experience, such as *veterinarians* or other qualified advisers.

Vaccinations and other treatments administered to cattle should be undertaken by people skilled in the procedures and on the basis of veterinary or other expert advice.

Animal handlers should have experience in recognising and dealing with non-ambulatory cattle. They should also have experience in managing chronically ill or injured cattle.

Non-ambulatory cattle should have access to water at all times and be provided with *feed* at least once daily. They should not be transported or moved unless absolutely necessary for treatment or diagnosis. Such movements should be done carefully using methods avoiding dragging or excessive lifting.

When treatment is attempted, cattle that are unable to stand up unaided and refuse to eat or drink should be killed humanely in accordance with Chapter 7.5. as soon as recovery is deemed unlikely.

Outcome-based measurables: morbidity rate, mortality rate, reproductive efficiency, behaviour, physical appearance, and changes in weight and body condition.

2. Environment

a) Thermal environment

Although cattle can adapt to a wide range of thermal environments particularly if appropriate breeds are used for the anticipated conditions, sudden fluctuations in weather can cause heat or cold stress.

i) Heat stress

The risk of heat stress for cattle is influenced by environmental factors including air temperature, relative humidity and wind speed, and animal factors including breed, age, body condition, metabolic rate and coat colour and density.

Animal handlers should be aware of the risk that heat stress poses to cattle. If conditions are expected to induce heat stress, routine daily activities that require moving cattle should cease. If the risk of heat stress reaches very high levels the *animal handlers* should institute an emergency action plan that could include reduction of stocking density, provision of shade, free access to drinking water, and cooling by the use of sprinkled water that penetrates the hair coat.

Outcome-based measurables: behaviour, including panting score and respiratory rate, morbidity rate, mortality rate.

ii) Cold stress

Protection from extreme weather conditions should be provided when these conditions are likely to create a serious risk to the welfare of cattle, particularly in neonates and young cattle and others that are physiologically compromised. This could be provided by natural or man-made shelter structures.

Animal handlers should also ensure that cattle have access to adequate feed and water during cold stress. During extreme cold weather conditions, *animal handlers* should institute an emergency action plan to provide cattle with shelter, appropriate feed and water.

Outcome-based measurables: mortality rates, physical appearance, behaviour including abnormal postures, shivering and huddling.

b) Lighting

Confined cattle that do not have access to natural light should be provided with supplementary lighting which follow natural periodicity sufficient for their health and welfare, to facilitate natural behaviour patterns and to allow adequate inspection of the cattle.

Outcome-based measurables: behaviour, morbidity, physical appearance.

c) Air quality

Good air quality is an important factor for the health and welfare of cattle. It is affected by air constituents such as gases, dust and micro-organisms, and is strongly influenced by management, particularly in intensive systems. The air composition is influenced by the stocking density, the size of the cattle, flooring, bedding, waste management, building design and ventilation system.

Proper ventilation is important for effective heat dissipation in cattle and preventing the buildup of NH₃ and effluent gases in the confinement unit. Poor air quality and ventilation are risk factors for respiratory discomfort and diseases. The ammonia level in enclosed housing should not exceed 25 ppm.

Outcome-based measurables: morbidity rate, behaviour, mortality rate, changes in weight and body condition.

d) Noise

Cattle are adaptable to different levels and types of noise. However, exposure of cattle to sudden or loud noises should be minimised where possible to prevent stress and fear reactions (e.g. stampede). Ventilation fans, feeding machinery or other indoor or outdoor equipment should be constructed, placed, operated and maintained in such a way that they cause the least possible amount of noise.

Outcome-based measurables: behaviour.

e) Nutrition

The nutrient requirements of beef cattle have been well defined. Energy, protein, mineral and vitamin contents of the diet are major factors determining the growth, feed efficiency, reproductive efficiency, and body composition.

Cattle should be provided with access to an appropriate quantity and quality of balanced nutrition that meets their physiological needs. Where cattle are maintained in extensive conditions, short term exposure to climatic extremes may prevent access to nutrition that meets their daily physiological needs. In such circumstances the *animal handler* should ensure that the period of reduced nutrition is not prolonged and that mitigation strategies are implemented if welfare is at risk of being compromised.

Animal handlers should have adequate knowledge of appropriate body condition for their cattle and should not allow body condition to fall outside an acceptable range. If supplementary *feed* is not available, steps should be taken to avoid starvation, including *slaughter*, sale or relocation of the cattle, or humane *killing*.

Feedstuffs and *feed ingredients* should be of satisfactory quality to meet nutritional needs. Where appropriate, *feed* and *feed ingredients* should be tested for the presence of substances that would adversely impact on animal health.

Cattle in intensive production systems typically consume diets that contain a high proportion of grain(s) (corn, milo, barley, grain by-products) and a smaller proportion of roughages (hay, straw, silage, hulls, etc.). Diets with insufficient roughage can contribute to abnormal oral behaviour in finishing cattle, such as tongue rolling. As the proportion of grain increases in the diet, the relative risk of digestive upset in cattle increases. *Animal handlers* should understand the impact of cattle size and age, weather patterns, diet composition and sudden dietary changes in respect to digestive upsets and their negative consequences (acidosis, bloat, liver abscess, laminitis). Where appropriate beef producers should consult a cattle nutritionist for advice on ration formulation and feeding programmes.

Beef producers should become familiar with potential micronutrient deficiencies or excesses for intensive and extensive production systems in their respective geographical areas and use appropriately formulated supplements where necessary.

All cattle need an adequate supply and access to palatable water that meets their physiological requirements and is free from contaminants hazardous to cattle health.

Outcome-based measurables: mortality rates, morbidity rates, behaviour, changes in weight and body condition, reproductive efficiency.

f) Flooring, bedding, resting surfaces and outdoor areas

In all production systems cattle need a well-drained and comfortable place to rest. All cattle in a group should have sufficient space to lie down and rest at the same time.

Pen floor management in intensive production systems can have a significant impact on cattle welfare. Where there are areas that are not suitable for resting such as excessive water and faecal accumulation, these areas should not be of a depth that would compromise welfare and should not comprise the whole of usable area available to the cattle.

Slopes of pens should be maintained to allow water to drain away from *feed* troughs and not pool excessively in the pens.

Pens should be cleaned as conditions warrant and, at a minimum, after each production cycle.

If cattle are kept on a slatted floor, the slat and gap widths should be appropriate to the hoof size of the cattle to prevent injuries. Wherever possible, cattle on slatted floor should have access to a bedded area.

In straw or other bedding systems, the bedding should be maintained to provide cattle with a dry and comfortable place in which to lie.

Surfaces of concrete alleys should be grooved or appropriately textured to provide adequate footing for cattle.

Outcome-based measurables: morbidity rates (e.g. lameness, pressure sores), behaviour, changes in weight and body condition, and physical appearance.

g) Social environment

Management of cattle should take into account the social environment as it relates to *animal welfare*, particularly in intensive systems. Problem areas include: agonistic and mounting activity, mixing of heifers and

steers, feeding cattle of different size and age in the same pens, high stocking density, insufficient space at the feeder, insufficient water access and mixing of bulls.

Management of cattle in all systems should take into account the social interactions of cattle within groups. The *animal handler* should understand the dominance hierarchies that develop within different groups and focus on high risk animals, such as very young, very old, small or large size for cohort group, for evidence of bullying and excessive mounting behaviour. The *animal handler* should understand the risks of increased agonistic interactions between animals, particularly after mixing groups. Cattle that are suffering from excessive agonistic activity or mounting behaviour should be removed from the group.

Horned and non-horned cattle should not be mixed because of the risk of injury.

Adequate fencing should be provided to minimise any *animal welfare* problems that may be caused by mixing of inappropriate groups of cattle.

Outcome-based measurables: behaviour, physical appearance, changes in weight and body condition, morbidity and mortality rate.

h) Stocking density

High stocking densities may increase the occurrence of injuries and have an adverse effect on growth rate, feed efficiency and behaviour, such as locomotion, resting, feeding and drinking.

Stocking density should be managed such that crowding does not adversely affect normal behaviour of cattle. This includes the ability to lie down freely without the risk of injuries, move freely around the pen and access feed and water. Stocking density should also be managed such that weight gain and duration of time spent lying is not adversely affected by crowding. If abnormal behaviour is seen, measures should be taken such as reducing stocking density.

In extensive systems, stocking density should be matched to the available feed supply.

Outcome-based measurables: behaviour, morbidity rate, mortality rate, changes in weight and body condition, physical appearance.

i) Protection from predators

Cattle should be protected as much as possible from predators.

Outcome-based measurables: mortality rate, morbidity rate (injury rate), behaviour, physical appearance.

3. Management

a) Genetic selection

Welfare and health considerations, in addition to productivity, should be taken into account when choosing a breed or subspecies for a particular location or production system. Examples of these include nutritional maintenance requirement, ectoparasite resistance and heat tolerance.

Individual animals within a breed can be genetically selected to propagate offspring that exhibit traits beneficial to animal health and welfare. These include maternal instincts, ease of calving, birth weight, milking ability, body conformation and temperament.

Outcome-based measurables: morbidity rate, mortality rate, behaviour, physical appearance, reproductive efficiency.

b) Reproductive management

Dystocia can be a welfare risk to beef cattle. Heifers should not be bred before they are physically mature enough to ensure the health and welfare of both dam and calf at birth. The sire has a highly heritable effect on final calf size and as such can have a significant impact on ease of calving. Sire selection should therefore account for the maturity and size of the female. Heifers and cows should not be implanted, inseminated or mated in such a way that the progeny results in increased risk to dam and calf welfare.

Pregnant cows and heifers should be managed during pregnancy so as not to become too fat or too thin. Excessive fatness increases the risk of dystocia, and both excessive condition gain and loss increase the risk of metabolic disorders during late pregnancy or after parturition.

Where possible, cows and heifers should be monitored when they are close to calving. Animals observed to be having difficulty in calving should be assisted by a competent handler as soon as possible after they are detected.

Outcome-based measurables: morbidity rate (rate of dystocia), mortality rate (cow and calf), reproductive efficiency.

c) Colostrum

Receiving adequate immunity from colostrum generally depends on the volume and quality of colostrum ingested, and how soon after birth the calf receives it.

Where possible, *animal handlers* should ensure that calves receive sufficient colostrum within 24 hours of birth.

Outcome-based measurables: mortality rate, morbidity rate, changes in weight.

d) Weaning

For the purposes of this chapter, weaning means the transfer of the calf from a milk-based diet to a fibrous diet. In beef cattle production systems, weaning can be a stressful time in the calf's life.

Calves should be weaned only when their ruminant digestive system has developed sufficiently to enable them to maintain growth and welfare.

There are different weaning strategies utilised in the beef cattle production systems. These include abrupt separation, fence line separation and the use of devices placed in the nose of the calf to discourage suckling.

Special care should be taken if abrupt weaning is immediately followed by additional stressors such as transportation, as calves are at risk of increased morbidity under these circumstances.

If necessary, beef cattle producers should seek expert advice on the most appropriate time and method of weaning for their type of cattle and production system.

Outcome-based measurables: morbidity rate, mortality rate, behaviour, physical appearance, changes in weight and body condition.

e) Painful husbandry procedures

Husbandry practices that have the potential to cause *pain* are routinely practiced on cattle for reasons of production efficiency, animal health and welfare and human safety. These procedures should be performed in such a way as to minimise any *pain* and stress to the animal. These procedures should be performed at as early an age as possible or using anaesthesia or analgesia under the recommendation or supervision of a *veterinarian*.

Future options for enhancing *animal welfare* in relation to these procedures include: ceasing the procedure and addressing the current need for the operation through management strategies; breeding cattle that do not require the procedure; or replacing the current procedure with a non-surgical alternative that has been shown to enhance *animal welfare*.

Example of such interventions include: castration, dehorning, ovariectomy (spaying), tail docking, identification.

i) Castration

Castration of beef cattle is performed in many production systems to reduce inter-animal aggression, improve human safety, avoid the risk of unwanted pregnancies in the *herd*, and enhance production efficiency.

Where it is necessary to castrate beef cattle, producers should seek guidance from *veterinarians* as to the optimum method and timing for their type of cattle and production system.

Methods of castration used in beef cattle include surgical removal of the testes, ischaemic methods, and crushing and disruption of the spermatic cord.

Where practical, cattle should be castrated before the age of three months, or at the first available handling opportunity beyond this age using the method available that causes least *pain* or suffering to the animal.

Producers should seek guidance from *veterinarians* on the availability and advisability of analgesia or anaesthesia for castration of beef cattle, particularly in older animals.

Operators performing castration of beef cattle should be trained and competent in the procedure used, and be able to recognise the signs of complications.

ii) Dehorning (including disbudding)

Beef cattle are commonly dehorned in order to reduce animal injuries and hide damage, improve human safety, reduce damage to facilities and facilitate transport and handling. Where practical and appropriate for the production system, the selection of polled cattle is preferable to dehorning.

Where it is necessary to dehorn beef cattle, producers should seek guidance from veterinary advisers as to the optimum method and timing for their type of cattle and production system.

Where practical, cattle should be dehorned while horn development is still at the horn bud stage, or at the first available handling opportunity beyond this age. This is because the procedure involves less tissue trauma when horn development is still at the horn bud stage, and there is no attachment of horn to the skull of the animal.

Methods of dehorning (disbudding) at the horn bud stage include removal of the horn buds with a knife, thermal cautery of the horn buds, or the application of chemical paste to cauterise the horn buds.

Methods of dehorning when horn development has commenced involve the removal of the horn by cutting or sawing through the base of the horn close to the skull.

Producers should seek guidance from *veterinarians* on the availability and advisability of analgesia or anaesthesia for dehorning of beef cattle, particularly in older animals, where horn development is more advanced.

Operators performing dehorning of beef cattle should be trained and competent in the procedure used, and be able to recognise the signs of complications.

iii) Ovariectomy (spaying)

Ovariectomy of heifers is sometimes required to prevent unwanted pregnancies under extensive rangeland conditions. Surgical spaying should be performed by *veterinarians* or by highly trained operators. Producers should seek guidance from *veterinarians* on the availability and advisability of analgesia or anaesthesia for spaying of beef cattle. The use of analgesia or anaesthesia should be encouraged.

iv) Tail docking

Tail docking has been performed in beef cattle to prevent tail tip necrosis in confinement operations. Research shows that increasing space per animal and proper bedding are effective in preventing tail tip necrosis. Therefore it is not recommended for producers to dock the tails of beef cattle.

v) Identification

Ear-tagging, ear-notching, tattooing, freeze branding and radio frequency identification devices (RFID) are preferred methods of permanently identifying beef cattle from an *animal welfare* standpoint. In some situations however hot iron branding may be required or be the only practical method of permanent identifying beef cattle. If cattle are branded, it should be accomplished quickly, expertly and with the proper equipment. Identification systems should be established also in accordance with Chapter 4.2.

Outcome-based measurables: postprocedural complication rate, morbidity rate, behaviour, physical appearance, changes in weight and body condition.

f) Handling and inspection

Beef cattle should be inspected at intervals appropriate to the production systems and the risks to the health and welfare of the cattle. In intensive farming systems, cattle should be inspected at least once a day.

Some animals may benefit from more frequent inspection for example: neonatal calves, cows in late gestation, newly weaned calves, and cattle experiencing environmental stress and those that have undergone painful husbandry or veterinary surgical procedures.

Animal handlers need to be competent in recognising the clinical signs of health, disease and welfare of beef cattle. There should be a sufficient number of *animal handlers* to adequately ensure the health and welfare of the cattle.

Beef cattle identified as sick or injured should be given appropriate treatment at the first available opportunity by competent and trained *animal handlers*. If *animal handlers* are unable to provide appropriate treatment, the services of a *veterinarian* should be sought.

If the animal's condition suggests the prognosis is poor with little chance of recovery, the animal should be humanely killed as soon as possible. For a description of methods for the humane *killing* of beef cattle see Article 7.6.5.

Recommendations on the handling of cattle are also found in Chapter 7.5.

Where beef cattle are herded into a handling facility from extensive conditions, they should be moved quietly and calmly at the pace of the slowest animal. Weather conditions should be taken into account and cattle should not be herded in excessively hot or cold conditions. Cattle should not be driven to the point of *distress*. In situations where the gathering and handling of the cattle is likely to be stressful, consideration should be given to the avoidance of multiple handling events by combining necessary management procedures within the one handling event. Where handling itself is not stressful, management procedures should be staged over time to avoid additive stress of multiple procedures.

Properly trained dogs can be effective aids for cattle herding. Cattle are adaptable to different visual environments. However, exposure of cattle to sudden or persistent movement or visual contrasts should be minimised where possible to prevent stress and fear reactions.

Electroimmobilisation should not be used.

Outcome-based measurables: handling response, morbidity rate, mortality rate, behaviour, reproductive efficiency, changes in weight and body condition.

g) Personnel training

All people responsible for beef cattle should be competent in accordance with their responsibilities and should understand cattle husbandry, behaviour, *biosecurity*, general signs of disease, and indicators of poor *animal welfare* such as stress, *pain* and discomfort, and their alleviation.

Competence may be gained through formal training or practical experience.

Outcome-based measurables: handling response, morbidity rate, mortality rate, behaviour, reproductive efficiency, changes in weight and body condition.

h) Emergency plans

Where the failure of power, water and *feed* supply systems could compromise *animal welfare*, beef producers should have contingency plans to cover the failure of these systems. These plans may include the provision of fail-safe alarms to detect malfunctions, backup generators, access to maintenance providers, ability to store water on farm, access to water cartage services, adequate on-farm storage of *feed* and alternative *feed* supply.

Plans should be in place to minimise and mitigate the effects of natural disasters or extreme climatic conditions, such as heat stress, drought, blizzard, fire and flooding. Humane *killing* procedures for sick or injured cattle should be part of the emergency action plan. In times of drought, animal management decisions should be made as early as possible and these should include a consideration of reducing cattle numbers. Emergency plans should also cover the management of the farm in the face of an emergency disease *outbreak*, consistent with national programmes and recommendations of *Veterinary Services* as appropriate.

i) Location, construction and equipment

Farms for beef cattle should be situated in an appropriate geographical location for the health, welfare and productivity of the cattle.

All facilities for beef cattle should be constructed, maintained and operated to minimise the risk to the welfare of the cattle.

Equipment for handling and restraining beef cattle should only be used in a way that minimises the risk of injury, *pain* or *distress*.

Cattle in intensive or extensive production systems should be offered adequate space for comfort and socialisation.

Cattle that are kept tethered should, as a minimum, be able to lie down, and if tethered outdoors, turn around and walk.

In intensive production systems the feeder should be sufficiently large so that cattle have adequate access to *feed* and they should be clean and free of spoiled, mouldy, sour, packed or unpalatable *feed*. Also cattle should have access to water at all times.

Floors in housing facilities should be properly drained, and barns and races and chutes should provide traction to prevent injuries to cattle.

Races, chutes and pens should be free from sharp edges and protrusions to prevent injury to cattle.

Alleys and gates should be designed and operated to avoid impeding cattle movement. Slippery surfaces should be avoided. Grooved concrete, metal grating (not sharp), rubber mats or deep sand can be used to minimise slipping and falling. Quiet handling is essential to minimise slipping. When gates and catches are operated, excessive noise should be minimised, because it may cause *distress* to the cattle.

Hydraulic, pneumatic and manual restraining equipment should be adjusted, as appropriate, to the size of cattle to be handled. Hydraulic and pneumatic operated restraining equipment should have pressure limiting devices to prevent injuries. Regular cleaning and maintenance of working parts is imperative to ensure the system functions properly and is safe for the cattle.

Mechanical and electrical devices used in housing facilities should be safe for cattle.

Dipping baths are sometimes used in beef cattle production for ectoparasite control. Where these are used, they should be designed and operated to minimise the risk of crowding to prevent injury and drowning.

The loading of the cattle at the farms should be conducted accordingly to Chapters 7.2., 7.3. and 7.4.

Outcome-based measurables: handling response, morbidity rate, mortality rate, behaviour, changes in weight and body condition, physical appearance, lameness.

j) Humane killing

For sick and injured cattle a prompt diagnosis should be made to determine whether the animal should be humanely killed or receive additional care.

The decision to humanely kill an animal and the procedure itself should be undertaken by a competent person. Reasons for humane *killing* may include:

- i) severe emaciation, weak cattle that are non-ambulatory or at risk of becoming downers;
- ii) non-ambulatory cattle that will not stand up, refuse to eat or drink, have not responded to therapy;
- iii) rapid deterioration of a medical condition for which therapies have been unsuccessful;
- iv) severe, debilitating *pain*;
- v) compound (open) fracture;
- vi) spinal injury;
- vii) central nervous system disease; and
- viii) multiple joint *infections* with chronic weight loss.

For a description of methods for the humane *killing* of beef cattle see Article 7.6.5.

NB: FIRST ADOPTED IN 2012; MOST RECENT UPDATE ADOPTED IN 2013.

CHAPTER 7.10.

ANIMAL WELFARE AND BROILER CHICKEN PRODUCTION SYSTEMS

Article 7.10.1.

Definitions

For the purposes of this chapter the following definitions apply:

Broiler means a bird of the species *Gallus gallus* kept for commercial meat production. Poultry kept in village or backyard flocks are not included.

Harvesting means the catching and loading of birds on farm for transportation to the slaughterhouse/abattoir.

Article 7.10.2.

Scope

This chapter covers the production period from arrival of day-old birds on the farm to harvesting the broilers in commercial production systems. Such systems involve confinement of the birds, the application of biosecurity measures, and trade in the products of those birds, regardless of scale of production. These recommendations cover broilers kept in cages, on slatted floors, litter or dirt and indoors or outdoors.

Broiler production systems include:

1. Completely housed system

Broilers are completely confined in a poultry house, with or without environmental control.

2. Partially housed system

Broilers are kept in a poultry house with access to a restricted outdoor area.

3. Completely outdoors system

Broilers are not confined inside a poultry house at any time during the production period but are confined in a designated outdoor area.

This chapter should be read in conjunction with Chapters 7.2., 7.3. and 7.4. on the welfare of broilers during transport to the slaughterhouse/abattoir.

Article 7.10.3.

Criteria or measurables for the welfare of broilers

The welfare of broilers should be assessed using outcome-based measurables. Consideration should also be given to the resources provided and the design of the system. The following outcome-based measurables, specifically animal-based measurables, can be useful indicators of animal welfare. The use of these indicators and the appropriate thresholds should be adapted to the different situations where broilers are managed, also taking into account the strain of bird concerned.

Some criteria can be measured in the farm setting, such as gait, mortality and morbidity rates, while others are best measured at the slaughterhouse/abattoir. For example, at slaughter flocks can be assessed for presence of bruising, broken limbs and other injuries. The age of these lesions can help to determine the source. Back scratching and contact dermatitis and breast blisters are also easily observed at the slaughterhouse/abattoir. Other conditions such as

ascites, leg deformities, dehydration and disease conditions can also be assessed at *slaughter*. It is recommended that values for welfare measurables be determined with reference to appropriate national, sectoral or perhaps regional norms for commercial broiler production.

The following outcome-based criteria and measurables are useful indicators of broiler welfare:

1. Mortality, culling and morbidity

Daily, weekly and cumulative mortality, culling and morbidity rates should be within expected ranges. Any unforeseen increase in these rates could reflect an *animal welfare* problem.

2. Gait

Broilers are susceptible to developing a variety of infectious and non-infectious musculoskeletal disorders. These disorders may lead to lameness and to gait abnormalities. Broilers that are lame or have gait abnormalities may have difficulty reaching the food and water, may be trampled by other broilers, and may experience *pain*. Musculoskeletal problems have many causes, including genetics, nutrition, sanitation, lighting, litter quality, and other environmental and management factors. There are several gait scoring systems available.

3. Contact dermatitis

Contact dermatitis affects skin surfaces that have prolonged contact with wet litter or other wet flooring surfaces. The condition is manifested as blackened skin progressing to erosions and fibrosis on the lower surface of the foot pad, at the back of the hocks, and sometimes in the breast area. If severe, the foot and hock lesions may contribute to lameness and lead to secondary *infections*. Validated scoring systems for contact dermatitis have been developed for use in *slaughterhouse/abattoir*.

4. Feather condition

Evaluation of the feather condition of broilers provides useful information about aspects of welfare. Plumage dirtiness is correlated with contact dermatitis and lameness for individual birds or may be associated with the environment and production system. Plumage dirtiness can be assessed as part of on-farm inspections, at the time of harvesting or prior to plucking. A scoring system has been developed for this purpose.

5. Incidence of diseases, metabolic disorders and parasitic infestations

Ill-health, regardless of the cause, is a welfare concern, and may be exacerbated by poor environmental or husbandry management.

6. Behaviour

a) Fear behaviour

Fearful broilers show avoidance of humans, and this behaviour is seen in *flocks* where *animal handlers* walk through the poultry house quickly when performing their tasks rather than moving more slowly while interacting with the broilers. Fearfulness (e.g. of sudden loud noises) can also lead to the broilers piling on top of, and even suffocating, one another. Fearful broilers may be less productive. Validated methods have been developed for evaluating fearfulness.

b) Spatial distribution

Changes in the spatial distribution (e.g. huddling) of the birds may indicate thermal discomfort or the existence of areas of wet litter or uneven provision of light, food or water.

c) Panting and wing spreading

Excessive panting and wing spreading indicates heat stress or poor air quality, such as high levels of ammonia.

d) Dust bathing

Dust bathing is an intricate body maintenance behaviour performed by many birds, including broilers. During dust bathing, broilers work loose material, such as litter, through their feathers. Dust bathing helps to keep the feathers in good condition, which in turn helps to maintain body temperature and protect against skin injury. Reduced dust bathing behaviour in the *flock* may indicate problems with litter or range quality, such as litter or ground being wet or not friable.

e) Feeding, drinking and foraging

Reduced feeding or drinking behaviour can indicate management problems, including inadequate feeder or drinker space or placement, dietary imbalance, poor water quality, or *feed* contamination. Feeding and drinking behaviour are often depressed when broilers are ill, and intake may be also reduced during periods of heat stress and increased during cold stress. Foraging is the act of searching for food, typically by walking and pecking or scratching the litter substrate; reduced foraging activity could suggest problems with litter quality or presence of conditions that decrease bird movement.

f) Feather pecking and cannibalism

Feather pecking can result in significant feather loss and may lead to cannibalism. Cannibalism is the tearing of the flesh of another bird, and can result in severe injury. These abnormal behaviours have multi-factorial causes.

7. Water and feed consumption

Monitoring daily water consumption is a useful tool to indicate disease and other welfare conditions, taking into consideration ambient temperature, relative humidity, *feed* consumption and other related factors. Problems with the water supply can result in wet litter, diarrhoea, dermatitis or dehydration.

Changes in *feed* consumption can indicate unsuitability of *feed*, the presence of disease or other welfare problems.

8. Performance

- a) Growth rate (gr) - an index that indicates the average daily gain of weight per average broiler of a *flock*.
- b) Feed conversion - an index that measures the quantity of *feed* consumed by a *flock* relative to the total live weight harvested, expressed as the weight of *feed* required to produce one kg of broiler body weight.
- c) Liveability - an index that indicates the percentage of broilers present at the end of the production period. More commonly this indicator is measured as its opposite, mortality.

9. Injury rate

The rate of these injuries can indicate welfare problems in the *flock* during production or harvesting. Injuries include those due to other broilers (scratches, feather loss or wounding due to feather pecking and cannibalism) and those due to environmental conditions, such as skin lesions (e.g. contact dermatitis) and those due to human intervention, such as catching. The most prevalent injuries seen during catching are bruises, broken limbs, dislocated hips, and damaged wings.

10. Eye conditions

Conjunctivitis can indicate the presence of irritants such as dust and ammonia. High ammonia levels can also cause corneal burns and eventual blindness. Abnormal eye development can be associated with low light intensity.

11. Vocalisation

Vocalisation can indicate emotional states, both positive and negative. Interpretation of *flock* vocalisations is possible by experienced *animal handlers*.

Article 7.10.4.

Recommendations

1. Biosecurity and animal health

a) Biosecurity and disease prevention

Biosecurity programmes should be designed and implemented, commensurate with the best possible *flock* health status and current disease risk (endemic and exotic or transboundary) that is specific to each epidemiological group of broilers and in accordance with relevant recommendations in the *Terrestrial Code*.

These programmes should address the control of the major routes for transmission of diseases and pathogenic agents:

- i) direct transmission from other *poultry*, domesticated and wild animals and humans,
- ii) fomites, such as equipment, facilities and *vehicles*,
- iii) *vectors* (e.g. arthropods and rodents),
- iv) aerosols,
- v) water supply,
- vi) *feed*.

Outcome-based measurables: incidence of diseases, metabolic disorders and parasitic *infestations*, mortality, performance.

b) Animal health management, preventive medicine and veterinary treatment

Those responsible for the care of broilers should be aware of the signs of ill-health or *distress*, such as a change in *feed* and water intake, reduced growth, changes in behaviour, abnormal appearance of feathers, faeces, or other physical features.

If persons in charge are not able to identify the causes of diseases, ill-health or *distress*, or to correct these, or if they suspect the presence of a reportable disease, they should seek advice from *veterinarians* or other qualified advisers. Veterinary treatments should be prescribed by a *veterinarian*.

There should be an effective programme for the prevention and treatment of diseases consistent with the programmes established by *Veterinary Services* as appropriate.

Vaccinations and treatments should be administered, on the basis of veterinary or other expert advice, by personnel skilled in the procedures and with consideration for the welfare of the broilers.

Sick or injured broilers should be humanely killed as soon as possible. Similarly, killing broilers for diagnostic purposes should be done in a humane manner in accordance with Chapter 7.6.

Outcome-based measurables: incidence of diseases, metabolic disorders and parasitic *infestations*, mortality, performance, gait.

2. Environment and management

a) Thermal environment

Thermal conditions for broilers should be appropriate for their stage of development, and extremes of heat, humidity and cold should be avoided. For the growing stage, a heat index can assist in identifying the comfort zones for the broilers at varying temperature and relative humidity levels.

When environmental conditions move outside these zones, strategies should be used to mitigate the adverse effects on the broilers. These may include adjusting air speed, provision of heat, evaporative cooling and adjusting stocking density.

Management of the thermal environment should be checked frequently enough so that failure of the system would be noticed before it caused a welfare problem.

Outcome-based measurables: behaviour, mortality, contact dermatitis, water and *feed* consumption, performance, feather condition.

b) Lighting

There should be an adequate period of continuous light.

The light intensity during the light period should be sufficient and homogeneously distributed to allow the broilers to find *feed* and water after they are placed in the poultry house, to stimulate activity, and allow adequate inspection.

There should also be an adequate period of continuous darkness during each 24-hour period to allow the broilers to rest, to reduce stress and to promote normal behaviour, gait and good leg health.

There should be a period for gradual adjustment to lighting changes.

Outcome-based measurables: gait, metabolic disorders, performance, behaviour, eye condition, injury rate.

c) Air quality

Adequate ventilation is required at all times to provide fresh air, to remove waste gases such as carbon dioxide and ammonia, dust and excess moisture content from the environment.

Ammonia concentration should not routinely exceed 25 ppm at broiler level.

Dust levels should be kept to a minimum. Where the health and welfare of broilers depend on an artificial ventilation system, provision should be made for an appropriate back-up power and alarm system.

Outcome-based measurables: incidence of respiratory diseases, metabolic disorders, eye conditions, performance, contact dermatitis and behaviour.

d) Noise

Broilers are adaptable to different levels and types of noise. However, exposure of broilers to sudden or loud noises should be minimised where possible to prevent stress and fear reactions, such as piling. Ventilation fans, feeding machinery or other indoor or outdoor equipment should be constructed, placed, operated and maintained in such a way that they cause the least possible amount of noise.

Location of farms should, where possible, take into account existing local sources of noise.

Outcome-based measurables: daily mortality rate, morbidity, performance, injury rate, fear behaviour.

e) Nutrition

Broilers should always be fed a diet appropriate to their age and genetics, which contains adequate nutrients to meet their requirements for good health and welfare.

Feed and water should be acceptable to the broilers and free from contaminants at a concentration hazardous to broiler health.

The water system should be cleaned regularly to prevent growth of hazardous microorganisms.

Broilers should be provided with adequate access to feed on a daily basis. Water should be available continuously. Special provision should be made to enable young chicks access to appropriate feed and water.

Broilers that are physically unable to access feed or water should be humanely killed as soon as possible.

Outcome-based measurables: feed and water consumption, performance, behaviour, gait, incidence of diseases, metabolic disorders and parasitic infestations, mortality, injury rate.

f) Flooring, bedding, resting surfaces and litter quality

The floor of a poultry house should preferably be easy to clean and disinfect.

The provision of loose and dry bedding material is desirable in order to insulate the chicks from the ground and to encourage dust bathing and foraging.

Litter should be managed to minimise any detrimental effects on welfare and health. Poor litter quality can lead to contact dermatitis and breast blisters. Litter should be replaced or adequately treated when required to prevent diseases in the next flock.

Litter quality is partly related to the type of substrate used and partly to different management practices. The type of substrate should be chosen carefully. Litter should be maintained so that it is dry and friable and not dusty, caked or wet. Poor litter quality can result from a range of factors including water spillage, inappropriate feed composition, enteric infections, poor ventilation and overcrowding.

If broilers are kept on slatted floors, where a very humid climate precludes the use of other flooring substrates, the floors should be designed, constructed and maintained to adequately support the broilers, prevent injuries and ensure that manure can fall through or be adequately removed.

To prevent injury and keep them warm, day-old birds should be placed on an appropriate type of flooring suitable for their size.

If day-old birds are housed on litter, before they enter the poultry house, a layer of uncontaminated substrate, such as wood shavings, straw, rice husk, shredded paper, treated used litter should be added to a sufficient depth to allow normal behaviour and to separate them from the floor.

Outcome-based measurables: contact dermatitis, feather condition, gait, behaviour (dust bathing and foraging), eye conditions, incidence of diseases, metabolic disorders and parasitic infestations, performance.

g) Prevention of feather pecking and cannibalism

Feather pecking and cannibalism are rarely seen in broilers because of their young age. However, management methods, such as reducing light intensity, providing foraging materials, nutritional modifications, reducing stocking density, selecting the appropriate genetic stock should be implemented where feather pecking and cannibalism are a potential problem.

If these management strategies fail, therapeutic beak trimming is the last resort.

Outcome-based measurables: injury rate, behaviour, feather condition, mortality.

h) Stocking density

Broilers should be housed at a stocking density that allows them to access feed and water and to move and adjust their posture normally. The following factors should be taken into account: management capabilities,

ambient conditions, housing system, production system, litter quality, ventilation, *biosecurity* strategy, genetic stock, and market age and weight.

Outcome-based measurables: injury rate, contact dermatitis, mortality, behaviour, gait, incidence of diseases, metabolic disorders and parasitic *infestations*, performance, feather condition.

i) Outdoor areas

Broilers can be given access to outdoor areas as soon as they have sufficient feather cover and are old enough to range safely. There should be sufficient exit areas to allow them to leave and re-enter the poultry house freely.

Management of outdoor areas is important in partially housed and completely outdoors production systems. Land and pasture management measures should be taken to reduce the risk of broilers being infected by pathogenic agents or infested by parasites. This might include limiting the stocking density or using several pieces of land consecutively in rotation.

Outdoor areas should be placed on well drained ground and managed to minimise swampy conditions and mud.

Outdoor areas should provide shelter for broilers and be free from poisonous plants and contaminants.

Protection from adverse climatic conditions should be provided in completely outdoors systems.

Outcome-based measurables: behaviour, incidence of disease, metabolic disorders and parasitic *infestations*, performance, contact dermatitis, feather condition, injury rate, mortality, morbidity.

j) Protection from predators

Broilers should be protected from predators.

Outcome-based measurables: fear behaviour, mortality, injury rate.

k) Choice of broiler strain

Welfare and health considerations should balance any decisions on productivity and growth rate when choosing a broiler strain for a particular location or production system.

Outcome-based measurables: gait, metabolic disorders, contact dermatitis, mortality, behaviour, performance.

l) Painful interventions

Painful interventions, such as beak trimming, toe trimming and dubbing, should not be routinely practised on broilers.

If therapeutic beak trimming is required, it should be carried out by trained and skilled personnel at as early an age as possible and care should be taken to remove the minimum amount of beak necessary using a method which minimises *pain* and controls bleeding.

Surgical caponisation should not be performed without adequate *pain* and *infection* control methods and should only be performed by *veterinarians* or trained and skilled personnel under veterinary supervision.

Outcome-based measurables: mortality, culling and morbidity, behaviour.

m) Handling and inspection

Broilers should be inspected at least daily. Inspection should have three main objectives: to identify sick or injured broilers to treat or cull them, to detect and correct any welfare or health problem in the *flock*, and to pick up dead broilers.

Inspection should be done in such a way that broilers are not unnecessarily disturbed, for example *animal handlers* should move quietly and slowly through the *flock*.

When broilers are handled, they should not be injured or unnecessarily frightened or stressed.

Broilers which have an incurable illness, significant deformity or injury should be removed from the *flock* and killed humanely as soon as possible as described in Chapter 7.6.

Cervical dislocation is an accepted method for killing individual broilers if carried out competently as described in Article 7.6.17.

Outcome-based measurables: behaviour, performance, injury rate, mortality, vocalisation, morbidity.

n) Personnel training

All people responsible for the broilers should have received appropriate training or be able to demonstrate that they are competent to carry out their responsibilities and should have sufficient knowledge of broiler behaviour, handling techniques, emergency killing procedures, *biosecurity*, general signs of diseases, and indicators of poor *animal welfare* and procedures for their alleviation.

Outcome-based measurables: all measurables could apply.

o) Emergency plans

Broiler producers should have emergency plans to minimise and mitigate the consequences of natural disasters, disease outbreaks and the failure of mechanical equipment. Planning may include the provision of fail-safe alarm devices to detect malfunctions, backup generators, access to maintenance providers, alternative heating or cooling arrangements, ability to store water on farm, access to water cartage services, adequate on farm storage of feed and alternative feed supply and a plan for managing ventilation emergencies.

The emergency plans should be consistent with national programmes established or recommended by Veterinary Services. Humane killing procedures should be part of the emergency plan.

p) Location, construction and equipment of farms

The location of broiler farms should be chosen to be safe from the effects of fires and floods and other natural disasters to the extent practical. In addition farms should be sited to avoid or minimise biosecurity risks, exposure of broilers to chemical and physical contaminants, noise and adverse climatic conditions.

Broiler houses, outdoor areas and equipment to which broilers have access should be designed and maintained to avoid injury or pain to the broilers.

Broiler houses should be constructed and electrical and fuel installations should be fitted to minimise the risk of fire and other hazards.

Broiler producers should have a maintenance programme in place for all equipment the failure of which can jeopardise broiler welfare.

q) On farm harvesting

Broilers should not be subject to an excessive period of feed withdrawal prior to the expected slaughter time. Water should be available up to the time of harvesting.

Broilers that are not fit for loading or transport because they are sick or injured should be killed humanely.

Catching should be carried out by skilled animal handlers and every attempt should be made to minimise stress and fear reactions, and injury. If a broiler is injured during catching, it should be killed humanely.

Broilers should not be picked up by their neck or wings.

Broilers should be carefully placed in the transport container.

Mechanical catchers, where used, should be designed, operated and maintained to minimise injury, stress and fear to the broilers. A contingency plan is advisable in case of mechanical failure.

Catching should preferably be carried out under dim or blue light to calm the broilers.

Catching should be scheduled to minimise the time to slaughter as well as climatic stress during catching, transport and holding.

Stocking density in transport containers should suit climatic conditions and maintain comfort.

Containers should be designed and maintained to avoid injury, and they should be cleaned and, if necessary, disinfected regularly.

Outcome-based measurables: behaviour, vocalisation, injury rate, mortality rate at harvesting and on arrival at the slaughterhouse/abattoir.

NB: FIRST ADOPTED IN 2013; MOST RECENT UPDATE ADOPTED IN 2016.

CHAPTER 7.11.

ANIMAL WELFARE AND DAIRY CATTLE PRODUCTION SYSTEMS

Article 7.11.1.

Definition

Dairy cattle production systems are defined as all commercial cattle production systems where the purpose of the operation includes some or all of the breeding, rearing and management of cattle intended for production of milk.

Article 7.11.2.

Scope

This chapter addresses the welfare aspects of dairy cattle production systems.

Article 7.11.3.

Commercial dairy cattle production systems

Dairy cattle in commercial production may be kept in housed or pastured systems, or a combination of both:

1. Housed

These are systems where cattle are kept on a formed surface, indoors or outdoors, and are fully dependent on humans to provide for basic animal needs such as food, shelter and water. The type of housing will depend on the environment, climatic conditions and management system. The animals may be housed unrestrained or tethered, within this housing system.

2. Pastured

These are systems where cattle live outdoors, and have some autonomy over diet selection, water consumption and access to shelter. Pastured systems do not involve any housing except that required for milking.

3. Combination systems

These are systems where cattle are managed in any combination of housed and pasture production systems, either simultaneously, or varied in accordance with weather or physiological state of the cattle.

Article 7.11.4.

Criteria (or measurables) for the welfare of dairy cattle

The following outcome-based criteria, specifically animal-based criteria, can be useful indicators of *animal welfare*. Consideration should also be given to the design of the system and animal management practices. The use of these indicators and their appropriate thresholds should be adapted to the different situations where dairy cattle are managed. These criteria can be considered as a tool to monitor the impact of design and management, given that both of these can affect *animal welfare*.

1. Behaviour

Certain behaviours could indicate an *animal welfare* problem. These include decreased feed intake, altered locomotory behaviour and posture, altered lying time, altered respiratory rate and panting, coughing, shivering and huddling, excessive grooming and the demonstration of stereotypic, agonistic, depressive or other abnormal behaviours.

2. Morbidity rate

Morbidity rates, including for infectious and metabolic diseases, lameness, peri-partum and post-procedural complications and injury rates, above recognised thresholds, may be direct or indirect indicators of the *animal welfare* status of the whole *herd*. Understanding the aetiology of the disease or syndrome is important for detecting potential *animal welfare* problems. Mastitis, and hoof, reproductive and metabolic diseases are also particularly important animal health problems for adult dairy cows. Scoring systems, such as for body condition, lameness and milk quality, can provide additional information.

Both clinical examination and pathology should be utilised as an indicator of disease, injuries and other problems that may compromise *animal welfare*.

3. Mortality and culling rates

Mortality and culling rates affect the length of productive life and, like morbidity rates, may be direct or indirect indicators of the *animal welfare* status. Depending on the production system, estimates of mortality and culling rates can be obtained by analysing death and culling and their temporal and spatial patterns of occurrence. Mortality and culling, and their causes, should be recorded regularly, e.g. daily, monthly, annually or with reference to key husbandry activities within the production cycle.

Necropsy is useful in establishing the cause of death.

4. Changes in body weight, body condition and milk yield

In growing animals, body weight changes outside the expected growth rate, especially excessive sudden loss, are indicators of poor animal health or *animal welfare*. Future performance, including milk yield and fertility, of replacement heifers can be affected by under- or over-nutrition at different stages of rearing.

In lactating animals, body condition outside an acceptable range, significant body weight change and significant decrease in milk yield may be indicators of compromised welfare.

In non-lactating animals and bulls, body condition outside an acceptable range and significant body weight change may be indicators of compromised welfare.

5. Reproductive efficiency

Reproductive efficiency can be an indicator of animal health and *animal welfare* status. Poor reproductive performance, compared with the targets expected for a particular breed, can indicate *animal welfare* problems.

Examples may include:

- anoestrus or extended post-partum interval,
- low conception rates,
- high abortion rates,
- high rates of dystocia,
- retained placenta,
- metritis,
- loss of fertility in breeding bulls.

6. Physical appearance

Physical appearance may be an indicator of animal health and *animal welfare*, as well as the conditions of management. Attributes of physical appearance that may indicate compromised welfare include:

- presence of ectoparasites,
- abnormal coat colour, texture or hair loss,
- excessive soiling with faeces, mud or dirt (cleanliness),
- swellings, injuries or lesions,
- discharges (e.g. from nose, eyes, reproductive tract),
- feet abnormalities,
- abnormal posture (e.g. rounded back, head low),
- emaciation or dehydration.

7. Handling responses

Improper handling can result in fear and *distress* in cattle. Indicators include:

- evidence of poor human-animal relationship, such as excessive flight distance,
- negative behaviour at milking time, such as reluctance to enter the milking parlour, kicking, vocalisation,

- animals striking restraints or gates,
- injuries sustained during handling, such as bruising, lacerations, broken horns or tails and fractured legs,
- animals vocalising abnormally or excessively during restraint and handling,
- disturbed behaviour in the chute or race such as repeated reluctance to enter,
- animals slipping or falling.

8. Complications from common procedures

Surgical and non-surgical procedures may be performed in dairy cattle for facilitating management, improving human safety and *animal welfare* (e.g. disbudding, hoof trimming), and treatment of certain conditions (e.g. displaced abomasum). However, if these procedures are not performed properly, *animal welfare* can be compromised. Indicators of such problems could include:

- post procedure infection, swelling and *pain* behaviour,
- reduced *feed* and water intake,
- post procedure body condition and weight loss,
- morbidity and mortality.

Article 7.11.5.

Recommendations

Ensuring good welfare of dairy cattle is contingent on several management factors, including system design, environmental management, and animal management practices which include responsible husbandry and provision of appropriate care. Serious problems can arise in any system if one or more of these elements are lacking.

Articles 7.11.6. and 7.11.7. provide recommendations for measures applied to dairy cattle.

Each recommendation includes a list of outcome-based measurables derived from Article 7.11.4. This does not exclude other measures being used where appropriate.

Article 7.11.6.

Recommendations on system design and management including physical environment

When new facilities are planned or existing facilities are modified, professional advice on design in regards to animal welfare and health should be sought.

Many aspects of the environment can impact the welfare and health of dairy cattle. These include thermal environment, air quality, lighting, noise, etc.

1. Thermal environment

Although cattle can adapt to a wide range of thermal environments particularly if appropriate breeds are used for the anticipated conditions, sudden fluctuations in weather can cause heat or cold stress.

a) Heat stress

The risk of heat stress for cattle is influenced by environmental factors including air temperature, relative humidity, wind speed, animal density (area and volume available per animal), shade availability, animal factors including breed, age, body condition, metabolic rate and stage of lactation, and coat colour and density.

Animal handlers should be aware of the risk that heat stress poses to cattle and of the thresholds in relation to heat and humidity that may require action. As conditions change, routine daily activities that require moving

cattle should be amended appropriately. If the risk of heat stress reaches very high levels the *animal handlers* should institute an emergency action plan that gives priority to access to additional water and could include provision of shade, fans, reduction of animal density, and provision of cooling systems as appropriate for the local conditions.

Outcome-based measurables: *feed* and water intake; behaviour, especially respiratory rate and panting; physical appearance, especially dehydration; morbidity rate; mortality rate; changes in milk yield.

b) Cold stress

Protection from extreme weather conditions should be provided when these conditions are likely to create a serious risk to the welfare of cattle, particularly in neonates and young cattle and others that are physiologically compromised. This could be provided by extra bedding and natural or man-made shelters.

During extreme cold weather conditions, *animal handlers* should institute an emergency action plan to provide cattle with shelter, adequate *feed* and water.

Outcome-based measurables: mortality and morbidity rates; physical appearance; behaviour, especially abnormal postures, shivering and huddling; growth rate; body condition; weight loss.

2. Lighting

Housed cattle that do not have sufficient access to natural light should be provided with supplementary lighting which follows natural periodicity sufficient for their health and welfare, to facilitate natural behaviour patterns and to allow adequate and safe inspection of the cattle. The lighting should not cause discomfort to the animals. Housed dairy cows should be provided with subdued night time lighting. Entrance to and exit from restraint facilities and their surrounding area should be well lit.

Outcome-based measurables: behaviour, especially altered locomotory behaviour; morbidity; physical appearance.

3. Air quality

Good air quality and ventilation are important for the health and welfare of cattle and reduce the risk of respiratory discomfort and diseases. Air quality is affected by air constituents such as gases, dust and micro-organisms, and is influenced strongly by management and building design in housed systems. Air composition is influenced by animal density, the size of the cattle, flooring, bedding, waste management, building design and ventilation system.

Proper ventilation is important for effective heat dissipation in cattle and to prevent the build-up of effluent gases (e.g. ammonia and hydrogen sulphide), including those from manure and dust in the housing unit. The ammonia level in enclosed housing should not exceed 25 ppm. A useful indicator is that if air quality is unpleasant for humans it is also likely to be a problem for cattle.

Outcome-based measurables: morbidity rate; mortality rate; behaviour, especially respiratory rate or panting; coughing; changes in weight and body condition; growth rate; physical appearance, especially wet coat.

4. Noise

Cattle are adaptable to different levels and types of noise. However, exposure of cattle to sudden and unexpected noises, including from personnel, should be minimised where possible to prevent stress and fear reactions. Ventilation fans, alarms, feeding machinery or other indoor or outdoor equipment should be constructed, placed, operated and maintained in a manner that minimises noise.

Outcome-based measurables: behaviour especially agitation and nervousness; changes in milk yield.

5. Flooring, bedding, resting surfaces and outdoor areas

In all production systems cattle need a well-drained and comfortable place to rest. All cattle in a group should have sufficient space to lie down and rest at the same time.

Particular attention should be given to the provisions for areas used for calving. The environment in such areas (e.g. floors, bedding, temperature, calving pen and hygiene) should be appropriate to ensure the welfare of calving cows and new born calves.

In housed systems calving areas should be thoroughly cleaned and provided with fresh bedding between each calving. Group pens for calving should be managed based on the principle “all in - all out”. The group calving pen should be thoroughly cleaned and provided with fresh bedding between each animal group. The time interval between first and last calving of cows kept in the same group calving pen should be minimised.

Outdoor calving pens and fields should be selected to provide the cow with a clean and comfortable environment.

Floor management in housed production systems can have a significant impact on cattle welfare. Areas that compromise welfare and are not suitable for resting (e.g. places with excessive faecal accumulation, or wet bedding) should not be included in the determination of the area available for cattle to lie down.

Slopes of the pens should allow water to drain away from feed troughs and not pool the pens.

Flooring, bedding, resting surfaces and outdoor yards should be cleaned as conditions warrant, to ensure good hygiene, comfort and minimise risk of diseases and injuries.

In pasture systems, stock should be rotated between fields to ensure good hygiene and minimise risk of diseases and injuries.

Bedding should be provided to all animals housed on concrete. In straw, sand or other bedding systems such as rubber mats, crumbled-rubber-filled mattresses and waterbeds, the bedding should be suitable (e.g. hygienic, non-toxic) and maintained to provide cattle with a clean, dry and comfortable place on which to lie.

The design of a standing, or cubicle, or free stall, should be such that the animals can stand and lie comfortably on a solid surface (e.g. length, width and height should be appropriate for the size of the largest animal). There should be sufficient room for the animal to rest and to rise adopting normal postures, to move its head freely as it stands up, and to groom itself without difficulty. Where housing design provides only individual spaces for cows to rest, there should be at least one space per cow.

Alleys and gates should be designed and operated to allow free movement of cattle. Floors should be designed to minimise slipping and falling, promote foot health, and reduce the risk of claw injuries.

If a housing system includes areas of slatted floor, cattle, including replacement stock, should have access to a solid lying area. The slat and gap widths should be appropriate to the hoof size of the cattle to prevent injuries.

If cattle have to be tethered whether indoors or outdoors, they should, as a minimum, be able to lie down, stand up, maintain normal body posture and groom themselves unimpeded. Cows kept in tie stall housing should be allowed sufficient untethered exercise to prevent welfare problems. When tethered outdoors they should be able to walk. *Animal handlers* should be aware of the higher risks of welfare problems where cattle are tethered.

Where breeding bulls are in housing systems, care should be taken to ensure that they have sight of other cattle with sufficient space for resting and exercise. If used for natural mating, the floor should not be slatted or slippery.

Outcome-based measurables: morbidity rates, especially lameness and injuries (e.g. hock and knee injuries and skin lesions); behaviour (e.g. altered locomotion and posture, altered lying time, grooming and not using the intended lying areas); changes in weight and body condition; physical appearance (e.g. hair loss, cleanliness score); growth rate.

6. Location, construction and equipment

The impacts of climate and geographical factors on dairy cattle should be evaluated when farms are established. Efforts should be made to mitigate any negative impacts of those factors, including matching dairy breed to location and consideration of alternate sites.

All facilities for dairy cattle should be constructed, maintained and operated to minimise the risk to the welfare of the cattle.

In pasture and combination systems tracks and races between the milking area and fields should be laid out and managed so as to minimise the overall distances walked. Construction and maintenance of tracks and races, including their surface, should minimise any risk to the welfare of the cattle, especially from foot health problems.

Equipment for milking, handling and restraining dairy cattle should be constructed and used in a way that minimises the risk of injury, *pain* or *distress*. Manufacturers of such equipment should consider *animal welfare* when designing it and when preparing operating instructions.

Electrified equipment designed to control animal behaviour (e.g. cow trainer) may cause welfare problems if not designed, used and maintained properly.

Electrified fences and gates should be well-designed and maintained to avoid welfare problems, and used only in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.

Where access to an outdoor area, including pasture, is possible, there may be additional benefits to dairy cattle from the opportunity to graze and exercise, especially a decreased risk of lameness.

In all production systems, *feed* and water provision should allow all cattle to have access to *feed* and water. Feeding systems should be designed to minimise agonistic behaviour. Feeders and water providers should be easy to clean and properly maintained.

Milking parlours, free stalls, standings, cubicles, races, chutes and pens should be properly maintained and be free from sharp edges and protrusions to prevent injury to cattle.

There should be a separated area where individual animals can be examined closely and which has restraining facilities.

When relevant, sick and injured animals should be treated away from healthy animals. When a dedicated space is provided this should accommodate all the needs of the animal, e.g. recumbent animals may require additional bedding or an alternative floors surface.

Hydraulic, pneumatic and manual equipment should be adjusted, as appropriate, to the size of cattle to be handled. Hydraulic and pneumatic operated restraining equipment should have pressure limiting devices to prevent injuries. Regular cleaning and maintenance of working parts is essential to ensure the system functions properly and is safe for the cattle.

Mechanical and electrical devices used in facilities should be safe for cattle.

Dipping baths and spray races used for ectoparasite control should be designed and operated to minimise the risk of crowding and to prevent injury and drowning.

Collecting yards (e.g. entry to the milking parlour) should be designed and operated to minimise stress and prevent injuries and lameness.

The loading areas and ramps, including the slope of the ramp, should be designed to minimise stress and injuries for the animals and ensure the safety of the *animal handlers*, in accordance with Chapters 7.2., 7.3. and 7.4.

Outcome-based measurables: handling response; morbidity rate, especially lameness; mortality rate; behaviour, especially altered locomotory behaviour; injury rate; changes in weight and body condition; physical appearance; growth rate.

7. Emergency plans

The failure of power, water and *feed* supply systems could compromise *animal welfare*. Dairy producers should have contingency plans to cover the failure of these systems. These plans may include the provision of fail-safe alarms to detect malfunctions, back-up generators, contact information for key service providers, ability to store water on farm, access to water cartage services, adequate on-farm storage of *feed*, alternative *feed* supply, and emergency *killing* of animals according to Chapter 7.6.

Preventive measures for emergencies should be input-based rather than outcome based. Contingency plans should include an evacuation plan and be documented and communicated to all responsible parties. Alarms and back-up systems should be checked regularly.

Article 7.11.7.

Recommendations on animal management practices

Good animal management practices are critical to providing an acceptable level of *animal welfare*. Personnel involved in handling and caring for dairy cattle should be competent with relevant experience or training to equip them with the necessary practical skills and knowledge of dairy cattle behaviour, handling, health, *biosecurity*, physiological needs and welfare. There should be a sufficient number of *animal handlers* to ensure the health and welfare of the cattle.

1. Biosecurity and animal health

a) Biosecurity and disease prevention

Biosecurity plans should be designed, implemented and maintained, commensurate with the best possible *herd* health status, available resources and infrastructure, and current disease risk and, for *listed diseases* in accordance with relevant recommendations in the *Terrestrial Code*.

These *biosecurity plans* should address the control of the major sources and pathways for spread of pathogenic agents:

- cattle, including introductions to the *herd*,
- calves coming from different sources,
- other domestic animals, *wildlife*, and pests,
- people including sanitation practices,
- equipment, tools and facilities,
- *vehicles*,
- air,
- water supply, *feed* and bedding,
- manure, waste and dead stock disposal,
- semen and embryos.

Outcome-based measurables: morbidity rate; mortality rate; reproductive efficiency; changes in weight and body condition; changes in milk yield.

b) Animal health management

Animal health management should optimise the physical and behavioural health and welfare of the dairy *herd*. It includes the prevention, treatment and control of diseases and conditions affecting the *herd* (in particular mastitis, lameness, reproductive and metabolic diseases).

There should be an effective programme for the prevention and treatment of diseases and conditions, formulated in consultation with a *veterinarian*, where appropriate. This programme should include the recording of production data (e.g. number of lactating cows, births, animal movements in and out of the *herd*, milk yield), morbidities, mortalities, culling rate and medical treatments. It should be kept up to date by the *animal handler*. Regular monitoring of records aids management and quickly reveals problem areas for intervention.

For parasitic burdens (e.g. endoparasites, ectoparasites and protozoa), a programme should be implemented to monitor, control and treat, as appropriate.

Lameness can be a problem in dairy cattle. *Animal handlers* should monitor the state of feet and take measures to prevent lameness and maintain foot health.

Those responsible for the care of cattle should be aware of early specific signs of disease or *distress* (e.g. coughing, ocular discharge, changes in milk appearance, changes in locomotory behaviour), and non-specific

signs such as reduced *feed* and water intake, reduction of milk production, changes in weight and body condition, changes in behaviour or abnormal physical appearance.

Cattle at higher risk of disease or *distress* will require more frequent inspection by *animal handlers*. If *animal handlers* suspect the presence of a disease or are not able to correct the causes of disease or *distress*, they should seek advice from those having training and experience, such as *veterinarians* or other qualified advisers, as appropriate.

Vaccinations and other treatments administered to cattle should be carried out by *veterinarians* or other people skilled in the procedures and on the basis of veterinary or other expert advice and with consideration for the welfare of the dairy cattle.

Animal handlers should be competent in identifying and appropriately managing chronically ill or injured cattle, for instance in recognising and dealing with non-ambulatory cattle, especially those that have recently calved. Veterinary advice should be sought as appropriate.

Non-ambulatory cattle should have access to water at all times and be provided with *feed* at least once daily and milked as necessary. They should be provided shade and protected from predators. They should not be transported or moved unless absolutely necessary for treatment or diagnosis. Such movements should be done carefully using methods that avoid dragging the animal or lifting it in a way that might exacerbate injuries.

Animal handlers should also be competent in assessing fitness to transport, as described in Chapter 7.3.

In case of disease or injury, when treatment has failed or recovery is unlikely (e.g. cattle that are unable to stand up, unaided or refuse to eat or drink), the animal should be humanely killed as soon as possible in accordance with Chapter 7.6.

Animals suffering from photosensitisation should be provided with shade and where possible the cause should be identified.

Outcome-based measurables: morbidity rate; mortality rate; reproductive efficiency; depressive behaviour; altered locomotory behaviour; physical appearance; changes in weight and body condition; changes in milk yield.

c) Emergency plans for disease outbreaks

Emergency plans should cover the management of the farm in the face of an emergency *disease outbreak*, consistent with national programmes and recommendations of *Veterinary Services* as appropriate.

2. Nutrition

The nutrient requirements of dairy cattle have been well defined. Energy, protein, mineral and vitamin content of the diet are major factors determining milk production and growth, feed efficiency, reproductive efficiency, and body condition.

Cattle should be provided with access to an appropriate quantity and quality of balanced nutrition that meets their physiological needs.

Where cattle are maintained in outdoor conditions, short term exposure to climatic extremes may prevent access to nutrition that meets their daily physiological needs. In such circumstances the *animal handler* should ensure that the period of reduced nutrition is not prolonged and that extra food and water supply are provided if welfare would otherwise be compromised.

Animal handlers should have adequate knowledge of appropriate body condition scoring systems for their cattle and should not allow body condition to go outside an acceptable range in accordance with breed and physiological status.

Feedstuffs and *feed ingredients* should be of satisfactory quality to meet nutritional needs and stored to minimise contamination and deterioration. Where appropriate, *feed* and *feed ingredients* should be tested for the presence of substances that would adversely impact on animal health. Control and monitoring of animal *feed* should be implemented in accordance with relevant recommendations in Chapter 6.4.

The relative risk of digestive upset in cattle increases as the proportion of grain increases in the diet or if quality of silage is poor. Grain or new diets should be introduced slowly and palatable fibrous *feed* such as silage, grass and hay, should be available *ad libitum* to meet metabolic requirements in a way that promotes digestion and ensures normal rumen function.

Animal handlers should understand the impact of cattle size and age, weather patterns, diet composition and sudden dietary changes in respect to digestive upsets and their negative consequences (displaced abomasum,

sub-acute ruminal acidosis, bloat, liver abscess, laminitis). Where appropriate, dairy producers should consult a cattle nutritionist for advice on ration formulation and feeding programmes.

Particular attention should be paid to nutrition in the last month of pregnancy, with regards to energy balance, roughage and micronutrients, in order to minimise calving and post-calving diseases and body condition loss.

Liquid milk (or milk replacer) is essential for healthy growth and welfare of calves. However, feeding calves all-liquid diets as the sole source of nutrition after 4-6 weeks of age limits the physiological development of the rumen. Calves over two weeks old should have a sufficient daily ration of fibrous feed and starter ration (concentrate) to promote rumen development and to reduce abnormal oral behaviours.

Dairy producers should become familiar with potential micronutrient deficiencies or excesses for production systems in their respective geographical areas and use appropriately formulated supplements where necessary.

All cattle, including unweaned calves, need an adequate supply and access to palatable water that meets their physiological requirements and is free from contaminants hazardous to cattle health.

Outcome-based measurables: mortality rates; morbidity rates; behaviour, especially agonistic behaviour (at the feeding area); changes in weight and body condition; reproductive efficiency; changes in milk yield; growth rate; vocalisation.

3. Social environment

Management of cattle should take into account their social environment as it relates to *animal welfare*, particularly in housed systems. Problem areas include: agonistic and oestrus activity, mixing of heifers and cows, feeding cattle of different size and age in the same pens, decreased space allowance, insufficient space at the feeder, insufficient water access and mixing of bulls.

Management of cattle in all systems should take into account the social interactions of cattle within groups. The *animal handler* should understand the dominance hierarchies that develop within different groups and focus on high risk animals, such as sick or injured, very young, very old, small or large size for cohort group, for evidence of agonistic behaviour and excessive mounting behaviour. The *animal handler* should understand the risks of increased agonistic interactions between animals, particularly after mixing groups.

When other measures have failed, cattle that are expressing excessive agonistic activity or excessive mounting behaviour should be removed from the group.

Animal handlers should be aware of the *animal welfare* problems that may be caused by mixing of inappropriate groups of cattle and provide adequate measures to minimise them (e.g. introduction of heifers in a new group, mixing of animals at different production stages that have different dietary needs).

Horned and non-horned cattle should not be mixed because of the risk of injury.

Outcome-based measurables: behaviour, especially lying times, physical injuries and lesions; changes in weight and body condition; physical appearance (e.g. cleanliness); lameness scores; changes in milk yield; morbidity rate; mortality rate; growth rate; vocalisation.

4. Space allowance

Cattle in all production systems should be offered adequate space for comfort and socialisation.

Insufficient and inadequate space allowance may increase the occurrence of injuries and have an adverse effect on growth rate, feed efficiency, and behaviour such as locomotion, resting, feeding and drinking.

Space allowance should be managed taking into account different areas for lying, standing and feeding. Crowding should not adversely affect normal behaviour of cattle and durations of time spent lying.

All cattle should be able to rest simultaneously, and each animal lie down, stand up and move freely. In growing animals, space allowance should also be managed such that weight gain is not adversely affected. If abnormal behaviour is seen, corrective measures should be taken, such as increasing space allowance, redefining the areas available for lying, standing and feeding.

In pastured systems, stocking density should depend on the available feed and water supply and pasture quality.

Outcome-based measurables: behaviour, especially agonistic or depressive behaviour; morbidity rate; mortality rate; changes in weight and body condition; physical appearance; changes in milk yield; parasite burden; growth rate.

5. Protection from predators

Cattle should be protected from predators.

Outcome-based measurables: mortality rate; morbidity rate (injury rate); behaviour; physical appearance.

6. Genetic selection

Welfare and health considerations, in addition to productivity, should be taken into account when choosing a breed or subspecies for a particular location or production system.

In breeding programmes, attention should be paid to criteria conducive to the improvement of cattle welfare, including health. The conservation and development of genetic lines of dairy cattle, which limit or reduce animal welfare problems, should be encouraged. Examples of such criteria include nutritional maintenance requirement, disease resistance and heat tolerance.

Individual animals within a breed should be selected to propagate offspring that exhibit traits beneficial to animal health and welfare by promoting robustness and longevity. These include resistance to infectious and production related diseases, ease of calving, fertility, body conformation and mobility, and temperament.

Outcome-based measurables: morbidity rate; mortality rate; length of productive life; behaviour; physical appearance; reproductive efficiency; lameness; human-animal relationship; growth rate; body condition outside an acceptable range.

7. Artificial insemination, pregnancy diagnosis and embryo transfer

Semen collection should be carried out by a trained operator in a manner that does not cause *pain* or *distress* to the bull and any teaser animal used during collection and in accordance with Chapter 4.7.

Artificial insemination and pregnancy diagnosis should be performed by a competent operator in a manner that does not cause *pain* or *distress*.

Embryo transfer should be performed under an epidural or other anaesthesia by a trained operator, preferably a *veterinarian* or a *veterinary paraprofessional* and in accordance with the provisions of Chapter 4.8. and Chapter 4.9.

Outcome-based measurables: behaviour; morbidity rate; reproductive efficiency.

8. Dam and sire selection and calving management

Dystocia is a welfare risk to dairy cattle. Heifers should not be bred before they reach the stage of physical maturity sufficient to ensure the health and welfare of both dam and calf at birth. The sire has a highly heritable effect on final calf size and as such can have a significant impact on ease of calving. Sire selection for embryo implantation, insemination or natural mating, should take into account the maturity and size of the female.

Pregnant cows and heifers should be managed during pregnancy so as to achieve an appropriate body condition range for the breed. Excessive fatness increases the risk of dystocia and metabolic disorders during late pregnancy or after parturition.

Cows and heifers should be monitored when they are close to calving. Animals observed to be having difficulty in calving should be assisted by a competent handler as soon as possible after they are detected. When a caesarean section is required, it must be carried out by a *veterinarian*.

Outcome-based measurables: morbidity rate; mortality rate (cow and calf); reproductive efficiency, especially rate of dystocia, retained placenta and metritis; body condition.

9. Newborn calves

Calving aids should not be used to speed the birthing process, only to assist in cases of dystocia, and should not cause undue *pain*, *distress*, or further medical problems.

Newborn calves are susceptible to hypothermia. The temperature and ventilation of the birthing area should consider the needs of the newborn calf. Soft, dry bedding and supplemental heat can help prevent cold stress.

Receiving adequate immunity from colostrum generally depends on the volume and quality of colostrum ingested, and how soon after birth the calf receives it.

Animal handlers should ensure that calves receive colostrum of a satisfactory quality, within 24 hours of birth, and in sufficient quantity, to provide passive immunity. Colostrum is most beneficial if received during the first six hours after birth. When there is risk of disease transfer from the dam, colostrum from a healthy cow should be used.

Recently born calves should not be transported until the navel is dry, and after which time any transport required should be carried out in accordance with Chapter 7.3.

Calves should be handled and moved in a manner which minimises *distress* and avoids *pain* and injury.

Outcome-based measurables: physical appearance; mortality rate; morbidity rate; growth rate.

10. Cow-calf separation and weaning

Different strategies to separate the calf from the cow are utilised in dairy cattle production systems. These include early separation (usually within 48 hours of birth) or a more gradual separation (leaving the calf with the cow for a longer period so it can continue to be suckled). Separation is stressful for both cow and calf.

For the purposes of this chapter, weaning means the change from a milk-based diet to a fibrous diet and the weaned calf no longer receives milk in its diet. This change should be made gradually and calves should be weaned only when their ruminant digestive system has developed sufficiently to enable them to maintain growth, health and good welfare.

Dairy cattle producers should seek expert advice on the most appropriate time and method of weaning for their type of cattle and production system.

Outcome-based measurables: morbidity rate; mortality rate; behaviour after separation (vocalisation, activity of the cow and calf); physical appearance; changes in weight and body condition; growth rate.

11. Rearing of replacement stock

Young calves are at particular risk of thermal stress. Special attention should be paid to management of the thermal environment (e.g. provision of additional bedding, nutrition or protection to maintain warmth and appropriate growth).

Individual calf-housing may facilitate monitoring of health of very young calves and minimise the risk of disease spread, but replacement stock should then be reared in groups. Animals in groups should be of similar age and physical size.

Whether reared individually or in group pens, each calf should have enough space to be able to turn around, rest, stand up and groom comfortably and see other animals.

Replacement stock should be monitored for cross-sucking and appropriate measures taken to prevent this occurring (e.g. provide sucking devices, revise or modify feeding practices, provide other environmental enrichments).

Particular attention should be paid to the nutrition, including trace elements, of growing replacement stock to ensure good health and that they achieve an appropriate growth curve for the breed and farming objectives.

Outcome-based measurables: morbidity rate; mortality rate; behaviour, especially cross-sucking, altered grooming and lying behaviours; injuries; physical appearance; changes in weight and body condition; growth rate.

12. Milking management

Milking, whether by hand or machine, should be carried out in a calm and considerate manner in order to avoid *pain* and *distress*. Special attention should be paid to the hygiene of personnel, the udder and milking equipment. All cows should be checked for abnormal milk at every milking.

Milking machines, especially automated milking systems, should be used and maintained in a manner which minimises injury to teats and udders. Manufacturers of such equipment should provide operating instructions that consider *animal welfare*.

A regular milking routine should be established relevant to the stage of lactation and the capacity of the system.

Animal handlers should regularly check the information provided by the milking system and act accordingly to protect the welfare of the cows.

Special care should be paid to animals being milked for the first time. They should be familiarised with the milking facility prior to giving birth.

Long waiting times before and after milking can lead to health and welfare problems (e.g. lameness, reduced time to eat). Management should ensure that waiting times are minimised.

Outcome-based measurables: morbidity rate (e.g. udder health, milk quality); behaviour; changes in milk yield; physical appearance (e.g. lesions).

13. Painful husbandry procedures

Husbandry practices are routinely carried out in cattle for reasons of management, *animal welfare* and human safety. Those practices that have the potential to cause *pain* should be performed in such a way as to minimise

any *pain* and stress to the animal. Such procedures should be performed at as early an age as possible or using anaesthesia or analgesia under the recommendation or supervision of a *veterinarian*.

Options for enhancing *animal welfare* in relation to these procedures include: ceasing the procedure and addressing the need for the operation through management strategies; breeding cattle that do not require the procedure; or replacing the current procedure with a non-surgical alternative that has been shown to enhance *animal welfare*.

a) Disbudding and dehorning

Horned dairy cattle are commonly disbudded or dehorned in order to reduce animal injuries and hide damage, improve human safety, reduce damage to facilities and facilitate transport and handling. The selection of polled cattle is preferable to dehorning.

Performing disbudding at an early age is preferred, rather than dehorning older cattle.

Thermal cauterity of the horn bud by a trained operator with proper equipment is the recommended method in order to minimise post-operative *pain*. This should be done at an appropriate age before the horn bud has attached to the skull.

Guidance from a *veterinarian* or *veterinary paraprofessional* as to the optimum method and timing for the type of cattle and production system should be sought. The use of anaesthesia and analgesia are strongly recommended when performing disbudding, and should always be used when dehorning. Appropriate restraint systems and procedures are required when disbudding or dehorning.

Other methods of disbudding include: removal of the horn buds with a knife and the application of chemical paste to cauterise the horn buds. Where chemical paste is used, special attention should be paid to avoid chemical burns to other parts of the calf or to other calves. This method is not recommended for calves older than two weeks.

Operators should be trained and competent in the procedure used, and be able to recognise the signs of *pain* and complications that may include excessive bleeding or sinus infection.

Methods of dehorning when horn development has commenced involve the removal of the horn by cutting or sawing through the base of the horn close to the skull.

b) Tail docking

Tail docking does not improve the health and welfare of dairy cattle and therefore it is not recommended. As an alternative, trimming of tail hair should be considered where maintenance of hygiene is a problem.

c) Identification

Ear-tagging, ear-notching, tattooing, branding and radio frequency identification devices (RFID) are methods of permanently identifying dairy cattle. The least invasive approach should be adopted whichever method is chosen (e.g. the least number of ear tags per ear and the smallest notch practical). It should be accomplished quickly, expertly and with proper equipment.

Freeze branding and branding with a hot iron should be avoided where alternative identification methods exist (e.g. electronic identification or ear-tags). When branding is used, the operator should be competent in procedures used and be able to recognise signs of complications.

Identification systems should be established also in accordance with Chapter 4.2.

Outcome-based measurables: morbidity rate (post-procedural complications); abnormal behaviour; vocalisation; physical appearance.

14. Inspection and handling

Dairy cattle should be inspected at intervals appropriate to the production system and the risks to the health and welfare of the cattle. Lactating cows should be inspected at least once a day. Some animals should be inspected more frequently, for example, neonatal calves, cows in late gestation, newly weaned calves, cattle experiencing environmental stress and those that have undergone painful husbandry procedures or veterinary treatment.

Dairy cattle identified as sick or injured should be given appropriate treatment at the first available opportunity by competent *animal handlers*. If *animal handlers* are unable to provide appropriate treatment, the services of a *veterinarian* should be sought.

Recommendations on the handling of cattle are also found in Chapter 7.5. In particular handling aids that may cause *pain* and *distress* (e.g. electric goads) should be used only in extreme circumstances and provided that the animal can move freely. Dairy cattle should not be prodded in sensitive areas including the udder, face, eyes, nose or ano-genital region. Electric prods should not be used on calves (see also point 3 of Article 7.3.8.).

Where dogs are used as an aid for cattle herding they should be properly trained. *Animal handlers* should be aware that presence of dogs can stress the cattle and cause fear and should keep them under control at all times. The

use of dogs is not appropriate in housed systems, collection yards or other small enclosures where the cattle cannot move freely away.

Cattle are adaptable to different visual environments. However, exposure of cattle to sudden movement or changes in visual contrasts should be minimised where possible to prevent stress and fear reactions.

Electroimmobilisation should not be used.

Outcome-based measurables: handling responses; morbidity rate; mortality rate; behaviour, especially altered locomotory behaviour and vocalisation.

15. Personnel training

All people responsible for dairy cattle should be competent in accordance with their responsibilities and should understand cattle husbandry, animal handling, milking routines, reproductive management techniques, behaviour, *biosecurity*, signs of disease, and indicators of poor *animal welfare* such as stress, *pain* and discomfort, and their alleviation.

Competence may be gained through formal training or practical experience.

Outcome-based measurables: handling responses; morbidity rate; mortality rate; behaviour; reproductive efficiency; changes in weight and body condition; changes in milk yield.

16. Disaster management

Plans should be in place to minimise and mitigate the effect of disasters (e.g. earthquake, fire, drought, flooding, blizzard, hurricane). Such plans may include evacuation procedures, identifying high ground, maintaining emergency feed and water stores, destocking and humane *killing* when necessary.

In times of drought, animal management decisions should be made as early as possible and these should include a consideration of reducing cattle numbers.

Humane *killing* procedures for sick or injured cattle should be part of the disaster management plan.

Reference to emergency plans can also be found in point 7 of Article 7.11.6. and point 1 c) of Article 7.11.7.

17. Humane killing

For sick and injured cattle a prompt diagnosis should be made to determine whether the animal should be treated or humanely killed.

The decision to kill an animal humanely and the procedure itself should be undertaken by a competent person.

Reasons for humane *killing* may include:

- severe emaciation, weak cattle that are non-ambulatory or at risk of becoming non ambulatory;
- non-ambulatory cattle that will not stand up, refuse to eat or drink, have not responded to therapy;
- rapid deterioration of a medical condition for which therapies have been unsuccessful;
- severe, debilitating *pain*;
- compound (open) fracture;
- spinal injury;
- central nervous system disease;
- multiple joint *infections* with chronic weight loss;
- calves that are premature and unlikely to survive, have a debilitating congenital defect, or otherwise unwanted; and
- as part of disaster management response.

For a description of acceptable methods for humane *killing* of dairy cattle see Chapter 7.6.

CHAPTER 7.12.

WELFARE OF WORKING EQUIDS

Article 7.12.1.

Introduction

In many countries, working equids, used for transport and traction, contribute directly and indirectly to households' livelihoods and benefit communities as a whole. Working equids may be of direct or indirect use in production and commercial activities.

Specifically, they contribute to agricultural production and food security by transporting, for instance, water and fodder for other livestock, firewood and other daily needs to the homestead and agricultural products to the market. They provide draught power for agricultural work and transport. They may supply manure, *milk*, *meat* and hides for household use or income.

The welfare of these working equids is often poor because their owners lack sufficient resources to meet their needs or have insufficient knowledge of the appropriate care of equids. Certain working contexts, such as working in construction industries or in harsh environments, may present a particular risk to their welfare.

Article 7.12.2.

Scope

This chapter applies to horses, donkeys and mules that are destined, used for or retired from traction, transport and generation of income. Equids used in sports or competitions, leisure activities, research or kept solely for the production of *meat* or biopharmaceuticals, are excluded.

For the purposes of this chapter, harness means all parts of the driving harness, saddle, bridle and bit that are used to control the working equid, act as a braking system when pulling a cart, hold loads in place and transfer power to attached carts or agricultural implements.

Article 7.12.3.

Responsibilities

All organisations with defined responsibilities as outlined below should have personnel with the requisite knowledge and skill to perform their duties.

1. Veterinary Authority

The *Veterinary Authority* is responsible for implementation of animal health and welfare policies, legislation and programmes. However, in the case of working equids, the responsibility may be shared with other government agencies, institutions and relevant stakeholders.

2. Other government agencies

The responsibilities of other government agencies depend on the range of working equid uses and contexts.

For example those agencies responsible for regulating industrial and construction activities, whether for environmental or labour compliance, may also have a responsibility for the working equids involved in the industry.

Particularly in urban areas, the transport or other responsible agency may have legislative authority in dealing with traffic circulation and have a role to play in ensuring a safe environment for working equids as well as other road users.

Environmental protection agencies may regulate and enforce measures to prevent working equids from accessing sources of contamination.

The agency responsible for public health may have legislative authority in dealing with zoonoses.

Education authorities have a responsibility in schools and agricultural, *veterinary paraprofessional* and veterinary training institutions. A component on welfare of working equids should be included in animal health and production curricula.

3. Local government authorities

Local government authorities are responsible for many services and programmes that relate to health, safety and public good within their jurisdiction. In many countries the legislative framework gives authority to local government agencies with regard to aspects of transport, agriculture, public health, environmental health and inspection, and compliance activities including those in relation to animal health measures and responsibility for abandoned and stray animals.

In many countries local government agencies are responsible for the development and enforcement of legislation relating to equine drawn carts and carried loads in traffic, *animal identification* (registration), licensing and disposal of dead animals.

4. Private veterinarians

Private *veterinarians* are responsible for providing services and advice to working equid owners or handlers and play an important role in disease *surveillance* because they may be the first to see an equid suffering from a *notifiable disease*. They may also play a role (often in liaison with the police or other local authorities) in dealing with cases of neglect that lead to welfare problems.

Two-way communication between the private *veterinarians* and *Veterinary Authority*, often via the medium of a veterinary professional organisation, is important and the *Veterinary Authority* is responsible for setting up appropriate mechanisms for this interaction.

Private *veterinarians* may also have a responsibility in supervising and coordination of *veterinary paraprofessionals* involved in delivering animal health services.

5. Non-governmental organisations

Relevant non-governmental organisations (NGOs) and intergovernmental organisations should understand the role of working equids and may help to collect and provide information to support policy formulation, to advocate and promote health and welfare of working equids.

Local NGOs are potential partners of the *Veterinary Services* in the development and implementation of working equid health and welfare programmes.

NGOs may also contribute, together with *veterinarians* and *Competent Authorities*, in educating the public in the importance of the welfare of working equids.

6. Working equid owners and users

Owners and users are ultimately responsible for the welfare of their working equids by ensuring their animals' five freedoms (Article 7.1.2.).

Article 7.12.4.

Criteria or measurables for the welfare of working equids

The following outcome-based measurables can be useful indicators of *animal welfare*. The use of these indicators and the appropriate thresholds should be adapted to the different situations where working equids are used.

1. Behaviour

Presence or absence of certain equine behaviours could indicate an *animal welfare* problem, including fear, depression or *pain*. Behaviours differ between horses, donkeys and mules and a good understanding of normal behaviour of each species is required.

Some behaviours may not be uniquely indicative of one type of problem; they may be exhibited for a variety of causes. Depression, apathy, dullness and lethargy in equids that are normally active and alert are indicative of a welfare problem. Changes in eating or drinking patterns may indicate a welfare problem, especially a decreased *feed* intake. This might also be an indicator of dental problems, poor *feed* quality or even *feed* contamination.

Behaviours indicating discomfort or *pain*:

- head pressing, teeth grinding, grunting, food dropping, and inability to eat normally. Such behaviours may indicate disease or *pain*;
- depression, circling, foot pawing, flank watching, inability to stand up, and rolling. Such behaviours may indicate abdominal or other discomfort;
- disturbance of ground or bedding. Such behaviours may indicate disease, abdominal *pain* or malnutrition;
- weight shifting, foot pawing, reluctance to move or abnormal movement. Such behaviours may indicate leg, foot, spinal or abdominal *pain*;
- head shaking or avoidance of head contact. Such behaviours may indicate head, ear or ocular discomfort;
- itching, rubbing, self-inflicted abrasions. Such behaviours may indicate skin problems or parasites;
- restlessness, agitation and anxiety, rigid stance and reluctance to move, lowered head carriage, fixed stare and dilated nostrils, clenched jaw, aggression and reluctance to be handled, may indicate non-specific *pain* in horses. In donkeys, these behaviours are more subtle and may not be recognised;
- vocalisation, rolling, kicking at abdomen, flank watching and stretching may indicate abdominal *pain* in horses. In donkeys, dullness and depression;
- weight-shifting, limb guarding, abnormal weight distribution, pointing, hanging and rotating limbs, abnormal movement and reluctance to move may indicate limb and foot *pain* in horses. These signs are more subtle in donkeys, although repeated episodes of lying down are reportedly more indicative;
- headshaking, abnormal bit behaviour, altered eating, anorexia and quidding may indicate head and dental *pain*.

Behaviours indicating fear or anxiety:

- unusual avoidance of humans, especially when handlers or objects associated with their handling come close;
- a reluctance by the working equids to engage in their use for traction or transport or even a cessation and aggressive behaviour, especially when fitting equipment or loading is undertaken.

Behaviours indicating stress:

- oral stereotypies: crib biting, aerophagia ("wind sucking");
- locomotive stereotypies: stable walking, weaving;
- abnormal vocalisation, agitation or defecation.

2. Morbidity

Morbidity, including incidence of disease, lameness, injuries or post-procedural complications, may be a direct or indirect indicator of the *animal welfare* status.

Understanding the aetiology of the disease or syndrome is important for detecting potential *animal welfare* problems. Scoring systems, such as those used to score lameness and body condition, provide additional information.

3. Mortality

Mortality, like morbidity, may be a direct or indirect indicator of the *animal welfare* status. Depending on the context, causes of mortality should be investigated as well as temporal and spatial patterns of mortality and possible relationship with husbandry and handling practices. Necropsy is useful in establishing the cause of death.

4. Body condition and physical appearance

Poor or changing body condition or physical appearance may be an indicator of compromised animal welfare and health and scoring systems help to provide objectivity.

Observation of physical appearance often provides an indication of animal welfare and health. Attributes of physical appearance that may indicate compromised welfare include:

- feet or limb abnormalities;
- wounds or injuries;
- dehydration or signs of heat stress;
- abnormal discharges;
- presence of parasites;
- abnormal coat or hair loss;
- excessive soiling with faeces, mud or dirt;
- emaciation.

5. Handling responses

Poor human-animal interactions can lead to or be caused by improper handling. This may include bad driving and inappropriate restraint methods, or the misuse of whips and sticks, and can result in fear and distress.

Indicators include:

- aversive or apathetic responses to fitting of equipment and loads,
- defensive responses from the equid to the owner or user such as threatening facial expressions, kicking, biting and avoiding human contact.

6. Complications due to management practices

Some management practices, such as castration and hoof care, are commonly performed in working equids to facilitate handling and improve human safety and *animal welfare*.

Working equids are shod for two main reasons; to prevent hoof wear and to improve performance. Many equids cope well without shoes and, if they are coping well, are best unshod. However, poor hoof care and farriery predispose the working equid to injury and infection, and can result in changes to the size, shape and function of the hoof. Untreated abnormalities of the foot can create long-term problems in other parts of the leg and body due to change in gait and weight bearing.

If management practices such as these are not performed properly, *animal welfare* may be compromised.

Indicators of such problems include:

- post-procedure *infection* and swelling;
- post-procedure lameness;
- myiasis;
- behaviour indicating *pain* or fear;
- mortality.

It is important to note that some practices are not based on evidence and are inherently bad for welfare. Evidence of firing, nasal slitting, lampas cutting and harmful substances applied to wounds should be identified as indicators of poor welfare.

7. Lameness

Traditionally, lameness has been defined as any alteration of the horse's gait. In addition, lameness can manifest in such ways as a change in attitude or performance. These abnormalities can be caused by *pain* in the neck, withers, shoulders, back, loin, hips, legs or feet. Identifying the source of the problem is essential for proper treatment. Lameness or gait abnormalities are the most common signs of working equids seen by *veterinarians*. Various scoring systems are available to assess the degree of lameness.

Indicators of such problems include:

- hoof conformation abnormalities;
- unequal weight bearing;
- hoof and pastern axis and angles.

8. Fitness to work

Fitness to work is the state or condition of being physically sound and healthy, especially as a result of exercise and proper nutrition, to perform work well. Various factors such as the animal's age, breed or physiological state (e.g. pregnancy) may influence its fitness to work.

Indicators of an equid's inability to carry out the work demanded of it include the presence of heat stress, lameness, poor body condition or weight loss, harness related wounds and aversive behavioural responses to, for example, harness or equipment fitting.

Article 7.12.5.

Recommendations

Articles 7.12.6. to 7.12.13. provide recommendations for measures applied to working equids.

Each recommendation includes a list of relevant outcome-based measurables derived from Article 7.12.4. This does not exclude other measures being used when appropriate.

Article 7.12.6.

Feeding and provision of water

1. Feeding

Equids are natural grazers that eat small quantities but eat often. Their natural diet is mainly grasses, which have a high roughage content. Horses in particular should be fed frequently with a predominantly fibre-based diet: grass, hay or a suitable and safe alternative in order to mimic their natural feeding pattern as closely as possible.

Energy, fibre, protein, mineral (including trace minerals) and vitamin contents in the diet of working equids, their balance, safety, digestibility and availability are major factors determining the power of the animals, their growth and overall productivity and their health and welfare.

Working equids should be provided with access to an appropriate quantity of balanced and safe *feed*, of adequate quality to meet their specific physiological and working needs. In case of *feed* shortages, the *animal handler* should ensure that the period of reduced feeding is as short as possible and that mitigation strategies are implemented if welfare and health are at risk of being compromised.

If supplementary *feed* is not available, steps should be taken to avoid starvation, including *slaughter*, sale or relocation of the animals, or humane *killing*.

Owners and handlers should allow working equids to forage whenever possible and allow for an adequate number of working breaks to allow the animals to eat. Long fibre forage is important for digestion. Cut green forage should be provided when grazing is not possible. Dry long fibre forage should be provided when adequate green forage is not available.

Inadequate diets and feeding systems may contribute to disease, stress, discomfort or to abnormal behaviour in working equids and should be avoided. *Animal handlers* should be aware of the animals' nutritional needs and consult an expert for advice on ration formulation and feeding programmes when needed.

2. Provision of water

The most important nutrient for the welfare of working equids is water. Working equids need regular and adequate access to palatable, safe water that meets their physiological and work requirements which may vary.

Outcome-based measurables: behaviour, morbidity, mortality, body condition and physical appearance, and fitness to work.

Article 7.12.7.

Shelter

Effective shelter should be provided for working equids both in the resting and working environments. Shelter should provide protection against adverse weather conditions and against predators and injury as well as good ventilation and the ability to rest comfortably. Resting space should be dry, clean and large enough for the equid to lie down, get up and turn around easily.

1. Heat stress

Heat stress is a common condition in working equids in hot, humid environments and *animal handlers* should be aware of the risk that heat stress poses. Equid owners and handlers should be aware of how to prevent it through provision of appropriate shade or shelter along with sufficient drinking water and avoiding work at extreme high temperatures. Owners may also be trained in effective treatment of hyperthermia as timely veterinary assistance may not be available.

Behaviours which indicate heat stress include increased respiratory rate and effort; flared nostrils; increased head movement and lack of response to the environment; excessive sweating.

Outcome-based measurables: behaviour, morbidity, mortality, body condition and physical appearance and fitness to work.

2. Cold

Protection from extreme cold weather conditions should be provided when these are likely to create a serious risk to the welfare of equids, particularly of neonates and young animals and others that are physiologically compromised. Such a protection could be provided by extra bedding, blankets or shelter. Care should be taken that, in an attempt to protect against the cold, ventilation and air quality are not compromised.

Behaviour which indicates suffering from cold stress includes shivering and huddling together.

Outcome-based measurables: behaviour, mortality and body condition and physical appearance.

3. Protection from predators and injury

Working equids should be kept safe from predators and from road accidents, which are common occurrences if equids are left free to roam. If working equids are housed alongside horned cattle, care should be taken to protect them from injury. Enclosures used should be structurally sound and free of sharp edges, protrusions and other features that could cause injury.

Outcome-based measurables: behaviour, morbidity, mortality, body condition and physical appearance and lameness.

Article 7.12.8.

Management of disease and injuries

1. Biosecurity

Biosecurity plans should be designed, commensurate with the desired health status of the equid population or *herd* and current disease risk. These *biosecurity plans* should be promoted with stakeholders for effective implementation and should address the control of the major sources and pathways for spread of pathogens by:

- a) equids;
- b) other *animals* and *vectors*;
- c) people;
- d) equipment;
- e) *vehicles*;
- f) air;
- g) water supply;
- h) *feed*.

Outcome-based measurables: morbidity, mortality, changes in body condition and physical appearance.

2. Animal health management

Effective national programmes for the prevention and treatment of working equid diseases and conditions require clear roles and responsibilities to be defined for official and private animal health service personnel as well as for owners.

Owners and handlers of working equids should be aware of signs of ill-health, disease, distress and injuries. If they suspect the presence of disease and are not able to manage it, they should seek advice from *veterinarians* or other qualified persons.

Non-ambulatory working equids should have access to *feed* and water at all times. They should not be transported or moved unless absolutely necessary for treatment or diagnosis. Such movements should be done carefully using methods that avoid dragging or excessive lifting.

When treatment is attempted, equids that are unable to stand unaided and refuse to eat or drink should be euthanised in accordance with Chapter 7.6., as soon as recovery is deemed unlikely.

Outcome-based measurables: morbidity, mortality, behaviour, body condition and physical appearance.

Article 7.12.9.

Handling and management practices

Management practices should be accomplished expertly and with the proper equipment and *pain* relief if appropriate. Painful husbandry procedures should be performed under the recommendation or supervision of a *veterinarian*.

Drivers and handlers should be trained to acquire good management skills.

Poor management practices include bad handling, inappropriate restraint such as too tight tethering or hobbling, the working of animals that are unfit or immature, poor housing that does not protect the equids from adverse weather conditions, inadequate handling equipment, excessive number of working hours, underfeeding, lack of access to water, lack of resting periods, working under heat stress, overloading, beating or whipping and some traditional practices.

Competent Authorities and *veterinarians* should educate owners and handlers of working equids to cease unsafe, ineffective and inhumane practices and also encourage good management and handling skills.

Working equids should not be kept confined indoors for long periods.

Working equids should not be tethered or hobbled continuously. In situations where temporary hobbling is necessary, the *animal handlers* should ensure sufficient distance between the two hobbled legs to allow the equid to stand naturally and move without risk of injury.

When temporary tethering is necessary working equids should be able to lie down, and if tethered outdoors, turn around and walk. The tethering site should be free from obstructions that may entangle the tether. Adequate water, *feed* and supervision should be provided; if necessary, action should be taken by moving the animals to areas providing shade or shelter.

Mares in season should not be tethered near stallions; mares about to foal or with a foal should not be tethered.

Equipment used to hobble should be designed for that purpose. The parts of the hobbles which are in contact with the skin should not be made from material that causes *pain* or injury.

Owners and users of working equids should be discouraged from using whips and harmful goads such as sticks. Instead humane training practices for equids should be promoted which focus on developing good driving practices.

Outcome-based measurables: behaviour, morbidity, mortality, body condition and physical appearance, lameness and fitness to work.

Article 7.12.10.

Behaviour

Animal handlers should be familiar with normal and abnormal behaviour of each type of working equid in order to interpret the welfare implications of what is being observed.

Human-animal interaction should be positive in order not to compromise the welfare of the working equid.

Different natural behaviours and social interactions between horses, mules and donkeys should be taken into account.

Outcome-based measurables: behaviour, body condition and physical appearance, and fitness to work.

Article 7.12.11.

End of working life

Consideration should be given to end of life issues.

Abandonment of equids should be discouraged. The *Competent Authorities* should develop and implement guidance or legislation to prevent abandonment while taking steps to make provision for abandoned animals to ensure their welfare.

When working equids need to be slaughtered or killed, recommendations in Chapters 7.5. and 7.6. should be followed to avoid the equids suffering a prolonged and painful death by abandonment, neglect or disease or acute, painful death such as being eaten by *wild animals*, or hit by a road vehicle.

Article 7.12.12.

Appropriate workloads

Equids continue to develop until over the age of five years so consideration should be given, according to workload, as to when working life commences. In general this should be three years of age or more but never less than two years of age. Animals that are subjected to excessive work too young in life will usually suffer from leg and back injuries in later life, resulting in a much-reduced working life.

Consideration should be given to the animal's overall condition, and other factors such as climate, and the work load should be adjusted accordingly. In particular, special considerations should be given to old animals and to mares three months before and after foaling, in order to not jeopardise pregnancy and allow the foal sufficient suckling access and resting time.

In general, animals should work a maximum of six hours per day and should be given at least one, preferably two, full day's rest in every seven-day period.

Consideration should be given to the weather conditions (work should be reduced in very hot weather). Breaks should be given at least every two hours and drinkable water should be provided.

All animals should receive sufficient good quality *feed* corresponding to their individual requirements. Drinkable water and roughage should be available to aid digestion.

Sick or injured animals should not be worked. Any animal that has been under veterinary treatment should not be returned to work until advised by the *veterinarian*.

Outcome-based measurables: behaviour, body condition and physical appearance, handling response, lameness and fitness to work.

Article 7.12.13.

Farriery and harnessing

1. Farriery

Owners and handlers should routinely clean and check the hooves of the working equid before and after work.

Hoof trimming and shoeing of working equids should only be performed by persons with the necessary knowledge and skills.

Outcome-based measurables: behaviour, body condition and physical appearance, lameness and fitness to work.

2. Harnessing

A properly designed, well-fitted and comfortable harness allows the working equid to pull the equipment to the best of its ability, efficiently and without risk of *pain* or injuries. Harness injury should be prevented by using properly fitted and adjusted harness which is checked daily for damage and repaired promptly as necessary. Equids should

be appropriately groomed before harnessing and checked after work for signs of rubbing and hair loss and the source of any problems should be removed through maintenance and padding where required.

Harnesses should not have sharp edges which could cause injury; should fit well so that it does not cause wounds or chafing caused by excess movement; should be smoothly shaped or padded so that loads imposed on the working equids' bodies are spread over a large area; and should not impede the animal's movement or normal breathing or restrict blood supply.

Carts should be maintained to ensure accurate balancing and appropriate tyre pressure. For draught equids the use of swingletrees is recommended so as to balance the pull and thus as a result reduce the risk of sores from the harness.

Owners should ensure effective harnessing and good riding and driving practices.

Bits should be of a simple type (such as a straight bar snaffle), depending on work, but should always be smooth, appropriately sized for the equid and kept clean. Inappropriate materials such as thin cord or wire should never be used as bits or to repair bits.

Outcome-based measurables: behaviour, body condition and physical appearance, lameness and fitness to work.

NB: FIRST ADOPTED IN 2016; MOST RECENT UPDATE ADOPTED IN 2018.

CHAPTER 7.13.

ANIMAL WELFARE AND PIG PRODUCTION SYSTEMS

Article 7.13.1.

Definitions

Commercial pig production systems means those systems in which the purpose of the operation includes some or all of the following: breeding, rearing and management of pigs (*Sus scrofa*) for the production and sale of pigs or pig meat.

For the purposes of this chapter, management is defined at the farm management level and at the *animal handler* level. At the level of farm management, human resources management practices, including selection and training of handlers, and animal management practices, such as best practice in housing and husbandry and implementation of welfare protocols and audits, all have an impact on *animal welfare*. At the *animal handler* level this requires a range of well-developed husbandry skills and knowledge of how to care for animals.

For the purposes of this chapter, environmental enrichment means increasing the complexity (e.g. foraging opportunities, social housing) of the animal's environment to foster the expression of normal behaviour, provide cognitive stimulation and reduce the expression of abnormal behaviour. The aim of providing enrichment should be to improve the physical and mental state of the animal.

For the purposes of this chapter, stereotypy is a repetitive behaviour induced by frustration, repeated attempts to cope or central nervous system dysfunction. It is expressed as a sequence of abnormal behaviours which appear to have no obvious purpose or function. Permanent dysfunction of the central nervous system in response to stressful conditions may mean that developed stereotypies may not resolve despite later changes to the environment or other treatments such as those relating to feeding levels or diet composition. Some stereotypies commonly observed in pigs include sham chewing, stone chewing, tongue rolling, teeth grinding, bar biting and floor licking.

For the purposes of this chapter, apathy means that the animal ceases to respond to stimuli that would normally elicit a response. Furthermore, apathetic behaviour has been described as an abnormal or maladaptive behaviour, indicated by reduced activity, lack of interest or concern (i.e. indifference) and lack of feeling or emotion (impassiveness).

For the purposes of this chapter, agonistic behaviour is a continuum of behaviours expressed in conflict situations, and includes offence, defence and submissive or escape components. The behaviours involved may include contact, such as biting and pushing, or non-contact, such as threats in the form of body postures and gestures. Aggressive behaviour (i.e. fighting) is a component of agonistic behaviour.

For the purposes of this chapter, play behaviour is characterised by specific neuroendocrinological responses and the appearance of having fun. It is often prompted by novel or unpredictable stimuli, and is related to exploration. It functions to prepare animals for unexpected situations by increasing the versatility of movements and enhancing their ability to cope with unexpected stressful situations. Animals actively seek and create unexpected situations in play, deliberately relaxing their movements or putting themselves into disadvantageous positions.

Article 7.13.2.

Scope

This chapter addresses the welfare aspects of commercial domestic pig production systems. *Captive wild* pigs are not considered.

Article 7.13.3.

Commercial pig production systems

Commercial pig production systems include:

1. Indoor systems

These are systems in which pigs are kept indoors and are fully dependent on humans to provide for basic animal needs such as *feed* and water. The type of housing depends on the environment, climatic conditions and management system. The animals may be kept in groups or individually.

2. Outdoor systems

These are systems in which pigs live outdoors with shelter or shade, have some autonomy over access to shelter or shade, but may be fully dependent on humans to provide for basic animal needs such as *feed* and water. Pigs are typically kept in paddocks or pastures according to their production stage. The animals may be kept in groups or individually.

3. Combination systems

These are systems in which pigs are managed in any combination of indoor and outdoor production systems.

Article 7.13.4.

Criteria (or measurables) for the welfare of pigs

The following outcome-based criteria (or measurables), specifically animal-based criteria, can be useful indicators of *animal welfare*. The use of these indicators and their appropriate thresholds should be adapted to the different situations in which pigs are managed such as regional differences, *herd* health, pig breed or crossbreed, and climate. Consideration should also be given to the resources provided and the design of the system. These criteria can be considered as tools to monitor the efficiency of design and management, given that they can affect *animal welfare*.

1. Behaviour

Certain behaviours appear to be indicators of good animal welfare and health in pigs such as play and specific vocalisations.

Certain other behaviours could indicate an *animal welfare* and health problem. These include sudden immobility, escape attempts, changes in *feed* and water intake, altered locomotory behaviour or posture, altered lying time, postures and patterns, altered respiratory rate and panting, coughing, shivering and huddling, high-pitched vocalisations and increased call rate, increased agonistic (including aggression), stereotypic, apathetic or other abnormal behaviours.

Environments that induce stereotypies typically also reduce animal welfare. Although stereotypies are generally held to indicate poor welfare, there are some instances where there is a poor association between stereotypies and stress. For example, frustration-induced stress may be somewhat rectified if the behaviour itself reduces the underlying motivation. Within a group, individuals that perform stereotypies may thus be coping more successfully than those that do not. Nevertheless, stereotypies indicate either a present problem for the animal or a past problem that has resolved. As with other indicators, caution should be used when using stereotypies as a welfare measure in isolation from other indicators.

2. Morbidity rates

Rates of infectious and metabolic diseases, lameness, peripartum and post-procedural complications, injury and other forms of morbidity, above recognised thresholds, may be direct or indirect indicators of *animal welfare* at the *herd* level. Understanding the aetiology of the disease or syndrome is important for detecting potential *animal welfare* problems. Mastitis and metritis, leg and hoof problems, shoulder ulcers in sows, skin lesions, respiratory and digestive diseases, and reproductive diseases are also particularly important animal health problems for pigs. Scoring systems, such as for body condition, lameness and injuries, and information gathered at the *slaughterhouse/abattoir*, can provide additional information.

Both clinical and *post mortem* pathologic examination should be utilised as indicators of disease, injuries and other problems that may compromise *animal welfare*.

3. Mortality and culling rates

Mortality and culling rates affect the length of productive life and, like morbidity rates, may be direct or indirect indicators of *animal welfare* at the *herd* level. Depending on the production system, estimates of mortality and culling rates can be obtained by analysing the causes of death and culling and their temporal and spatial patterns of occurrence. Mortality and culling rates, and their causes, when known, should be recorded regularly, e.g. daily, and used for monitoring, e.g. monthly, annually.

Necropsy is useful in establishing the cause of death.

4. Changes in body weight and body condition

In growing animals, body weight changes outside the expected growth rate, especially excessive sudden weight loss, are indicators of poor *animal welfare* and health.

Body condition outside an acceptable range or large variation amongst individual animals in the group may be an indicator of compromised *animal welfare* and health, and reproductive efficiency in mature animals.

5. Reproductive efficiency

Reproductive efficiency can be an indicator of *animal welfare* and health status. Poor reproductive efficiency, compared with the targets expected for a particular breed or crossbreed, can indicate *animal welfare* problems.

Examples may include:

- low conception rates,
- high abortion rates,
- metritis and mastitis,
- small litter size (total born),
- low numbers born alive,
- high numbers of stillborns or mummies.

6. Physical appearance

Physical appearance may be an indicator of *animal welfare* and health. Attributes of physical appearance that may indicate compromised *animal welfare* include:

- body condition outside an acceptable range,
- presence of ectoparasites,
- abnormal texture or hair loss,
- excessive soiling with faeces,
- skin discolouration, including sunburn,
- swellings, injuries or lesions,
- discharges (e.g. from nose or eyes, including tear staining),
- feet and leg abnormalities,
- abnormal posture (e.g. rounded back, head low),
- emaciation or dehydration.

7. Handling response

Improper handling or lack of human contact can result in fear and *distress* in pigs. Fear of humans may be an indicator of poor *animal welfare*. Indicators may include:

- evidence of poor human-animal relationship, such as marked avoidance of handlers and abnormal or excessive vocalisation when being moved or when *animal handlers* interact with pigs,
- animals slipping or falling during handling,
- injuries sustained during handling, such as bruising, lacerations and fractures.

8. Lameness

Pigs are susceptible to a variety of infectious and non-infectious musculoskeletal disorders. These disorders may cause lameness and gait abnormalities. Pigs that are lame or have gait abnormalities may have difficulty reaching feed and water and may experience *pain* and *distress*. Musculoskeletal problems have many causes, including genetic, nutrition, sanitation, floor quality, and other environmental and management factors. There are several gait scoring systems available.

9. Complications from common procedures

Some painful or potentially painful procedures such as surgical castration, tail docking, teeth clipping or grinding, tusk trimming, identification, nose ringing and hoof care are performed on pigs to facilitate management, meet market or environmental requirements and improve human safety or safeguard *animal welfare*.

However, if these procedures are not performed properly, *animal welfare* and health can be unnecessarily compromised.

Indicators of problems associated with these procedures could include:

- post-procedure *infection* and swelling,
- post-procedure lameness,
- behaviour indicating *pain*, fear, *distress* or suffering,
- increased morbidity rates, and increased mortality and culling rates,
- reduced *feed* and water intake,
- post procedure body condition and weight loss.

Article 7.13.5.

Recommendations

Ensuring good welfare of pigs is contingent on several management factors, including system design, environmental management, and animal management practices which include responsible husbandry and provision of appropriate care. Serious problems can arise in any system if one or more of these elements are lacking.

Articles 7.13.6. to 7.13.27. provide recommendations for measures applied to pigs.

Each recommendation in Articles 7.13.6. to 7.13.24. includes a list of relevant animal-based criteria (or measurables) derived from Article 7.13.4. This does not exclude other criteria (or measurables) being used where or when appropriate.

Article 7.13.6.

Training of personnel

Pigs should be cared for by a sufficient number of personnel, who collectively possess the ability, knowledge and competence necessary to maintain the welfare and health of the animals.

All people responsible for pigs should be competent through formal training or practical experience in accordance with their responsibilities. This includes understanding of and skill in animal handling, nutrition, reproductive management techniques, behaviour, *biosecurity*, signs of disease, and indicators of poor *animal welfare* such as stress, *pain* and discomfort, and their alleviation.

Animal-based criteria (or measurables): handling response, physical appearance, behaviour, changes in body weight, body condition, reproductive efficiency, lameness, morbidity rates, mortality and culling rates, and complications from common procedures.

Article 7.13.7.

Handling and inspection

Animal handlers with positive attitudes to handling and caring for pigs can lead to positive welfare outcomes. This may be shown by the length of time taken for the animals to approach a human, a short flight distance, or a willingness to interact with humans.

Pigs should be inspected at least once a day when fully dependent on humans to provide for basic needs such as *feed* and water and to identify welfare and health problems.

Some animals should be inspected more frequently, for example, farrowing sows, new born piglets, newly weaned pigs, newly-mixed gilts and sows, sick or injured pigs and those showing abnormal behaviours such as tail biting.

Pigs identified as sick or injured should be given appropriate treatment as soon as possible by competent *animal handlers*. If *animal handlers* are unable to provide appropriate treatment, the services of a *veterinarian* should be sought.

Recommendations on the handling of pigs are also found in Chapter 7.3. In particular handling aids that may cause *pain* and *distress* (e.g. electric goads) should be used only when other methods fail and provided that the animal can move freely and is able to move away from the handling aid. The use of electric goads should be avoided (see also point 3 of Article 7.3.8.), and should not be repeatedly used on the same animal, and not be used in sensitive areas including the udder, face, eyes, nose, ears or anogenital region. *Animal handlers* should be alert for signs of stress in pigs and know when to release handling pressure (by giving pigs more time and space) to reduce the level of threat.

Exposure of pigs to sudden movement, loud noises or changes in visual contrasts should be minimised where possible to prevent stress and fear reactions. Pigs should not be improperly or aggressively handled (e.g. kicked, thrown, dropped, walked on top of, held or pulled by one front leg, ears or tail). Pigs that become distressed during handling should be attended to immediately.

Pigs should be restrained only for as long as necessary and only appropriate, well-maintained restraint devices should be used.

Well designed and maintained handling facilities assists proper handling.

Animal-based criteria (or measurables): physical appearance, behaviour, changes in body weight and body condition, handling response, reproductive efficiency, lameness, morbidity rates, and mortality and culling rates.

Article 7.13.8.

Painful procedures

Some procedures such as surgical castration, tail docking, teeth clipping or grinding, tusk trimming, identification, and nose ringing may be performed on pigs. These procedures should only be performed by trained personnel, when necessary to facilitate management, meet market or environmental requirements, improve human safety or safeguard *animal welfare*.

These procedures are painful or have the potential to cause *pain*. They should be performed in such a way as to minimise any *pain*, *distress* or suffering to the animal.

Options for enhancing *animal welfare* in relation to these procedures include the internationally recognised “three Rs”: replacement (e.g. using entire males or immunocastrated males rather than surgically castrated males), reduction (e.g. tail docking and teeth clipping only when necessary) and refinement (e.g. providing analgesia or anaesthesia under the recommendation or supervision of a *veterinarian*).

Ovariectomy should not be performed without anaesthesia and prolonged analgesia. An immunological product that reversibly and effectively suppresses ovarian function in pigs is available. Immunological prevention of oestrus should be encouraged to avoid ovariectomy.

Animal-based criteria (or measurables): complications from common procedures, morbidity rates, mortality and culling rates, abnormal behaviour, physical appearance and changes in weight and body condition.

Article 7.13.9.

Provision of feed and water

The amount of *feed* and nutrients pigs require in any management system is affected by factors such as climate, the nutritional composition and quality of the diet, the age, gender, genetics, size and physiological state of the pigs (e.g. pregnancy, lactation, growth), and their state of health, growth rate, previous feeding levels and level of activity and exercise.

All pigs should receive adequate quantity and quality of *feed* and nutrients each day to enable each pig to:

- maintain good health;
- meet its physiological requirements; and
- meet its requirements for foraging and feeding behaviour.

Feed and water should be provided in such a way as to prevent excessive or injurious competition.

Pigs should be fed a diet with the intention of minimising the occurrence of gastric ulcers (e.g. increasing dietary fiber or reducing crude protein).

All pigs should have access to an adequate supply of drinkable water that meets their physiological requirements and is free from contaminants hazardous to pig health. Water flow rates in drinkers should be set according to the age of the animal, stage of production and environmental conditions.

In outdoor systems where pigs have some autonomy over diet selection, stocking density should be matched to the available natural feed supply.

Animal-based criteria (or measurables): changes in body weight and body condition, physical appearance (emaciation, dehydration), behaviour (agonistic behaviour at feeding and watering places and abnormal behaviour such as tail biting), mortality and culling rates, and morbidity rates.

Article 7.13.10.

Environmental enrichment

Animals should be provided with an environment that provides complexity, manipulability and cognitive stimulation to foster normal behaviour (e.g. exploration, foraging such as rooting, biting and chewing materials other than feedstuffs, and social interaction), reduce abnormal behaviour (e.g. tail, ear, leg and flank biting, sham chewing, bar biting and apathetic behaviour) and improve their physical and mental state.

Pigs should be provided with enrichments that aim to improve their welfare through the enhancement of their physical and social environments, such as:

- sufficient quantity of suitable materials to enable pigs to fulfil their needs to explore and look for feed (edible materials), bite (chewable materials), root (investigable materials) and manipulate materials. Novelty is another aspect that is important in maintaining interest in the provided materials;
- social enrichment that involves either keeping pigs in groups or individually with visual, olfactory and auditory contact with other pigs;
- positive human contact (such as regular direct physical contact associated with positive events, which may include feed, pats, rubs, scratching and talking when the opportunity arises).

Animal-based criteria (or measurables): physical appearance (injuries), behaviour (stereotypies, tail biting), changes in body weight and body condition, handling response, reproductive efficiency, lameness, mortality and culling rates, and morbidity rates.

Article 7.13.11.

Prevention of abnormal behaviour

In pig production there is a number of abnormal behaviours that can be prevented or minimised with appropriate management procedures.

Many of these problems are multifactorial and minimising their occurrence requires an examination of the whole environment and of several management factors. Management procedures that may reduce the occurrence of some of these behavioural problems include:

- 1) Oral stereotypies (e.g. bar biting, sham chewing, excessive drinking) may be minimised by providing environmental enrichment and increasing feeding time and satiety by increasing fibre content in the diet or foraging roughage.
- 2) Tail biting may be reduced by providing an adequate enrichment material and an adequate diet (avoiding deficiencies of minerals or essential amino acids), and avoiding high stocking densities and competition for resources, such as feed and water. Other factors to consider include animal characteristics (breed, genetics, gender) and social environment (herd size, mixing animals), general health, thermal comfort and air quality.
- 3) Belly nosing and ear sucking may be reduced by increasing the weaning age, and providing feed to piglets prior to weaning to avoid the abrupt change of feed.
- 4) Vulva biting may be reduced by minimising competition for resources, including feed and water, and reducing group size.

Animal-based criteria (or measurables): physical appearance (injuries), behaviour (abnormal behaviour), morbidity rates, mortality and culling rates, reproductive efficiency and changes in body weight and body condition.

Article 7.13.12.

Housing (including outdoor production systems)

When new facilities to accommodate pigs are planned or existing facilities are modified, professional advice on design in regards to welfare and health of animals should be sought.

Housing systems and their components should be designed, constructed and regularly inspected and maintained in a manner that reduces the risk of injury, disease and stress for pigs. Facilities should allow for the safe, efficient and humane management and movement of pigs. In systems where pigs could be exposed to adverse weather conditions they should have access to shelter to avoid thermal stress and sunburn.

There should be a separate pen or area where sick and injured animals or animals that exhibit abnormal behaviour can be isolated, treated and monitored. Certain animals may need to be kept individually. When a separated space is provided, this should accommodate all the needs of the animal, e.g. recumbent or lame animals or animals with severe wounds may require additional bedding or an alternative floor surface, and water and feed should be within reach.

Pigs should not be tethered as part of their normal housing systems.

Good outcomes in the welfare and health of animals can be achieved in a range of housing systems. The design and management of the system are critical for achieving these outcomes.

Sows and gilts, like other pigs, are social animals and prefer living in groups, therefore pregnant sows and gilts should preferably be housed in groups. Boars may need to be housed in individual pens.

Animal-based criteria (or measurables): physical appearance (injuries), behaviour, changes in body weight and body condition, handling response, reproductive efficiency, lameness, mortality and culling rates, and morbidity rates.

Article 7.13.13.

Space allowance

Space allowance should be managed taking into account different areas for lying, standing, feeding and elimination. Stocking density should not adversely affect normal behaviour of pigs and duration of time spent lying.

Insufficient and inadequate space allowance may increase stress, the occurrence of injuries and have an adverse effect on growth rate, feed efficiency, reproduction and behaviour such as locomotion, resting, feeding and drinking, agonistic and abnormal behaviour.

1. Group housing

Floor space may interact with a number of factors such as temperature, humidity, floor type and feeding systems to affect pig welfare. All pigs should be able to lie down simultaneously and to stand up and move freely. Sufficient space should be provided to enable animals to have access to feed, water, to separate lying and elimination areas and to avoid aggressive animals.

Group housing systems should provide sufficient space and opportunities to avoid or escape from potential aggressors.

If abnormally aggressive behaviour is seen, corrective measures should be taken, such as increasing space allowance and providing barriers where possible or individually housing the aggressive pig.

Animal-based criteria (or measurables): reduction or variation in body weight and body condition, increasing agonistic and abnormal behaviour such as tail biting, injuries, morbidity rates, mortality and culling rates, and physical appearance (e.g. excessive presence of faeces on the skin).

2. Individual pens

Pigs should only be housed in individual pens if necessary. In individual pens, pigs should be provided with sufficient space so that they can stand up, turn around and lie comfortably in a natural position, and that provides separate areas for elimination, lying and eating.

Animal-based criteria (or measurables): increasing abnormal behaviour (stereotypies), morbidity rates, mortality and culling rates, and physical appearance (e.g. excessive presence of faeces on the skin, injuries).

3. Stalls and crates

Feeding, insemination and gestation stalls and farrowing crates should be sized appropriately to allow pigs to:

- stand up in their natural stance without contact with either side of the stall or crate,
- stand up in their natural stance without contact with the top bars,
- stand without simultaneously touching both ends of the stall or crate,
- lie comfortably on their sides without disturbing neighbouring pigs or being injured by another pig, except in the case of stalls used only for feeding.

Animal-based criteria (or measurables): physical appearance (e.g. injuries), increasing abnormal behaviour (stereotypies), reproductive efficiency, lameness, mortality and culling rates, and morbidity rates (e.g. piglets).

Article 7.13.14.

Flooring, bedding, resting surfaces

In all production systems, pigs need a well-drained, dry and comfortable place to rest, except in situations where sprinklers or misters may be used to prevent heat stress.

Floor management in indoor production systems can have a significant impact on pig welfare. Flooring, bedding, resting surfaces and outdoor yards should be cleaned as conditions warrant, to ensure good hygiene, comfort and minimise risk of diseases and injuries. Areas with excessive faecal accumulation are not suitable for resting.

Floors should be designed to minimise slipping and falling, promote foot health, and reduce the risk of claw injuries.

If a housing system includes areas of slatted floor, the slat and gap widths should be appropriate to the claw size of the pigs to prevent injuries.

Slope of the floor should allow water to drain and not pool.

In outdoor systems, pigs should be rotated between paddocks or pastures to ensure good hygiene and minimise risk of diseases.

If bedding or rubber matting is provided it should be maintained to provide pigs with a clean, dry and comfortable place on which to lie.

Animal-based criteria (or measurables): physical appearance (e.g. injuries, presence of faeces on the skin, bursitis), lameness and morbidity rates (e.g. respiratory disorders, reproductive tract infections).

Article 7.13.15.

Air quality

Good air quality and ventilation are important for the welfare and health of pigs and reduce the risk of respiratory discomfort, diseases and abnormal behaviour. Dust, toxins, microorganisms and noxious gases, including ammonia, hydrogen sulphide, and methane caused by decomposing animal waste, can be problematic in indoor systems.

Air quality is influenced strongly by management and building design in housed systems. Air composition is influenced by stocking density, the size of the pigs, flooring, bedding, waste management, building design and ventilation system.

Proper ventilation, without draughts, particularly for young pigs, is important for effective heat dissipation in pigs and to prevent the build-up of effluent gases (e.g. ammonia and hydrogen sulphide), including those from manure and dust in the housing unit. The ammonia concentration in enclosed housing should not exceed 25 ppm. A useful indicator is that if air quality at the level of the pigs is unpleasant for humans it is most likely a problem for pigs.

Animal-based criteria (or measurables): morbidity rates, mortality and culling rates, physical appearance (discharges from nose or eyes), behaviour (especially respiratory rate, coughing and tail biting), change in body weight and body condition.

Article 7.13.16.

Thermal environment

Although pigs can adapt to a range of thermal environments, particularly if appropriate breeds and housing are used for the anticipated conditions, sudden fluctuations in temperature can cause heat or cold stress.

1. Heat stress

Heat stress is a serious problem in pig production. It can cause significant discomfort, as well as reductions in weight gain and fertility, or sudden death.

The risk of heat stress for pigs is influenced by environmental factors including air temperature, solar radiation, relative humidity, wind speed, ventilation rates, stocking density, shade and wallow availability in outdoor systems and animal factors including breed, age and body condition.

At a given temperature, the heavier pigs are, the more susceptible they are to heat stress.

Animal handlers should be aware of the risk that heat stress poses to pigs and of the thresholds in relation to heat and humidity that may require action. If the risk of heat stress reaches too high levels the *animal handlers* should institute an emergency action plan that gives priority to access to additional water and could include provision of shade and wallows in outdoor systems, fans, reduction of stocking density, water-based cooling systems (dripping or misting), and provision of cooling systems as appropriate for the local conditions.

Animal-based criteria (or measurables): behaviour (feed and water intake, respiratory rate, panting, lying postures and patterns, agonistic behaviour), physical appearance (presence of faeces on the skin, sunburn), morbidity rates, mortality and culling rates, and reproductive efficiency.

2. Cold stress

Protection from cold should be provided when conditions are likely to compromise the welfare of pigs, particularly in neonates and young pigs and others that are physiologically compromised (e.g. ill animals). Protection can be provided by insulation, extra bedding, heat mats or lamps and natural or man-made shelters in outdoor systems.

Animal-based criteria (or measurables): morbidity rates, mortality and culling rates, physical appearance (piloerection), behaviour (especially abnormal postures, shivering and huddling) and changes in body weight and body condition.

Article 7.13.17.

Noise

Exposure of pigs to sudden or prolonged loud noises should be avoided to prevent increased aggression, stress and fear. Ventilation fans, feeding machinery or other indoor or outdoor equipment should be constructed, placed, operated and maintained in such a way that they cause the least possible amount of noise.

Animal-based criteria (or measurables): behaviour (e.g. fleeing and abnormal or excessive vocalisation), physical appearance (e.g. injuries), reproductive efficiency, changes in body weight and body condition.

Article 7.13.18.

Lighting

Indoor systems should have light levels sufficient to allow all pigs to see one another, to investigate their surroundings visually and to show other normal behaviour patterns and to be seen clearly by staff to allow adequate inspection of the pigs. The lighting regime should be such as to prevent health and behavioural problems. It should follow a 24-hour rhythm and include sufficient uninterrupted dark and light periods, preferably no less than 6 hours for both.

Artificial light sources should be located so as not to cause discomfort to the pigs.

Animal-based criteria (or measurables): behaviour (locomotive behaviour), morbidity rates, reproductive efficiency, physical appearance (injuries) and changes in body weight and body condition.

Article 7.13.19.

Farrowing and lactation

Sows and gilts need time to adjust to their farrowing accommodation before farrowing. Nesting material should be available to sows and gilts where possible for at least one day prior to. Sows and gilts should be observed frequently around their expected farrowing times. As some sows and gilts need assistance during farrowing, there should be sufficient space and competent staff.

Farrowing accommodation should also provide comfort, warmth and protection to the piglets.

Animal-based criteria (or measurables): mortality and culling rates (piglets; gilts and sows), morbidity rates (metritis and mastitis), behaviour (restlessness and savaging), reproductive efficiency, physical appearance (injuries).

Article 7.13.20.

Weaning

Weaning is a stressful time for sows and piglets and good management is required. Problems associated with weaning are generally related to the piglets' size and physiological maturity. Weaned piglets should be moved into clean and disinfected housing separate from where sows are kept, in order to minimise the transmission of diseases to the piglets.

Piglets should be weaned at three weeks or older, unless otherwise recommended by a *veterinarian* for disease control purposes. Early weaning systems require good management and nutrition of the piglets.

Delaying weaning to the age of four weeks or more may produce benefits such as improved gut immunity, less diarrhoea and less use of *antimicrobial agents*.

Regardless of age, low weight piglets require additional care and can benefit from being kept in small groups in specialised pens until they are able to be moved to the common nursery area.

Newly weaned pigs are susceptible to disease challenges, so adherence to high-level hygiene protocols and appropriate diet is important. The area that piglets are weaned into should be clean, dry and warm.

All newly weaned pigs should be monitored carefully during the first two weeks after weaning for any signs of ill-health or abnormal stress.

Animal-based criteria (or measurables): mortality and culling rates (piglets), morbidity rates (respiratory disease, diarrhoea), behaviour (belly nosing and ear sucking), physical appearance (injuries) and changes in body weight and body condition.

Article 7.13.21.

Mixing

Mixing of unfamiliar pigs can result in fighting to establish a dominance hierarchy, and therefore mixing should be minimised as much as possible. When mixing, strategies to reduce aggression should be implemented. Animals should be observed after mixing and interventions applied if the aggression is intense or prolonged, to minimise stress and injury.

Measures to prevent excessive fighting and injuries can include:

- providing additional space and a non-slippery floor,
- feeding before mixing,
- feeding on the floor in the mixing area,
- providing straw or other suitable enrichment materials in the mixing area,
- providing opportunities to escape and to hide from other pigs, such as visual barriers,
- mixing previously familiarised animals whenever possible,

- mixing young animals as soon after weaning as possible,
- avoiding the addition of one or small number of animals to a large established group.

Animal-based criteria (or measurables): morbidity rates, mortality and culling rates, behaviour (agonistic), physical appearance (injuries), changes in body weight and body condition and reproductive efficiency.

Article 7.13.22.

Genetic selection

Welfare and health considerations should balance any decisions on productivity and growth rate when choosing a breed or crossbreed for a particular location or production system.

Selective breeding can improve the welfare of pigs for example by selection to improve maternal behaviour, piglet viability, temperament and resistance to stress and disease and to reduce tail biting and aggressive behaviour. Including genetic characteristics related to social behaviour into breeding programmes may also reduce negative social interactions and increase positive ones and may have major positive effects on group-housed animals.

Animal-based criteria (or measurables): physical appearance, behaviour (e.g. maternal and agonistic behaviour), changes in body weight and body condition, handling response, reproductive efficiency, lameness, mortality and culling rates, and morbidity rates.

Article 7.13.23.

Protection from predators and pests

In outdoor and combination systems pigs should be protected from predators.

Where practicable, pigs should also be protected from pests such as excessive numbers of flies and mosquitoes.

Animal-based criteria (or measurables): morbidity rates, mortality and culling rates, behaviour, and physical appearance (injuries).

Article 7.13.24.

Biosecurity and animal health (biosecurity and disease prevention)

Biosecurity plans should be designed, implemented and maintained, commensurate with the best possible *herd* health status, available resources and infrastructure, and current disease risk and, for *listed diseases* in accordance with relevant recommendations in the *Terrestrial Code*.

These *biosecurity plans* should address the control of the major sources and pathways for spread of pathogenic agents including:

- introductions to the *herd*, especially from different sources,
- semen,
- other domestic animals, *wildlife* and pests,
- people, including sanitation practices,
- equipment, including *vehicles*, tools and facilities,
- air, water, *feed* and bedding,
- waste, including manure garbage and disposal of dead animals.

Animal-based criteria (or measurables): morbidity rates, mortality and culling rates, reproductive efficiency, changes in weight and body condition, physical appearance (signs of disease).

1. Animal health management

Animal health management should optimise the welfare and health of pigs in the *herd*. It includes the prevention, treatment and control of diseases and conditions affecting the *herd* (in particular respiratory, reproductive and enteric diseases).

There should be an effective programme for the prevention and treatment of diseases and conditions, formulated in consultation with a *veterinarian*. This programme should include *biosecurity* and quarantine protocols, the acclimatisation of replacements, *vaccinations*, and good colostrum management, the recording of production data (e.g. number of sows, piglets per sow per year, *feed* conversion, and body weight at weaning), morbidity rates, mortality and culling rates, and medical treatments. It should be kept up to date by the *animal handler*. Regular monitoring of records aids management and quickly reveals problem areas for intervention.

For parasitic burdens (e.g. endoparasites, ectoparasites and protozoa) and insect and rodents control, a programme should be implemented to monitor, control and treat, as appropriate.

Lameness can be a problem in pigs. *Animal handlers* should monitor the state of feet and legs and take measures to prevent lameness and maintain foot and leg health.

Those responsible for the care of pigs should be aware of early specific signs of disease, *pain*, *distress* or suffering, such as coughing, abortion, diarrhoea, changes in locomotory behaviour or apathetic behaviour, and non-specific signs such as reduced *feed* and water intake, changes in weight and body condition, changes in behaviour or abnormal physical appearance.

Pigs at higher risk will require more frequent inspection by *animal handlers*. If *animal handlers* suspect the presence of a disease or are not able to correct the causes of disease, *pain*, *distress* or suffering, they should seek advice from those having training and experience, such as *veterinarians* or other qualified advisers, as appropriate.

Nonambulatory pigs should not be transported or moved unless absolutely necessary for treatment, recovery, or diagnosis. Such movements should be done carefully using methods that avoid dragging the animal or lifting it in a way that might cause further *pain*, suffering or exacerbate injuries.

Animal handlers should also be competent in assessing fitness to transport, as described in Chapter 7.3.

In case of disease or injury, when treatment has failed, is not feasible or recovery is unlikely (e.g. pigs that are unable to stand up unaided or refuse to eat or drink), or severe *pain* that cannot be alleviated the animal should be humanely killed as soon as possible in accordance with Chapter 7.6.

Animal-based criteria (or measurables): morbidity rates, mortality and culling rates, reproductive efficiency, behaviour (apathetic behaviour), lameness, physical appearance (injuries) and changes in body weight and body condition.

2. Emergency plans for disease outbreaks

Emergency plans should cover the management of the farm in the event of a disease *outbreak*, consistent with national programmes and recommendations of *Veterinary Services* as appropriate.

Article 7.13.25.

Contingency plans

Where the failure of power, water or *feed* supply systems could compromise *animal welfare*, pig producers should have contingency plans in place. These plans may include the provision of fail-safe alarms to detect malfunctions, back-up generators, contact information for key service providers, ability to store water on farm, access to water cartage services, adequate on-farm storage of *feed* and an alternative *feed* supply.

Preventive measures for emergencies should be input-based rather than outcome-based. Alarms and back-up systems should be checked regularly.

Contingency plans should be documented and communicated to all responsible parties.

Article 7.13.26.

Disaster management

Plans should be in place to minimise and mitigate the effect of disasters (e.g. earthquake, fire, flooding, blizzard and hurricane). Such plans may include evacuation procedures, identifying high ground, maintaining emergency *feed* and water stores, destocking and humane *killing* when necessary.

Procedures for humane *killing* of sick or injured pigs should be part of the disaster management plan and should follow the recommendations of Chapter 7.6.

Reference to contingency plans can also be found in Article 7.13.25.

Article 7.13.27.

Humane killing

Allowing a sick or injured animal to linger unnecessarily is unacceptable. Therefore, for sick and injured pigs a prompt diagnosis should be made to determine whether the animal should be treated or humanely killed.

The decision to kill an animal humanely and the procedure itself should be undertaken by a competent person.

For a description of acceptable methods for humane *killing* of pigs see Chapter 7.6.

The *establishment* should have documented procedures and the necessary equipment for on-farm humane *killing*. Staff should be trained in humane *killing* procedures appropriate for each class of pig.

Reasons for humane *killing* may include:

- severe emaciation, weak pigs that are nonambulatory or at risk of becoming nonambulatory,
 - severely injured or nonambulatory pigs that will not stand up, refuse to eat or drink, or have not responded to treatment,
 - rapid deterioration of a medical condition for which treatment has been unsuccessful,
 - severe *pain* that cannot be alleviated,
 - multiple joint *infections* with chronic weight loss,
 - piglets that are premature and unlikely to survive, or have a debilitating congenital defect, and
 - as part of disaster management response.
-

NB: FIRST ADOPTED IN 2018; MOST RECENT UPDATE ADOPTED IN 2019.

CHAPTER 7.14.

KILLING OF REPTILES FOR THEIR SKINS, MEAT AND OTHER PRODUCTS

Article 7.14.1.

Scope

The recommendations in this chapter address the need to ensure the welfare of chelonians, crocodilians, lacertilians and ophidians, during the process of *killing* them for their skins, *meat* and other products.

Article 7.14.2.

Definitions

Some of the definitions in this chapter differ from those in the Glossary and Chapter 7.5., as they are adapted to reptiles, given the specific characteristics of these animals.

For the purposes of this chapter the following definitions apply:

Pithing means a method carried out by inserting a rod or probe through the foramen magnum (or the hole from a penetrative captive bolt or gunshot), into the brain to ensure thorough brain destruction.

Restraint means any acceptable physical or chemical method of reducing, or eliminating, voluntary or reactive movement of the reptile, to facilitate efficient stunning or *killing*.

Stunning means the procedure that causes immediate loss of consciousness until the reptile is dead, or causes the absence of *pain*, distress and suffering until the onset of unconsciousness, according to the outcomes defined in this chapter for the species covered.

Unconsciousness means the state of unawareness caused by temporary or permanent disruption of brain function.

Article 7.14.3.

General considerations

Because of the anatomy and physiology of reptiles, various factors should be considered when choosing the appropriate restraining, stunning and *killing* method. Such factors include the size of the reptile, tolerance and intolerance of certain species to particular methods, reptile handling, ease of access to veins and safety of the *animal handlers*.

1. Animal welfare plan

Facilities in which reptiles are killed should have an *animal welfare* plan and associated procedures. The purposes of such a plan should be to maintain good *animal welfare* at all stages of handling of reptiles until their death.

The *animal welfare* plan should contain standard operating procedures for each step of reptile handling to ensure that it is properly implemented, based on relevant recommendations in this chapter, including criteria in Article 7.14.6. It should also include corrective actions to address specific risks, for example, power failures or other circumstances that could negatively affect the welfare of reptiles.

2. Competency and training of the personnel

Animal handlers should be competent in handling and moving, stunning and verifying effective stun, and *killing* of reptiles, as well as in recognising species and understanding relevant behaviours of these animals and the underlying *animal welfare* and technical principles necessary to carry out their tasks.

There should be sufficient number of personnel, who should be trained, competent and familiar with the recommendations outlined in this chapter and their application within the national context.

The manager of the facility should ensure that personnel are competent and carry out their tasks in accordance with the guiding principles for *animal welfare* in Article 7.1.2.

The manager of the facility should ensure that personnel are physically and mentally able to carry out their tasks through the period of their work shift.

Competence may be gained through formal training or practical experience. This competence should be verified by the *Competent Authority* or an independent body accredited by it.

3. Considerations for handling, restraining, stunning and killing

Handling, restraining, stunning and *killing* methods should take into account the following characteristics of reptiles:

- sensitivity and responsiveness to visual, tactile, auditory, olfactory and vibrational stimuli;
- ability to escape handling and restraint because of their agility and strength;
- ability to inflict significant injuries to handlers, via bite wounds, wound infection, constriction, blunt trauma or envenomation;
- slow movements, torpor and reduced responsiveness due to low body temperatures or slow metabolic rates, which should not be regarded as indicators of quiescence or unconsciousness;
- absence of vocalisation, which is typical in reptiles, even in highly traumatic situations;
- propensity to regurgitate and choke when restrained inappropriately.

Article 7.14.4.

Source and transportation of reptiles

Reptiles should be acquired legally, in accordance with all national legislation, including those of the importation and exportation countries, and with international treaties, including the Convention on International Trade in Endangered Species of Wild Fauna and Flora (CITES).

Reptiles should be accompanied by relevant documentation related to their source.

When moving reptiles, capture and transport techniques should not compromise human and animal health, welfare and safety.

Article 7.14.5.

Selection of a killing process

In the case of reptiles, the *killing* process should involve either stunning followed by a *killing* method or direct *killing* method. Where stunning is used, death should be ensured before consciousness is recovered.

Criteria which may influence the choice of methods used in the *killing* process include:

- species and size of the reptile;
- the extent to which movement of the reptile can be restricted during the *killing* process;
- level of knowledge and skill required to perform the procedure effectively;
- safety of the operator;
- compatibility with processing requirements and reptile product purposes;
- in the case of the use of drugs, the drug availability, licensing and use requirements, possible human abuse, and implications for other product uses such as consumption by a reptile, animals or humans;
- ability to maintain equipment in proper working order.

The *killing* process used should:

- minimise agitation, fear, stress and *pain* to the reptiles;
- be appropriate for the species, size, age and health of the reptile;
- be reliable and reproducible;
- include the use of a stunning method (in accordance with Article 7.14.2.) followed by a *killing* step, or alternatively a one-step direct *killing* method; and
- when it includes a stunning step, ensure that death occurs during unconsciousness.

While economic or cost factors may influence the choice of the method used for stunning or *killing*, these factors should not compromise the welfare of the reptiles and the outcomes described in this chapter.

Article 7.14.6.

Criteria (or measurables) for the outcome of the stunning and killing of reptiles

The following animal-based criteria (or measurables) can be useful indicators of *animal welfare*. The use of these criteria and their appropriate thresholds should be adapted to the different methods used to stun and kill reptiles. These criteria can be considered as tools to monitor the impact of the method and management used, given that both of these can affect *animal welfare*.

As far as criteria to measure the effectiveness of stunning and *killing* methods are concerned and whilst multiple criteria are preferable for the verification of unconsciousness or death, the presence of any of the following criteria should be regarded as sufficient to establish suspicion of consciousness:

- pupillary response to light or moving objects;
- eye movement in response to objects or movement;
- blink or nictitating membrane responses to touch or contact of the cornea in species where eyelids are present;
- spontaneous eyelid opening or closing in species where eyelids are present;
- intentional defensive responses;
- tongue movement;
- jaw tone (except crocodilians).

In addition to the absence of all the criteria above, death may be inferred by confirming permanent cessation of the following:

- response to stimuli applied to the head, indicating brain activity;
- respiration;
- cardiac activity (while presence of a heartbeat does not necessarily mean that the reptile is alive, permanent cessation of a heartbeat indicates death). Cardiac activity should not be used as the sole indicator of death.

Article 7.14.7.

Physical restraint

Physical restraint is most often required in the process of stunning and *killing* of reptiles to control movement and improve the precision of application. Special considerations for the restraint of reptiles are needed due to the physical and behavioural characteristics of this taxonomic group.

As far as recommendations for effective physical restraint in relation to *animal welfare* are concerned, the method of restraint should:

- avoid injuries due to excessive pressure applied by equipment or personnel;
- be applied rapidly to avoid excessive or prolonged struggling of the reptile;
- exclude features that may cause *pain* or injury;
- not hoist or suspend animals by the feet, legs, tail or head;
- not restrain only one area of the body (e.g. head or neck) leaving the rest able to move excessively;
- ensure animals can breathe freely through the nostrils where the mouth is restrained;
- adequately support the animal's body when moving it;

- avoid taping or binding the legs or feet of the reptiles as the sole method of restraint, and, where required, the method should not cause injuries or *pain*.

Procedures or practices unacceptable on *animal welfare* grounds are:

- causing any unnecessary injuries, for example, severing the spinal cord, breaking limbs, cutting limb tendons or damaging eyes, whether for immobilisation or any other reason;
- pulling or probing sensitive body parts, other than for the purposes of verifying some reflex such as the cloacal reflex.

Animal-based criteria (or measurables): excessive struggling, excessive movements, excessive vocalisation, trauma and injuries.

Article 7.14.8.

Introduction to stunning and killing methods

Stunning may be used to facilitate the *killing* of reptiles. Stunning methods may result in the death of the reptile following unconsciousness, or may require an additional *killing* step.

If stunning is used, the method should:

- be appropriate for the species, size, age and health of the reptile;
- be reliable and reproducible;
- minimise agitation, stress and *pain* to the reptile;
- avoid or minimise restraint in accordance with Article 7.14.7.;
- result in the immediate onset of unconsciousness or the absence of *pain*, distress and suffering until the onset of unconsciousness that lasts until the reptile is dead;
- be followed by a *killing* method if stunning does not result in death of the reptile during unconsciousness.

The equipment used should be maintained and operated properly and in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations, in particular with regard to the species and size of the animal. The maintenance of the equipment is the responsibility of the management of the facility, and should be under the supervision of the *Competent Authority* or accredited delegated body. If the primary method of stunning fails to produce unconsciousness as described in Article 7.14.6. and, in accordance with this article, a back-up stunning or *killing* method should be used immediately (Articles 7.14.9. to 7.14.16.).

Animal-based criteria (or measurables): immediate onset of unconsciousness or death as described in Article 7.14.6.

Article 7.14.9.

Electrical stunning (for crocodilians only)

Electrical stunning is the application, through the brain, of an electric current of sufficient strength and duration, at a suitable frequency to cause immediate unconsciousness that lasts until death.

Recommendations for effective use of electrical stunning in relation to *animal welfare* are:

- the equipment and the procedure for its application should be approved by the *Competent Authority* or an accredited designated authority;
- the apparatus should deliver sufficient current through the brain;
- the equipment should be scientifically validated, tested and calibrated prior to use and maintained according to a set protocol;
- minimum electrical parameters (current, voltage and frequency) should be applied. Parameters may vary with size, age, weight, etc., within a species;
- minimum length of time of application of the current should be achieved. Duration may vary with size, age, weight, etc., within a species;
- reptiles should be killed in accordance to Articles 7.14.10. to 7.14.16. without delay following confirmation of effective stunning to avoid recovery of consciousness;
- reptiles should be effectively restrained when accurate application of the electrodes is dependent upon it;

- equipment should be selected to suit the species, size and type of the reptile;
- equipment should be cleaned, maintained and stored following manufacturer's recommendations.

Animal-based criteria (or measurables): immediate onset of unconsciousness as described in Article 7.14.6.

Article 7.14.10.

Penetrative captive bolt

The aim of this method is to produce a state of unconsciousness and cause severe damage to the brain by the impact and penetration of a captive bolt using a mechanical device. The force of impact and the physical damage caused by the passage of the bolt should result in immediate unconsciousness and death. If death does not occur following the passage of the penetrative bolt, then an additional *killing* method in accordance with Articles 7.14.10. to 7.14.16. should be used immediately to ensure death.

Recommendations for the effective use of a penetrative captive bolt in relation to *animal welfare* are:

- reptiles should be effectively restrained;
- the device should be correctly positioned on the head to result in the penetration of the brain by the bolt;
- the bolt should be of appropriate mass, length, diameter and shape;
- cartridge or compressed air specifications should be determined to deliver the correct bolt velocity;
- equipment and charge should be selected to suit the species, size and type of the reptile;
- equipment should be cleaned, maintained and stored, following manufacturer's recommendations.

Animal-based criteria (or measurables): immediate onset of unconsciousness or death as described in Article 7.14.6.

Article 7.14.11.

Non-penetrative captive bolt

The non-penetrative captive bolt method is sometimes called "concussive stunning", although concussion is the underlying principle for both penetrative and non-penetrative methods. The concussion may result in both unconsciousness and death. If death does not occur following the application of the percussive blow, then an additional *killing* method in accordance with Articles 7.14.10. to 7.14.16. should be used immediately to assure death.

Recommendations for an effective use of non-penetrative captive bolt in relation to *animal welfare* are:

- reptiles should be effectively restrained;
- the device should be correctly positioned on the head to allow optimum transfer of energy to the brain;
- the bolt should be of mass, diameter and shape appropriate to the anatomy of the cranium and brain;
- the equipment should be appropriately selected and maintained and adjusted for the species, size and type of the reptile;
- cartridge or compressed air specifications should be determined to deliver the correct bolt velocity;
- equipment and charge should be selected to suit the species, size and type of the reptile;
- equipment should be cleaned, maintained and stored, following manufacturer's recommendations.

Animal-based criteria (or measurables): immediate onset of unconsciousness or death as described in Article 7.14.6.

Article 7.14.12.

Percussive blow to the head

A percussive blow to the head to induce cerebral concussion can be achieved manually. A concussive state is normally associated with a sudden loss of consciousness with associated loss of reflexes. Inducing unconsciousness requires the transfer of sufficient energy into the brain to disrupt normal neural function. If the severity of the blow is sufficient then it will result in the death of the animal. If death does not occur following the application of the percussive blow, then an additional *killing* method in accordance with Articles 7.14.10. to 7.14.16. should be used immediately to ensure death. It is important to note that due to anatomical differences between species (e.g. thickness of braincase in

crocodilians), this method may be difficult to apply and in such cases, other stunning and *killing* methods should preferentially be used.

Recommendations for effective use of percussive blow to the head in relation to *animal welfare* are:

- reptiles should be effectively restrained;
- the blow should be correctly applied to result in optimum transfer of energy to the brain;
- the tool should be of appropriate size and weight, and the blow of sufficient force to induce concussion;
- equipment and method should be selected to suit the species, size and type of the reptile.

Animal-based criteria (or measurables): immediate onset of unconsciousness or death as described in Article 7.14.6.

Article 7.14.13.

Gunshot

An effective gunshot, where the projectile enters the brain, can cause immediate unconsciousness and death. A gunshot to the heart or neck does not immediately render a reptile unconscious and therefore should not be used. If death does not occur following the gunshot, then an additional *killing* method in accordance with Articles 7.14.10. to 7.14.16. should be used immediately to ensure death.

Manual restraint of the reptile should not be used due to safety concerns for humans in the line of fire.

Recommendations for effective use of gunshot in relation to *animal welfare* are:

- accurate targeting of the brain should be ensured;
- selected firearm and projectile should be suitable for the species, size and type of the reptile;
- equipment should be cleaned and stored following manufacturer's recommendations.

Animal-based criteria (or measurables): immediate onset of unconsciousness or death as described in Article 7.14.6.

Article 7.14.14.

Pithing

Pithing is an adjunct method used to ensure death by destruction of brain tissue. It is carried out by inserting a rod or probe through the foramen magnum or shot hole from a penetrative captive bolt or gunshot, into the brain. After insertion of the rod or probe it should be promptly turned a minimum of four times in a centrifugal motion to ensure destruction of the brain tissue.

Recommendations for effective use of pithing in relation to *animal welfare* are:

- pithing should only be used in unconscious reptiles;
- movement of the pithing implement should ensure maximum destruction of brain tissue.

Animal-based criteria (or measurables): confirmation of death as described in Article 7.14.6.

Article 7.14.15.

Decapitation or spinal cord severance

Decapitation involves cutting the neck of the animal, between the skull and the first cervical vertebra using a sharp instrument (guillotine, axe or blade) leading to severance of the head. For some reptile species, decapitation is not anatomically feasible. For severance of the spinal cord, complete separation of the head from the neck is not necessary. Some reptiles may remain conscious for over an hour after decapitation or spinal cord severance, which makes decapitation or severance of the spinal cord acceptable only in stunned and unconscious reptiles and when followed by immediate destruction of the brain.

Recommendations for effective use of decapitation or spinal cord severance in relation to *animal welfare* are:

- decapitation or spinal cord severance should only be used on unconscious reptiles;

- decapitation or spinal cord severance should always be followed immediately by physical intervention to destroy the brain, i.e. immediate crushing of the brain or pithing.

Animal-based criteria (or measurables): confirmation of death as described in Article 7.14.6.

Article 7.14.16.

Chemical agents

There are a number of chemical agents that, subject to relevant regulatory approvals, can be used for the restraint or *killing* of reptiles. The use of these agents for either restraint or *killing* should be supervised by *veterinarians* or *veterinary paraprofessionals* in accordance with the requirements of the *Competent Authority*. If death does not occur following administration of the agent, then an additional *killing* method in accordance with Articles 7.14.10. to 7.14.16. should be used immediately to ensure death.

The effectiveness of the chemical agent will vary according to the metabolic rate of reptiles.

Recommendations for effective use of chemical agents in relation to *animal welfare* are:

- ensure proper physical restraint is used for administration;
- ensure chemicals and doses used are appropriate for the species and size of the reptile;
- ensure the route of administration is appropriate for the reptiles.

Animal-based criteria (or measurables): confirmation of death as described in Article 7.14.6.

Article 7.14.17.

Methods that are unacceptable for stunning and killing reptiles

Due to particular anatomical and physiological characteristics of reptiles the use of any method other than those described in Articles 7.14.10. to 7.14.16., is considered inappropriate and unacceptable. Some examples of unacceptable methods are:

- exsanguination,
- freezing or cooling,
- heating or boiling,
- suffocation or drowning,
- inflation using compressed gas or liquid,
- live evisceration or skinning,
- constriction bands to induce cardiac arrest,
- inhalation of asphyxiating gases: carbon dioxide (CO₂), carbon monoxide (CO) or nitrogen (N₂),
- use of neuro-muscular blocking drugs,
- cervical dislocation.

NB: FIRST ADOPTED IN 2019.

INDEX

A

<i>Agreement on the Application of Sanitary and Phytosanitary Measures</i>	220
<i>Animal feed</i>	280
<i>Animal health surveillance</i>	7
<i>Animal welfare</i>	
<i>Beef cattle production systems</i>	443
<i>Broiler chicken production systems</i>	453
<i>Dairy cattle production systems</i>	460
<i>Dog population management</i>	419
<i>Introduction</i>	337
<i>Killing for disease control purposes</i>	398
<i>Killing of reptiles for their skins, meat and other products</i>	495
<i>Pig production systems</i>	482
<i>Slaughter</i>	375
<i>Transport by air</i>	367
<i>Transport by land</i>	353
<i>Transport by sea</i>	340
<i>Use of animals for research and education</i>	433
<i>Working equids</i>	473
<i>Anthrax</i>	
<i>Inactivation of pathogenic agents</i>	191
<i>Antimicrobial resistance</i>	
<i>Harmonisation of national antimicrobial resistance surveillance and monitoring programmes</i>	295
<i>Introduction</i>	294
<i>Monitoring of the quantities and usage patterns of antimicrobials used in animal husbandry</i>	301
<i>Responsible and prudent use of antimicrobial agents in veterinary medicine</i>	304
<i>Risk analysis</i>	315
<i>Artificial insemination</i>	
<i>Bovines</i>	157
<i>General hygiene in semen collection and processing centres</i>	152
<i>Pigs</i>	157
<i>Small ruminants</i>	157
<i>B</i>	
<i>Bovine viral diarrhoea-mucosal disease</i>	157
<i>C</i>	
<i>Certification</i>	
<i>General obligations</i>	215
<i>Procedures</i>	218
<i>Communication</i>	129
<i>Compartmentalisation</i>	147
<i>Application of compartmentalisation</i>	147
<i>General principles</i>	142
<i>Criteria applied by WOAH for assessing the safety of commodities</i>	108
<i>Criteria for listing diseases, infections and infestations</i>	3
<i>D</i>	
<i>Definitions</i>	xiii
<i>Disinfection</i>	191, 193, 233, 372
<i>Disinfestation</i>	233, 372
<i>Disinsection</i>	191
<i>Disposal of dead animals</i>	185
<i>Dispute mediation</i>	225

<i>E</i>	
<i>Embryos</i>	
<i>IETS Categorisation</i>	165
<i>Laboratory rodents and rabbits</i>	174
<i>Livestock and horses - in vitro fertilisation</i>	167
<i>Livestock and horses - in vivo derived</i>	161
<i>Livestock and horses - micromanipulation</i>	171
<i>Epidemiological information</i>	1
<i>F</i>	
<i>Food safety</i>	
<i>Ante-mortem and post-mortem inspections</i>	277
<i>Role of Veterinary Services</i>	274
<i>H</i>	
<i>High health status horse subpopulation</i>	197
<i>Hygiene and disease security procedures</i>	
<i>Apiaries</i>	193
<i>Hatcheries</i>	284
<i>I</i>	
<i>Identification of live animals</i>	133, 135, 136
<i>Import/export</i>	
<i>Animal health measures at departure</i>	226
<i>Animal health measures on arrival</i>	231
<i>Control</i>	230
<i>Transit</i>	228
<i>International veterinary certificates (model)</i>	
<i>Bees and brood combs</i>	248
<i>Competition horses</i>	253
<i>Dogs, cats and ferrets originating from rabies infected countries</i>	250
<i>Embryos, oocytes and semen</i>	244
<i>Embryos, ova and semen</i>	270
<i>Hatching eggs</i>	243
<i>Laboratory animals</i>	267
<i>Live animals</i>	242, 269
<i>Notes for guidance</i>	239
<i>Products of animal origin</i>	246
<i>L</i>	
<i>Laboratory containment</i>	234
<i>Listed diseases</i>	4
<i>N</i>	
<i>Notification of diseases, infections and infestations</i>	1
<i>O</i>	
<i>Official control programmes</i>	
<i>Emerging diseases</i>	207
<i>Listed diseases</i>	207
<i>P</i>	
<i>Prevention and control of Salmonella in commercial bovine production systems</i>	326
<i>Prevention and control of Salmonella in commercial pig production systems</i>	331
<i>Prevention, detection and control of Salmonella in poultry</i>	289
<i>Procedure for official recognition of disease freedom by WOAH</i>	
<i>African horse sickness</i>	21
<i>Bovine spongiform encephalopathy</i>	31
<i>Classical swine fever</i>	42
<i>Contagious bovine pleuropneumonia</i>	48
<i>Endorsement of official control programmes for contagious bovine pleuropneumonia</i>	57
<i>Endorsement of official control programmes for foot and mouth disease</i>	82
<i>Endorsement of official control programmes for peste des petits ruminants</i>	97
<i>Foot and mouth disease</i>	63
<i>Peste des petits ruminants</i>	88

<i>Procedures for endorsement of an official control programme by WOAH</i>	
<i>Application</i>	19
<i>Maintenance</i>	20
<i>Procedures for official recognition of animal health status by WOAH</i>	
<i>Application</i>	19
<i>Maintenance</i>	20
<i>Procedures for publication by WOAH of a self-declaration of animal health status by a Member Country</i>	20
<i>Q</i>	
<i>Quality of Veterinary Services</i>	
<i>Evaluation</i>	119
<i>General principles</i>	112
<i>Introduction</i>	111
<i>Quarantine (non-human primates)</i>	236
<i>R</i>	
<i>Reaching a judgement of equivalence of sanitary measures</i>	220
<i>Risk analysis</i>	
<i>Guidelines</i>	103
<i>S</i>	
<i>Salmonella enteritidis in poultry</i>	289
<i>Salmonella typhimurium in poultry</i>	289
<i>Somatic cell nuclear transfer</i>	
<i>Horses</i>	179
<i>Livestock</i>	179
<i>Surveillance of arthropod vectors of animal diseases</i>	16
<i>T</i>	
<i>Traceability of live animals</i>	133, 135, 136
<i>V</i>	
<i>Vaccination</i>	199
<i>Veterinary legislation</i>	121
<i>Veterinary public health</i>	273
<i>Z</i>	
<i>Zoning</i>	142
<i>Zoonoses transmissible from non-human primates</i>	321

